VETERINARY BACTERIOLOGY

A TREATISE ON THE

BACTERIA, YEASTS, MOLDS, AND PROTOZOA
PATHOGENIC FOR DOMESTIC ANIMALS

BY

ROBERT EARLE BUCHANAN, Ph.D.

PROFESSOR OF BACTERIOLOGY IN THE IOWA STATE COLLEGE
OF AGRICULTURE AND MECHANIC ARTS; BACTERIOLOGIST OF
THE IOWA AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

AND

CHARLES MURRAY, B. Sc., D. V. M.

PROFESSOR OF VETERINARY RESEARCH, IOWA STATE COLLEGE
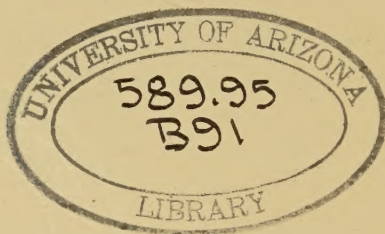
THIRD EDITION
THOROUGHLY REVISED

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

A SECOND revision of the Veterinary Bacteriology has been necessitated by the advances in this field in the last several years. A more adequate discussion of the classification and relationships of microörganisms has been included. The newer conceptions of acidity on the basis of hydrogen ion concentration has received increased emphasis. Several of the chapters on specific pathogenic bacteria have been completely rewritten, and others extensively revised.

<div style="text-align: right">

R. E. BUCHANAN.
CHARLES MURRAY.

</div>

IOWA STATE COLLEGE, AMES, IOWA.
January, 1922.

PREFACE

THE present volume is a revision of the lectures on veterinary bacteriology given during the past six years to classes in the Division of Veterinary Medicine in the Iowa State College. It constitutes a serious attempt to put in usable form that fund of knowledge concerning bacteriology which the student of veterinary medicine should master. It is in no sense a text on pathology, and discussion of purely pathological subjects has been minimized as much as possible. The intention has been to confine attention as far as practicable to those topics that unquestionably lie in the province of bacteriology. This has been defined to include a discussion of immunity and of the pathogenic bacteria, yeasts, molds, and protozoa.

The book is not intended to serve as a manual of laboratory practice, hence detailed discussion of methods and technic has been omitted. Methods of significance in diagnosis or treatment are given in greater detail in the discussion of specific organisms.

Several organisms causing diseases of man not transmissible to lower animals have been included. In all cases they are closely related to organisms having significance to the veterinarian, they cause diseases which are commonly confused with somewhat similar diseases of lower animals, or they are valuable as illustrations of methods of immunization, treatment, or diagnosis. Such organisms are relatively few in number.

A group system of discussion of the pathogenic bacteria has been adopted. The classification used has proved very helpful in my own classwork. The groupings used are not entirely satisfactory, in part due to the fact that some of the species have not been adequately described and differentiated in the literature. An effort has been made to point out the deficiencies in our present knowledge, both to give a better balanced presentation of the subject and to stimulate interest in the solution of the problems.

9

The pathogenic protozoa constitute a group which is particularly difficult to treat adequately, largely due to the rapid growth of the subject. Relatively few of the forms, moreover, are of immediate interest to the North American student.

R. E. BUCHANAN.

IOWA STATE COLLEGE, AMES, IOWA.

CONTENTS

SECTION I

MORPHOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, AND CLASSIFICATION OF BACTERIA

11

SECTION II

LABORATORY METHODS AND TECHNIC

SECTION III

BACTERIA AND THE RESISTANCE OF THE ANIMAL BODY TO DISEASE

SECTION IV

PATHOGENIC MICROÖRGANISMS EXCLUSIVE OF THE PROTOZOA

SECTION V

PATHOGENIC PROTOZOA

SECTION VI

INFECTIOUS DISEASES IN WHICH THE SPECIFIC CAUSE IS NOT CERTAINLY KNOWN

SECTION VII

BACTERIA OF WATER AND FOOD

VETERINARY BACTERIOLOGY

SECTION I

MORPHOLOGY, PHYSIOLOGY, AND CLASSIFICATION OF BACTERIA

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

Bacteriology is commonly defined to include a considera-
tion of three distinct groups of minute living organisms: the true
bacteria, the *molds*, and the pathogenic *protozoa*. Some authorities
have objected to the inclusion of a discussion of forms other than
the true bacteria under the heading of bacteriology, and have
proposed that the term *microbiology* be used instead. In accord-
ance with this latter conception, the term *microbe* includes the
bacteria, the *molds*, and the *protozoa*, and the science of *microbiology*
includes the corresponding subdivisions, *bacteriology*, *mycology*,
and *protozoölogy*. As most commonly used, however, the term
"bacteriology" is regarded as a synonym of "microbiology," and in
this text this usage will be followed.

The reasons for including the bacteria, the molds (particularly
those pathogenic to animals), and the pathogenic protozoa under
bacteriology may be stated briefly as follows: All three groups
must be studied by very similar methods. All three contain or-
ganisms which are capable of bringing about pathologic conditions
in man and animals. The microscopic unicellular animals, known
as protozoa, are known to produce disease in some cases, and have
been studied largely by means of the laboratory technic developed

by the bacteriologist. The boundaries between the groups of the bacteria on the one hand and protozoa on the other are likewise far from distinct. In many cases it would prove impossible from a clinical examination alone of a new disease to determine whether it is caused by the invasion of true bacteria or of protozoa. It is evident that there are many practical difficulties in differentiating the bacteria and protozoa.

Furthermore, the line of demarcation between the bacteria and fungi (including the molds, mildews, smuts, rusts, toadstools, puffballs, etc.) is very poorly defined. Particularly is it easy to find all intergradations between the bacteria and those groups of fungi commonly known as yeasts and molds. It appears, therefore, that because of difficulties in differentiation and because of the relationships indicated that a consideration of bacteria, yeasts, molds, and protozoa may all be included under the title of bacteriology.

Parasitology is that branch of science commonly defined to include a discussion of animal parasites, such as the mites, lice, nematodes, and similar types. Sometimes it is held to include consideration of the pathogenic protozoa and the parasitic molds. To this extent the fields of bacteriology and parasitology would therefore overlap.

Although bacteriology is one of the youngest of the sciences, nevertheless it has grown so rapidly that many divisions and subdivisions have come to be recognized.

Medical bacteriology may be defined as that branch of bacteriology which treats of those microörganisms (including the true bacteria, molds, and protozoa) that produce disease in the animal body or are related directly or indirectly to the maintenance of health. *Agricultural bacteriology*, with its subdivisions—*soil bacteriology*, *dairy bacteriology*, and *plant bacteriology*—includes a consideration of all organisms of importance in soil fertility, in production and distribution of dairy products, in disease causation in plants, and to a certain degree in domestic animals. *Sanitary bacteriology* has for its field the methods of disease prevention based upon the knowledge of the organisms causing disease and the manner in which they spread. *Systematic bacteriology* discusses the classification and relationships of organisms. *Immunology* con-

siders the resistance and susceptibility of the body to disease and the means which may be used to increase such resistance.

It is evident from the preceding definitions that the various divisions of bacteriology overlap to a considerable degree.

Veterinary bacteriology may be defined to include that portion of medical bacteriology which concerns those microörganisms (bacteria, yeasts, molds, or protozoa) which affect the health of domestic animals. The history of veterinary bacteriology is closely linked with that of general medical bacteriology, for many of the diseases of man are transmissible to animals and *vice versa.* It should be remembered that both are merely subdivisions of a great science, concerning which it is important that the student should gain something of a perspective view, particularly with reference to its history and development. This development has
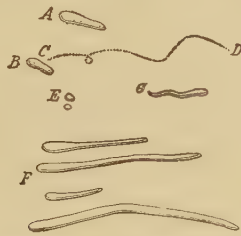
Fig. 1.—Leeuwenhoek's drawings of bacteria: *A*, *B*, Bacilli, probably; *C–D*, path of movement; *E*, cocci; *F*, Leptotrichia, probably; *G*, spirillum.

been so rapid, and so many of the important discoveries have been made within recent years, that it is frequently difficult to determine their relative importance. However, certain facts and personalities stand out so conspicuously that they are deserving of brief consideration.

The Microscope and its Influence.—The existence of living plants or animals smaller than can be seen by the unaided eye was conjectured by several of the Greek philosophers and physicians who used such theories in their speculations on the origin and cause of fermentation and disease. Until the discovery of the microscope such speculations were without any basis in fact.

Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723), in the course of his examinations of a great variety of natural objects by means of the somewhat

crude lenses of his own manufacture, chanced to observe the presence of motile and motionless microörganisms in the tartar from teeth and in various decaying organic materials. His correspondence with the Royal Society of London and the figures published leave no doubt but that he actually observed bacteria. These drawings are of such historic interest that they are here reproduced.

Each advance in the efficiency of the microscope was followed by an advance in our knowledge of the microörganisms, although speculation frequently outran the ability to see clearly. The compound microscope has proved to be indispensable in the study of these forms. Since the introduction of this instrument the degree of magnification, the clearness of definition, and the mechanic arrangements for accurate focusing have been gradually improved until at the present time the homogeneous oil immersion objective, the compensating ocular, and the Abbé condenser are in constant use in the laboratory, and enable us to secure readily magnification to 1500 diameters or more. During the last several decades there has been little increase in magnification, due to two reasons. The greater the magnification the more convex and consequently the smaller must be the lenses used in the objectives, and the more difficult becomes their grinding and adjustment. Furthermore, the physicist tells us that a clear view, with determination of the size and shape of microscopic objects, cannot be obtained when the objects examined are smaller than one-half the wave length of the rays of light in which they are examined. There is thus a seemingly insurmountable barrier set to an indefinite increase in magnification.

A recent advance has been made through the development of the ultramicroscope. This has made visible objects much smaller than those which had been observed previously. A bright gleam of light from an arc or similar source is passed across the darkened field of the microscope, and the light is reflected to the eye from any particles that may be in suspension. These objects are seen in the same manner that minute particles of dust are made visible in a bright ray of light that enters a darkened room. The use of the ultramicroscope has not as yet added many facts of value to our knowledge of the bacteria.

Nature and Classification of Microörganisms.—Leeuwenhoek, whom we have seen to be the first observer of bacteria, contributed very little to a knowledge of their essential nature. F. Müller (1786) worked out a simple classification, but did not differentiate between bacteria and protozoa. To him we owe several of the group names applied to bacteria, such as bacillus, vibrio, spirillum. Ehrenberg (1795–1875), with the improved microscope and lenses at his command, prepared the first logical classification of bacteria. Cohn (1828–1898) elaborated and modified Ehrenberg's classification. He differentiated the true bacteria from the protozoa, and his arrangement is the basis for the classification used most extensively at present. With the continued improvement in the microscope and laboratory technic, more careful studies of structure, form, and relationships have been rendered possible, and many classifications and groupings for bacteria have been suggested. The difficulty in finding morphologic characters that are accurate indices to true relationships has made the subject a troublesome one.

In recent years several attempts have been made to secure a satisfactory classification of the genera of bacteria. The one used here is an adaptation of that suggested by a committee on nomenclature of the Society of American Bacteriologists.

Spontaneous Generation.—In ancient times and even during the middle ages it was generally held by the philosophers and scientists that living things, animals, and plants, could arise *de novo*. Among the first observations that created doubt in man's mind as to the validity of this belief was that of Francisco Redi, who covered meat with gauze to protect it from flies, and found that maggots did not develop in it spontaneously, but arose from the eggs which the flies deposited on the screen. This pointed the path for other similar studies, and it was not long before the idea of spontaneous generation of the higher forms of life was abandoned. When the microscope revealed the presence of myriads of microörganisms in all decaying or putrefying materials, it was concluded that these organisms arose without progenitors of their own kind, but directly from the organic materials of their surroundings. Boiling was believed to certainly destroy all life,

yet it was found that boiled decoctions would not always remain free from microörganisms. The theory of spontaneous generation of these bacteria was opposed by some and supported vigorously by others of the best scientists of the time. Experiments were carefully planned and a great variety of materials used, paving the way for the development later of the laboratory technic of the bacteriologist. The sterilizing action of heat, the antiseptic action of certain chemicals, and the value of the cotton plug as a bacterial filter were demonstrated. The theory of spontaneous generation as a topic of contention practically disappeared about 1860. This was largely due to the efforts of Pasteur, who, by a long series of ingenious experiments, overthrew the last defense of the supporters of the theory. The dictum, *omne vivum ex vivo* (all life from life), is universally accepted at the present time, and the controversy has little but historic interest.

Relationships of Microörganisms to Fermentation and Decay.— As has been previously noted, some of the early philosophers hazarded the opinion that decay might be caused by invisible living beings of some kind. The causal relationship of microörganisms to decay and particularly to fermentation was first definitely established by the work of Louis Pasteur (1822–1895). He found the production of alcohol and carbon dioxid from sugar was due to a yeast, that milk soured because of the activity of bacteria, and that many of the familiar changes in organic substances were accomplished by microörganisms. His conclusions were strenuously opposed and ridiculed by the great German chemist, Liebig. Doubtless the necessity for meeting the attacks of the latter and of establishing his points beyond possibility of refutation led him to devise and develop many of the laboratory methods in common use at the present time. As a result of Pasteur's work the fundamental importance of bacteria in the transformation of nitrogen and carbon compounds in nature, the disposal of waste, the purification of water, the enriching of the soil, and many of the changes in the manufacture of foods have been established.

Relationship of Microörganisms to Disease.—The probable causal relationship of microörganisms of some kind to disease was argued as long ago as 1762 by Plenciz, of Vienna. His

theories were not generally accepted, and it was not until 1840
that Henle proposed what we have come to call the germ theory
of disease. He never succeeded in proving his point satisfactorily
because of the lack of proper methods and technic. Many
other writers within the next few years discussed the theory
and numerous facts were adduced in favor of it. The majority
of medical practitioners, however, put very little faith in it. The
argument that certain organisms were always present was met
with the statement that these organisms were the result and not
the cause of the disease. Davaine (1863) practically demon-
strated by inoculation experiments the causal relationship of a
bacillus he found in the blood of diseased animals to anthrax.
Pasteur (1865) proved the cause of a silkworm disease to be a
protozoan parasite. Koch and Pasteur later cultivated the
anthrax organism in the laboratory and showed beyond a doubt
its relationship to the specific disease. Improved laboratory
technic cleared up the cause of many diseases within the next de-
cade or two. The discovery of the bacillus of tuberculosis by
Koch (1882) marks the real beginning of bacteriologic science.
The knowledge of protozoa as a cause of disease lagged somewhat
behind that of bacterial infections. Evans (1880) described
the trypanosome of surra and transmitted the disease by inocula-
tion experiments. In 1882 Laveran observed the *Plasmodium
malariæ*, the cause of malaria.

Development of Laboratory Methods.—Progress was delayed
in the study of objects as minute as the bacteria because of the
lack of proper methods for their isolation, observation, and identi-
fication. Culture-media in which the pathogenic microörganisms
could be grown were used by Pasteur and Koch. To the latter
we are indebted (1882) for our knowledge of the solid media which
can be used for the isolation of organisms from mixed cultures.
The importance of this contribution can hardly be overestimated,
for the use of pure cultures lies at the very foundation of all
modern bacteriologic investigation. This one discovery accounts
in large measure for the rapid advance made during the next
two decades in the identification of the organisms producing
disease. The use of aniline dyes in rendering cells and their struc-
ture more plainly visible under the microscope we owe to Weigert,

but the application to bacteriology was made by Koch. Since their introduction successive advances in staining technic have in every instance been followed by the discovery of new organisms related to disease. The microscope, liquefiable media, and anilin dyes constitute the trio of most important factors in the development of the science of bacteriology.

Development of Theories of Immunity.—Knowledge that one attack of certain diseases generally prevented a recurrence and that diseases could not be indiscriminately transferred to all species of animals has existed ever since the foundation of medicine. Many theories have been advanced to account for this phenomenon. A few of the names of investigators who have put the facts into logical form for presentation and study should be considered. Metchnikoff conceived that the white blood-corpuscles and some other body cells acted as scavengers and destroyed microörganisms in the blood. This theory in modified form furnishes to-day the logical basis for many of the operations of the practitioner. Von Behring (1890) published results of studies on the diphtheria bacillus in which he recounted the discovery of the specific toxin of this organism and a specific antitoxin. He laid the foundation for the present-day " humoral " theory of immunity, which supplements so well the phagocytic theories of Metchnikoff. Ehrlich has correlated and coördinated the various facts of the humoral theory and has made substantial additions to it. He has created a terminology which has been quite generally accepted and has proved most useful in discussion of the subject. So extensive have been researches in the field of immunity during the last two decades (since 1890) that it has assumed almost the rank of a coördinate science.

Development of Sanitary Science and Preventive Medicine.— In 1858 Murchison formulated the so-called *pythogenic* theory of disease—*i.e.*, that disease is caused by the emanations arising from decaying or putrefying organic matter, and by the consumption of such materials in water and food. This theory was quite commonly accepted, and its practical applications form the basis for our modern sanitary science. The disposal of sewage and refuse, the purification of drinking-water, and adequate systems of plumbing were advocated and adopted before the germ theory of disease

had been well formulated and established. The rapid accumulation of evidence in favor of the germ theory gave rise to the art of preventive medicine. Lister (1875) advocated the use of antiseptics in the treatment of wounds and wound infection as a direct method of combating the activity of undesirable bacteria. The discovery of the means of transmission in most of the infectious diseases has enabled man to take measures for their eradication. Yellow fever, malaria, diphtheria, bubonic plague, and many other diseases are now kept in check by the use of preventive measures indicated by our knowledge of the manner in which they spread. It is probable that greater advance will be made within the next few years in the domain of preventive medicine, for mankind is fast coming to realize that prevention is better than cure.

CHAPTER II

MORPHOLOGY AND RELATIONSHIPS OF MICROÖRGANISMS CONCERNED IN DISEASE PRODUCTION

POSITION OF PATHOGENIC MICROÖRGANISMS

Differentiation of Animals and Plants.—The distinctions we commonly recognize as differentiating plants from animals in large measure disappear among the microscopic forms of life. It is worth while, therefore, to discuss the factors that are taken into consideration in the assignment of a particular microörganism to the animal or the plant kingdom. The difficulty arises particularly in the differentiation of the bacteria and the protozoa. Bacteria, as will be shown later, probably have in all cases a cell-wall which in function is closely related to that of plants. A cell-wall is frequently absent in protozoa, the limiting membrane usually consisting of the ectoplast (see below) alone. The composition of the cell-wall is in some cases like that of many animals (chitin), in others like plants (cellulose). In shape and habit of growth and reproduction the bacteria resemble very closely certain undoubted plants among the blue-green algæ and the mold fungi much more than they do animal forms. On the other hand, there are some types which intergrade with the protozoa, so that there is at present doubt as to their correct systematic position. In the matter of food supply and food utilization some bacteria resemble higher plants, others resemble animals. The possession of organs of motion by bacteria has no direct bearing on the subject, inasmuch as undoubted plants of the group of algæ and many of the protozoa have them. The evidence, on the whole, is much in favor of classification of the true bacteria with plants.

Before beginning a study of the morphology or structure of these microörganisms, their position and relationships to the other groups of plants and animals should be understood. Fol-

lowing is a discussion of these various groups, with particular emphasis upon the groups or subgroups of significance in medical bacteriology.

The plant kingdom is generally divided into four great groups, the *Spermatophytes*, or seed-bearing plants, the *Pteridophytes*, or ferns and fern-like plants, the *Bryophytes*, or moss plants, and the *Thallophytes*, including all plants low in the scale of evolution, that have not become highly differentiated and that never have roots, stems, and leaves. All of the plant-like organisms to be considered belong to this lowest group, *Thallophytes*.

The animal kingdom may be divided into the *Metazoa*, or higher differentiated types, made up of many cells, and the *Protozoa*, or unicellular forms. To the latter group belong all the animal-like organisms to be considered.

Subdivisions of the Thallophytes.—Following is a key or outline of the principal subgroups of the Thallophyta:

A. Unicellular forms, multiplying only by splitting of the cells to form two equal daughter-cells. Never any sex cells.
   I. Cells containing blue-green coloring-matter.
      1. *Schizophyceæ* (Cyanophyceæ or blue-green algæ).
   II. Cells not containing blue-green coloring-matter.
      2. *Schizomycetes* (Bacteria).
B. Unicellular or multicellular, multiplication by some method other than simple fission. Frequently sexual reproduction occurs.
   I. Cells containing green coloring-matter (chlorophyll).
      3. *Algæ* (sea-weeds, pond scums, etc.).
   II. Cells without green coloring-matter.
      4. *Fungi* (yeasts, molds, mildews, rusts, smuts, toadstools, puffballs, mushrooms, etc.).

Of the last group (Fungi) only two subgroups are of especial pathogenic significance for the veterinarian, the yeasts and the molds. These two, with the bacteria, constitute the three types of microörganisms belonging to the plant kingdom that contain forms pathogenic for animals.

Morphology of Bacteria

Shape of Bacteria.—Bacteria may be classified according to shape into spheres, straight rods, bent or spiral rods, and filaments.

A spherical form is called a *coccus*. Although the cocci are theoretically spherical, there are many that appear somewhat flattened or ovoid when in groups or chains.

Fig. 2.—Types of bacteria: Cocci, bacilli, and spirilla (Jordan).

A straight rod is called a *bacillus*.

A curved or spiral rod is called a *spirillum*.

The *filamentous bacteria* are those in which the organism is greatly elongated. The name *trichobacteria* has been given to such forms. Frequently the filamentous type exhibits branching and in other ways resembles the mycelium of the higher fungi or molds.

Fig. 3.—Involution forms of bacteria: 1, *Rhizobium leguminosarum*. *a*, Normal rods; *b*, bacteroids. 2, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. 3, *Bacillus subtilis*. 4, *Acetobacter aceti*. 5, *Pasteurella pestis*. 6, *Actinomyces sp.* 7, *Spirillum sp.* 8, *Staphylococcus aureus*: *a*, Normal forms; *b*, involution forms.

When grown under unfavorable conditions, or as a result of the action of certain stimulation, many bacteria assume unusual and abnormal shapes. Cells of this type are called *involution forms*. Such cells are not necessarily incapable of continued growth and

reproduction of the more usual or normal type when brought under favorable conditions. Frequently, however, these cells soon die and can no longer reproduce. Various bacteria differ considerably with respect to the ease with which they produce involution forms.

Grouping of Bacterial Cells.—The cells of bacteria are frequently surrounded by a gelatinous material (capsule, see below) which causes them to cling together in groups. This grouping in the various types is so constant that it is used to differentiate various genera from each other, and in some cases the species within
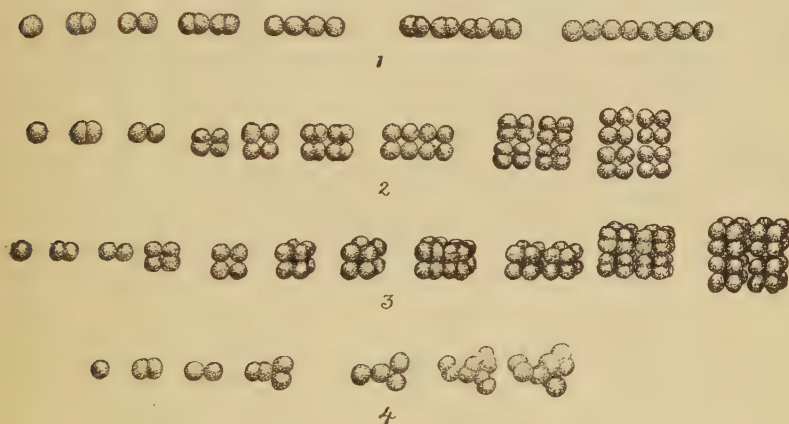
Fig. 4.—Development of groups of cocci· 1, Development of strepto-coccus; 2, development of micrococcus; 3, development of sarcina; 4, development of staphylococcus.

the genus. Bacterial cells divide normally at right angles to the longest axis of the cell. This allows of but little variation in the grouping of elongated types, but as the cocci have no "longest axis" they divide in various planes.

Some cocci divide constantly in the same plane or in a plane parallel to the first. This results in the formation of a chain of cocci. An organism showing this grouping is called a *strepto-coccus* (pl. *streptococci*).

Other cocci divide alternately in two planes at right angles to each other. Such an organism will be found in twos (*diplo-coccus*) or in fours (*tetrad* or *tetracoccus*). Diplococci may also

be produced by the breaking up of chains of streptococci into pairs.

Cocci sometimes divide in three planes at right angles to each other. This results in the formation of cubes or packets of cocci. A packet of this kind is called a *sarcina* (pl. *sarcinæ*).
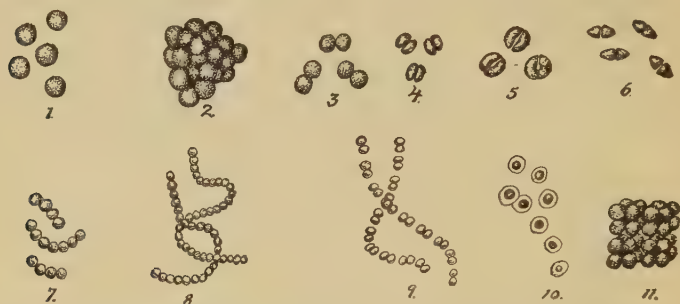
Fig. 5.—Shapes and groups of cocci: 1, Single coccus (micrococcus); 2, cocci in an irregular mass (staphylococcus); 3, spheric diplococci; 4, flattened diplococci; 5, coffee-bean-shaped diplococci; 6, lanceolate diplococci; 7, streptococcus with short chains; 8, streptococcus with long chains; 9, a streptococcus made up of diplococcus elements; 10, capsulated micrococci; 11, sarcina.

A *staphylococcus* (pl. *staphylococci*) is a coccus whose planes of division are not at right angles, or which divides at different intervals with a consequent irregular grouping of the cells much resembling grapes in a cluster.

Fig. 6.—Types of bacilli.

Bacilli occur either singly or in chains. The latter are sometimes known as *streptobacilli*.

Spirilla usually occur singly, although short chains of two or three individuals are sometimes observed.

In a few bacteria the gelatinous envelop of the cell is greatly

thickened, and the bacteria, either cocci or bacilli, are embedded in the mass.   Such a mass of cells is called a *zoöglea*.

Size of Bacteria.—The unit of microscopic measurement is the micron and is abbreviated by the Greek letter μ.   It is the

Fig. 7.—Types of spirilla.

$\frac{1}{1000}$ part of a millimeter or, approximately, the $\frac{1}{25,000}$ part of an inch.

Bacteria vary considerably in size, from forms 0.1μ or less in diameter, barely visible under the microscope, to forms
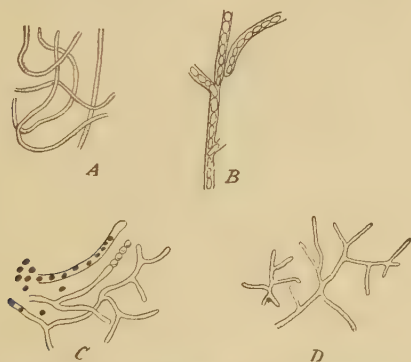
Fig. 8.—Types of filamentous bacteria: *A*, Leptotrichia; *B*, Cladothrix; *C*, Nocardia; *D*, Actinomyces or Streptothrix.

100μ or more in length.   Most bacteria are between 0.5 and 5μ in diameter and 0.5μ and 10μ in length.   Some bacteria are undoubtedly too small to be seen with the highest powers of our microscopes, hence less than 0.1μ in diameter.   We know of the existence of these organisms by their effects.   The organism caus-

ing hog cholera, for example, is so small that it will pass through
the pores of a fine porcelain filter, and will cause disease when in-
jected into a healthy pig.   Such an organism is frequently spoken
of as *ultramicroscopic* or, preferably, as a *filterable virus*.

Histology and Structure of Bacteria.—This topic may be treated
under four subheads, the cell wall with its related sheaths and cap-
sules, the protoplasm, the cell inclusions, and the flagella.

Cell Wall.—The bacterial cell is in all cases surrounded by a
definite membrane that morphologically resembles the cell wall
of higher plants.   When tested chemically with various reagents
and examined microscopically, it is sometimes found to give
the reactions characteristic of chitin, the material which makes
up the hard outer shell of insects, and is found as a cell mem-
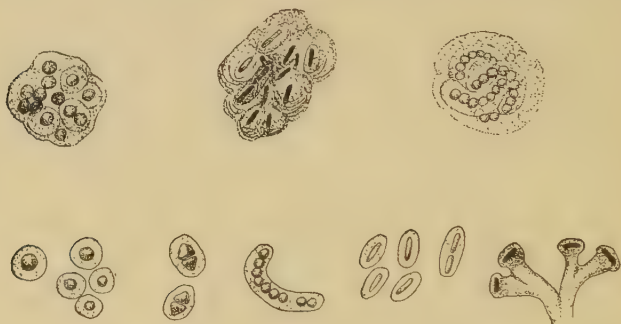
Fig. 9.—Capsulated bacteria.

brane in many animals.   Chemically chitin is an amino-sub-
stitution product of a carbohydrate.   The fact that the cell
walls in bacteria so frequently resemble in composition those
of certain animals has been used as an argument for the animal
relationships of the bacteria.   This is negatived, however, by
the fact that in numerous molds and other fungi, undoubted
plants, the cell walls are made up of a similar substance.

The cell wall in bacteria is usually covered by a layer of mucil-
aginous material, in most cases so thin that the most careful technic
must be employed in its demonstration, in other cases a thick
coating or *capsule*.   The nature of this capsular substance has
been a fertile subject for dispute.   A few bacteriologists have
claimed that it is composed of living protoplasm, the majority,

with seeming justification, believe that this is either an excreted material or merely an outer swollen and differentiated portion of the cell wall.   Chemically this material differs in the various capsulated bacteria.   In some cases it is composed of mucin, a slimy material made up of a protein-like substance united with a carbohydrate, and resembling the mucus secreted by certain body cells.   In other cases the capsule is made up of pure carbo-hydrates and is closely allied to certain of the vegetable gums, such as gum arabic and gum tragacanth.   The capsule of some bacteria is partially or wholly soluble in water.   When such an organ-ism grows in suitable nutrient solution it renders the medium slimy or gelatinous.   Slimy milk, bread and whey are caused by the luxuriant growth of such organisms.

Fig. 10.—Bacteria showing sheaths.

Some of the filamentous bacteria produce a firm *sheath* or tube outside of the cell, this sheath usually inclosing an entire filament or chain of cells.   In composition it probably closely resembles the cell wall.   In some cases it is impregnated with iron oxid. It is possible that the sheath is a modified type of capsule.

Cell Protoplasm.—The living material within the cell wall is called the *protoplasm*.   Structurally it may usually be dif-ferentiated into two layers, an outer thin layer lying closely appressed to the cell wall, and an inner portion.   The outer layer or *ectoplast* performs one of the most important functions of the cell, as this is the membrane, and not the cell wall, that determines what materials in solution may enter and what may leave the cell; through it must pass by diffusion all the food that enters the cell.   When certain bacteria, as the cholera spirillum, are placed in a strong solution of some salt which does not readily pass through

3

this ectoplast, the water from the cell in part passes out, the protoplasm shrinks away from the cell wall, and the cell is said to be *plasmolyzed* (noun, *plasmolysis*). Such a plasmolyzed cell shows clearly the ectoplast separated from the cell wall. When a cell of certain species is placed in distilled water or a concentra-

Fig. 11.—Plasmolysis and plasmoptysis of bacterial cells: *A*, Plasmolyzed bacterial cells; *B*, cells showing plasmoptysis, the protoplasm has burst the cell wall and is escaping. (Adapted from Fischer.)

tion of salt considerably less than that to which it has been accustomed, the cell takes up water, the cell wall bursts, and part of the protoplasm escapes. This phenomenon is called *plasmoptysis*. The protoplasm of the cell is commonly homogeneous in appearance, and stains best with the basic aniline dyes. Either a definite

Fig. 12.—Bacterial cell inclusions: *A*, Vacuoles in the cell, polar staining rods; *B*, vacuolate spirilla; *C*, fat globules; *D*, glycogen granules; *E*, metachromatic granules; *F*, sulphur granules.

nucleus is not present, or the nuclear material is so scattered as to make the entire mass functionally a nucleus. Some bacteria have been described as possessing a primitive type of differentiated nucleus, but such structures cannot be discerned in others.

Cell Inclusions.—Bacterial cells sometimes contain *vacuoles*, or spaces in the protoplasm filled with cell sap or some non-staining or non-refractive substance. A large vacuole near the center of the cell may crowd the protoplasm to the ends of the cell, and such organisms, when stained, are said to show *polar staining.* In other forms, as the diphtheria bacillus, granules are formed that stain much more intensely with the basic aniline dyes than does the remainder of the protoplasm. These are called *metachromatic granules.* The function of these granules is not clear. Certain species of bacteria living in water containing hydrogen sulphid are found to contain granules of free sulphur in their protoplasm. Still others have food materials in the form of *oil globules* or granules of *glycogen.*
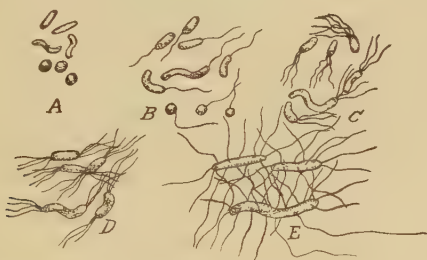
Fig. 13.—Distribution of the flagella of bacteria: *A*, Non-motile or atrichous bacilli, spirilla, and cocci; *B*, monotrichous flagella of bacilli, spirilla, and cocci; *C*, lophotrichous flagella of bacilli and spirilla; *D*, amphitrichous flagella of bacilli and spirilla; *E*, peritrichous flagella of bacilli and spirilla.

Flagella.—Many bacteria are motile by means of whip-like threads of protoplasm which extend from their surfaces. These threads are known as *whips* or *flagella* (sing. *flagellum*). These flagella are observed with difficulty in the living organism except with dark field illumination and require peculiar staining technic and careful treatment to make them visible in a stained mount. Comparatively few cocci, many of the bacilli, and most of the spirilla are flagellated. The distribution of flagella on the surface of the cell has been used as a basis for grouping. *Atrichous* bacteria have no flagella; *monotrichous* bacteria have a single flagellum at one end; *lophotrichous*, a group of flagella at one pole; *amphitrichous*, flagella at both ends; and

peritrichous, flagella on all sides. Old cells and cells transferred from one medium to another are very apt to loose their flagella. A young culture is most suitable for determination of motility. True motility must not be confused with *Brownian* movement, which is a vibrating or oscillating motion of finely divided particles of almost any kind suspended in water, and visible when examined under the microscope. This motion has not been satisfactorily explained, but it is probably due to rapid changes in surface tension of the liquid at the point of contact with the particles.

Reproduction in Bacteria.—Multiplication in all bacteria is a simple process. The cell commonly elongates or enlarges, a cell wall develops across the middle, and the two cells separate. This operation may occur with considerable rapidity. Some organisms in favorable medium can grow to their full size and divide to form two individuals in the course of twenty minutes to an hour. If the organism could multiply in this geometric ratio for a short time the number of resultant organisms would be practically incalculable. For example, if a bacterium should divide every half-hour, at the end of two days the progeny would be represented by 2^{96}, a number having twenty-eight figures. Such rapid multiplication is never long continued, for food supply is never long favorable, and waste products of the bacterial growth tend to accumulate and diminish the rate. Nevertheless, the rapidity of increase of bacteria accounts in a large measure for the considerable changes they bring about in a short time, as in the souring of milk or invasion of the body in disease.

Many bacteria also reproduce by means of *spores*. These are of two types: *endospores*, produced inside the bacterial cell, and *arthrospores*, consisting of entire differentiated cells. The former are produced by certain bacilli and spirilla, the latter by certain of the filamentous forms or trichobacteria.

Endospores are formed by many bacilli, and possibly by some spirilla. They are produced in response to some definite stimulus, such as unfavorable conditions of the environment, accumulation of waste products, or change in reaction of the medium. The spore is essentially a portion of the protoplasm of the cell which has expelled most of its water and shrunken in

size until it occupies a portion only of the space within the cell wall, and has then surrounded itself with a heavy wall, probably chitinous in nature.   In practically all cases there is but one spore in a cell.   The spore may be equatorial or polar in position, and of less or greater diameter than the cell which produces it. The term *clostridium* is sometimes used to indicate a spore-bearing

Fig. 14.—Development of endospores in a bacillus.   (After Fischer.)

rod in which the spore is equatorial and of greater diameter than that of the cell, resulting in a spindle.   Endospores contain only about 20 per cent. of water as compared with 80 to 90 per cent. in the cells which produced them.   An organism without a spore is usually differentiated by the term *vegetative rod* or *vegetative cell.*   Spores are much more resistant to desiccation, heat, light, and chemicals than the vegetative cells.   They are of use in

Fig. 15.—Bacterial spore types: *A*, Equatorial spores of a diameter less than the cell; *B*, polar spores of a diameter less than the cell; *C*, equatorial spores of a diameter greater than the cell (clostridium type); *D*, drumstick or polar spores of a diameter greater than the cell.

tiding the organism over unfavorable conditions.   Spore-bearing bacteria are abundant in the soil, where they often are exposed to great ranges of moisture, temperature, and light.   When a spore again comes under favorable conditions for growth, it germinates and produces a cell typical of its species.   Germination is accomplished either by stretching or bursting the spore wall.

Arthrospores are bacterial cells set apart for purposes of repro-
duction, and are usually differentiated appreciably from the normal
cell. Several investigators have claimed that they are produced
by some of the cocci, but this has never been satisfactorily estab-
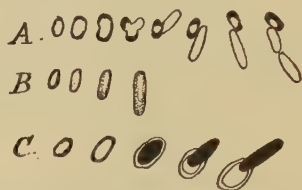
Fig. 16.—Germination of spores: *A*, *Bacillus subtilis* (Prazmowski); *B*, *Bacil-
lus anthracis* (deBary); *C*, *Clostridium sp.* (deBary).

lished. The filamentous bacteria or trichobacteria produce
arthrospores or *conidia*, as they are sometimes called, by the dis-
integration of some of the filaments into short rods or spheres
which are capable of reproducing the parent type or by a process
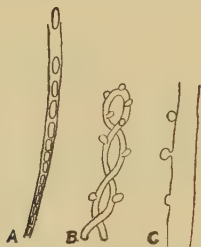
Fig. 17.—Arthrospores: *A*, *Crenothrix polyspora* (Cohn); *B*, *Gallionella ferru-
ginea*, showing conidia formation (Ellis); *C*, *Leptothrix ochracea* (Ellis).

of budding. In many cases the threads which break up into
the spores are somewhat differentiated from the normal cells of
the plant, and are aërial, resembling closely some of the molds.

Morphology of the Yeasts, Saccharomycetes, and Blasto-
mycetes

Yeasts, from the standpoint of the systematic botanist, are
placed at some distance from the bacteria, for there are many
differences between typical yeasts and typical bacteria. On the
other hand, there are forms which intergrade between the two,

and are sometimes assigned to one group, sometimes to another. The yeasts and the molds also show intermediate types.

Form, Size, and Grouping of Yeasts.—Yeast cells are usually spherical, oval, ellipsoid, or cylindrical. For the most part they are larger than bacterial cells, although there are exceptions. The true yeasts multiply not by fission, but by a process of budding. The cells commonly remain united for a time, giving rise to masses consisting of many individuals. Sooner or later they break apart. The relative shape, size, and groupings of the yeast cells are used in the differentiation of species. In some species part of the cells become considerably elongated and form a kind of false mycelium resembling that of the molds. This character is not always constant in a given species, it may
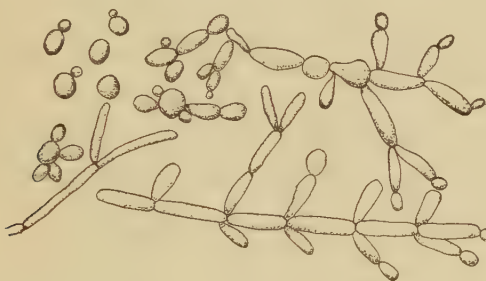
Fig. 18.—Types of yeast cells and groupings.

appear when the organism is growing in one kind of medium and not appear in another.

Histology and Structure of the Yeast.—The very young cell has no cell wall, but by the time it is one-third grown the wall appears as a delicate membrane. In old cells it is sometimes of considerable thickness. Its composition has not been certainly determined, probably it is a carbohydrate or related compound, and not chitinous, as are the walls of bacterial and mold cells. To this substance the name *yeast cellulose* has been given. It has not been prepared free from nitrogen, so that it is possible that it may be nitrogenous in nature.   It is sometimes surrounded by a gelatinous excretion or capsule, as is the case with bacteria. The yeast cells are never motile.

Yeast Protoplasm and Cell Inclusions.—The contents of the

yeast cell are more highly differentiated than are those of bacteria. The *ectoplast*, or limiting membrane of the protoplasm, is easily demonstrated by plasmolyzing the cell. This *ectoplast* (German *Hautschicht*) is the only membrane of the young cell, and the cell wall is probably secreted by it. The protoplasm is differentiated definitely into a *nucleus* and *cytoplasm*. The nucleus is not as easily demonstrated as in the higher plants and animals,
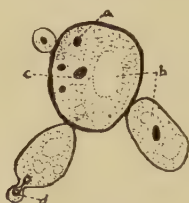
Fig. 19.—Diagram of budding yeast cells and their contents: *a*, Glycogen granules; *b*, vacuoles; *c*, nucleus; *d*, dividing nucleus in bud formation.

but may be shown by proper staining methods. The cytoplasm usually contains one or more *vacuoles*, spaces filled with cell sap and not taking the stain as does the cytoplasm. Older cells may also show *oil globules* or *glycogen granules*.

Reproduction in Yeasts.—Yeasts commonly multiply vegetatively by budding. A bit of the protoplasm protrudes on one side of the mother cell, the nucleus divides, and one part goes to

Fig. 20.—Spores (ascospores) of the yeast (Hansen).

the bud, the other remains within the cell, the bud enlarges, develops a cell wall, and is constricted off as a distinct individual. Many yeasts may also under favorable conditions produce *spores*. The development of the spores in the yeast cell differs considerably from that in the bacteria. The latter typically have but one spore developed within the cell, while a yeast cell usually produces two, four, six, or even eight spores. The nucleus divides several times to form a number of nuclei, each of which, together with the

protoplasm lying in contact with it, becomes surrounded by a membrane. A cell of the yeast (and certain other fungi) when filled with spores is called the *ascus* (pl. *asci*) or sac. The spores are called *ascospores* (Fig. 20). This method of spore production relates the yeasts quite definitely to some of the higher fungi. In some cases there is a primitive type of sexual reproduction or fertilization associated with the development of the spores. The spores are more resistant to an unfavorable environment than the vegetative cells. When brought under favorable conditions they germinate and develop into the typical yeast plant. In old yeast cultures some cells develop heavy cell walls, are filled with granular reserve food materials, and become potentially spores. Such cells are likewise probably resistant to unfavorable conditions, and serve to tide the yeast over periods of desiccation or poor food supply. They resemble the *chlamydospores* produced by many molds.

Morphology of the Hyphomycetes or Molds

The molds or hyphomycetes do not constitute a homogeneous group in the eyes of the systematic botanist, but belong to various subdivisions of the group of fungi. Some are related to the algæ and are grouped under the *Phycomycetes*, others belong to the sac fungi or *Ascomycetes*, others are related to the smuts, rusts, and toadstools, or *Basidiomycetes*, and the largest number belong to the group of imperfect fungi or *Fungi Imperfecti*. From the viewpoint of the bacteriologist these botanic relationships are not significant; all the fungi, regardless of kinship, that agree in having the plant body made up of threads usually more or less branched, and forming more or less loose or cottony masses, in short, those that answer to the popular conception of molds, are grouped together as *Hyphomycetes*. Such a classification is scientifically justifiable only because of the great complexity of the various members of the family of fungi, and the fact that it is not the systematic position but the economic importance of the forms that is of significance.

Form and Size of Hyphomycetes or Molds.—A mold may be differentiated from the yeasts and bacteria in that it is multicellular, with the cells united to form more or less branched

threads called *hyphæ* (sing. *hypha*). The whole mass of threads or
hyphæ which go to make up the plant body of the mold is called
the *mycelium*. In most molds certain threads are differentiated
for the production of spores. The mycelium of the mold may
extend over a considerable area, growing deep into the substratum
for food or into the air to develop spores.

Histology and Structure of Molds.—The mycelium in some
molds is continuous throughout its length, possessing no cross
walls which might separate the cells from each other. In the
majority of forms, and in all those of economic importance to
the veterinarian, the hyphæ are divided by cross walls or *septa*
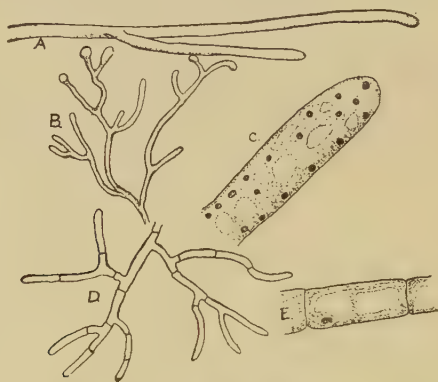
Fig. 21.—Mold hyphæ: *A, B,* Non-septate hyphæ of the Phycomycetes; *C,*
tip of a non-septate hypha, showing numerous nuclei and vacuoles; *D,* septate
branching hyphæ; *E,* a single cell of a septate hypha, showing nucleus and vac-
uoles.

(sing. *septum*). The cell wall is composed of true cellulose in
a few molds, in the majority it is *chitinous* as in the bacteria.
The almost universal presence of chitin in the cell walls of the
fungi is frequently lost sight of by those who regard its presence
in the cell walls of bacteria as evidence of animal affinities. The
protoplasm of molds, as in the yeasts, is made up of cytoplasm and
nucleus. The outer layer of the *cytoplasm* or *ectoplast* is readily
demonstrated in most molds by *plasmolysis*. In the forms that
do not have septa dividing the hyphæ into cells, the numerous
nuclei are imbedded in the common cytoplasm. Functionally
each nucleus with its bit of surrounding cytoplasm constitutes a

cell, although the statement is often made that the entire mold filament in the non-septate type is a single cell.

Reproduction of Molds.—It is impracticable to go into detail concerning the reproduction of molds. Spores of many different types are produced (Fig. 22), sometimes three or four kinds by a single species. The spores exhibit every conceivable shape and coloring, are sometimes unicellular, at other times multiseptate. Hundreds of genera and thousands of species are known. The names applied to the different parts of the molds concerned in reproduction and the manner in which the spores are borne in some of the commoner molds may, however, be briefly discussed.

Molds may be divided, for convenience, into those which bear the spores enclosed in a *spore case* or *sporangium* and those in which they are not so inclosed. This sporangium is commonly

Fig. 22.—Types of mold spores.

borne at the tip of a hyphal thread differentiated for the purpose, called a *sporangiophore*. Spores not produced inside of a sporangium and not the result of fertilization (*i. e.*, asexual spores) are termed *conidia* (sing. *conidium*). Conidia are usually developed at the tip of specialized branches called *conidiophores*. Sometimes they are formed by the breaking up of the mycelial threads or hyphæ, and are then called *oïdia* (sing. *oïdium*), in other cases they develop within the hyphæ and are surrounded by it as by a sheath. When one of the cells in a hypha becomes enlarged and surrounded with a heavy wall it is called a *chlamydospore*. Some molds develop spores as a result of the union of sex cells (sexual spores). These are called *ascospores* when produced in sacs (*asci*) and *zygospores* when formed by the union of two like cells as in certain Phycomycetes.

Spores of the molds are commonly born on hyphæ that extend

into the air away from the moist surface of the medium in which they are growing. This facilitates their dispersal by the air
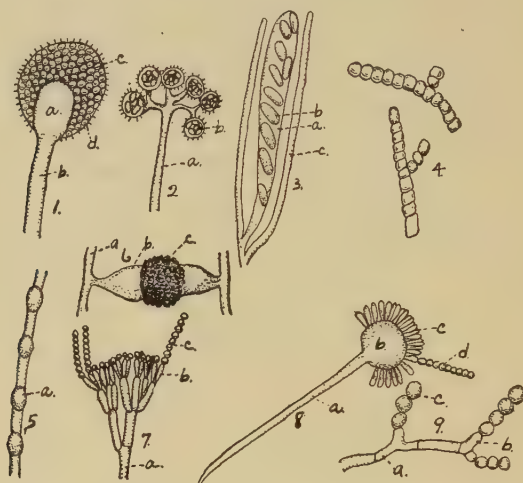
Fig. 23.—Types of the spores and the spore-bearing organs of the molds—1, Sporangium of the Mucor: *a*, columella; *b*, sporangiophore; *c*, spores; *d*, sporangium wall. 2, Sporangia of Sporodinia: *a*, sporangiophore; *b*, sporangia containing spores. 3. Ascus of an ascomycete, Peziza: *a*, ascus or spore sac; *b*, spore; *c*, sterile threads or paraphyses. 4, Oïdium spore formation; the hyphæ are segmenting to form spores or oïdia. 5, *a*, Chlamydospores formed in the hypha of a Chlamydomucor. 6, Zygospore of a Mucor: *a*, hypha; *b*, suspensor; *c*, zygospore. 7, Conidiophore and conidia of Penicillium: *a*, conidiophore; *b*, verticillate branches of the conidiophore; *c*, chains of spores or conidia. 8, Aspergillus: *a*, conidiophore; *b*, inflated tip of the conidiophore; *c*, sterigmata; *d*, chain of spores. 9, *a*, Hypha; *b*, poorly differentiated conidiophore; *c*, chain of conidia.

currents. When they fall upon a suitable medium they germinate and soon develop the typical mold plant.

MORPHOLOGY OF THE PROTOZOA

The protozoa are unicellular and bear much the same relation to the higher animals or *metazoa* that the bacteria do to the higher plants. Notwithstanding that they are reckoned among the simplest forms of life, they are, nevertheless, greatly diversified in shape, size, and structure. Only the barest outline of their structure can be given here. For a more detailed account the student is referred to the section on Protozoa.

Form and Size of Protozoa.—The pathogenic protozoa vary in size from those visible to the naked eye to those barely visible with the highest powers of the microscope. Some are possibly ultramicroscopic, the organism causing yellow fever, for example. In form and shape the greatest diversity is to be noted. Some are without definite shape, and are apparently only lumps of protoplasm, others are highly differentiated and have as great variety of organs (*organella*) as some of the higher animals.

Histology.—A true *cell wall*, as found in the bacteria, yeasts, and fungi, is frequently not present in the protozoa. When found, it is chitinous in nature. The *ectoplast* forms the limiting membrane of the cell in the majority of cases. The protoplasm is differentiated into *nucleus* (sometimes two, a *micronucleus* and a *macronucleus*) and *endoplasm* or *cytoplasm*. Power of movement is possessed by many forms. This may be due to the development of *pseudopodia*, of *flagella*, or of *cilia*.

Reproduction.—Asexual reproduction is accomplished in many cases by a simple process of fission, in others the procedure is much more complex. Sexual reproduction is quite general, but here again the complexity is so great as to render brief treatment impracticable. The relationship and structure of these forms will be considered in greater detail under the heading of Pathogenic Protozoa in Section V.

CHAPTER III

PHYSIOLOGY OF MICROÖRGANISMS

PHYSIOLOGY has been defined by Barnes to include " a study of the behavior of plants (and animals) of all sorts, and of the ways in which this is affected by external agents of every sort." In our discussion of the physiology of microörganisms we shall have to deal principally with the interrelationships existing between these microörganisms and their environment.

FOOD RELATIONSHIPS OF MICROÖRGANISMS

A food is any substance which a living organism may make a part of its living material or use as a source of growth energy. The term is frequently used very loosely to include all the substances of which an organism may make any use. For example, a distinction is sometimes made between green plants and animals on the basis of food used. The former are said to live on inorganic foods and the latter on organic. This distinction is erroneous. The difference is simply that green plants can manufacture their own foods out of inorganic material by the aid of the energy secured from the sun's rays through the green coloring-matter or chlorophyll, while animals make use of food already prepared. The materials of which some microörganisms make use are no more foods than the rays of the sun are a food for green plants.

Composition of the Cell.—The food utilized by any microorganism must contain the elements needed for the building up of the cell substance. The analysis of such cells shows them to be made up of the same elements as those of higher plants and animals, namely, carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, hydrogen, and smaller amounts of phosphorus, iron, magnesium, calcium, and some other elements. The foods utilized by organisms must, therefore, contain these elements likewise.

Sources and Kinds of Foods.—Some bacteria, like the green plants, are capable of manufacturing their own food. For this purpose a source of energy is necessary. Some species utilize the

energy of the rays of sunlight in much the same manner probably as do green plants. The coloring-matter in these forms, however, is purple or red (*bacteriopurpurin*). Other forms living in water which contains hydrogen sulphid, as in the sulphur springs, oxidize the hydrogen sulfid to free sulphur and even sulphuric acid and gain energy for the manufacture of their foods from carbon dioxid, water, and other compounds by this process. Still other forms are believed to make use of iron, ammonia, nitrites, and other inorganic substances, and by their oxidation secure the necessary energy. Organisms which can manufacture their own food out of inorganic substances are said to be *prototrophic*. The prototrophic microörganisms so far as known are all bacteria or molds. Most microörganisms utilize organic matter in a dead or living condition for food. Those which utilize dead organic matter are called *metatrophic*, while those requiring living material or complex protein foods are called *paratrophic*. The latter are frequently disease producing. It must not be supposed that these division lines are strictly drawn. For example, certain bacteria seem to make use of the oxidation of carbohydrates and other organic substances to enable them to take up the nitrogen from the air and to convert it into usable form. Such are both prototrophic and metatrophic.

The peculiar food requirements of the different species must be kept in mind in the preparation of nutrient media for their growth. Some organisms will not grow in the presence of organic materials, while others require such specialized media as blood-serum or hemoglobin.

A second grouping of microörganisms commonly used is based upon the relationship to other living organisms. Those which do not require a living host (animal or plant) are called *saprophytes* if bacteria, yeasts, or molds, and *saprozoites* if protozoa; those which require a living host are called *parasites*. Those parasites which do not produce disease are termed *commensals*.

MOISTURE RELATIONSHIPS OF MICROÖRGANISMS

Microörganisms require considerable amounts of water for their development. The optimum condition for growth in most cases is saturation. There is great variation in ability to resist *desiccation*. The spores of some bacteria and fungi

and the encysted cells of some protozoa will live for years, while other forms are destroyed if allowed to become completely dried.

RESPIRATION OF MICROÖRGANISMS

Respiration is frequently defined as the taking up of oxygen and the elimination of carbon dioxid. This definition is entirely inadequate when we come to a discussion of microörganisms, if, indeed, it can be applied in any case even to higher animals and plants. Respiration seems fundamentally to be the process whereby energy is generated in the cell. Energy when evolved in the cell always originates from chemical changes in the compounds within the cell. Whether or not this energy may be gained by the oxidation of food materials when taken into the cell, or whether they must be first built up into protoplasm and this then broken down, is a matter of dispute at present among scientists. In any event the presence of free oxygen is certainly not necessary to this release of energy, for many bacteria as well as other plants and animals live in the absence of free oxygen. Organisms that grow only in the presence of oxygen are called *aërobic;* those which will grow only in the absence of free oxygen, *anaërobic*, and those which will grow either with or without free oxygen, *facultative*. It is probable that most of the so-called anaërobes grow better in the presence of minute quantities of oxygen. The end-products of respiration are found to differ with the type, aërobic bacteria usually produce carbon dioxid and water; anaërobic forms, less highly oxidized substances, such as alcohol and butyric acid.

The oxygen requirements of anaërobic bacteria must be recognized in the laboratory if they are to be successfully cultivated. The air of the culture-tube or flask may be removed by a stream of hydrogen, nitrogen, or some other inert gas, the oxygen may be absorbed by the use of alkaline sodium pyrogallate, the air may be exhausted by an air-pump, the oxygen may be excluded by covering the medium with oil or some similar material, or the organism may be mixed with some aërobic form which will use up the oxygen and allow growth of the anaërobe. Probably the latter is the common method whereby anaërobes are able to grow in nature. An organism may be an obligate aërobe under certain conditions or in certain media and facultative under

different conditions. For example, many bacteria will grow in the absence of oxygen providing there is available some compound from which oxygen may be readily obtained. Some will use nitrates for this purpose, others may use sulphates, reducing them to nitrites and sulphids respectively. Many will grow under anaërobic conditions providing suitable carbohydrates which they can ferment are present.

GROWTH RATES AND DEATH RATES

The various physical and chemical agencies to be discussed, manifest their action upon microörganisms by their effect upon the rate of growth on the one hand and the rate of death on the other. Before they can be discussed adequately, therefore, certain general considerations concerning rates of growth and death must be presented.

Rates of Growth.—When bacteria or other organisms are planted in a suitable culture medium, and optimum conditions for growth maintained, the bacteria soon reach a maximum rate of growth. This can best be measured by determining the average length of time required for an organism to grow to its full size, divide, and form two individuals. This has been termed the *generation time*. It is the average length of time elapsing between cell divisions. It may be most conveniently determined in any given case, not by watching the bacteria under the microscope, but by counting the number of living cells present in a given amount of culture after varying lengths of time. It is evident that the shorter the generation time is found to be, the more rapid is the rate of multiplication. Anything therefore which tends to shorten the generation time increases the rate of growth.

The actual length of the generation time may be determined if it is certain that the bacteria are multiplying at a uniform rate, that is, that the cultures are not too young or too old, by counting the bacteria at the beginning and at the end of a given period. It is evident that if one starts with a single organism, at the end of the first generation period there will be two, at the end of the next four (2^2), at the end of the next eight (2^3) and so on. If n represents the number of generations, then there will be at the end of the nth generation period 2^n bacteria. If B

4

represents the number of bacteria at the beginning, and b the number at the end, then

$$b = B2^n.$$

If b and B are known, their values may be substituted into the equation, and the value of n determined.

If **t** is the total time, and **g** is the generation time, it is evident that the generation time must equal the total time divided by the number of generations

$$g = \frac{t}{n}.$$

Careful studies of bacteria growing in culture media show that the length of the generation time does not remain a constant throughout the time of cultivation. When bacteria are first planted in a culture, particularly if they have been taken from an old culture, they frequently grow slowly at first. As they become accustomed to their environment they multiply more rapidly, that is, the value of **g** decreases. After a time the maximum rate of growth occurs, and the value of **g** is at a minimum. Still later the bacteria become crowded and the rate of growth slows down, **g** increases and finally the bacteria cease to grow at all and begin to die off.

It is evident that a fair comparison of effect of any influence upon bacteria can be determined by comparing the values of **g** under different conditions.

Rates of Death.—It is equally important to know something of the laws which govern the rates at which bacteria die off under unfavorable conditions. In most of the cases which have been carefully studied, the bacteria die off in accordance with a definite law, which may be stated as follows: with a given kind of organisms under uniform unfavorable conditions, the number of bacteria present in a culture will always be reduced by one half in equal periods of time, that is no matter how many bacteria there are at the beginning of a definite period of time, one half that number will always be alive at the end of the proper interval. For example, suppose that two cultures of the same organism, one containing a million bacteria and the other a thousand bacteria are subjected to the same unfavorable conditions. It is

found that at the end of a definite period of time, say ten minutes, the bacteria in the less concentrated suspension number five hundred. It will be found that in the same period of time the number in the other culture has also been halved, that is, there are 500,000 bacteria left. Another way of stating is this, *during each equal interval of time a definite percentage of those bacteria living at the beginning of the period will be killed.* If we wish to compare unfavorable conditions in their effect upon the death of microörganisms we may compare the length of time required to reduce the numbers of bacteria by a definite percentage, say one half. If at one temperature, for example, half of the bacteria are killed in ten minutes, and at another temperature one half the bacteria are killed in five minutes, it is evident that the second temperature is far more destructive than the first. It will be noted that time required to kill half the bacteria is mathematically the converse of the generation time.

In summary it may be emphasized that all effects of environment upon microörganisms may be manifested in growing cultures by changes in the length of the generation time, changes in morphology, and in the physiological and cultural reactions. Likewise the effect of environment will be noted upon the rate of death by comparing the length of time necessary to kill a definite percentage of the microörganisms present.

TEMPERATURE RELATIONS OF MICROÖRGANISMS

Optimum Temperature.—The optimum growth temperature is that which most favors the development of the microörganisms, that is, that temperature which gives the shortest generation time. The optimum varies with the species. A few organisms found in the ocean, in cold waters, alpine regions, etc., prefer a low temperature, from 0° to 15°. These are called *psychrophilic.* Those which prefer a somewhat higher temperature are called *mesophilic.* These latter may be again subdivided into those that prefer a "room" temperature of 18° to 25°, and those that prefer blood heat (man 37.5°) for the most parasitic forms. Temperatures such as are found in hot springs, interior of compost heaps (50° to 70°) favor the development of *thermophilic* bacteria.

Minimum Temperature.—The lowest temperature at which an organism will continue growth is said to be its *minimum*. This temperature varies for different species. Some organisms will multiply in brine held at temperatures lower than the freezing-point of water.

Maximum Growth Temperature.—The highest temperature at which an organism will multiply is called its maximum. This must not be confused with the thermal death point (see below). The majority of bacteria cannot grow above 45°.

Growth Temperature Range.—The differences between the minimum and maximum growth temperatures vary within rather wide limits. Those organisms which exhibit considerable adaptability and are able to grow through a wide range of temperature are called *eurythermic*. Most of the saprophytic organisms belong here. The parasitic types which have minima and maxima varying but little from the optima are *stenothermic*.

Thermal Death Point.—The thermal death point of an organism is usually defined as that temperature which under given conditions will certainly destroy all the cells. It has been noted above that bacteria do not die off instantaneously. The following factors must be taken into consideration in the determination of the rate of death of bacteria:

1. *The Absence or Presence of Spores.*—Spores are much more resistant to high temperatures than are the vegetative cells. Forms having spores, therefore, have two rates of death, one for the vegetative cells and the other for the spores.

2. *Presence or Absence of Moisture.*—Bacteria are more resistant to dry than to moist heat. The thermal death point is probably the temperature at which incipient coagulation of the albuminous protoplasm occurs, resulting in an inability to function. Water is necessary for this coagulation. The following table from Frost and McCampbell illustrates this point:

Egg albumen + 50 per cent. water coagulates at 56° C.
Egg albumen + 25   "   "   "   74–80° C.
Egg albumen + 18   "   "   "   80–90° C.
Egg albumen + 6   "   "   "   145° C.
Egg albumen + no water   "   160–170° C.

This fact is emphasized by the laboratory methods of sterilization. The autoclave, with live steam at temperature of 120°, will destroy in ten minutes the most resistant spores, while in the hot-air oven a temperature of 150° to 170° for an hour is necessary.

3. *Reaction and Composition of Medium.*—The reaction and composition of the medium has been found to exert a marked influence on the thermal death point. Particularly should the hydrogen-ion concentration of the medium, that is, the actual acidity, be noted. It is a well known fact, for example, that acid fruits are much more easily sterilized than are the more nearly neutral vegetables.

4. *Time of Exposure.*—In general, the higher the temperature the shorter the period required to destroy life in the cells. Mathematic formulas have been developed giving the time as a function of temperature for some forms. Ten minutes' exposure is the usual standard.

5. *Specific Character of Organism.*—Intrinsic variations in the character of protoplasm of different species make it necessary to determine the thermal death point for each species.

LIGHT RELATIONSHIPS OF MICROÖRGANISMS

A few bacteria possessing bacteriopurpurin require light for their development. For most other microörganisms, particularly the bacteria and the pathogenic protozoa, darkness is the optimum light condition. Light, particularly the direct rays of the sun, will destroy all but the most resistant bacteria if exposed for a sufficient length of time. Sunlight when passed through a prism is readily broken up into its constituent colors, the least refracted rays, or the reds and yellows, at one end, and the more highly refracted rays, the blues and the violets, at the other. Exposure of bacteria to these various colored rays has shown the blues and violets to be most powerful, while the reds and yellows of the other end have little or no effect. It will be remembered that the blue and violet rays are the ones which affect the photographic plate most intensely. The germicidal action of light on the pathogenic bacteria is of the greatest practical importance. It renders infection through the medium of the air in most cases a remote possibility.

Even more powerful than the visible blue and violet light rays are the invisible ultra-violet rays. Lamps have been devised which give a maximum of ultra-violet light, and these have been found to be quite efficient in certain types of sterilization. The lamp commonly used is a modification of the Cooper-Hewitt mercury vapor arc, in which the glass has been replaced with quartz, for experiment has shown that most types of glass which permit of the passage of visible light rays are at least partially opaque to the ultra-violet, while quartz will allow the free passage of such rays. When clear liquids are exposed in relatively thin layers to the rays from such a lamp, the bacteria present are quickly killed; the liquid is sterilized. The process is not efficient, however, when the liquid to be treated is quite turbid, or opaque, or opalescent, as milk. It is probable that the ultra-violet light produces a coagulation or some other irreversible change in the protoplasm of the bacterial cells, for solutions of proteins exposed are precipitated.

Sterilization of water by ultra-violet light has been used successfully in the purification of water supplies, and of water used in swimming-pools, etc. Apparently where properly used it is efficient.

Effect of Electricity on Bacteria

Strong direct currents of electricity passed through a solution containing bacteria will sterilize it. It is difficult, however, to dissociate the physical effect of the current directly upon the bacteria from the action of the chemicals produced by electrolysis. No practical use has been made of the destructive action of electricity upon microörganisms, as the method is difficult to apply and is inefficient at best. The Röntgen rays (x-rays) do not destroy bacteria even when the latter are exposed for considerable periods.

RELATIONSHIPS OF MICROÖRGANISMS TO CHEMICALS

Microörganisms are profoundly affected both in growth and movement by the chemicals with which they come in contact. They may be attracted or repulsed, stimulated to increased growth, their development inhibited, or they may be destroyed when certain substances are present.

Chemotaxy.—Motile microörganisms are attracted or repulsed by certain chemicals. The first is known as *positive chemotaxy*, the latter as *negative*. Certain protozoa and bacteria are attracted by oxygen and may be observed to swim about air bubbles under

Fig. 24.—Chemotaxy: *a*, Spirilla attracted by a green algal cell which is giving off oxygen, aërotaxis; *b*, a leukocyte containing several bacteria which it has engulfed; *c*, capillary pipette containing a solution of beef extract, and at 2 an air bubble, placed in a drop of water containing motile bacteria. The latter are attracted in large numbers to the mouth of the tube; *d*, an air bubble surrounded by two concentric circles of organisms, the inner one bacteria, the outer protozoa. Each remains in the concentration of oxygen most favorable to its growth.

the microscope. From their movements it is evident that different species prefer varying amounts of oxygen. This results in a grouping of the different kinds in concentric circles about the bubble. This type of chemotaxy is called *aërotaxy* (not aërotropism). The avidity of certain bacteria for oxygen has been used in the laboratory for their isolation from water, particularly the Asiatic cholera organism. Peptones and meat extractives attract many kinds of bacteria. This phenomenon may be readily demonstrated by introducing the tip of a minute capillary tube filled with such a solution into water containing numerous bacteria. These will be found to congregate in great numbers about the mouth of the tube and to enter it. Probably chemotaxis accounts for the flocking of the leukocytes or white blood-corpuscles to any part of the body attacked by certain bacteria. Microörganisms are not always attracted by food stuffs and repelled by harmful substances. A mixture of peptone and mercuric chlorid will attract bacteria and then destroy them.

Tropisms.—Organisms which are not free to move in response to a chemotactic stimulus may nevertheless be influenced in their direction of growth. Such a response in the direction of growth to an external stimulus is called a *tropism*. Mold hyphæ will often grow toward a moist medium, while the conidiophores which they bear rise at right angles to its surface and seek to produce the spores as far as possible from a moist surface. These phenomena are known respectively as *positive* and *negative hydrotropism*.
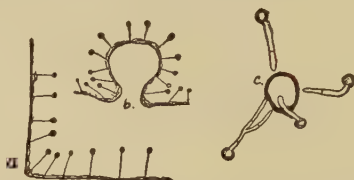
Fig. 25.—Chemotropism: *a, b,* Mold hyphæ and conidiophores, showing the negative hydrotropism of the latter; *c,* an air bubble in a medium with four germinating mold spores. The hyphæ are growing toward the air, showing positive aërotropism.

The influencing of the direction of the growth by the action of chemicals is called *chemotropism*. The forms of mold and bacterial colonies, when growing upon artificial media, are largely determined by this factor. For example, many molds radiate in practically straight lines from their point of origin in a medium, and every branch quite exactly bisects the angle between the two filaments on either side. This mutual repulsion of the hyphæ is doubtless due to certain of the products excreted by the cells. *Heliotropism*, or the influence of light on the direction of growth, is also observed in some forms.

Influence of Reaction of Medium on Growth.—Many organisms are quite exacting in their requirements as to the reaction of the medium in which they are grown. Some forms grow best in a medium slightly acid, others refuse to develop except in one which is slightly alkaline. The majority of bacteria, however, grow well in a medium that is neutral to litmus.

ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS

An *antiseptic* is usually defined as anything that will inhibit the growth of microörganisms without necessarily destroying

them. Inasmuch as anything which completely stops growth of bacteria must also kill them more or less rapidly an antiseptic, strictly speaking, is any substance which produces a relatively slow rate of death in bacteria. In the broadest sense, this term would include such physical agencies as the action of cold and heat, but in practice it is generally confined to chemical substances. A *disinfectant* is a substance that will destroy pathogenic bacteria. Inasmuch as pathogenic and non-pathogenic bacteria are both destroyed by the same substances, there is little real difference in the meaning of *disinfectant* and *germicide* (something that will destroy all bacteria). A disinfectant, as distinguished from an antiseptic, kills bacteria rapidly. A *deodorant* is any substance that masks disagreeable odors or eliminates them entirely by removing their cause. A deodorant may or may not be a disinfectant or antiseptic. These latter terms are relative ones only, for any disinfectant if sufficiently diluted becomes an antiseptic.

Theories of Action of Antiseptics and Disinfectants.—Germicides may destroy microörganisms by forming compounds with the protoplasm, by dissolving or coagulating the protoplasm, or by oxidation and complete destruction of the cells. Our most efficient disinfectants are those which destroy in the manner first named. The activity and efficiency of many disinfectants depend upon the ionization of the compound in solution. This is particularly true with the salts of heavy metals, such as mercuric chlorid (corrosive sublimate). It is the ionized mercury that is poisonous to bacteria. Mercuric chlorid does not ionize in pure alcohol, hence it is not poisonous to bacteria when in solution in that substance. The addition of various other chemicals may increase or decrease the ionization of the disinfectant and enhance or diminish its destructive action.

Characteristics of an Ideal Disinfectant.—Certain characteristics may be listed as belonging to an ideal disinfectant. To the extent that a particular disinfectant measures up in its characteristics to those of the ideal, it is valuable for general use. The more important of these characteristics are as follows:

1. *Germicidal Power.*—The ideal disinfectant should possess high germicidal power, that is, it should kill bacteria in dilute

solution. The ability of a disinfectant to kill microörganisms is usually compared with that of phenol. In making such comparisons it is customary to use the *Bacterium typhosum*, the cause of typhoid fever, as the test organism. Most commercial disinfectants, particularly the coal tar products, are sold upon the basis of their phenol coefficient.

2. *Stability.*—The disinfectant to be most valuable should be relatively stable in the presence of organic matter. Some of the most powerful of the disinfectants combine with organic matter forming insoluble compounds and pass out of solution relatively completely. The strength of the disinfectant may be thereby rapidly decreased to a point where it no longer destroys microörganisms.

3. *Homogeneity.*—Disinfectants should be homogeneous in composition. Substances which may be bought in pure condition or in crystalline form such as mercuric chlorid are ideal from this point of view. Many of the commercial disinfectants, particularly those prepared from coal tar, may vary considerably in their composition from time to time, and consequently in their germicidal value.

4. *Solubility.*—The ideal disinfectant is one which will dissolve in all proportions in water, as alcohol, for example.

5. *Non-toxic to Higher Life.*—An ideal disinfectant would be non-poisonous to man and to the higher animals. Obviously disinfectants which will kill one kind of cell and not injure another are not the most common. Most of the valuable disinfectants are more or less injurious to tissues. Certain disinfectants, however, may be injected into the blood, exerting a more harmful influence upon microörganisms than upon tissues of the body, destroying the former without seriously injuring the latter. Such, for example, is the arsphenamine used in the treatment of syphilis.

6. *Non-corrosive.*—Inasmuch as disinfectants must frequently be used in contact with metals, fabrics, etc. it is highly desirable that they should not attack metal, injure fabrics, leave stains or bleach color.

7. *Penetration.*—Disinfectants differ decidedly in their power

to penetrate materials to be sterilized. An ideal disinfectant is one which penetrates rapidly and efficiently.

8. *Economy.*—The ideal disinfectant should be low in cost. Certain valuable disinfectants, because they are so expensive, can be used only in limited quantities and for special purposes. The high cost of salts of silver for example limits the use of silver practically to medicine. If the entire water supply of a city is to be sterilized obviously a disinfectant must be chosen which is relatively inexpensive.

9. *Power to Remove Dirt and Grease.*—A film of oil or grease over the surface of certain materials may wholly prevent the action of many disinfectants. Those which have power to dissolve or remove grease and all kinds of dirt are naturally more efficient.

10. *Deodorizing Power.*—A disinfectant which can combine with and destroy malodorous substances is preferable to one which does not.

Disinfectants and Antiseptics in Common Use.—The addition of acid to any solution containing bacteria with the consequent increase in hydrogen ion concentration increases markedly the rate of death.

Bacteria which grow well in a relatively high hydrogen ion concentration are termed *acidophiles.* The ability of these organisms to grow in the presence of high concentrations of acid is sometimes utilized in their isolation.

Acids are most commonly used as preservatives. The more important are the *acetic* (usually in the form of vinegar) and the *lactic* acids, the latter the preservative agent in sour milk, sauer kraut, and in silage.

Strong acids are those which ionize most completely. Weak acids are those which ionize poorly. Lactic and acetic acids are relatively weak acids, and must be present in relatively large amounts in order to secure a high concentration of hydrogen ions. For example, tenth normal hydrochloric acid contains about ten times as many hydrogen ions as normal acetic acid.

In a few acids either the anion or undissociated acid molecule may also exert a disinfection action. In some, this action is much more important than that of the hydrogen ion. For

example, benzoic acid is a comparatively weak acid and yet it has relatively high antiseptic or disinfecting value.

Alkalies.—High alkalinity, that is high concentration of hydroxyl ions, likewise exerts a destructive action upon micro-örganisms. Lime owes its value as a disinfectant to this fact. Unslaked lime (calcium oxide) added to water is converted into calcium hydrate and when used in strong solutions, as in white wash, it has a marked disinfecting action. It is a valuable disinfectant to mix with stools or body excreta in order to destroy disease-producing bacteria. It should be noted, however, that upon exposure to air calcium hydrate is gradually converted into calcium carbonate which is no longer germicidal.

Some bacteria will grow in relatively alkaline solutions. For example, the organism causing Asiatic cholera, the *Vibrio choleræ*, will grow in much higher hydroxyl ion concentration, that is, in more alkaline solutions, than will most other species of bacteria. Use is made of this fact in isolating this organism from feces, the medium being made so alkaline as to inhibit the growth of most other microörganisms rendering the securing of this organism in pure culture comparatively easy.

Salts of the Heavy Metals.—The salts of gold, silver, copper, and mercury are all active disinfectants. Copper sulphate is sometimes used in an effort to free water reservoirs and other city supplies from growths of objectional algæ. Mercury is the most efficient of the metals and its salts are most commonly used. It acts by forming a mercuric albuminate of the protoplasm. When used in any solution containing considerable quantities of protein or similar materials, as in feces, it must be added in excess and thoroughly mixed, for it is apt to form an insoluble coating over the surface of the solid particles and protect the bacteria in the interior from destruction. Mercuric chlorid is usually used in solutions of 1:1000 or 1:2000.

Phenol, or carbolic acid, C_6H_5OH, and the methyl phenols or cresols, $C_6H_4CH_3OH$, either pure or in the trade mixtures, such as kreso, tricresol, creolin, etc., are among the most efficient and useful of disinfectants. They are most frequently used in

1 to 5 per cent. solutions, and will destroy bacteria even in the presence of quantities of organic matter.

Sulphur Dioxid and Sulphurous Acid.—When sulphur is burned it yields sulphur dioxid, a gas that has been much used in fumigation. It is powerless to destroy bacteria unless moisture is present, with which it may unite and form sulphurous acid. The latter is a very active bleaching and corrosive agent, hence it should not be used except where it can do no harm. One pound of water (about 1 pint) should be vaporized in a room for every 5 pounds of sulphur burned. This amount should efficiently disinfect 1000 cubic feet. Insects and other vermin are destroyed by the sulphur fumes.

Alcohol is frequently used as an antiseptic, and sometimes as a disinfectant. The efficacy of this material is dependent upon the concentration. Beyer has shown that 70 per cent. alcohol is most powerful, proving to be thirty times as efficient as 60 per cent. and forty times as powerful as 80 per cent. Concentrations below 60 per cent. and above 80 per cent. are apparently almost valueless.

Formaldehyd, HCHO.—Formaldehyd is the gas used most widely in fumigation and disinfection. It is very soluble in water and is commonly sold as *formalin*, a 40 per cent. solution of formaldehyd. Like sulphur dioxid, formaldehyd is efficacious only in the presence of moisture, but, unlike it, does not bleach fabrics or injure materials. Formaldehyd may be evolved in gaseous form for disinfection in a variety of ways. Incomplete combustion of methyl alcohol according to the reaction

$$2CH_3OH + O_2 = 2HCHO + 2H_2O$$
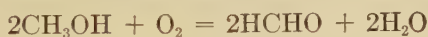
is utilized in a number of lamps upon the market. When properly carried out the method may be efficient, but it has several disadvantages, *i. e.*, expense and presence of a fire in a closed room. Heating the formalin over an open flame will liberate a part of the formaldehyd readily, but under these conditions it polymerizes and some of the polymers (paraformaldehyd) are insoluble. If the evaporation is continued to dryness, all of these will again be broken up and given off as formaldehyd. The same result can be reached more quickly by the addition of glycerin or some salt which will raise the boiling-point of the solu-

tion above the dissociation temperature of the paraformaldehyd. An autoclave or closed vessel in which the solution is heated considerably above the boiling-point of water will serve the same purpose. Twelve ounces of formalin should be used for every 1000 cubic feet to be fumigated. A convenient method for fumigating small rooms is to pour formalin over crystals of potassium permanganate in an earthen vessel that is a poor conductor of heat. The permanganate is an active oxidizing agent and converts part of the formaldehyd into carbon dioxid and water, with the liberation of sufficient heat to vaporize a large portion of the remainder. The solid paraformaldehyd or paraform may be heated and is thereby converted into formaldehyd gas. On account of its cheapness and effectiveness formaldehyd is used much more commonly at present than any other of the gaseous disinfectants.

Adjustment of Organisms to Osmotic Pressure.—Any crystalloid in solution behaves within the limits of the solution like a gas, and the same laws of diffusion and diffusion pressures are applicable. Every organism when growing is surrounded by water containing substances in solution, and it also contains certain salts dissolved in the " cell sap " or water in the protoplasm. The ectoplast or limiting membrane of the protoplasm lying just within the cell wall is certainly in most, probably all, cases a semipermeable membrane, *i. e.*, it will allow some substances to pass through readily, as water; others pass through slowly, and still others, although in true solution, cannot pass at all. This ectoplast, in short, serves as an osmotic membrane and determines what substances may enter and leave the cell. An active cell always maintains within its sap a greater concentration of solutes than the surrounding medium, the pressure on the inside of the membrane is greater than on the outside, and the cell is said to be in a state of *turgor*. When such a cell is placed in water containing a greater percentage of solutes than does the cell sap, water leaves the latter until the concentration on the inside and outside again becomes the same. This means a shrinking of the protoplasm; it withdraws from the cell wall and the cell is said to be *plasmolyzed*. After a time the cell may readjust the amount of solutes in the cell sap and regain

its turgor. For every cell, however, there is a limit beyond which the organism cannot go. Some yeast cells have been found to develop slowly in a solution containing 35 per cent. of cane-sugar. A solution of this concentration exerts a pressure of more than 350 pounds per square inch. It is apparent that such a cell must be profoundly modified. The fact that concentration of solutes inhibits the growth of microörganisms is utilized in the preservation of many food stuffs. Such foods as syrups, jellies, and candied fruits are preserved by the high osmotic pressure of the solutes. The action of sugars, salts, etc., is in the nature of a physical antiseptic. *Physiological salt solution* is one having the same concentration of salt as do the body cells of the particular organism to be studied. It usually contains .85 per cent. of sodium chlorid.

Symbiosis, Antibiosis, and Commensalism

Two organisms that live together and which are mutually beneficial are said to live in *symbiosis*. Each organism is called a *symbion* or *symbiont*. The symbionts are not necessarily closely related forms and may belong to the most widely separated groups of plants, as, for example, bacteria and members of the bean family of the flowering plants.

Antibiosis is that condition which obtains when organisms prove inimical to each other's development. The growth of one species of organism in a culture-medium may completely inhibit the development of some other type. For example, the organism (*Streptococcus lacticus*) which ordinarily sours milk prevents the development of most other species.

An organism which uses the by-products of another as food, in other words, is parasitic without producing disease, is called a *commensal*. Many of the bacteria found on the skin, in the mouth, and in the intestinal tract of man and animals are of this character.

All degrees of intergradation between symbiosis, true parasitism, and commensalism have been described for different species.

Pigment Production by Microörganisms

Molds, yeasts, and bacteria are frequently found to be *chromogenic*, that is, capable of producing *pigments* or coloring-matter.

The colors produced range through all the colors and even shades of color of the spectrum. A few only of the pathogenic forms produce pigments. Many organisms, particularly molds and bacteria, excrete a pigment-forming substance which diffuses through the culture-medium and colors it. Such an organism is the *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*, which produces a *diffuse pigment*, one that changes the medium first to a green, then to a brown. Some organisms produce pigment granules outside the cell, such are said to be *chromoparous*, for example, *Erythrobacillus prodigiosus*, which produces a red pigment. The cell walls of some bacteria (such as *B. violaceus*) and of many of the molds are colored.

Pigments are generally produced only in the presence of free oxygen. Cultivation at high temperatures causes some organisms to lose the power of pigment production. Some pigments are soluble in water, others in alcohol, and others in ether and various fat solvents. They are of little economic importance, but are of value to the systematic bacteriologist in the separation and identification of species.

LIGHT PRODUCTION BY MICROÖRGANISMS

Several species of bacteria and fungi are known that give off light. These are said to be *photogenic*. Bacteria of this type are found commonly in the water of the ocean, and are easily isolated from salt fish. When grown in a test-tube, they are sometimes sufficiently luminous, so that they may be photographed by their own light.

FERMENTATION AND ENZYME PRODUCTION

All microörganisms have their protoplasm bounded by the ectoplast, a semipermeable membrane, as previously shown. The cell wall, when present, seems to be a mechanical protection and support, and is readily permeable to most substances in solution, so may be disregarded in discussion. Whatever food or other materials are taken into the protoplasm must pass by diffusion through the ectoplast. This membrane, on the other hand, must prevent any valuable constituent of the cell from leaving by diffusion. Its action is, therefore, selective. Microörganisms do not always find the potential food materials with which they are surrounded

suitable for food, for they may be in a solid form or, if in solution, of such a character that they cannot pass through the ectoplast. Many organisms find it necessary to so change this food and *digest* it that it may be assimilated. Once inside the cell, it usually is not of such a character that it can be built up directly into the protoplasm and further changes are necessary; or if the

Fig. 26.—A bacterial lamp. The inner wall of the flask is coated with a medium on which there is growing *Bacterium phosphoreum*. Photographed by its own light (Molisch).

material is used simply as a source of energy and not incorporated into the cell substance, it is essential that the cell have some means of developing this energy. All cells accomplish these changes by means of *enzymes* (Gr. en, within, zyme, leaven). A distinction was once made between the so-called *organized* and *unorganized ferments*. The former was held to be *living cells* which could bring about a change or *fermentation*, the latter any *cell secretion* which could bring about such changes. In other

5

words, organized ferments were supposed to owe their activity directly to the protoplasm, the unorganized, to substances secreted by the protoplasm. This distinction is no longer maintained, as it seems altogether probable that fermentative changes of whatever kind are brought about by the secreted enzymes or unorganized ferments. Enzymes may be intra- or extracellular. The intracellular enzymes are extracted from the protoplasm with difficulty, and during the life of the cell do not leave it. Such an enzyme is that of bread or brewer's yeast (the zymase), which converts dextrose into alcohol and carbon dioxid. Extracellular enzymes are usually digestive in their action. Different kinds attack different substances. Microörganisms are known which produce enzymes that will break down cellulose, starch, sugars, fats, and proteins into simpler substances. The action of an enzyme is said to be specific; a given enzyme will in general change only one type of material.

Enzymes are said to be organic *catalysts* (Gr. kata, down, lyo, to dissolve), that is, they bring about changes without themselves becoming part of the final product. Many inorganic catalysts, such as finely divided platinum, are known to the chemist. Although catalysts do not form a part of the final products, they certainly are a part of some of the intermediary products in many cases, but become free again when the action has been completed. Enzymes, then, are peculiar in that they are not used up in the using. Theoretically the amount of change that can be brought about by a given enzyme is limited only by the time and conditions under which it must act.

Most enzymes produce changes that are hydrolytic in nature, that is, they bring about the incorporation of water into the organic molecule with resultant disintegration. The digestion of gelatin by the bacterial enzyme gelatinase, the conversion of starch into maltose by ptyalin and diastase, the digestion of proteins by pepsin, the conversion of saccharose or cane-sugar into invert sugar by invertase, and the clotting of milk by rennet are a few examples of such hydrolytic changes. The following reaction illustrates the hydrolytic cleavage of saccharose by the invertase produced by yeast:

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O + Invertase \rightleftharpoons C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6 + Invertase.$$
Saccharose.   Dextrose.   Levulose.
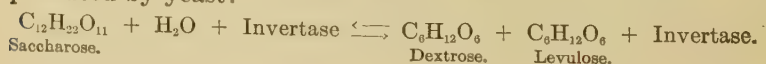
Other enzymes are active oxidizers. Changes of color in dead or injured plant and animal tissues are sometimes due to such oxidases. For example, potatoes turn black and apples become brown when the cells are bruised. Some other enzymes are said to be *splitting*. One of the best examples of these is the zymase of yeast, which converts dextrose into alcohol and carbon dioxid.

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + \text{Zymase} = 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2 + \text{Zymase.}$$
$$\underset{\text{Dextrose.}}{} \qquad\qquad \underset{\text{Alcohol.}}{} \quad \underset{\substack{\text{Carbon} \\ \text{dioxid.}}}{}$$

Although alcohol and carbon dioxid represent the end-products, it is by no means certain that intermediate hydrolytic products are not formed, and this splitting action may be essentially hydrolytic. Reducing enzymes have also been demonstrated in plant and animal tissues and undoubtedly occur in microörganisms.

The *autolytic* (Gr. auto, self, lyo, dissolving) enzymes deserve particular mention. Enzymes are known to occur in most animal and plant cells that will, at least partially, digest the cells in which they occur. The *rigor mortis* or stiffening of the tissues of an animal after death is due to such an autolytic enzyme which coagulates the muscle protoplasm. The softening of the tissues which occurs later, the so-called " ripening " of meat, is due in part to the action of another proteolytic enzyme which carries the digestion somewhat further. Microörganisms contain such enzymes, and when the cells die, as in an old culture, they are then partially digested. This autolytic action we shall find to be of some practical significance in a discussion of disease production and immunity, as by it certain poisonous substances may be released from the cell.

CHAPTER IV

CHANGES OF ECONOMIC SIGNIFICANCE BROUGHT ABOUT BY NON-PATHOGENIC ORGANISMS

MICROÖRGANISMS bring about many changes, both analytic and synthetic, in the media in which they are cultivated. In any such medium growth products of many kinds will be found. These fermentative products may originate from the *activity of extracellular enzymes*, may consist of substances excreted from the cell as the product of *intracellular enzymes*, or as a result of the *metabolic activity* of the cell; they may be products of *synthetic action* (as the slimes and gums produced by a solution of the bacterial capsule), or they may be substances produced by the *autolytic activity* of intracellular enzymes after the death of the cell. Naturally, the products will vary greatly with the species of organism, the medium in which it is grown, and the character of the physical environment.

From the standpoint of the veterinarian, microörganisms are of most importance because many of them produce disease. It would, however, give a false impression of the place and function of microörganisms in nature to neglect at least a brief consideration of some of the other changes which they can bring about. In this chapter some of the more important will be considered.

The well-nigh universal distribution of bacteria and other microörganisms should be emphasized. They are to be found in the soil in great numbers, rich surface soil containing from 100,000 to 5,000,000 bacteria to every dry gram. Their dried bodies and spores are constantly present free or attached to dust particles in the air. They are to be found in all surface waters in considerable numbers and are present even in the water from deep wells. They grow upon the surface of the skin of animals, and the mouth and digestive tract support a large and varied flora. It is apparent that whenever conditions are favorable for the growth of microörganisms they will be present to begin growth.

68

The changes brought about by bacteria in nature are of such importance that but for their continuance plant and animal life on earth would quickly cease to exist. The fertility of the soil and the consequent production of all food stuffs is directly due to certain of the microörganisms present.

Production of Alcohol.—The various alcohols, but more particularly ethyl alcohol, are produced by certain bacteria, yeasts, and molds. It has been shown that in the yeast the ability to bring about this change is resident in the intracellular enzyme, zymase. Probably similar enzymes are present in the alcohol-producing bacteria and molds. The common bread or brewer's

Fig. 27.—Brewer's yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiæ*.

yeast is the form most commonly used in the manufacture of alcoholic beverages, but certain molds have been found very useful in the production of alcohol for industrial purposes. Alcohol is commonly produced by the fermentation of one of the hexose monosaccharids, such as dextrose. The reaction may be given as follows:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 = 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2.$$

Dextrose.   Alcohol.   Carbon dioxid.

Yeast is utilized for its other product of fermentation, carbon dioxid, by the baker in bread making. Higher alcohols, such as butylic and amylic, are also formed. The yeasts which produce this change are quite widely distributed in nature, being particularly abundant on the surface of fruits and in saccharine liquids. Fruit juices and other solutions containing sugar if allowed to stand, therefore undergo " spontaneous " fermentation, with production of ciders, wines, and similar beverages.

Production of Acids.—Several of the organic acids are commonly produced by fermentative organisms. Three of these are

of particular economic importance, namely lactic, acetic, and butyric. A great variety of others are occasionally produced, usually in small quantities only.

Fig. 28.—Lactic acid bacteria: *A, Streptococcus lacticus; B, Lactobacillus bulgaricus.*

Lactic Acid.—Dextrose and some other monosaccharids are converted into lactic acid by several common organisms. The reaction may be empirically represented as follows:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 = 2C_2H_4 \cdot OH \cdot COOH.$$
$$\text{Dextrose.} \qquad \text{Lactic acid.}$$

The reaction occurs most frequently in milk which is allowed to stand. In this case the lactose or milk-sugar is first broken down into the monosaccharids before being converted into lactic acid.

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O = C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6.$$
$$\text{Lactose.} \qquad \text{Dextrose.} \quad \text{Galactose.}$$

The formation of lactic acid in milk is of the greatest economic importance, as the organisms which produce this acid are the ones
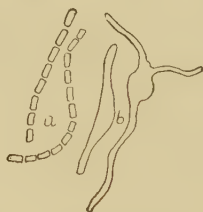
Fig. 29.—Acetic acid organism, *Acetobacter aceti: a*, Normal individuals; *b*, involution forms. (Adapted from Hansen.)

which are necessary to the development of proper flavors and quality in butter and cheese. This acid is also produced in the manufacture of sauer-kraut and to some extent in silage. The lactic acid formed in milk is instrumental in preventing the growth of putrefactive and other undesirable bacteria.

Acetic Acid.—Acetic acid is the most important and the characteristic constituent of vinegar. It is produced by several species of bacteria by the oxidation of ethyl alcohol according to the following reaction:

$$C_2H_5OH + O_2 = CH_3COOH + H_2O.$$

<div align="center">Alcohol.   Acetic acid.</div>

Any solution containing alcohol, if left in contact with free oxygen, will commonly undergo this fermentation spontaneously, as *Acetobacter aceti*, the organism usually responsible, is ubiquitous. To insure rapid and efficient fermentation the cider or other alcoholic solution is sometimes inoculated with mother of vinegar, a mass of the organism which commonly forms a mat upon the surface of the fermenting liquid.

Fig. 30.—Butyric acid bacteria, *Clostridium butyricum.* (Adapted from Fischer.)

Butyric Acid.—Under anaërobic conditions saccharine solutions are apt to undergo butyric acid fermentation as a result of the development of the *Clostridium butyricum* or a related form. The reaction may be represented as follows:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 = C_3H_7COOH + 2CO_2 + 2H_2.$$

<div align="center">Dextrose.   Butyric acid.</div>

Butyric acid has an exceedingly disagreeable odor and taste, hence the growth of this organism in any saccharine or starchy food substance renders it unfit for use. Inasmuch as these organisms are all spore producers, they resist heat well, and as they are anaërobic they will grow when sealed in a can and all air excluded. Rancidity in butter is sometimes due, in part at least, to the development of butyric acid.

Decay and Putrefaction.—A distinction is sometimes made between the terms *decay* and *putrefaction*. The former is said to

be decomposition of organic matter brought about by the aërobic bacteria, the latter by the anaërobic types. This distinction is not always acknowledged and adhered to, however. The substances produced by the decomposition by bacteria depend, of course, quite largely upon the nature of the material to be decomposed. The carbohydrates and fats break down into alcohols, acids, and carbon dioxid, but the proteins are split into a great variety of substances. Other agents, as acids and alkalis, will break up the proteins in a similar manner and into many of the same substances as do bacteria. Chemists have in recent years demonstrated that proteins are made up of large numbers of molecules of the α-amino acids linked together. An α-amino acid is an organic acid that has the NH_2 group in the alpha position, that is, next the carboxyl. For example, the amino acid corresponding to $C_2H_5CH_2COOH$, butyric acid, is $C_2H_5CHNH_2COOH$. When these constituent links of the protein molecule are forced apart, they usually appear in the form of one of about twenty compounds which have been grouped as primary protein derivatives. Some of these normal derivatives are further altered by bacteria. Among them have been found certain compounds called *ptomains*, some of which are known to be very poisonous. The splitting usually continues until much of the organic matter is reduced to comparatively simple compounds, such as H_2S, CO_2, CH_4, and NH_3. The process of protein disintegration is called *proteolysis*. It usually occurs in several distinct stages. The proteins are first broken down into relatively complex substances called proteoses, these then are broken down into peptones. This is called *peptonization*, as it is essentially the change that may be brought about by the enzyme pepsin from the stomach. The process continues and the peptones become amino acids and at last ammonia is liberated. From an economic point of view this liberation of ammonia has the greatest significance, for from this transformation comes all the nitrogenous material used by plants and indirectly by animals as food. This is the essential transformation that all organic nitrogenous fertilizers, such as barnyard manure and dried blood, will undergo before they can be of any use to higher plants. By such changes water contaminated by sewage purifies itself.

Some of the nitrogenous products of bacterial decomposition are worthy of note, inasmuch as they are used in the laboratory in the differentiation of certain species. The most important of these are indol and skatol. They are organic compounds having the following formulas:

$$C_6H_4 \diagdown \begin{matrix} CH \\ NH \end{matrix} \diagup CH \qquad\qquad C_6H_4 \diagdown \begin{matrix} C \diagup CH_3 \\ NH \end{matrix} \diagup CH.$$

Indol.   Skatol.
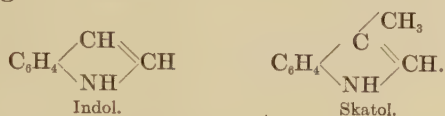
Indol is produced by certain bacteria when growing in a solution of peptone. It is identified by the addition of nitrous acid, with which it combines to form nitroso indol, a bright red compound. In making the test in the laboratory it is customary to add a
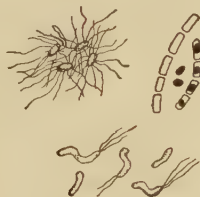
Fig. 31.—Some decay-producing and putrefactive bacteria.

few drops of concentrated sulphuric acid, followed by a dilute solution of nitrite. The sulphuric acid breaks up the nitrite, with the formation of free nitrous acid, which then unites with the indol. Indol and skatol are also formed in the intestines by the activity of certain of the bacteria found there and are of considerable physiological significance.

Reduction Processes in Inorganic Compounds.—Changes similar to those just discussed are sometimes brought about by bacteria in inorganic compounds. When nitrates are in solution together with organic substances and under anaërobic conditions, the bacteria present in many cases will reduce the nitrates to nitrites and the nitrites to free nitrogen, apparently in order to utilize the oxygen. This process is usually called *denitrification* because the medium loses nitrogen, but is more correctly a reduction or deoxidation. Sulphates are reduced to sulphites and even to sulphids under similar conditions. For example, the sewage from

a city whose water supply contains a large percentage of sulphates will develop hydrogen sulphid in considerable quantities if it is put under anaërobic conditions. Other reductions of a similar nature have been described for chlorates.

Fig. 32.—Denitrifying bacteria: *A, Bacterium coli*, which changes nitrates into nitrites; *B, Pseudomonas denitrificans*, which produces free nitrogen from nitrates.

Oxidation of Inorganic Compounds.—Bacteria and other microörganisms that live in the presence of oxygen are sometimes active oxidizers of inorganic compounds, securing in this manner the energy that is necessary for their various growth processes.

Fig. 33.—Sulphate reducing spirillum, *Spirillum desulfuricans*.

Oxidation of Hydrogen Sulphid.—Waters containing hydrogen sulphid, as do many of the so-called mineral springs, usually contain bacteria which gain their energy for food manufacture

Fig. 34.—Microörganisms that oxidize hydrogen sulphid: *A, B, Beggiatoa* sp.; *C, Thiophysa volutans* (Hinze).

and growth from the oxidation of this substance. The slimy black and white deposit commonly found in such waters, when examined microscopically, will be seen to be made up of masses of

Beggiatoa and similar organisms whose cells will be found packed with sulphur granules. Probably the following reaction accounts for this formation of free sulphur:

$$2H_2S + O_2 = 2H_2O + S_2.$$
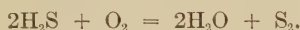
The process is carried still farther if there is any deficiency of the hydrogen sulphid, and the free sulphur is converted into sulphuric acid and sulphates.

$$S_2 + 3O_2 = 2SO_3$$
$$H_2O + SO_3 = H_2SO_4.$$
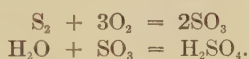
The sulphuric acid is, of course, at once neutralized by the bases present in the water.

Oxidation of Iron.—Many natural waters contain ferrous carbonate or some similar salt of iron. Certain bacteria oxidize

Fig. 35.—Microörganisms that oxidize ferrous to ferric iron: *a, Leptothrix ochracea; b, Gallionella ferruginea; c, Spirophyllum ferrugineum.* (Adapted from Ellis.)

this to ferric hydrate, and deposit this insoluble material in their sheaths. The reaction may be represented as follows:

$$2Fe_2CO_3 + 3H_2O + O = Fe_2(OH)_6 + 2CO_2.$$

Probably these organisms make use of the energy obtained by this reaction in the same manner that the sulphur bacteria do the oxidation of the sulphur, to secure energy for the formation of their foods and to gain the energy needed for growth and development. These organisms are particularly apt to occur in well water or spring water laden with iron, and have in some cases caused considerable trouble by clogging the water pipes with their growth. It is known that the bog iron ore of Sweden and probably the

great iron beds of northern Minnesota have been deposited by the activity of such organisms.

Oxidation of Ammonia.—In most soils there are numerous bacteria that oxidize free ammonia to nitrous acid, and by neutralization with the soil bases form nitrites. These organisms do not develop well in the laboratory in the presence of organic matter. It seems evident that they utilize the energy secured from the

Fig. 36.—Bacteria that oxidize ammonia and nitrous acid to nitrous and nitric acid respectively: *a, Nitrosomonas europea; b, N. javensis; c, Nitrobacter* (Winogradsky).

oxidation of the ammonia to build up their protoplasm out of simple materials. They are among the best examples of the strictly prototrophic bacteria. Organisms capable of bringing about this change are called *nitroso-bacteria*. The reaction may be represented as follows:

$$NH_3 + 2O_2 = HNO_3 + H_2O.$$
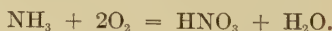
This is the first of the two steps in the process called *nitrification* in the soil.

Oxidation of Nitrous Acid.—The nitrous acid formed in the soil and in water, etc., by the preceding group is further changed by another group of organisms called the *nitrate bacteria*. Like the preceding, they are widely distributed in water and soil, and complete the process called nitrification or, better, oxidation of nitrogen. The nitrates produced by their activity are the source of nitrogen for green plants. A few of the latter are able to make use of nitrogen in the form of ammonia compounds, but in nature this rarely occurs. The reaction may be represented as follows:

$$2HNO_2 + O_2 = 2HNO_3.$$
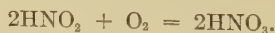
It is probable that the fertility of the average soil is more largely determined by the maintenance of conditions favorable to the

development of these nitrifying organisms than by any other single factor. Their importance in nature as essentials for the growth of the higher plants and, therefore, of animals can scarcely be overestimated.

Nitrogen Fixation.—The free nitrogen of the air is so inert that very few living plants are capable of making use of it in the building up of their bodies. None of the green plants can bring this about of themselves. Certain molds and bacteria are able to make use of this source of nitrogen, however, and are, therefore, of the greatest economic importance. The fertility of the soil is largely dependent upon the fixed nitrogen that it contains, and the taking up of the free nitrogen by these organisms ultimately renders it available to other forms of plants. This does not mean that the bacteria take up the nitrogen from the

Fig. 37.—Free living or non-symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria: *A, Clostridium pasteurianium; B, Azotobacter; a, A. chroococcum; b, A. agilis.* (*A* after Winogradsky, *B* after Beyerinck.)

air and immediately transform it into nitrates for the use of the higher plants, but that it is built up into their protoplasm and ultimately is set free by the death and decomposition of the organisms. Microörganisms which make use of free nitrogen commonly utilize carbonaceous materials as a source of energy.

Organisms capable of fixing nitrogen are subdivided into two general groups, those which live free in soils and those which live in or on the roots of certain plants in a kind of symbiosis. The free living organisms which fix nitrogen belong to three general groups: first, certain anaërobic types belonging to the general group of butyric acid bacteria; second, certain aërobic species; third, a few molds. The anaërobic organism known to fix the nitrogen is *Clostridium pasteurianium.* Probably this organism is not of the greatest importance, as the conditions for

its development do not often obtain. Bacteria of the nitrogen-fixing aërobic type belong to the group called Azotobacter. These organisms are abundant in many soils and fix considerable quantities of nitrogen, gaining energy therefor by oxidizing the carbonaceous materials from dead plant tissues. The addition of straw, for example, to a soil will furnish sufficient food so that these bacteria will bring about an appreciable increase in the nitrogen content. The importance of the molds in this connection is not fully understood, but several species have been described which are capable of fixing nitrogen.

The microörganisms which fix nitrogen in symbiosis with higher plants may be divided into two groups, those bacteria which grow upon the roots of legumes and the molds which grow on the roots of certain other plants. All plants belonging
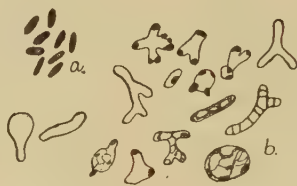
Fig. 38.—*Rhizobium leguminosarum: a*, Normal bacillar form; *b*, bacteroids or involution forms.

to the legume or pulse family, such as clover, alfalfa, peas, beans, etc., usually bear upon their roots tubercles or nodules which, when opened, are found to be made up of cells tightly packed with bacteria. It has been shown experimentally that these organisms growing within the roots in some way take up free nitrogen from the air and eventually turn it over to the host plant, so that the legumes are not dependent for their development upon nitrogen which may be present in the soil, but can make use of the free nitrogen of the air as well. These plants are, therefore, very important in agriculture in the maintenance and increase of soil fertility. This organism, known as *Rhizobium leguminosarum* (Fig. 38), enters the young growing root through a root hair and causes a kind of tumor formation in the tissues of the root, resulting in the development of the nodule. The organism is at first a straight rod, but later, when growing inside the

cells of the host, it becomes much enlarged and shows many involution forms. The other organisms growing symbiotically within or upon the roots of plants are all molds. They develop either upon the surface of the root, forming a white, cottony, floccose covering, or they grow in the tissues just below the epidermis. They sometimes cause nodules to develop, as is the case with the Russian olive and the alder, or they produce no characteristic overgrowth of tissues at any one point, but are

Fig. 39.—Nodules on the root of a legume, Soy bean. (Moore, U. S. Dept. Agr.)

found quite uniformly present upon the young growing roots. Certain trees, such as the oak and the pine, particularly when growing in nitrogen poor soils, show the development of this *mycorrhiza* (Gr. fungus and root). It has been shown that these molds are quite active in taking up free nitrogen from the air and are of benefit to the plant upon which they occur.

The Nitrogen Cycle.—The relationship of microörganisms to nitrogen and its compounds has been noted in the preceding pages. These changes may be summarized as follows: Certain bacteria break down organic compounds containing nitrogen with the ultimate liberation of ammonia. Other species change the ammonia to nitrous acid and nitrites. Still other species transform the nitrites to nitrates, and these the higher plants take up from the soil and transform again into complex organic substances. These eventually again decay or are eaten by animals and converted into animal tissues. The nitrogen of both plant and animal tissues
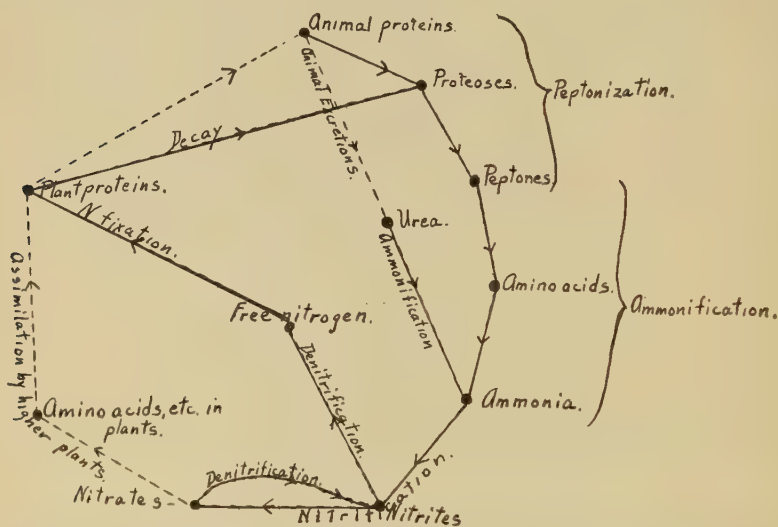
Fig. 40.—Nitrogen cycle. Changes brought about by bacteria indicated by solid lines, other changes by dotted lines.

ultimately undergoes the change first noted and the nitrogen again appears as ammonia. This series of changes is called the nitrogen cycle. It is to be noted in addition that some bacteria are found which decompose nitrates with the formation of nitrites and liberate free nitrogen in the so-called process of denitrification. Other species, either alone or in symbiosis with higher plants, take up and fix free nitrogen from the air and eventually convert it into a form available for higher plants. These changes may be better understood by reference to the accompanying diagram.

Miscellaneous Changes.—Many changes are brought about by bacteria other than those which are here discussed. Micro-organisms are of importance in tanning, curing of tobacco, the preservation of food-stuffs, such as silage and sauer-kraut, the retting of flax and hemp, the curing of the so-called burnt or heated hay, and in many other ways. It is to be remembered that probably in all cases these changes are brought about by the enzymes produced by the bacteria.

CHAPTER V

CLASSIFICATION OF MICROÖRGANISMS

IT is necessary in a consideration of organisms belonging to either the plant or animal kingdoms to divide or separate them into groups, with their apparent relationships as the basis for the grouping. Microörganisms of pathogenic significance we have previously divided into the four groups—bacteria, yeasts, molds, and protozoa. A discussion of the classification of the last will be reserved to the chapter on Diseases Produced by Protozoa.

The classification of micro-örganisms is by no means in a satisfactory state. Many bacteriologists and others who have investigated diseases have failed to recognize the importance of simple classifications and have introduced many new names needlessly. It is a principle of nomenclature accepted since the time of Linnæus that every plant and animal belonging to a distinct type or species shall receive a Latin name, this name to be made up of two words only. The second of these words is the *species* name, and is peculiar to the particular kind under consideration; the first is called the *genus* or generic name. For example, among higher plants there is the genus *Quercus*, or oak, which is subdivided into many species, such as white oak, red oak, swamp oak, etc. (*Quercus alba, rubra,* etc.). The generic name is applied to all those species which resemble each other, as do all of the oaks. Species of plants and animals are given names which are understood to serve as convenient terms for their designation. It is an established principle that the name first given to a plant or an animal is the one which should always be used whenever that name is in accordance with certain rules. Some bacteriologists have made the mistake of believing that a scientific name should be a description or even a descriptive term. It is no more necessary that the species name of a bacterium should describe that bacterium than that the given or Christian name of an individual should describe him. Disregard of this rule has resulted in some very unwieldy names being given to micro-

organisms, for example, names such as the following have been applied to bacteria: *Bacillus membranaceous amethystinus mobilis*, *Bacillus argenteus phosphorescens liquefaciens*, and even the following, *Bacillus saccharobutyricus fluorescens liquefaciens immobilis*. Such names are given under the mistaken idea that the specific name should be a description of the species. This is not customary in naming any of the higher plants and animals, and it is certainly not more desirable in bacteria. The yeasts, molds, and protozoa much more commonly than the bacteria have been studied by those who have had technical training in nomenclature, consequently the classification of these forms is on a much more satisfactory basis. The only justification for a specific name made up of more than two words is that the two words taken together express but a single idea.

In the classification of plants and animals, as has been noted, it is customary to unite species into genera. Related genera are likewise united into tribes, the tribes into families, the families into orders, and the orders into classes. Sometimes other groups are interpolated, for example, families are sometimes divided into subfamilies and these into tribes. In both botany and zoölogy these group names are characterized by certain terminations. All names of plant orders end in *-ales;* of families, in *-aceæ;* and of tribes, in *-eæ*.

CLASSIFICATION OF BACTERIA

Many different classifications have been proposed for bacteria, but not one of these has come into general use. A careful examination of different texts in bacteriology, particularly those devoted to the pathogenic bacteria, will show that different systems and schemes of classifications are used in dealing with closely related organisms. Not only have the groups been frequently changed, but many different names have been applied to almost every one of the pathogenic bacteria. The consequence is that in studying any pathogenic organism it is necessary to give not only the name preferred by the author but also a list of the synonyms which have been used by others. It seems probable that a satisfactory system of nomenclature is yet to be devised. The system of bacterial classification which is here

outlined is that suggested by the Committee on Nomenclature of
the Society of American Bacteriologists.

The complete classification of bacteria from the standpoint
of the botanist contains many forms of little or no economic
importance, most having no sanitary or medical significance.
In the classification here given most of these unimportant forms
have been eliminated.

The bacteria or *Schizomycetes* constitute a class which may
be divided into five orders: the slime-mold bacteria (*Myxo-
bacteriales*), the true bacteria (*Eubacteriales*), the sulphur
bacteria (*Thiobacteriales*), the thread bacteria or mold bacteria
(*Actinomycetales*), and the spirochetes (*Spirochætales*). The
first and third of these orders contain no organisms of im-
portance in veterinary medicine; they will be omitted in the
classification.

The order *Eubacteriales* or true bacteria includes those organ-
isms which are least differentiated and least specialized. They
are never filamentous and branched (except rarely in involution
forms) and are never *flexuous* though some are spiral. The
order *Actinomycetales* or mold bacteria comprises those forms
which normally produce elongate cells, tending to become fila-
mentous, sometimes branched, and mycelum like. The order
Spirochætales includes protozoan like spirals, usually relatively
slender and flexuous. These orders will be discussed in order
and the genera of veterinary significance noted.

Order Eubacteriales. The True Bacteria

Most of the common bacteria belong in this group, including
the majority of the forms of medical significance. The cells may
be spherical, cylindrical or spiral, but not commonly filamentous
and never branched, except in the so-called involution forms.
They may be motile by means of flagella or non-motile. When
spiral they are never notably flexuous. In other words, they are
neither mold-like nor protozoan-like.

Altogether seven families have been described in this order,
of which five are of medical importance. They may be differen-
tiated by reference to the following key:

A. Cells spherical   1. **Coccaceæ**
AA. Cells not spherical
    B. Cells cylindrical.
        C. Producing endospores   2. **Bacillaceæ**
        CC. Not producing endospores
            D. Flagella when pres- 3. **Bacteriaceæ**
              ent peritrichous
            DD. Flagella polar   4. **Pseudomonadaceæ**
    BB. Cells spiral   5. **Spirillaceæ**

1. The Family Coccaceæ.   The Spherical Bacteria

The cells of the organisms belonging to this family are usually spherical when free, though during division they may be somewhat elliptical.   If the cells remain in contact after division they are frequently flattened at the plane of contact.   They may form chains, packets or irregular masses.   Very few cocci are motile; none of the motile species are of economic importance. Spores are not produced.   Most of the genera of this family are parasitic, many species are disease producing.   A few are of importance because of the fermentative changes which they bring about.   The most important genera are *Neisseria, Streptococcus, Diplococcus,* and *Staphylococcus.*[2]

These genera may be differentiated by the following key:

Key to the Genera of the Coccaceæ

A. Cells occurring in chains   1. *Streptococcus*
AA. Cells not in chains
    B. Cells in irregular masses, Gram
      positive   2. *Staphylococcus*
    BB. Cells in pairs
        C. Gram positive   3. *Diplococcus*
        CC. Gram negative   ·   4. *Neisseria*

[1] The other family *Nitrobacteriaceæ* includes a number of genera of agricultural importance.   Among them may be noted *Nitrosomonas* including soil forms oxidizing ammonia to nitrites, *Nitrobacter* including forms which oxidize nitrites to nitrates, *Acetobacter* including the acetic acid or vinegar bacteria, *Rhizobium* including the nitrogen-fixing bacteria of the roots of leguminous plants, and *Azotobacter,* free living nitrogen fixers.

[2] Other genera are: *Leuconostoc* forming large gelatinous masses in sugar solutions; *Rhodococcus* including the cocci which produce a red pigment, *Micrococcus* including Gram negative cocci showing irregular masses and usually yellow pigment and *Sarcina* in which the cocci occur in regular packets.

1. *Streptococcus.*—This genus includes those spherical bacteria whose cells occur normally in chains. For the most part the cells are Gram positive. Certain of the species are important in that they bring about lactic acid fermentation in milk. Others are capable of producing diseases. Certain species, for example, are commonly associated with tonsilitis, rheumatism, with the disease strangles in the horse, wound infection, and pus production.

Fig. 41.—Types of Streptococcus: *a, d,* Streptococci consisting of uniform elements; *b, Streptococcus* consisting of diplococcus elements; *c, Diplococcus.*

2. *Staphylococcus.*—In this genus the spherical cells are united in more or less irregular masses. They are Gram positive, and usually parasitic. They are commonly associated with pus production, wound infection, the development of boils, abscesses, and similar conditions in the bodies of man and animals.

3. *Diplococcus.*—The organisms belonging to this genus are strict parasites, Gram positive, occurring in pairs, the cells usually somewhat pointed and capsulated. The most important species is the organism usually associated with pneumonia.

Fig. 42.—Types of *cocci: a,* isolated cells; *b,* showing tetrads, forming plates of cells or merismopedia; *c,* cells in an irregular mass—Staphylococcus.

4. *Neisseria.*—The organisms of the genus are strict parasites, usually growing rather poorly in artificial culture media. The cells usually occur in pairs, flattened at the proximal sides, usually coffee bean shaped, without capsules and Gram negative. Two of the diseases produced by organisms of this group are of importance, namely, cerebral spinal meningitis and gonorrhea in man.

2. The Family Bacillaceæ. The Spore Bearing Bacteria

The bacteria of this family are all rod-shaped and all produce endospores. The cells may be motile or non-motile, when motile with peritrichous flagella. Two genera are of importance, *Bacillus* and *Clostridium*. The genus *Bacillus* includes those forms which are aërobic or facultative; the genus *Clostridium* those which are anaërobic.

1. *Bacillus.*—The organisms belonging to this genus are all rod-shaped, sometimes occurring in chains. Under the right conditions these bacteria are among the most active in nature producing decomposition of organic materials. One species produces the disease anthrax in animals and man, and one species the disease termed *foul brood* of bees.
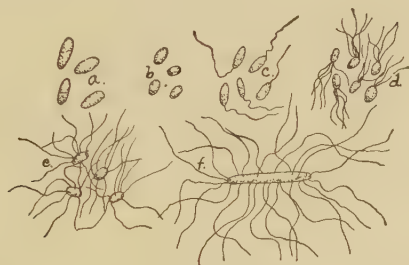
Fig. 43.—Types of bacilli: *a, b,* Non-motile bacilli (*Bacterium*); *c,* monotrichous bacillus (*Pseudomonas*); *d,* lophotrichous bacillus (*Pseudomonas*); *e, f,* peritrichous *Bacillus.*

2. *Clostridium.*—The organisms of this genus are all rod shaped, producing endospores but not growing in the presence of free atmospheric oxygen. Frequently the rods are swollen at time of spore production, producing spindle shaped or club shaped cells. Some of the bacteria of this group are among the most active of the putrefactive forms, particularly in the production of malodorous compounds such as butyric acid. Other species are capable of producing disease, especially when introduced into wounds. Among the diseases produced are *gaseous gangrene* in man, *malignant edema, blackleg,* and *bradsot* in animals and *tetanus* in man and animals.

3. The Family Bacteriaceæ

This is the largest of the families of bacteria, including some nine genera. Here are found those rod shaped forms whose cells are usually regular, which do not produce endospores and which when motile have peritrichous flagella. In all of the genera containing disease producing forms the cells are Gram negative. Four of the genera are discussed here, three including pathogenic forms and one including species of importance in milk. These genera are *Bacterium*, *Pasteurella*, *Hemophilus* and *Lactobacillus*.

Key to the Genera of Bacteriaceæ[1]

A. Cells Gram negative.
    B. Requiring hemoglobin or blood
        serum for growth in media   1. *Hemophilus*
    BB. Growing on ordinary culture
        media.
        C. Polar staining marked   2. *Pasteurella*
        CC. Polar staining not pro-   3. *Bacterium*
            nounced
AA. Cells Gram positive   4. *Lactobacillus*

1. *Hemophilus*.—The organisms belonging to this genus are minute, parasitic, Gram negative rods, which grow in the laboratory only in special media, preferably containing hemoglobin. The most importa nt species are *Hemophilus influenzæ*, the organism which has been supposed to cause influenza and which is quite certainly associated with many cases of the disease, *Hemophilus pyogenes*, a common cause of suppuration in animals, and *Hemophilus pertussis*, the cause of whooping cough.

2. *Pasteurella*.—The organisms of this genus are all rod shaped cells, Gram negative, and show bipolar staining. They are parasitic with very slight powers of fermentation. Members of

[1] Other genera belonging to this family are:—
Erythrobacillus, producing red pigment.
Chromobacterium, producing violet pigment.
Erwinia, White, slimy forms pathogenic for plants.
Proteus, closely related to *Bacterium* but liquefying gelatin rapidly.
Zopfius, Gram positive putrefactive forms.

this genus produce many diseases in man and animals including the *bubonic plague* of man and *hemorrhagic septicemias* of animals, such as fowl cholera, and related diseases in swine, sheep, cattle and horses.

3. *Bacterium.*—The organisms belonging to this genus are Gram negative rods, frequently motile, and easily cultivable. Most species ferment certain carbohydrates with the formation of acid and frequently of gas. They are typically intestinal parasites in man and higher animals. Some species are not infrequent in the soil. A few species are pathogenic, including the organisms causing *typhoid fever, paratyphoid fever, dysentery* and certain types of *food poisoning.* One species, the *Bacterium coli,* is frequently used as an index for the determination of the presence of sewage in water.

4. *Lactobacillus.*—The cells are rod shaped, often long and relatively slender, Gram positive, and non-motile. Some species have very short cells and are almost coccus-like. No endospores are developed. Acid, particularly lactic acid, is usually produced in considerable quantities from carbohydrates. Many of the species prefer to grow in the absence of oxygen, although they are not strictly anaërobic. Included in this genus are many bacteria important in the souring of milk, the formation of lactic acid in silage, sauerkraut, etc.

4. The Family Pseudomonadaceæ

This family contains a single genus, *Pseudomonas.* The cells are rod shaped, and usually motile by means of polar flagella. Frequently a fluorescent green or brown pigment is produced in culture media. In other species an insoluble yellow pigment is formed. Among those producing a green fluorescent pigment is the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* an organism sometimes found in wounds. Many of the yellow species produce diseases in plants.

5. The Family Spirillaceæ

The organisms belonging to this group are curved rods. Two genera are included, *Vibrio* and *Spirillum.* The former only is considered as it alone has pathogenic species.

Vibrio.—This genus included short curved rods, motile by means of one, two or three polar flagella. Many are intestinal parasites and some are capable of causing disease. The most important organism is the *Vibrio choleræ* producing Asiatic cholera in man, and certain species isolated from fowls.
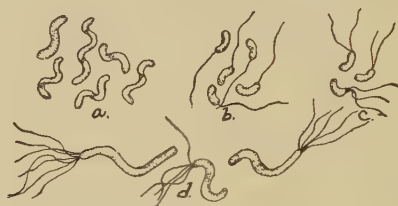
Fig. 44.—Types of spirilla: *a*, Non-motile spirillum; *b*, monotrichous spirillum (*Vibrio*); *c*, lophotrichous spirillum with 2 or 3 flagella (*Vibrio*); *d*, lophotrichous spirillum (*Spirillum*).

Order Actinomycetales, The Thread Bacteria

The organisms belonging to this order usually have the cells somewhat elongated, frequently filamentous, and with a decided tendency to the formation of branches. In some genera a definite branched mycelium is developed. The cells frequently show swelling, or are clubbed or irregular in shape. Endospores are not produced, although conidia are formed by some genera. Many of the genera are Gram positive and all are non-motile. Some species are aërobic. All of the eight genera contain species which are parasitic in man or animals, many of them pathogenic.

Key to the Genera of Actinomycetales

A. Typically producing long filaments
    B. Branched mycelium formed   1. *Actinomyces*
    BB. No true mycelium
        C. Cells more or less branched
            D. Gram negative   2. *Actinobacillus*
            DD. Gram positive   3. *Erysipelothrix*
        CC. Cells never branch.
        Gram positive threads
        later fragmenting in-
        to rods   4. *Leptotrichia*

AA. Not typically producing long fila-
　　ments
　　B. Acid fast　　　　　　　5. *Mycobacterium*
　　BB. Not acid fast
　　　　C. Cells elongate, fusiform　6. *Fusiformis*
　　　　CC. Cells not fusiform
　　　　　　D. Gram positive　　7. *Corynebacterium*
　　　　　　DD. Gram negative ·　8. *Pfeifferella*

1. *Actinomyces.*—The organisms belonging to this group form fine threads (or mycelium) which breaks up into short segments which function as spores or conidia. Some of the species are parasitic, one, the *Actinomyces bovis*, producing lumpy jaw in cattle. Many other species are widely distributed in the soils, apparently growing upon decaying roots and similar organic matter.
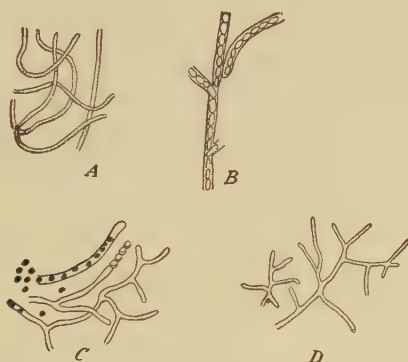
Fig. 45.—*A*, Leptothrix; *B*, Cladothrix; *C*, Nocardia; *D*, Actinomyces.

2. *Actinobacillus.*—This genus differs from *Actinomyces* in that no true mycelium is formed. The cells are Gram negative, and fragment to form rods. The principal species is *Actino-bacillus Lignieresi*, the cause of the disease *actinobacillosis* in cattle.

3. *Erysipelothrix.*—This genus includes certain Gram positive bacteria in which the filaments break up into short rods. For the most part the species are microærophilic. Several species produce disease in man and animals, notably *Erysipelothrix rhusio-pathiæ*, the cause of swine erysipelas.

4. *Leptotrichia.*—The organisms of this genus have been largely described from the human mouth. The unbranched filaments are Gram positive, later fragmenting into rods. None are positively known to be pathogenic.

5. *Mycobacterium.*—These organisms are slender rods which are stained with difficulty, but when once stained are resistant to decolorization by acids, that is, they are termed *acid fast.* The cells are sometimes swollen, showing club shapes or forked forms, occasionally the cells are branched. They are non-motile and Gram positive. Some of the species are present in the soil, a few are pathogenic to man and animals. The most important of the diseases caused are tuberculosis and leprosy in man, and para-tubercular dysentery in cattle.

6. *Fusiformis.*—These organisms are anaërobic or micro-aërophilic, the cells frequently elongate and fusiform, staining somewhat unevenly. Filaments are sometimes formed. Several species have been found associated with disease in man as for example in Vincent's angina.

7. *Corynebacterium.*—The cells are slender, often slightly curved rods with a tendency toward the formation of clubs, and containing granules which give the cells when stained a barred or irregular appearance. They are not acid fast but are Gram positive and aërobic. Most species are parasites, the most important being *Corynebacterium diphtheriæ*, the cause of diphtheria in man.

8. *Pfeifferella.*—These organisms are non-motile rods, slender and Gram negative, staining poorly, sometimes forming threads, and showing a tendency toward branching. When grown upon potato in the laboratory they develop a characteristic honey-like growth. The most important species is *Pfeifferella mallei*, the organism which causes glanders in the horse.

Order Spirochætales

The organisms belonging to this group in many respects resemble the protozoa, and may be regarded as intermediate between the true bacteria and the protozoa. They are all more or less curved rods, frequently very slender. Many species are motile but there has been no definite demonstration of flagella.

They multiply either by longitudinal or transverse fission. It is probable that in some cases they have a relatively complex life history. Several genera have been described, the most important being *Treponema*.

Treponema.—The organisms belonging to this genus are exceedingly slender spiral rods, motile by means of flexous bending of the body. The most important species is *Treponema pallida*, the cause of the disease syphilis in man.

Figs. 46 and 47.—Types of spirochætæ.

CLASSIFICATION OF YEASTS

Mycologists recognize a number of different genera in the group of yeasts. It is probable that the yeasts do not constitute a homogeneous group. The genus *Saccharomyces* includes such forms as the common bread and brewer's yeast (*Saccharomyces cerevisiæ*) which produce spores and are active in alcoholic fermentation. The name *Torula* is sometimes given to similar yeasts that are not spore producing. This latter name, however, is incorrectly so applied, as it was previously and is now used to indicate a genus of molds. The name *Blastomyces* has been commonly accepted to indicate the yeasts pathogenic for man and animals. It is probable that there is little reason for separation of *Saccharomyces* and *Blastomyces* on the basis of their morphology, but such a separation on the basis of pathogenesis seems to be advisable.

CLASSIFICATION OF THE MOLDS

Several hundred genera and many thousands of species have been described. Of these, a few genera only contain species that are pathogenic for man and animals. For a discussion of classification the student is referred to Chapter XXXIX.

SECTION II

LABORATORY METHODS AND TECHNIC

CHAPTER VI

STERILIZATION

STERILIZATION is the process whereby glassware, media, or any of the materials or apparatus used in the laboratory are entirely freed from living organisms. It is evident that in the study of bacteria it is necessary that we deal with pure cultures, that is, that one kind of organism only be present in the material which we are studying. It is quite impossible to determine from mixed cultures which of the organisms present bring about observed changes. Bacteria are present upon the surface of all laboratory apparatus, in the dust, in soil, upon the hands—they are ubiquitous, hence the necessity for sterilization.

Sterilization may be accomplished by physical or chemical means. In practice the latter is generally called disinfection, and is rarely used in the laboratory. The term sterilization, therefore, as commonly used, indicates the destruction of micro-organisms by physical processes.

Sterilization by the Flame.—The platinum wire used in the transfer of bacteria in the laboratory is sterilized by heating to a red or white heat in the flame of the Bunsen burner. Similar methods are sometimes used in the sterilization of other small pieces of laboratory apparatus, such as cover-glasses and slides.

Sterilization by Hot Air.—Glassware is commonly sterilized by subjecting it to a temperature of 150°C. to 170°C. in a hot-air oven for an hour. All bacteria will be destroyed at this temperature providing the material to be sterilized is of a nature such that the heat can penetrate readily to all parts. This method cannot

94

be used, however, in the sterilization of liquids or of any organic material which might be decomposed at such a temperature.

Sterilization by Streaming Steam.—It is found in practice that live steam is the most efficient sterilizing agent for many of the media used in the laboratory. Steam under atmospheric pressure at sea-level has a temperature of about 100°. Some type of apparatus is used such that the live steam comes in direct contact with the material to be sterilized. One type of the apparatus is called the Arnold steam sterilizer (Fig. 49). It consists essentially of a pan with a double bottom opening into the sterilizing
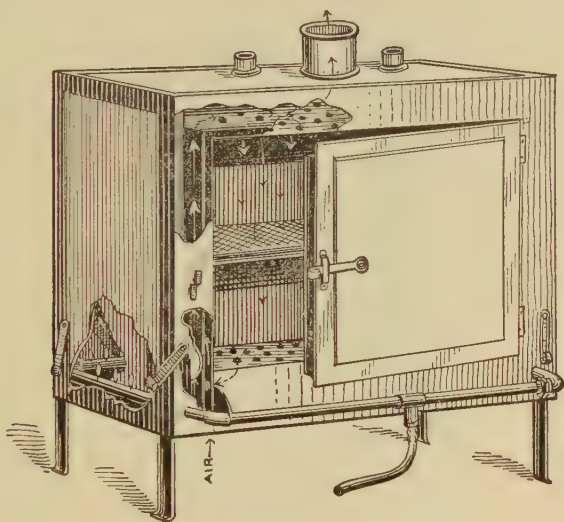
Fig. 48.—Oven for sterilization by hot air (Jordan).

chamber above. The water between the bottoms is quickly heated to boiling temperature and is automatically replaced from the supply on the exterior through small holes as rapidly as it boils away. A single exposure to live steam for fifteen minutes is sufficient to kill all vegetative bacteria, but spores are not thus destroyed. It is customary, therefore, to heat for fifteen minutes on one day, keep the medium for twenty-four hours at a temperature suitable for the germination and development of any spores present, then heat again for fifteen minutes in the same manner. Those spores which have germinated will

be destroyed by this second heating. A third heating, twenty-four
hours later, will quite certainly destroy all the bacteria which may
have been present. This process is called intermittent steriliza-
tion. It finds its principal application in the sterilization of
materials which would be changed or broken down by heating
at a higher temperature. Among such materials are media con-
taining sugars which undergo incipient caramelization when
heated too hot.

Sterilization by Steam under Pressure.—This is generally
accomplished in the autoclave or digester, which consists essentially

Fig. 49.—Arnold steam sterilizer (Fowler).

of a chamber into which steam under pressure can be introduced
(Fig. 50). Many different types of these autoclaves have been
put upon the market. Live steam under a given pressure unmixed
with air has a constant temperature; therefore, if the pressure
of the steam is known, one can determine easily the temperature
as well. It is necessary, however, that all air be first eliminated.
This is accomplished by allowing the stop-cock, which is always
present upon the steam chamber in the autoclave, to remain open
until all the air has escaped and the steam issues in a constant
stream. This cock is then closed and the pressure caused to

rise as quickly as possible to 15 pounds to the square inch, or one additional atmosphere. This gives a temperature of about 121°. Material to be sterilized should be allowed to remain fifteen minutes usually. If large bulks, such as flasks of media, are to be sterilized, a longer period must be allowed in order that
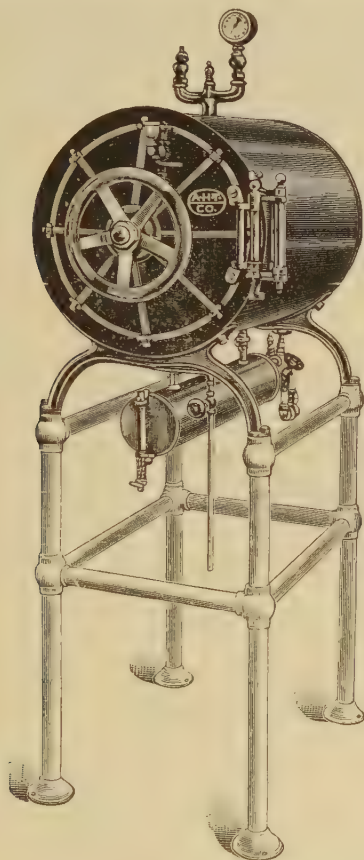
Fig. 50.—Autoclave for sterilizing by steam under pressure.

the media may be completely heated through. If very small quantities of material are being sterilized, a shorter period may be used. When properly carried out, sterilization by this method will certainly destroy all the bacteria present. Its principal disadvantage is that certain organic substances may be decomposed at this temperature.

7

Sterilization at Temperatures Lower than Boiling-point.—
It is sometimes necessary to sterilize media, particularly blood-serum, at temperatures lower than the boiling-point of water. This is accomplished by placing the material to be sterilized in an apparatus where it may be heated to the desired temperature, usually 70°–80° for one to two hours on each of five or more successive days. If large numbers of spores of certain organisms, such as *Bacillus subtilis*, are present, it is almost impossible to sterilize efficiently by this method. However, if care is used in securing the blood-serum to prevent the introduction of such organisms, sterilization may be easily accomplished at this temperature.

Sterilization by Addition of Chemicals.—It is only under exceptional conditions that chemicals are used to sterilize media.
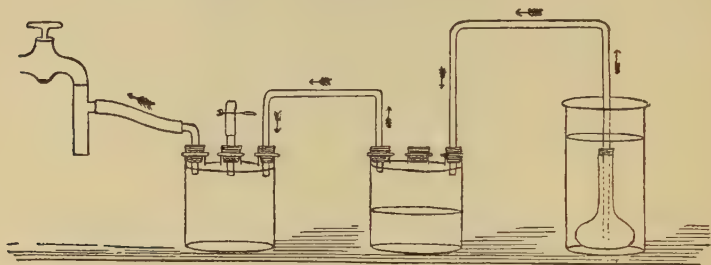
Fig. 51.—Apparatus for sterilization by filtration (McFarland).

It has been found that the addition of soluble materials, such as lactose, in considerable quantities to media containing pure cultures of certain bacteria will destroy the organisms so that they may be used as a vaccine. This method does away with the destruction of any of the characteristic metabolic products by heat.

Sterilization by Filtration.—Bacteria may be removed from a liquid by passing it through a filter with pores so fine that the organism cannot penetrate. Such filters are made up in a great variety of shapes and densities. Among the many used are the Berkefeld, the Pasteur, and the Chamberland. These are made of unglazed porcelain. In filtration through these it is necessary, of course, that all the apparatus used, particularly the vessel into which the filtrate runs and the filter itself, be sterilized before use.

This method of sterilization is commonly used for the removal of bacteria from culture-media when it is desired to study their soluble metabolic products, and in the removal of bacteria from sera which contain antitoxins and other antibodies. It is not commonly used in the sterilization of media intended for the cultivation of bacteria. Filters of this character have been used extensively in the filtration of water for drinking purposes. When first installed, they are quite efficient, but it is found that the organisms rapidly penetrate, and in the course of time are found in the filtrate. Such filters must, therefore, be sterilized at intervals if they are to remain efficient.

CHAPTER VII

CULTURE-MEDIA AND THEIR PREPARATION

MICROSCOPIC examination alone is quite insufficient to differentiate species of bacteria. By the aid of a microscope one cannot readily recognize the differences, for example, between the organisms which cause typhoid fever and certain of the normal inhabitants of the intestinal tract. It is necessary, therefore, in a study and differentiation of species, that we make use of different kinds of culture-media in which the bacteria may be grown. By the term medium is meant any nutrient substance or mixture upon which or in which bacteria will multiply. The bacteria in their development on the various media show certain growth reactions which are very useful in their differentiation. Some produce acids, others gas, alkalis, and proteolytic and coagulative enzymes.

Adjustment of the Reaction of Media.—The reaction of a medium, that is its relative acidity or alkalinity, may be designated in one of two ways; first, by the amount of normal[1] acid or

---

[1] A normal solution of a chemical may be defined as one in which there is one gram of replaceable (acid) hydrogen or its equivalent per liter of solution. For example, if we wish to prepare a normal solution of HCl, we must so dilute the acid that it contains one gram of hydrogen per liter of solution. This is best accomplished in any substance that can be readily weighed by dissolving the molecular weight expressed in grams in sufficient water to make a liter of solution. If there is more than one atom of replaceable hydrogen in the molecule, it is necessary to divide the amount used by the number of such atoms. For example, the molecular weight of H_2SO_4 is approximately 98, but there are two replaceable acid hydrogen atoms. Therefore, half this molecular weight in grams, or 49 grams, of the H_2SO_4 is made up to a liter of solution and contains one gram of acid hydrogen. The same principle is adopted in the preparation of a normal solution of an alkali; in this case, however it is necessary to divide the molecular weight by the number of atoms of the base present, which will replace hydrogen. For example, the molecular weight of NaOH is 40. It contains one atom only of sodium, and a normal solution, therefore, contains 40 grams to the liter. Dry sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_2) has a molecular weight of 106. Two atoms of sodium are present; therefore it is necessary to divide by two, so that a normal solution of sodium carbonate contains 53 grams to the liter of solution. It is evident that a given volume of a normal solution of an acid will neutralize exactly an equal volume of a normal alkali.

normal alkali required to bring one hundred cubic centimeters of the medium to the neutral point of some particular indicator, or second, by the designation of the true hydrogen ion concentration or, conversely, of the true hydroxyl ion concentration of the medium. While the first method is still the more commonly used, the second method is in most instances preferable.

Bacteria, yeasts, and molds are usually quite sensitive to the presence of an excess of acid or alkali. Some grow best in a medium which is strictly neutral, others prefer one which is somewhat on the acid side of neutrality, still others on the alkaline side of neutrality. Careful adjustment of reactions is therefore necessary in many cases. Some organisms, for example, will not grow unless the medium has almost exactly the same reaction as has the blood or the tissues of the body in which they are accustomed to grow.

The actual acidity of any solution is determined by the presence of free hydrogen ions and alkalinity is determined by the presence of free hydroxyl ions. A solution is truly neutral when equal numbers of hydrogen and hydroxyl ions are present in a given volume. *Pure* distilled water is neutral, that is, when a molecule of water dissociates it breaks up into equal numbers of hydrogen and hydroxyl ions. The chemists has discovered, furthermore, that pure water and therefore any neutral solution of materials in water contain approximately one ten-millionth of a gram of hydrogen ions to the liter. This may also be written 10^{-7} grams hydrogen ions per liter, or still more conveniently expressed in terms of normality of hydrogen ions. A normal solution of hydrogen ions is one which contains one gram of hydrogen ions per liter. A neutral solution, therefore, is one which has a concentration of hydrogen ions of 10^{-7} normal. It was noted above that in a neutral solution there is the same number of hydroxyl ions as hydrogen ions. The hydroxyl ion concentration at neutrality must therefore be also 10^{-7} normal.

The physical chemist has demonstrated that the product of the normality of hydrogen ions by the normality of hydroxyl ions in a solution is a constant number. What this number is for aqueous solutions may be determined by multiplying 10^{-7} (normality of hydrogen ions in a neutral solution) by 10^{-7} (normality

of hydroxyl ions in a neutral solution) giving 10^{-14}. In other words, the product of the normality of the hydrogen ion concentration of a solution by the normality of the hydroxyl ion concentration must always be approximately 10^{-14}. If either the hydroxyl or hydrogen ion concentration is known one can at once determine the concentration of the other. For example, if we are dealing with a solution having an hydrogen ion concentration of 10^{-5} normal its hydroxyl ion concentration must be 10^{-9} normal. It is thus possible to arrange a scale to designate the acidity of any solution in terms of its hydrogen ion concentration as follows:

$$10^0 \ 10^{-1} \ 10^{-2} \ 10^{-3} \ 10^{-4} \ 10^{-5} \ 10^{-6} \ 10^{-7} \ 10^{-8} \ 10^{-9}$$
$$10^{-10} \ 10^{-11} \ 10^{-12} \ 10^{-13} \ 10^{-14}$$

On this scale it will be noted that the larger the numerical value of the exponent, the smaller is the hydrogen ion concentration. It will be recalled that 10^{-7} represents neutrality. Numbers to the right of 10^{-7} represent increasing values of alkalinity or decreasing hydrogen ion concentration. Numbers to the left represent increasing acidity. Inasmuch as this method of statement is somewhat cumbersome, it has been suggested by Sörensen that the exponents be used to make up a scale, using positive signs instead of negative. This gives the scale:

$$0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14.$$

Each of these numbers is termed the P_H *of a solution*. A solution having P_H of O, for example, would have a normality of hydrogen ion concentration of 10^0 normal or 1. One having P_H value of 7 would have a hydrogen ion concentration of 10^{-7} normal, that is, it would be neutral. It is evident, therefore, that the smaller the number in this scale the higher the hydrogen ion concentration, that is, the greater the acidity; and the larger the number the greater the alkalinity.

Indicators are chemical substances which are of one color in a certain range of P_H values or hydrogen ion concentrations, and of another color in other ranges. The indicator most commonly used is litmus, which has a lilac color at true neutrality, that is, at a P_H value of 7. At a P_H value of 8, that is in a more alkaline solution, it is blue. At a P_H value of 5, that is in a

stronger concentration of hydrogen ions, it is red. Other indicators change color at other P_H values. For example, phenolphthalein is colorless in all hydrogen ion concentrations having a P_H value less than 8.2, in more alkaline solutions, it is red. Many other indicators are known which change color at other points in the hydrogen ion scale. This change of color is not instantaneous. In adding alkali, for example, to an acid solution containing litmus there is not an instantaneous transformation of red into blue. By the use of standards whose hydrogen ion concentration is known it is possible to determine approximately the hydrogen ion concentration of any material which it is desired to test, by the use of the intensity of color of appropriate indicators.

Most bacteria grow in a hydrogen ion concentration of 10^{-7} to 10^{-8}, that is in solutions having a P_H value between 7 and 8. The P_H value of blood is usually about 7.35. This indicates therefore the hydrogen ion concentration most useful in cultivating many species of pathogenic bacteria. Inasmuch as most media are on the acid side of true neutrality it is necessary to add alkali, usually potassium or sodium hydrate, until test shows that the hydrogen ion concentration has become satisfactory.

The hydrogen ion concentration of a medium or solution depends not only upon the actual concentration of the acid itself but upon the concentration of substances which are termed *buffers*. A buffer is any substance in a solution which tends to prevent rapid changes in hydrogen ion concentration upon the additions of alkalies or acids. Certain salts, particularly the phosphates, and many organic substances, particularly the amino acids and peptones, act in this manner. For example, the addition of a small quantity of an acid to distilled water will give a marked change in the hydrogen ion concentration, but the same quantity of acid added to solutions containing considerable quantities of buffers may result in very slight differences in hydrogen ion concentration. It is evident since microörganisms are affected far more by differences in hydrogen ion concentration than they are by the total amount of acid present, that heavily buffered media are preferred for the growth of microörganisms.

It is noted above that media are sometimes standardized by determining the quantity of acid or alkali required to bring one hundred cubic centimeters to the neutral point of some indicator. The one usually chosen in bacteriology is phenolphthalein. A solution is said to be—1, for example, when it will require one cubic centimeter of a normal solution of acid to bring it to the neutral point of phenolphthalein.

Nature of Nutrients Required by Bacteria.—It is found that practically the same elements are necessary for the nutrition of bacteria as are essential for higher plants and animals, but they may be used in quite different proportions.

It is particularly important that the disease-producing bacteria be cultivated whenever possible. Cultivation outside the body is quite necessary to a satisfactory proof of pathogenicity, to differentiate species, and to secure the organism in quantities sufficient for preparation of vaccines, antitoxins, etc. A few standard media are commonly used in the laboratory for the growth of bacteria, and a great variety of special types have been devised for certain species that do not grow upon these. It is impracticable even to enumerate the many special media that have been employed.

Liquid Media

Bouillon or Beef Broth from Meat.—This is the commonest of laboratory media and serves as a basis for the preparation of many others.

Place 500 gm. chopped lean beef in a liter of water and allow it to stand in a refrigerator over night. The juice is then pressed out with a meat press, boiled for half an hour, the coagulated albumins filtered out, the liquid made up to a liter with water, 10 gm. of peptone added, and heated sufficiently to dissolve. The reaction is adjusted to the proper point, usually + 1, by titration, or the medium is simply neutralized by addition of normal NaOH, using phenolphthalein paper as an indicator if a high degree of accuracy is not required. The broth is then autoclaved at 15 pounds pressure or boiled for fifteen minutes, allowed to cool, and then filtered. The cooling throws down a precipitate of magnesium ammonium phosphate, which may then be removed.

In many cases this is not objectionable and filtration may be carried out while the solution is still hot. The finished bouillon or broth is placed in test-tubes and flasks, and sterilized in the autoclave under a pressure of 15 pounds for 15 minutes.

Bouillon or Broth from Beef Extract.—It is customary, in much of the routine work of the laboratory, to substitute for the preceding a broth in which three grams of a beef extract, such as Liebig's, is substituted for the meat.

Sugar-free Broth.—There is generally present in the preceding media a small amount of carbohydrate, largely dextrose. In some cases a sugar-free medium is required. Theobald Smith has devised a modification of the meat broth for this purpose which is commonly used. Several broth tubes containing vigorous twenty-four-hour cultures of *Bacterium coli* are added to the meat infusion and kept at 37° for eighteen hours. In this time the bacteria will have used up all the sugar present. The broth is then prepared as above.

Sugar Broth.—Sugar-free broth is generally modified by the addition of carbohydrates, such as dextrose, saccharose, and lactose, making 1 per cent. solutions. Such media must be subjected to intermittent sterilization in flowing steam and not in the autoclave, as the carbohydrates readily decompose.

Glycerin Broth.—Five or 6 per cent. of glycerin added to broth makes it a much more favorable medium for many organisms.

Serum Broth.—Blood-serum secured under strict aseptic precautions may be added to sterile broth in various proportions. Tubes prepared in this manner should be incubated for a few days to determine whether or not the medium is sterile. Sterilization can be effected only by filtration, as heating would coagulate the serum.

Dunham's Solution.—This is a solution containing 1 per cent. peptone and 0.5 per cent. sodium chlorid in water. It is used in growing organisms for the determination of indol.

Beerwort.—Unhopped beerwort is frequently used for the growth of yeasts and molds.

Milk.—Fresh separated milk is tubed and subjected to intermittent sterilization. Commonly, litmus is added in sufficient quantities to make the milk a distinct blue.

Synthetic Media.—It is sometimes desirable to prepare a medium in which the exact chemical composition of every ingredient is known. The nature of all the changes brought about by bacteria can be studied chemically in such a medium, and the food requirements determined by changes in the composition. Most synthetic media contain as a basis an aqueous solution of certain salts, among them potassium phosphate and sodium chlorid. Special media of this kind are used extensively in the study of the soil bacteria; it is only occasionally that such a medium proves serviceable in the study of pathogenic forms. The most commonly used of the synthetic media is Uschinsky's solution.

Water, distilled..............................	1000 c.c.
Asparagin...................................	4 gm.;
Ammonium lactate...........................	6 gm.;
Na_2HPO_4.................................	2 gm.;
NaCl.......................................	5 gm.;

This medium is known as *albumin free*.

LIQUEFIABLE SOLID MEDIA

Nutrient Gelatin.—This is prepared by the addition of 10–15 per cent. of gelatin to bouillon as prepared above. The gelatin should be the best "gold label." Care must be used in heating the solution while dissolving the gelatin or the latter will stick to the bottom of the vessel and burn. It is best to use an asbestos pad, a double boiler, or a rice-cooker. The gelatin is itself acid, so that it is necessary to adjust the reaction after it has dissolved. The medium is then cooled to 60°, and the white of an egg thoroughly mixed with it. It is again heated to the boiling-point without stirring. The coagulation of the egg removes suspended particles and makes filtration easier. The nutrient gelatin is tubed and sterilized in the autoclave at 120° for ten to fifteen minutes. It should be cooled at once after removal from the sterilizer. Care must be exercised not to heat the medium too long or it may fail to solidify when cooled.

Other Gelatin Media.—Any of the liquid media already discussed, with the exception of the milk and serum broth, may be made solid by the addition of 10 to 15 per cent. gelatin. Among the more commonly used are dextrose, lactose, and glycerin gelatin.

Nutrient Agar.—This is prepared by the addition of 1.5 per cent. of shredded or powdered agar-agar to bouillon. Agar-agar is a carbohydrate-like material, probably related to the vegetable gums, which is prepared from certain of the seaweeds of the Pacific and Indian Oceans. The mixture must be boiled vigorously for half an hour to insure thorough solution of the agar. This medium does not burn as readily as does gelatin, and long-continued heating does not interfere with its solidification when cooled. The nutrient agar may be sterilized in the autoclave for fifteen minutes at 120°.

Blood-serum Agar.—Liquid sterile blood-serum is heated to 40° to 50° C. and mixed with liquid agar cooled to 40° to 50° C., equal parts or in mixture of 1 : 2. It is then solidified by cooling. It may be poured into plates before solidifying or may be left in test-tubes. Ascites fluid and hydrocele fluid may be substituted for the serum.

Chocolate Agar.—10 c.c. fresh defibrinated sheep blood are added to every 100 c.c. of neutral beef infusion agar. It is important that the blood be added while the agar is hot; that is, immediately after the latter is taken from the Arnold sterilizer (95 F.). The medium should have a dark chocolate color. This medium is valuable for culturing material from cases of pneumonia, broncho-pneumonia, etc.

Hormone Agar.—(Huntoon.)

Chopped beef heart or steak (must be comparatively fresh) 500
Water..
Peptone (Bacto peptone gives the best results)............10
Agar (Bacto or thread agar that has been soaked)..........16
Salt... 5
Whole Egg... 1

All of these ingredients are placed in an ordinary enamel-ware vessel, preferably a large coffee pot, and heated over an open flame with constant stirring until the red color of the meat infusion changes to brown, at a temperature about 68° C. Care should be taken not to run the temperature much above this point as the medium then begins to clot, which is undesirable at this time. The medium is now titrated by the addition of normal sodium hydrate until it is slightly alkaline to litmus paper, and

then 1 c.c. per liter is added in addition. The vessel is covered and placed in the Arnold sterilizer or in a water bath at a temperature of 100° C. for 1 hour, removed, and the firm clot which has formed separated from the sides with a rod and the vessel returned to the sterilizer or water bath at 100° C. for $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours. It is now removed and allowed to stand at room temperature for about 10 minutes in a slightly inclined position; during this time the fluid portion separates and may be removed by pipetting or, in the case of the coffee pot, by simply pouring it off carefully. If it is poured through a fine wire sieve many small particles of meat clot may be caught. The product is allowed to stand in tall cylinders for 15 to 20 minutes until the fat present has risen to the surface when it can be removed. The medium is now tubed and sterilized by the intermittent method. Autoclaving is to be avoided. If the medium, although usually clear enough for practical purposes, seems too turbid, further clearing may take place by filtration through glass wool, asbestos wool, sedimentation or centrifugation.

Other Agar Media.—Agar may be used as the solidifying agent for any of the liquid media described. It has the advantage over gelatin that it may be kept at blood heat, while gelatine under such conditions would liquefy.

Endo-agar-fuchsin Medium:

Beef infusion agar (3 per cent., neutral), made alkaline
  by addition of 10 c.c. 10 per cent. soda solution...1000 gm.
Lactose......:................................ 10 gm.
Fuchsin (saturated alcoholic).................... 5 c.c.
Sodium sulphite (10 per cent. solution)........... 25 c.c.

In plates this medium should have the natural agar color or light rose.

Typhoid and paratyphoid colonies are colorless or light rose; coli colonies are an intense red.

Simplified Endo Agar.—(Levine)

Distilled water............................... 1000 c.c.
Pepton (Difco)................................ 10 gm.
Dipotassium phosphate........................ 2 to 5 gm.
Agar... 15 to 30 gm.

Boil ingredients until dissolved and make up loss due to evaporation. Place measured quantities in flasks or bottles and sterilize in autoclave at 15 pounds for 15 minutes. Just prior to use add to each 100 c.c. of the melted agar

> Lactose 1 gram or 5 c.c. of 20 per cent. lactose solution
> Basic fuchsin (16 per cent. alcoholic solution) ½ c.c.
> Sodium sulphite (10 per cent. solution freshly prepared and brought to a boil over flame) 2½ c.c.

Pour plates and allow to harden in incubator. Inoculate in streaks.

Bacterium coli forms colonies 4 mm. or more in diameter, deep red and buttonlike showing a greenish metallic sheen in reflected light. *Bacterium aërogenes* colonies do not show the metallic luster, are lighter colored, markedly convex and considerably larger; colonies of the intermediate and typhoid group are transparent, colorless or faintly yellow or amber colored.

Eosin-methylene-blue Agar.—(Levine)

> Distilled water................................... 1000 c.c.
> Peptone (Difco)................................. 10 gm.
> Dipotassium phosphate......................... 2 gm.
> Agar.. 15 gm.

Boil ingredients until dissolved, and make up loss due to evaporation. Place measured quantities in flasks or bottles and sterilize in autoclave at 15 pounds pressure for 15 or 20 minutes. Just prior to use add to each 100 c.c. of the melted agar the following:

> Lactose 1 gram or 5 c.c. of 20 per cent. lactose solution.
> Eosin (2 per cent. yellow aqueous solution) 2 c.c.
> Methylene blue (0.5 per cent. aqueous solution) 2 c.c.

No adjustment of reaction is necessary. Pour medium into sterile petri dishes and allow to harden. Cultures to be tested are streaked on the surface.

Bacterium coli forms flat, dark centered, button like colonies 2 to 4 mm. in diameter, which by reflected light show a characteristic greenish metallic sheen. *Bacterium aërogenes* colonies are in general much larger, convex with brownish centers and rarely exhibit a metallic luster.

NON-LIQUEFIABLE MEDIA

Potato.—Cylinders are cut from potatoes by means of an apple-corer or special potato borer. These are divided by a diagonal longitudinal cut such that each half has one long sloping surface.
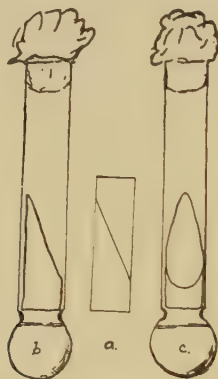
Fig. 52.—Preparation of potato tubes: *a*, Potato cylinder cut diagonally; *b*, side view in tube; *c*, front view.

It is well to soak in running water for a few hours to prevent their turning dark when sterilized. They are placed with the sloping surface up in test-tubes with a bit of saturated absorbent cotton in the bottom, or in special potato tubes. The latter are tubes constricted a short distance from the bottom. The bulb thus formed is filled with water and the potato rests on the constriction above. This device enables one to keep the potatoes moist for considerable periods. They are sterilized in the auto-clave for fifteen minutes at 120°.

Other Vegetable Media.—Carrots and other vegetables may be prepared in the same manner as potato.

Blood-serum.—Solidified blood-serum has been found to be essential to the growth in the laboratory of certain of the pathogenic bacteria. It is best to avoid all the initial contamination of the serum possible, as it is difficult, by the methods used in sterilization, to rid the medium of all the spore producers when they are present in considerable numbers. The blood, usually from cattle, is allowed to clot, and the clear, straw-colored serum is removed. A clear, solidified serum may be prepared by heating the slanted tubes to 76° for an hour or more on five or six consecu-

tive days. An opaque medium is secured by heating to a temperature of 95°. The serum may be sterilized and yet remain liquid by placing in an incubator at 58° C., or in a water-bath at the same temperature for three or four hours on several consecutive days. If care has been used in drawing the serum the slight contamination that may have occurred will be overcome by this method.

Loeffler's blood-serum is a mixture of three parts of the serum with one part of neutral 1 per cent. dextrose broth. It is solidified in the same manner as the simple serum.

Egg Medium.—This medium was developed by Dorset, of the U. S. Bureau of Animal Industry. It has come into common use for the growth of the *Bacillus tuberculosis* and has been used in recent years as a satisfactory substitute for blood-serum. Dorset's description of the method of preparation follows: " The egg shell is broken carefully, and the entire contents dropped into a wide-mouthed sterile flask. The yolk may be broken with a sterile platinum wire. Gentle shaking of the flask will serve to mix the white and yolk of the egg quite thoroughly. Care should be taken, however, not to shake the flask so that a foam will be produced, otherwise an uneven and unsatisfactory surface will be obtained when the medium is hardened. When the mixing is complete, the egg is poured into tubes, care being taken to avoid foaming, and the tubes containing about 10 c.c. of the medium are then inclined in a blood-serum oven and hardened at a temperature of 70° C. This hardening will usually require two days, four or five hours each day. Sterilization will be accomplished at the same time. A higher temperature may be used and the medium will be hardened more quickly. The growth of tubercle bacillus seems to be more vigorous when the egg is hardened at 70° to 74° C., and, in addition, the prolonged heating probably insures a more certain sterilization. The medium after hardening is opaque and yellowish in color, and usually dry, there being practically no water of condensation in the tube. The egg tubes should be kept in an ice-box to prevent further drying. Just before inoculation, three or four drops of sterile distilled water should be added to each tube to supply the moisture required for the satisfactory development of the tubercle bacillus."

CHAPTER VIII

BIOCHEMICAL TESTS

The physiological characteristics of bacteria are of considerable importance in the differentiation of species. A knowledge of such characteristics is of assistance in the isolation and recognition of certain species, as in the detection of sewage bacteria in water.

Acid and Alkali Production. Determination of Changes in Hydrogen Ion Concentration.—Many bacteria when grown in nutrient solutions, particularly those containing carbohydrates, bring about marked changes in hydrogen ion concentration. The amount of such change accomplished by a given organism depends upon several factors, the most important being the following: *first* the amount of acid produced, *second* the kind of acid produced, *third* the amount of buffer present in the nutrient medium, and *fourth* the amount of alkali (that is the concentration of hydroxyl ions) produced at the same time. Alkali may be developed either by the production of ammonia or by the transformation of the salt of a strong acid to the salt of a relatively weak or little dissociated acid. For example, certain bacteria may transform sodium citrate into sodium carbonate, the latter being decidedly alkaline in its reaction.

Two methods are in common use for detecting changes in hydrogen ion concentration. The first is by a determination of the electric conductivity. The second is a colorimetric method. For usual laboratory routine the colorimetric method is the simpler and is the only one which will be discussed. In this method it is customary to add a suitable indicator either to the solution to be tested or to a portion of this solution diluted somewhat with distilled water. The color secured is then compared with the color produced by similar addition of indicator to standard solutions whose hydrogen ion concentration is known. The indicators most used in the bacteriological laboratory for

this purpose are those developed by Clark and Lubs. In the following table the name of each of these indicators is given followed by the color in its acid range, next the color in its alkaline range, and finally the range of P_H values through which it changes color.

Color Changes of Clark and Lubs Indicators

Indicators	Full acid color	Full alkaline color	Sensitive range. The indicator changes from the acid color to the alkaline color between the following P_H values
Thymol blue (acid range).....	Red	Yellow	1.2–3.8
Brom phenol blue...........	Yellow	Blue	3.0–4.6
Methyl red.................	Red	Yellow	4.4–6.0
Brom cresol purple..........	Yellow	Purple	5.2–6.8
Brom thymol blue...........	Yellow	Blue	6.0–7.6
Phenol red.................	Yellow	Red	6.8–8.4
Cresol red..................	Yellow	Red	7.2–8.8
Thymol blue (alkaline range).	Yellow	Blue	8.0–9.6
Phenolphthalein.............	Colorless	Red	8.0–9.8
Cresolphthalein.............	Colorless	Red	8.2–9.8

It is apparent that an approximate idea can be secured of the change in hydrogen ion concentration by using different indicators and determining which gives an acid color and which an alkaline color. For example, if it is found that phenol red gives a yellow reaction the medium is acid and must be below the P_H value of 6.8. If methyl red, on the other hand, gives an alkaline color it must be of a P_H value above 6. The exact P_H value can be determined then by the use of Brom thymol blue, comparing the intensity of the color change from yellow to blue with standard solutions whose P_H values are known.

For discussion of the methods of preparing standard solutions and colors for accurate determination for hydrogen ion concentration a suitable laboratory manual should be consulted.

Determination of Acid Production.—What has been stated above concerning determination of hydrogen ion concentration will indicate the method of determining whether or not acid has actually been produced by an organism. It should be noted, however, that the determination of hydrogen ion concentration

8

is not a determination of the total amount of acid produced. This can be determined only by a comparative titration. It is customary to titrate to a definite tint a sample of the sterile medium retained as a check, using phenolphthalein as an indicator. For this purpose, it is usual to place 5 c.c. of the sterile material mixed with 45 c.c. of distilled water in a porcelain evaporating dish, add a drop or two of alcoholic solution of phenolphthalein and add twentieth normal (N/20) alkaline until a definite pink color has been established. This is kept as a standard, and the amount of alkali required noted. A similar titration is made using the medium in which the organism to be studied has been grown. This is treated in exactly the same fashion and the twentieth normal alkali added until the same tint has been secured as with the check. The differences between the amounts of alkali required for bringing to the same tint of red will vary directly with the amount of acid formed.

In some cases it is desirable to determine the kind of acid which has been produced. Simple chemical tests for the various organic acids have not in most instances been developed. Something of their nature, however, may be determined by separating them into volatile and non-volatile. If a solution containing an acid is acidified with sulfuric acid and the material distilled, certain acids, particularly acetic, propionic and butyric will pass over, while other acids, particularly lactic, will not. This makes it possible by titration of the distillate to determine the relative proportion of volatile and non-volatile acid.

Gas Production.—A few pathogenic bacteria produce gas from proteins, but most gas-producing species require the presence of a carbohydrate. The gases most commonly formed are carbon dioxid and hydrogen. One or more species of cellulose-fermenting organisms can also produce methane, and some of the denitrifiers free nitrogen.

The ability to produce gas may be determined by inoculation of the organism into a dextrose agar or gelatin tube. Gas-bubbles will appear in the medium if the organisms can ferment dextrose. This sugar is generally used, as it is more easily fermented than most other carbohydrates. The fermentation tube is commonly used for the study of gas production. The closed arm is entirely

filled, and the open arm partly filled, with broth containing
the sugar to be tested. The gas found after inoculation col-
lects in the closed arm and may be conveniently measured
by means of a Frost gasometer. The approximate composition
of the gas may be determined by filling the open arm with normal
sodium hydrate and securely closing the opening with the thumb,
mixing the gas with the alkaline solution by passing it several
times from one arm to the other, finally returning it to the closed
arm and removing the thumb. The liquid will then rise in the
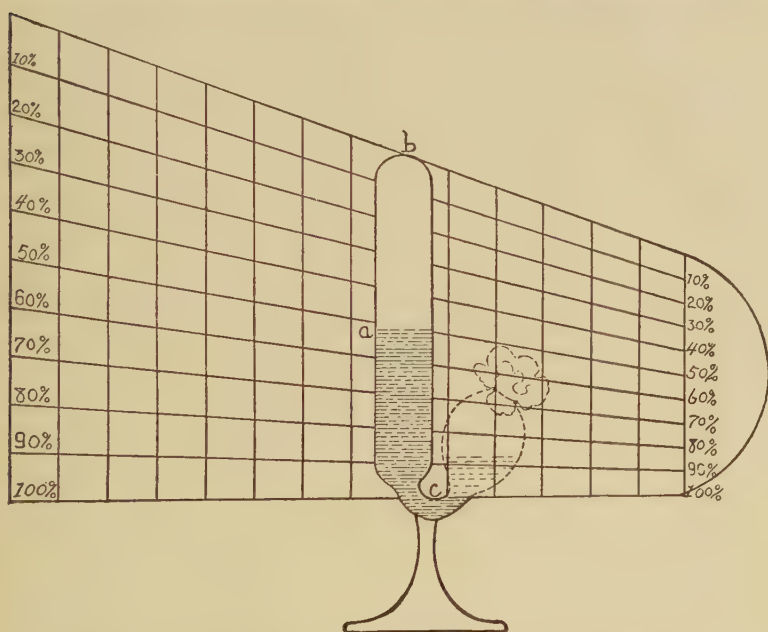
Fig. 53.—Fermentation tube and Frost gasometer (Heinemann).

closed arm to replace the carbon dioxid absorbed. The remaining
gas may be transferred to the open arm and tested by the flame.
Hydrogen is indicated by a slight explosion. The relative pro-
portion of carbon dioxid and hydrogen is sometimes of importance
in the differentiation of species. More important still is the
ability of a species to ferment different kinds of carbohydrates.
Some ferment dextrose, but not lactose or saccharose—some fer-
ment two only, and some all three.

Reduction Processes.—Some bacteria, when living in the absence

of free oxygen, can reduce certain chemicals, evidently securing oxygen for growth processes by this means. Litmus, methylene-blue, and other pigments may be decolorized. Nitrates are frequently reduced to nitrites. For this determination a broth made from 0.1 per cent. peptone and 0.02 per cent. potassium nitrate is inoculated and incubated for four days. It is then tested by the following reagent for the presence of nitrites:

a. 5 N acetic acid . . . . 1000 c.c.
   Sulphanilic acid . . . .   8 gm.
b. 5 N acetic acid . . . . 1000 c.c.
   Alpha-amidonaphthylene. . . . .   5 gm.

Add 2 c.c. of each solution to the tube to be tested. A red or rose color will indicate the presence of nitrite. A control in check tubes of uninoculated broth should always be tested at the same time.

In some cases denitrification goes still further and the nitrogen is liberated in the free state.

Other reduction processes have been described. Among the more important are the reduction of sulphates to sulphids, and of chlorates to chlorites.

Alcohol Production.—Yeasts produce considerable quantities of alcohol, and smaller amounts are formed as a result of the growth of a few bacteria and molds. Occasionally smaller amounts of other alcohols may be developed such as amyl, butyl and propyl. With yeasts, alcoholic fermentation is accompanied by the production of carbon dioxide. The presence of ethyl alcohol may be detected by placing a few cubic centimeters of the material to be tested in a suitable container such as a test tube, and adding a small crystal of iodine and several cubic centimeters of strong solution of sodium hydrate. If alcohol is present heating this material over a Bunsen flame will give a distinct odor of iodoform. The amount of alcohol developed may be determined by distillation and the determination of the specific gravity of the distillate.

Aldehyde.—Certain microörganisms, particularly when growing in carbohydrate solutions, produce aldehyde in sufficient quantity to give a distinctive reaction. The detection of the presence of aldehyde is best accomplished by the use of a fuchsin

indicator. If a solution of basic fuchsin is decolorized by the addition of sodium sulphite (or better sulphurous acid) until the color has just disappeared or until the material is of a very light pink, the color of the fuchsin is restored upon the addition of aldehyde. This is the principle made use of in the so-called Endo medium. Certain bacteria when growing upon this medium form red colonies; the fuchsin turns red because of the development of aldehyde and acid. Other species of bacteria grown upon this medium do not change the color at all.

Acetyl Methyl Carbinol.—This compound is produced by certain bacteria growing in the presence of carbohydrates. It is recognized by the addition of strong alkali such as sodium hydrate or potassium hydrate. When allowed to stand for a few hours an eosin pink or red color will develop, particularly near the surface, providing there is some peptone present. This is frequently called the Voges-Proskauer reaction, after the men who first noted it.

Determination of Oxygen Relationships.—Bacteria are frequently divided into two groups, those which require free oxygen of the air for their development and those which will grow without. The first are termed *aërobes*, and the second *anaërobes*. Those bacteria which can grow either in the presence or the absence of free oxygen are termed *facultative* anaërobes, and those which will not grow in the presence of free oxygen are termed *obligate* anaërobes.

It is frequently necessary in the laboratory to determine accurately the oxygen preferences of a microörganism. The bacteria which will grow only upon the surface of a medium, but never grow in the closed arm of a fermentation tube under any conditions are the obligate aërobes. For the most part these are organisms which are actual oxidizers, changing carbonaceous materials to carbon dioxide and water, for example. The facultative anaërobes are those which grow in contact with air, but at least under certain conditions will grow in the absence of free atmospheric oxygen. Most of the facultative organisms are obligate aërobes on certain media and facultative on others. Many bacteria, for example, which usually require atmospheric oxygen can grow in its absence providing nitrates are present to

furnish an available supply of oxygen, though not in the free form. Other bacteria will grow in the absence of oxygen providing they have suitable carbohydrates. For example, the organism known as *Bacterium coli* will grow only in the open arm of a fermentation tube if sugar is absent, but in the presence of a suitable sugar such as dextrose it grows both in the open and in the closed arm.

The obligate anaërobes are those which will grow only in the absence of free oxygen or are definitely injured by its presence. It is evident that special cultural conditions are necessary for their study.

A few bacteria have been termed *microœrophiles* because they tend to grow in a definite concentration of oxygen. When mixed with melted agar in a test tube and the agar allowed to solidify, they will grow in a definite zone some distance below the surface of the medium.

Indol Production.—Indol is one of the products of protein decomposition formed by bacterial action. It is of importance principally because it may be demonstrated readily and because of the economic importance of some of the bacteria which produce it. It is not formed in the presence of sugars. Dunham's solution is inoculated with the organism to be tested and incubated for several days. To the tube are added a few drops of concentrated sulphuric acid and a cubic centimeter of a 0.1 per cent. solution of sodium nitrite. The sulphuric acid decomposes the nitrite, freeing nitrous acid, which unites with the indol to form a bright red compound known as nitrosoindol. The appearance of this characteristic red color is evidence, therefore, of indol production. Indol is an organic compound of the empirical formula, C_8H_7N, and the structural formula

$$C_6H_4{<}^{CH}_{NH}{>}CH.$$
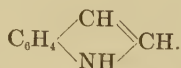
It is one of the products formed in intestinal putrefaction, and is the principal product which gives rise, under these conditions, to the characteristic " fecal " odor.

Thermal Death-point.—The accurate determination of the exact temperature that is necessary to destroy various species of bacteria is frequently of great economic importance. Efficient sterilization and pasteurization can be accomplished only when these facts

are known. Many methods have been suggested. In the laboratory the determination is frequently made by subjecting freshly inoculated tubes of broth to different temperatures in a water-bath for ten minutes each. For reliable results more accurate methods are needed. One of the commonest and best is the use of the Sternberg bulb. This is blown of thin glass. A definite amount of culture is introduced and the neck sealed in the flame. The bulbs are completely immersed in a water-bath and suspended by wires or by some other method, so that they do not come in contact with the walls of the bath, and heated. A number of bulbs are prepared and one heated five minutes, another ten minutes, at 50°. The temperature is raised two degrees and two more bulbs are exposed. For sporeless bacteria the test should be made to 70°, and still higher for those that produce spores. The bulbs are cooled quickly after their exposure, and their contents mixed with agar in a Petri dish, or added to a tube of other suitable medium. This is then incubated for several days. The minimum temperature required to destroy the bacteria can readily be determined by a comparison of the tubes.

Efficiency of Disinfectants.—The efficiency of disinfectants is determined by testing their action on pure cultures of bacteria. Koch's method, which has been commonly used, consists in drying the organism on silk threads, immersing them for varying lengths of time in the disinfectant to be tested, washing in sterile water, and placing the threads upon the surface of agar to determine growth.

Hill's method is a modification of that of Koch, and is rather more accurate and relatively simple. Sterilized glass rods are coated at the tip with the bacteria to be tested by dipping them into a broth culture to a depth of an inch. These are placed in test-tubes and carefully dried in a thermostat. They may then be immersed to a somewhat greater depth in the disinfectant to be tested for definite periods of time, rinsed carefully in sterile water, and placed in tubes containing broth.

Phenol Coefficient.—It has in recent years become standard practice to rate disinfectants by comparing their disinfecting power with that of phenol. The method was first proposed by Rideal and Walker. They prepared various dilutions of the

disinfectant to be tested, and of phenol, and determined the ratio of the dilution of the former which killed *Bacterium typhosum* in a certain length of time to the corresponding dilution of the latter. This ratio they termed the phenol coefficient. This method was modified by Anderson and McClintock of the Hygienic Laboratory. The following procedure is used:

1. Various dilutions of phenol and the disinfectant to be tested are prepared.

2. Each tube is inoculated with $\frac{1}{10}$ c.c. of a broth culture of *Bacterium typhosum*, so-called "Hopkins" strain.

3. Transfers of one standard loopful are made at intervals of two and one-half minutes to tubes of $+1.5$ meat extract broth, and these are incubated at 37° C. for forty-eight hours.

4. The average of the ratios between the lowest concentration of the disinfectant being tested and of phenol required to kill in two and one-half minutes, and fifteen minutes is termed the hygienic laboratory phenol coefficient.

CHAPTER IX

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION AND STAINING METHODS

OBJECTIVES having a higher power than those commonly used in other work are required for the examination of bacteria. A $\frac{1}{12}$-inch or 1.8–2 mm. oil-immersion objective is most commonly used. This lens differs from the low-power dry lenses in that it requires a layer of cedar oil between it and the object to be examined. This oil is used upon the lens for the following reasons. In general, the higher the power of the objective, the smaller the
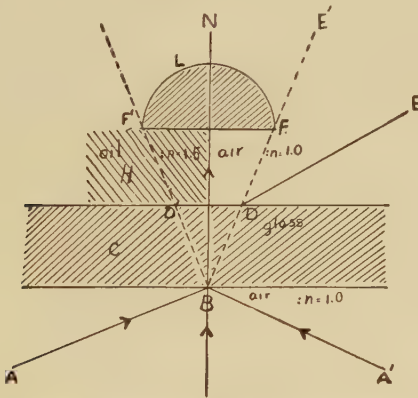
Fig. 54.—Diagram showing the function of an oil-immersion objective (adapted from Gage).

opening through which light may come to the eye. It is necessary, therefore, that all the light possible shall enter the lens in order that a well-illuminated field may result. The accompanying exaggerated diagrammatic representation of the objective and the stage of the microscope may be helpful in understanding the use of the oil.

Let C represent the microscopic slide, H the drop of oil having the same refractive index as glass, and L the tip of the objective

with the opening F'F. The rays of light are focused upon the object to be examined by the mirror or Abbé condenser. Those rays of light, such as BN, that strike the glass perpendicularly pass through and enter the lens without any deflection. A ray of light, such as AB, striking the glass at a considerable angle, is refracted upward and toward the normal or in the direction of BD. Upon entering the air it would again be refracted and leave the glass in a direction parallel to the original ray, or DE, and would not enter the lens. If, on the other hand, a drop of oil having the same refractive index as the glass intervenes, there will be no refraction at D, but the ray will pass through to the opening of the lens. This is represented by the ray A'BD'F'. The use of the oil, therefore, results in a more brilliantly illuminated field and a clearer definition of the objects to be examined.

Measuring Bacteria.—Bacteria may be measured under the microscope in one of several ways. A micrometer scale ruled on glass may be inserted in the ocular, and the distance between the lines determined by examination of a micrometer scale ruled upon the slide or cover-glass examined under the microscope. When the calibration has been effected, the ocular micrometer may be used to measure the bacteria directly. To illustrate the method of measuring bacteria by means of a micrometer proceed as follows:

(a) Insert eye-piece micrometer in the microscope.

(b) Examine bacteria on a slide and record their lengths in divisions of the eye-piece micrometer.

(c) Remove the slide of bacteria and substitute for it the stage micrometer.

(d) Determine the relation of the divisions of the eye-piece micrometer and those of the stage micrometer.

(e) The divisions on the latter are of fixed length, usually $\frac{1}{100}$ mm.

The unit of measurement of bacteria is the micron (symbol μ), the $\frac{1}{1000}$ part of a millimeter, therefore the length stated above ($\frac{1}{100}$ mm.) = 10μ.

Suppose the adjustment is such as to show two divisions of the eye-piece micrometer equal to one division of the stage micrometer. This means that each eye-piece division represents one-half division on the stage micrometer or $\frac{1}{200}$ mm. = 5μ.

Examination of Living Bacteria.—Hanging Drops.—The determination of the motility of bacteria can best be accomplished by the examination of the living cells under the microscope. A hanging-drop preparation is commonly used for the purpose. A loop-

ful of broth culture of the organism to be tested is placed upon the center of a carefully cleansed and flamed cover-glass. Growth from an agar or other culture may be used by substituting a drop of physiological salt solution or sterile bouillon and introducing a minute quantity of the growth on a platinum needle. This drop is then carefully inverted over the cavity in a hollow ground slide, and sealed with a little vaselin. It may be examined with a high-power dry lens or with the oil-immersion objective. The drop may most easily be brought into focus at its margin. The light must be carefully regulated by means of the mirror and the iris diaphragm of the Abbé condenser to make the bacteria most clearly visible.

Quite as effective an observation may be made in many cases by placing a drop of the culture upon a glass slide and dropping a cover-glass upon it, using care to include a few air-bubbles. A film of liquid sufficiently thick for the free movement of the bacteria will remain between the two glasses. The edges of the air-bubbles furnish a convenient object upon which to focus.

STAINING METHODS

Bacteria as well as the pathogenic protozoa are generally so transparent when examined in a living condition that the details of their morphology can be made out only with difficulty. It is customary to stain these organisms with various anilin dyes which render them distinctly visible.

The stains used in biological work are, for the most part, known as anilin dyes, because they are derivatives of anilin, $C_6H_5NH_2$. They are grouped as acid or basic, depending on whether the acid radical or the base possesses the tinctorial powers. Fuchsin, for example, is a basic stain, while ammonium picrate is an acid stain. The basic stains are the more useful in the study of bacteria; the acid stains are sometimes used as counterstains, particularly for tissues in which the organisms may be embedded. The anilin dyes are of all the colors of the rainbow. The most commonly used are gentian-violet, methylene-blue, thionin blue, fuchsin, and Bismarck-brown.

Mordants.—Anything which will cause a stain to penetrate an organism better or which causes it to *set* is termed a mordant.

For example, carbolic acid or anilin added to certain stains makes them more intense. A solution of iodin in potassium iodid, a mixture of tannic acid and iron sulphate, and many other solutions are used under various conditions as mordants.

Formulas of Some of the Commonly Used Stains.—There are a few stains which find constant use in the laboratory. The formulas of these will be given. There are, in addition, a great many others which have special applications.

Löffler's methylene-blue:

    Saturated alcoholic solution of methylene-blue.........15 c.c.
    Solution of potassium hydrate (1 : 1000)...............50 c.c.

Aqueous solution of gentian-violet:

    Saturated alcoholic solution of gentian-violet.......... 2.5 c.c.
    Distilled water......................................47.5 c.c.

Anilin gentian-violet (Ehrlich's):

    Saturated alcoholic solution of gentian-violet.......... 6 c.c.
    Absolute alcohol...................................... 5 c.c.
    Anilin water..50 c.c.

Anilin water is prepared by adding 2 c.c. of anilin to 98 c.c. of distilled water and shaking vigorously for several minutes. It should then be filtered until clear.

Carbol or phenol fuchsin (Ziehl's):

    Saturated alcoholic solution of fuchsin............... 5 c.c.
    Solution of phenol, 0.5 per cent.....................45 c.c.

Bismarck-brown: This is commonly used as a saturated aqueous solution.

Gabbett's methylene-blue:

    Methylene-blue, dry................................. 2 gm.
    Sulphuric acid......................................25 c.c.
    Distilled water.....................................75 c.c.

Preparation of a Stained Mount.—A drop of water, blood-serum, or broth about the size of a pinhead is placed upon a clean cover-glass. With a sterile platinum needle remove a small portion of the material to be examined and mix thoroughly in the drop. When the bacteria are in bouillon or other liquid media the drop of liquid is unnecessary. This is then spread in a thin film over the

surface of the glass and dried.   The film is next *fixed* by passing
the cover-glass, film up, through the flame of the Bunsen burner
three times.   The stain is placed upon the glass and allowed to act
for a few seconds to ten minutes, depending upon the organism
and the stain used.   This is then washed in water until no more
stain comes off.   It is dried between filter-paper and placed film
down upon a drop of water on a slide and examined under the
microscope.   If satisfactory, it may be floated off with water, dried,
and placed film down on a drop of Canada balsam on the slide.

In many laboratories the use of the cover-glass is largely
dispensed with, and certain routine examinations of many kinds
can be more conveniently made by means of films prepared
directly upon the glass microscopic slides.   The procedure is
practically identical with that detailed above for cover-glass
preparations except that the immersion oil may be placed directly
upon the stained film and no cover-glass used.

Spore Stain.—Bacterial spores stain with difficulty, but once
stained, do not yield up the stain readily.   Any one of the follow-
ing methods will be found to give good results:

Hansen Method.—1. Prepare a film, fix, and stain with steam-
ing hot carbol-fuchsin for five minutes.

2. Decolorize with 5 per cent. acetic acid until the film is a light
pink, and wash in water.

3. Stain three minutes with Löffler's methylene-blue.

4. Examine.

Möller's Spore Stain.—1. Air dry smear.

2. Fix in flame, or for two minutes in absolute alcohol.

3. Place in chloroform (to remove fat).

4. Wash in water.

5. Stain in carbol-fuchsin, heating for one minute.

6. Decolorize in 5 per cent. sulphuric acid.

7. Wash.

8. Contrast stain with methylene-blue.

9. Wash, dry mount, and examine.

By either method the spores appear red and the cell-body blue.

Klein's Method of Staining for Spores.—1. Prepare a suspension
of sporulating material in physiologic salt solution.   Place in a
small watch-glass or test-tube.

2. Mix this with an equal quantity of filtered Ziehl carbol-fuchsin.

3. Heat the mixture until it steams for six minutes.

4. Place small loopful on slide and spread.

5. Air dry and fix in flame.

6. Decolorize with 1 per cent. sulphuric acid a few (one to two) seconds.

7. Wash in water.

8. Counterstain in dilute methylene-blue three to four minutes.

Stain for Acid-fast (Acid-proof) Organisms.—Certain bacteria are stained with difficulty, but when once stained, they resist decolorization with acids. The most important of these organisms is *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

Acid Alcohol Method.—1. Prepare film, fix in flame, and stain with hot carbol-fuchsin for two minutes.

2. Wash in 2 per cent. hydrochloric acid in 95 per cent. alcohol until there is no color visible in the thinner portions of the film.

3. Wash in water and stain with methylene-blue for contrast.

4. Wash and examine.

Gabbett's Method.—1. Prepare film and stain as above with carbol-fuchsin.

2. Wash in water.

3. Stain with Gabbett's methylene-blue for one-half to one minute.

4. Wash and examine.

The acid-fast organisms will be red in a blue field.

Herman's Stain for Tubercle Bacilli in Tissues.—Solutions required:

1. One per cent. ammonium carbonate in distilled water.

2. Three per cent. crystal violet in 95 per cent. ethyl alcohol. Sections to be stained are placed on a slide or cover-glass and the water removed. About 7 drops of a mixture of 3 parts of solution 1 with 1 part of solution 2 are added, and placed on water-bath for one minute. Ten per cent. nitric acid is allowed to act for a few seconds, then the section is placed in 95 per cent. alcohol. The tissue may be counterstained with dilute fuchsin or eosin. The bacteria are stained purple.

Wirth's Stain for Staining Much's Granules of Mycobacterium

tuberculosis.—1. Stain in carbol methyl-violet twenty-four hours at room-temperature:

> Saturated alcoholic solution methyl-violet......... 10 c.c.
> Two per cent. carbol water...................... 100 c.c.

2. Place in iodin solution (Lugol's) five to fifteen minutes.

3. Wash in 5 per cent. HNO_3 one minute.

4. Wash in 3 per cent. HCl ten seconds.

5. Differentiate in a mixture of acetone and absolute alcohol.

For a counter-stain use highly diluted carbol-fuchsin 1 drop in 50 c.c. water.

The mount is not permanent.

Flagella Stain.—The flagella of bacteria are not visible in ordinary stained mounts, and can be demonstrated only by a special technic. Young, twelve- to eighteen-hour cultures of bacteria should be used for their demonstration. A tube containing a few cubic centimeters (5) is inoculated with sufficient quantity of the growth carefully removed from the agar surface to produce a slight turbidity. Incubate for an hour in the thermostat. Drop two or three drops without mixing or spreading on a clean cover-slip. Dry and then fix in the flame. Many methods of staining flagella have been suggested; the two following are probably the best:

Van Ermengem's Method.—1. Place the film for one hour in the following solution:

> Osmic acid, 2 per cent............................1 part
> Tannin, 10–25 per cent. solution....................2 parts

2. Wash in water, then absolute alcohol, then place in the following solution for a few seconds only:

> Silver nitrate, 0.05 per cent. in distilled water.

3. Wash in the following solution for a few seconds:

> Gallic acid....................................... 5 gm.
> Tannin... 3 gm.
> Fused potassium acetate........................... 10 gm.
> Distilled water...................................350 c.c.

4. Wash in silver nitrate solution until film turns black.

5. Wash in water and examine.

Löffler's Method.—1. Prepare film, fix, and apply the following mordant, heating for five minutes over a water-bath:

Tannic acid (25 per cent. aqueous solution)...........10 parts
Saturated solution ferrous sulphate................... 5 parts
Fuchsin (saturated alcoholic solution)............... 1 part

2. Wash and blot with filter-paper.

3. Stain with hot anilin-gentian-violet or carbol-fuchsin over a water-bath for five minutes.

4. Wash and examine.

Gram's Staining Method.—This method was first used to demonstrate bacteria in tissues, the bacteria retaining and the tissues losing the stain. It was later found that not all bacteria could be stained by this method, and it has in consequence come into general use for separating bacteria into two groups, termed respectively gram-positive and gram-negative, the former retaining the stain and the latter losing it.

1. Prepare film, dry, and fix.

2. Stain one and one-half minutes in anilin-gentian-violet.

3. Treat with Gram's iodin solution one and one-half minutes.

Iodin... 1 gm.
Potassium iodid................................... 2 gm.
Water...300 c.c.

4. Decolorize with 95 per cent. alcohol for five minutes.

5. Wash, dry, and mount.

Stabilized Gentian Violet.[1]

Anilin .... 28 c.c.
Gentian violet.................................. 8 gm.
95 per cent. alcohol............................. 100 c.c.
N hydrochloric acid.............................. 5 c.c.
Dist. water q.s................................. 1000

Dissolve gentian violet in alcohol. Add HCl to the anilin and dissolve in water to make 900 c.c. Filter the aqueous solution and add alcoholic stain. Filter.

Capsule Stains.—*Muir's Capsule Stain.*—1. Prepare film and dry.

2. Apply carbol-fuchsin (hot) for thirty seconds.

3. Wash quickly in 95 per cent. alcohol, then in water.

[1] Stovall and Nichols, Jour. A.M.A., 1916, **66**, 1620–1621.

4. Apply following mordant for five or ten seconds:

    (a) Saturated aqueous solution $HgCl_2$............ 2 parts.
    (b) Twenty per cent. aqueous tannic acid........ 2 parts.
    (c) Saturated solution potash alum.............. 5 parts.

5. Wash in water and apply 95 per cent. alcohol one minute.

6. Wash in water and apply methylene-blue for thirty seconds.

7. Dry and examine.

Johne's Capsule Stain.—This is particularly suited to the demonstration of the capsules of the anthrax bacillus in smears from blood or tissues.

1. Dry in air.

2. Fix by passing three times through the flame.

3. Stain with 2 per cent. aqueous gentian-violet, heating slightly for one-quarter to one-half minute.

4. Wash quickly in water.

5. Wash in 1 to 2 per cent. acetic acid six to ten seconds.

6. Wash in water; mount in water to examine.

Raebiger's Capsule Stain.—This has been used for demonstration of the capsules of the anthrax bacillus in tissue and blood-smears.

The formalin gentian-violet is prepared by adding 15 to 20 gm. of gentian-violet to 100 to 150 gm. of 40 per cent. solution of formaldehyd (commercial formalin). This should be thoroughly mixed and allowed to stand for some hours. The solution is filtered.

1. Prepare thin smear of material.

2. Air dry (do not fix).

3. Stain twenty seconds.

4. Wash in water.

5. Mount in balsam.

The capsules should appear reddish violet, the bacilli dark violet.

Blood and Protozoan Stains.—Many special stains have been devised for demonstrating the blood elements and protozoa in the blood and in tissues. The chief of these are the Romanowsky and Giemsa, each with numerous modifications. These may most profitably be purchased ready for use from a reliable dealer.

Wright's Stain.—One of the most satisfactory blood stains for

9

routine work is that of Wright. This stain can be purchased in liquid form ready for use, or in powder form from which a saturated solution is made up as a stock solution. This is prepared for use by adding to 20 c.c. of the filtered stock solution 5 c.c. of methyl alcohol. A blood-smear is made and allowed to air dry. The slide is then flooded with the Wright stain and allowed to stand one minute. Distilled water is then added drop by drop until a metallic luster appears on the surface. The stain is permitted to act for five minutes, when it is washed off with distilled water, dried, and examined with or without oil immersion.

Giemsa's Stain.—1. Apply the following fixing agent to moist films for twelve hours.

95 per cent. alcohol........................... 1 part.
Saturated aqueous $HgCl_2$..................... 2 parts.

2. Wash in water for a few seconds.
3. Apply Lugol's solution for five minutes.
4. Wash in water, then in .5 per cent. sodium thiosulphate.
5. Stain with Giemsa stain one to ten hours.
6. Wash and mount.

A modification of this method consists of mixing 1 drop of concentrated Giemsa in 20 drops of distilled water. After fixing the smear for five minutes in methyl alcohol it is immersed in the dilute stain and placed in a $37\frac{1}{2}°$ incubator for ten to twelve hours. It is then washed off with distilled water until the film has a slight pink tinge. This method is recommended for staining of brain tissue for Negri bodies.

Negri Bodies.—*Lentz Method.*—Smears upon clean glass slides are made from (a) Ammon's horn, (b) the cerebellum, or (c) the cerebral cortex. Without allowing to dry, the smears are fixed for about 10 seconds in neutralized methyl alcohol (alcohol 500 c.c. to which about 0.25 gm. of sodium carbonate has been added) to which 0.1 per cent. picric acid has been added. The excess of fixative is removed by blotting with fine filter paper. The fixed smears are stained in the following solution:

Saturated alcoholic solution of fuchsin............ 0.3 gm.
Saturated alcoholic solution of methylene blue..... 2.0 gm.
Distilled water................................. 30.0 gm.

This solution, which is a modification of the one proposed by Van Gieson, changes rather quickly at room temperatures, but kept in the ice box gives good results for an indefinite time. The stain is poured on the smear and held over the flame until it steams. The smear is then washed in tap water and dried with fine filter paper. Negri bodies appear magenta, the nerve cells blue, and red blood cells yellow or salmon.

3. Stain in methylene-blue solution one minute.

4. Wash in water.

5. Dry between layers of filter-paper.

6. Differentiate in alkaline alcohol until only a slight pink can be recognized.

7. Differentiate in acid alcohol until the thinner part of the preparation shows no blue.

8. Wash short time in absolute alcohol.

9. Dry and examine with oil immersion.

The Negri bodies appear crimson as distinct from the vermilion blood-corpuscles, and show within them one or more blue inclusion bodies.

India-ink Method for Bacteria and Protozoa.—Mix the fluid containing the organisms to be examined with an equal quantity of India ink. Make a thin smear, dry, and fix. The organisms do not stain with the ink, but appear as transparent bodies in the black field.

CHAPTER X

METHODS OF SECURING PURE CULTURES OF BACTERIA

BACTERIA must be studied in pure culture if one is to determine with certainty their cultural, physiological, or pathogenic characters. One of the first efforts made in the study of a disease or any other process brought about by bacteria is to separate its causal organism from all others. Many methods have been devised for this purpose, not any one of them applicable to every case.

Dilution Method.—This method of securing pure cultures is of historic interest only. In the beginnings of the cultivation of microörganisms the culture-media commonly used were liquids, such as infusions from meat and vegetables, and beerwort. This method was used most commonly in securing pure cultures of yeasts. A long series of flasks was prepared with sterile media. The impure culture or mixture of organisms was mixed thoroughly with the contents of the first flask, and a definite amount transferred from this to another flask, from this to each of several others, from each of these into another group, and so on. The last dilution would, in general, remain sterile, but among some of the dilutions would be a group in which some flasks would show growth and others of the same dilution would not. The inference was that such a flask had been planted with but a single organism, and the flask contents, therefore, constituted a pure culture. This method is cumbersome, uncertain, and is rarely used.

Isolation by Smearing.—If a loopful of a mixed culture of microörganisms be drawn across the surface of a solid medium in parallel streaks, the first portion will generally show a solid line of mixed growth, but farther along the growth is discontinuous. Many of the isolated colonies here will be found upon examination to consist of pure cultures. This method is used for the isolation of bacteria from the mouth and throat in some cases.

Direct Isolation.—Barber has devised a capillary pipette method whereby it is possible to pick up a single bacterial cell and transfer it to a nutrient medium without any other organisms being carried

132

over.   This method has been found useful in the study of developmental and evolutionary problems, but is not practicable for routine laboratory isolations.

Isolation by Plating.—The development by Koch of the liquefiable media furnished a ready means for the isolation in pure
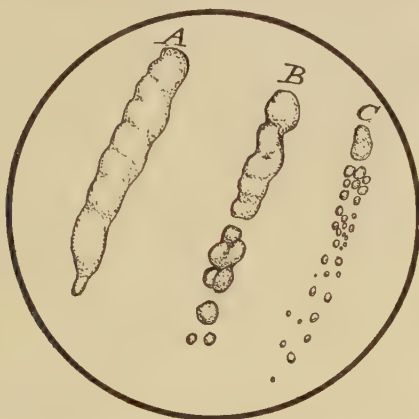

Fig. 55.—Isolation by successive streak cultures on an agar or gelatin plate: *A*, First streak solidly grown; *B*, second streak, discontinuous; *C*, third streak, having many isolated colonies.

culture of most species of bacteria.   Nutrient agar or gelatin or one of their modifications may be used.   The medium is liquefied by heat, then cooled in a water-bath to about $43°$.   The mixed culture of organisms from which it is desired to isolate pure cultures is inoculated into one of the tubes.   From this
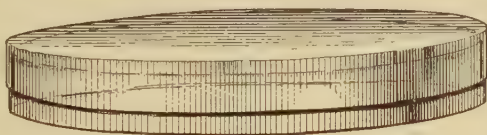

Fig. 56.—Petri dish (McFarland).

transfers are made by means of a sterile platinum loop to a second tube; this is thoroughly mixed and transfers made to a third tube, and from this even to a fourth.   Each of these tubes of media is then poured into a sterile, flat, glass, covered dish called a Petri dish.   These Petri dishes or " plates " are allowed to stand until the medium has solidified; they are then incubated and examined

from time to time. The organisms are separated from each other by this process of dilution, and are held fast by the solidification of the medium. In most cases the conditions are favorable for growth, and development begins. Within a few days sufficient multiplication takes place, so that the mass of organisms that has developed from the single isolated individuals has reached a size that can be easily seen with the unaided eye. Such a mass of organisms is termed a colony. Transfers from such colonies will show only a single kind of organism present, and by making isolations from each type of colony, pure cultures may be secured of each species present.

Isolation by the Use of Heat.—When it is desired to isolate a spore-producing organism from non-sporulating forms, the culture may be heated to 80° for fifteen minutes. This will not destroy the spores, but will eliminate all other cells. If one species of spore-forming organism only is present, this results in a pure culture at once; if more than one species, plating becomes necessary.

Isolation by the Use of Differential Antiseptics or Disinfectants.—Not all species of bacteria are affected alike by a given antiseptic or disinfectant, and it is sometimes possible to add a substance that will prevent the growth or kill one form without interfering seriously with the growth of others. A small amount of phenol added to bouillon will inhibit the growth of most bacteria, with the exception of certain members of the intestinal group. A still better example of such substance is antiformin, which, when mixed with sputum or other materials containing tubercle bacilli, destroys all other organisms than these, and enables one to secure a pure culture at once. This will be discussed in greater detail under the heading of Tuberculosis.

Isolation by Animal Inoculation.—Some species of pathogenic bacteria develop very slowly upon artificial media, or require a special medium for their growth. When these occur mixed with other organisms, it is sometimes difficult to secure them in pure culture. This difficulty may in some cases be overcome by animal inoculation. The injection of the organism into a suitable susceptible animal results in the destruction by the body of the other bacteria injected at the same time, and the characteristic organism may later be isolated in pure cultures from the lesions of the disease.

CHAPTER XI

STUDY OF BACTERIAL CULTURES

SPECIES of bacteria are frequently separable from each other on the basis of differences in cultural characters alone. It is, therefore, important that careful descriptions should be kept of the cultural characteristics of each of the species. For assistance in such descriptions the Society of American Bacteriologists has adopted a standard descriptive chart from which the following are adapted:

CULTURAL CHARACTERS

Agar Stroke.—This is prepared by drawing an inoculated needle from the base to the top of the slanted surface of an agar tube that has solidified in the sloping position. In this culture are to
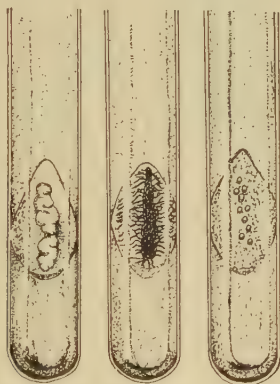

Fig. 57.—Types of growth on agar slants.

be noted the abundance, form, elevation, luster, surface, and optical characters of the growth, its pigment production, odor, consistency, and any changes that have occurred in the medium.

Potato.—The potato is inoculated and the growth characteristics studied in the same manner as the agar stroke.

Blood-serum.—This is inoculated in the same manner as the agar slope, and the same characteristics are to be noted, with the addition of liquefaction or digestion of the medium.

Gelatin Stab.—This is prepared by running an inoculated platinum needle in a straight line from the surface of an erect tube of nutrient gelatin nearly to the bottom, and withdrawing it without cutting the medium by any lateral motion of the needle.

Fig. 58.—Potato slant culture (Page, Frothingham and Paige, in "Journal of Medical Research").

The characters to be noted are abundance and uniformity of growth along the line of the stab, the form of growth, liquefaction, and other changes in the medium.

Nutrient Broth.—This is inoculated by shaking an infected platinum needle in the medium. The characters to be noted are abundance and character of surface growth and character of sediment.

Milk.—Milk is inoculated in the same manner as the nutrient

broth. The characters to be noted are presence or absence of coagulation, type of curd produced, whether or not whey is extruded, peptonization or digestion of the casein, acid production, consistency, and changes in color of the medium.

Litmus Milk.—In addition to the preceding, acid or alkali production and reduction of the litmus are to be noted.
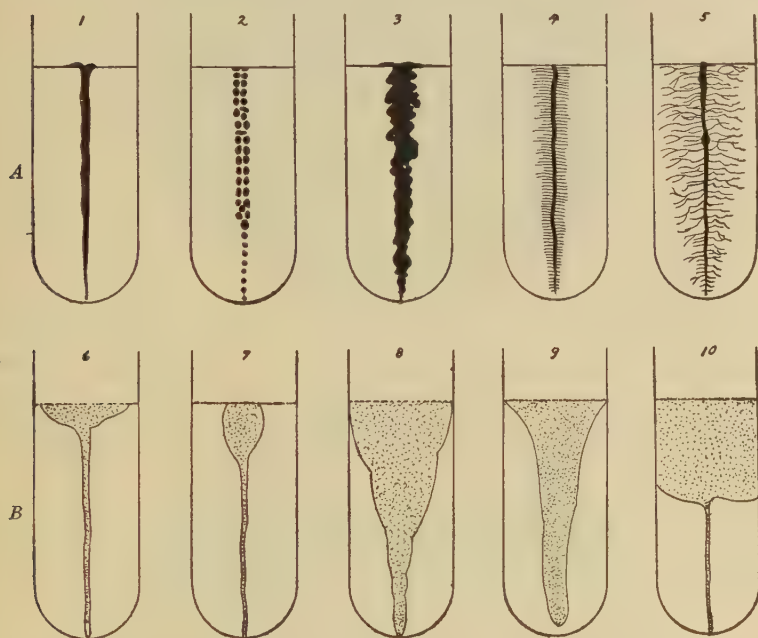

Fig. 59.—Types of growth in stab cultures: *A*, Non-liquefying: 1, Filiform (*Bact. coli*); 2, beaded (*Str. pyogenes*); 3, echinate (*Bact. acidi lactici*); 4, villous (*Erysipel. murisepticum*); 5, arborescent (*B. mycoides*). *B*, Liquefying; 6, Crateriform (*Pr. vulgaris*, twenty-four hours); 7, napiform (*B. subtilis*, forty-eight hours); 8, infundibuliform (*Erythrobacillus prodigiosus*); 9, saccate (*Vibrio Finkleri*); 10, stratiform (*Ps. fluorescens*) (Frost).

Gelatin Plate Colonies.—Two or three tubes of gelatin are melted, cooled to 40°, and one inoculated with a small amount of the organism to be studied. The tube is rolled until the bacteria are thoroughly distributed, and with a platinum loop a transfer is made to a second tube, and from this to a third. The contents of each tube are then poured into a Petri dish and allowed

to solidify.   The plate showing a small number of colonies developing is the one chosen for examination.   The characters to be
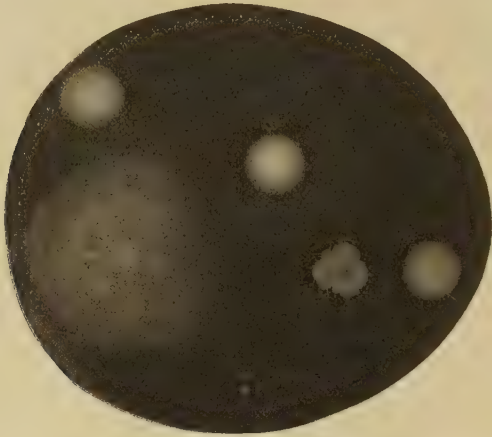

Fig. 60.—Portion of an agar plate culture showing a mold colony and five bacterial colonies.

noted are rapidity of growth, form, elevation, and edge of the colony and type of liquefaction if it occurs.

Fig. 61. --Ameboid colony on an agar plate (Lewton-Brain and Deerr).

Colonies on Agar Plates.—Plates containing nutrient agar are prepared in the same manner as the gelatin plates described.   The
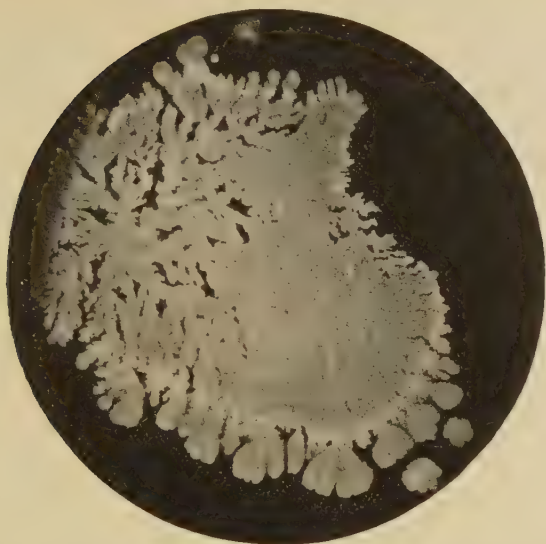
Fig. 62.—Spreading colony on an agar plate (Lewton-Brain and Deerr).
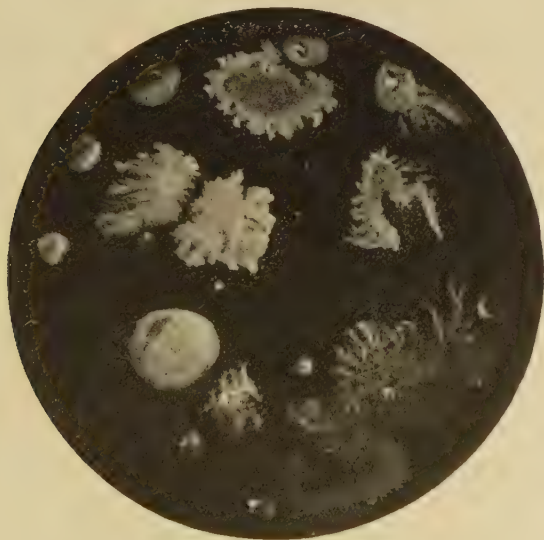

Fig. 63.—Colonies in an agar plate culture (Lewton-Brain and Deerr).

characters to be noted are rapidity of growth, form, surface elevation, edge, and internal structure of the colony.

PHYSIOLOGICAL CHARACTERS

It is customary to determine gas and acid production in carbohydrate media, development of ammonia, reduction of nitrates to nitrites, indol production, temperature relations, including optimum growth temperature and thermal death-point, resistance to desiccation and disinfectants, and pathogenic characters. The methods of study of these characters have already been discussed.

SECTION III

BACTERIA AND THE RESISTANCE OF THE ANIMAL BODY TO DISEASE

CHAPTER XII

MICROÖRGANISMS AND DISEASE

Infectious Diseases.—An *infectious disease* is one which is caused by some microörganism. The mere presence of microörganisms in the body, however, does not constitute *infection*. In general, this is not regarded as occurring unless the organisms grow or multiply in the body and produce pathological changes in the tissues and symptoms of disease. An individual thus *infected* is termed the *host*. Both *infective* and *infected* have been used to describe inanimate objects which harbor pathogenic organisms and which may aid in their distribution; of these, the term *infective* is preferable. Infective objects, such as the manger of a glandered horse or the clothing of a person with a readily transmissible disease, are called *fomites*. The term *virus* is commonly used to designate the causal organism of an infectious disease when such organism is not known. Sometimes it is used in a broader sense to designate any disease-producing organism.

Diseases, that is, pathological conditions of the body, may be either *infectious* or *non-infectious*. Among the infectious diseases of animals and man are the following: Fistula, boils, abscesses and similar pyogenic infections, strangles, pneumonia, meningitis, Malta fever, gonorrhea, diphtheria, tuberculosis, paratuberculosis, pseudotuberculosis, swine erysipelas, glanders, dysentery, typhoid, hemorrhagic septicemia, plague, chicken-cholera, anthrax, milk sickness or trembles, infectious abortion, foot-rot of sheep, tetanus, blackleg, malignant edema, botulism, Asiatic cholera, actinomycosis, blastomycosis, aspergilloses and related mycoses, ring-

141

worm, amebic dysentery, trypanosomiasis, Leishmaniosis, relapsing and tick fevers, Texas fever and related piroplasmoses, anaplasmoses, malaria, yellow fever, coccidiosis, pleuropneumonia, foot-and-mouth disease, rinderpest, hog-cholera, horse sickness, equine infectious anemia, fowl plague, the poxes, such as small-pox and chicken-pox, infantile paralysis, rabies, and others.

Non-infectious diseases are those which are caused by some injury to the body or by some physiologic disturbance not due to microörganisms. Among such diseases may be mentioned certain types of tumors and cancers, diabetes, azoturia, certain types of neuritis, arteriosclerosis, cardiac hypertrophy, etc. In some cases the infectious or non-infectious origin of a disease has not been satisfactorily determined. Such a disease is cancer.

Contagious Diseases.—Any disease in which the causal organism may be readily transferred from one individual to another by direct or indirect contact is said to be contagious. The terms *infectious* and *contagious* have been used very loosely, sometimes even interchangeably. The best usage, however, is strictly to limit the terms as here defined. Infectious has to do with the cause of a disease, and contagious with its ease and method of transmission. All infectious diseases, therefore, which are readily transmitted by contact, direct or indirect, are said to be contagious. All contagious diseases are necessarily infectious, but the reverse is not true; for example, malaria in man and Texas fever in cattle cannot be regarded as contagious, as they are transmitted only through the bites of certain insects. Every gradation between highly contagious and non-contagious diseases is known. It is customary to indicate the degree of contagiousness by use of modifiers. We speak, therefore, of *highly contagious, slightly contagious*, etc.

Avenues of Infection.—The avenue through which an organism gains entrance to the body is called its portal of entry or its *infection atrium*. An infection arising from contact with infective external objects is termed *exogenous;* one caused by organisms constantly or normally present in the body or on it is termed *endogenous*. Traumatic infection frequently occurs through a break in the continuity of the skin or mucous surfaces. Wounds caused by weapons, instruments, and similar objects, the bites of animals

and sucking insects, such as the mosquito, flea, tick, or bedbug, may introduce a pathogenic organism. Ordinarily, the skin is an efficient barrier against infection. Microörganisms may occasionally enter through the glands or hair-follicles. Some bacteria apparently may injure the unbroken mucous surface, as, for example, the diphtheria bacillus. Certain disease organisms enter through the digestive tract. Bacteria have been shown to pass unharmed through the intestinal walls and to enter the lymph-vessels and the thoracic duct. To what extent this is the common source of infection in certain diseases, such as tuberculosis, is at present a matter of dispute.

The lungs constitute the infection atrium in pneumonia, probably in many cases of tuberculosis and aspergillosis, and possibly in certain diseases whose cause has not been determined, such as small-pox.

The genital organs are the common infection atria in the so-called venereal diseases, such as syphilis, chancroid, and gonorrhea in man, dourine in the horse, and possibly in contagious abortion in cattle. Disease organisms rarely pass from the blood of the mother through the placenta to the blood of the fetus. In a strict sense, none of the infectious diseases present at birth are inherited.

Cryptogenic infections are those which occur without the possibility of determining the infection atrium in a particular case. Tetanus, for example, sometimes occurs when careful search fails to show the channel through which the organism reached the tissues.

The ability of an organism to multiply in the body or produce disease frequently depends upon the channel through which it enters; the organism which produces Asiatic cholera in man, for example, evokes this disease with its characteristic symptoms only when entering through the alimentary tract. The type of disease caused by a particular organism may also vary with the infection atrium; the disease caused by the organism of human plague shows differences depending on whether the infection occurs through the skin, the alimentary or respiratory tracts. An organism may produce no lesions at the point of entry, but invade some other tissue; the bacillus of tuberculosis is known to pass through the mucous

membranes of the intestines without visible injury to them and to produce tuberculosis of adjacent glands.

Virulence.—The *virulence* of an organism is its relative ability to combat the defences of the body against infection, to invade the tissues, and to produce disease. The degree of virulence on the part of the organism and the relative resistance to infection on the part of the animal determine whether or not disease will be produced, as well as its course and termination. The virulence of organisms shows great variations even within the same species. It may be modified in various ways. Methods of immunization are in many cases based upon the possibility of attenuation.

Proof of the Causal Relationship of a Microörganism to a Disease—Koch's Postulates.—The proof of the germ theory of disease may be dated from 1876, when Koch succeeded in demonstrating the causal relationship of *Bacillus anthracis* to the disease anthrax. He later formulated the rules (known as Koch's rules or postulates) for the determination of the specific relationships of an organism to a disease. They may be stated as follows:

1. The suspected organism must be found in every case of the disease under consideration.

2. The organism must be isolated and grown in pure culture.

3. Inoculation of the organism into suitable animals should reproduce the disease.

4. The organism must again be isolated from such animals.

Unfortunately, the demonstration by means of these rules of the causal relationships of specific organisms to many diseases has proved impossible, and is unsatisfactory in others. There are several reasons for this:

(*a*) The organisms in some cases have been shown to be very small, perhaps even ultramicroscopic, and capable of passing through a fine porcelain filter, as, for example, those which cause fowl plague and hog-cholera.

(*b*) Some organisms, although evidently not ultramicroscopic, have never been satisfactorily demonstrated under the microscope, possibly from lack of proper staining methods.

(*c*) Some organisms are specific for man and do not reproduce disease of the same type when inoculated into animals. With

some of these, accidental or intentional inoculation into man has supplied the needed evidence.

(d) The organism may be demonstrated microscopically, but will not grow upon the culture-media of the laboratory. Such are some of the protozoa. With a few of these the proof has been perfected by the study of the growth of the organism in an intermediate host, for example, the malarial parasite in the mosquito.

Evidence of the relationship of an organism to a disease may frequently be secured by using the agglutination, precipitation, or some of the other tests discussed in the following chapters. Improvements in staining technic and culture methods continually reveal new organisms.

Animal Inoculation.—Experimental inoculation and injections are made in the bacteriological laboratory for a number of reasons:

1. To determine the causal relationships of a specific organism to a disease in accordance with Koch's rules.

2. To diagnose certain diseases. For example, one of the methods of diagnosing glanders is to inject some of the nasal discharge from a suspected animal into a male guinea-pig and note the development of acute orchitis and subsequent general body reaction.

3. To isolate certain pathogenic bacteria. For example, if it is desired to isolate the organism causing tuberculosis from sputum or from milk, it may be accomplished most readily by inoculating the infective material into a suitable animal. All the non-pathogenic organisms will be destroyed and the specific organism may be isolated in pure culture from diseased tissue or lesions of the animal so infected. The animal body is used in a sense as a filter for the removal of the non-pathogenic bacteria.

4. To determine the strength or concentration of certain biological products. As will be seen later, the only way that has been devised for the determination of the strength or potency of certain poisons, such as toxins and of their antitoxins, is animal injection. The animal is used by the bacteriologist in much the same manner as an indicator is used by the chemist in determining the acidity or alkalinity of a solution.

5. For the production of certain so-called antibodies, such as

10

antitoxins, and for the demonstration of certain characteristics of the blood-serum in studies of immunity.

The animal most frequently used in experimental work is the guinea-pig or cavy; next in importance is the rabbit. Mice and rats, particularly the white varieties, are often used. When birds are necessary, the pigeon and domestic fowl are generally utilized. Some of the larger animals, as the goat or horse, are used for the production of serum where it is required in considerable quantities, as in the manufacture of antitoxins. The monkey has been used to some extent in the study of diseases peculiar to man. Heifers are utilized in the preparation of the vaccine against smallpox. Swine are used in the preparation of hog-cholera antiserum.

Methods of Inoculation.—Animals may be inoculated just beneath the skin, or *subcutaneously*. The hair is shaved from the
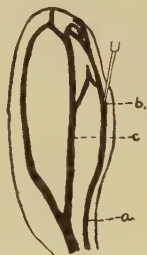

Fig. 64.—Ear veins of a rabbit: *a*, Posterior vein; *b*, point at which injections may be most easily made; *c*, median vein (adapted from Frost).

area selected, the skin is washed with an antiseptic, and a hypodermic needle inserted into the subcutaneous tissue. In the inoculation of a solid material a little incision may be made in the skin, the material inserted, and the opening closed. Usually stitches to hold the skin are unnecessary. *Intravenous inoculation* is accomplished by inserting the needle into a vein. Usually a rabbit is selected for this purpose. Reference to Fig. 64 will show the vein on the posterior edge of the ear, into which injections are usually made. The large median vein is not suitable, as it is situated in loose connective tissue and, therefore, difficult to enter. The posterior vein, on the other hand, is embedded in firm connective tissue and cartilage, so that it does not give before the needle-point.

Intraperitoneal injection is accomplished by thrusting the hypo-

dermic needle through the abdominal wall. Some care must be used not to penetrate too rapidly, as there is danger of injuring the intestines. *Intrathoracic* inoculation is rarely practised. Injection directly into the heart (*intracardiac*) may be successfully carried out if sufficient care is used. Inoculation by *scarification* is accomplished by scraping off the outer layers of skin without drawing blood and rubbing the organism on the surface moistened by the exuded serum. *Intracranial* injections may be made by use of a trephine to penetrate the skull, after which *subdural inoculations* are made with the hypodermic. *Intra-ocular* injections have sometimes been performed for the specific purpose of observing from day to day the development of lesions upon the iris or in other tissues of the eye. Infection by *inhalation* is accomplished by forcing the animal to breathe the organism in dust or as a fine spray. Infection by way of the digestive tract is accomplished by feeding or *ingestion*.

Types of Infectious Diseases.—*Mixed* and *secondary infections* are those in which two or more organisms are responsible for disease production in a single individual. In the strict sense a mixed infection is one in which two or more organisms enter the body at approximately the same time and are jointly responsible for the production of disease. Such, for example, is a fistulous wither in which several species of pyogenic bacteria are growing. In a secondary infection one organism has grown for a considerable time and has evoked the characteristic symptoms of the disease before infection with a second organism occurs. It is evident that in many cases there can be no distinct differentiation between mixed and secondary infections. The organisms causing the secondary infection in many cases are themselves capable of causing primary infections; in others the organisms are quite incapable of invading the body alone. The occurrence of mixed and secondary infections renders difficult in many cases the task of identifying the organisms primarily responsible for a given condition and the diagnosis of a disease.

When once the body has been invaded, the type of organism, its virulence, the resistance of the individual and the infection atrium will determine the localization or distribution of the organisms and the type of disease produced.

Toxemias are diseases in which the causal organism tends to remain localized, but which produces a potent toxin or poison which causes injury to tissues in other parts of the body. Such diseases are diphtheria and tetanus, for in these infections the organisms do not commonly spread far from the original site of infection and do not invade the blood-stream or lymph-channels.

Many organisms tend to remain more or less localized, but do not produce a potent toxin. Such are most pyogenic infections, local inflammations, tuberculosis, and pneumonia. Such infections are sometimes termed *phlogistic*.

Septicemia is an infection in which bacteria are present and multiply in the blood-stream. Some authors restrict this term to include only such infections as are due to the pyogenic cocci. *Bacteremia* is used as a synonym of septicemia, or by some authors to include those blood infections not due to the pyogenic cocci, such as anthrax.

Pyemia is a metastatic pyogenic infection, that is, one in which organisms travel to parts of the body other than the original infection atrium, and localize.

Sapremia is the result of the absorption of poisonous putrefactive products resulting from the destruction of necrotic tissues, usually as the result of the growth of saprophytic or semiparasitic bacteria. Such absorption may take place as the result of gangrene, a retained placenta, etc.

The *exanthemata* include those diseases which are characterized by skin eruptions, such as cow-pox, chicken-pox, small-pox, sheep-pox, scarlet fever, etc. For the most part the causal organisms for these diseases have not been satisfactorily identified.

CHAPTER XIII

IMMUNITY. GENERAL DISCUSSION

Immunity.—Immunity is a term used to express relative resistance to disease. It is defined by Ricketts as follows: "By immunity we understand that condition in which an individual or a species of animals exhibits unusual or complete resistance to an infection for which other individuals or other species show a greater or less degree of susceptibility." The converse of immunity is *susceptibility*, or lack of resistance.

Resistance by the body to infection by microörganisms is due to a considerable number of factors. These may be grouped into two classes—the *external resistance*, due to body coverings and protective devices, and *internal resistance*, due to tissue and body humor reactions.

External resistance to infection is of the greatest practical importance. The *skin* covering the surface of the body is an excellent and effective barrier against bacterial invasion. The skin is constantly sloughing off at the surface and being replaced from below. Entrance to the tissues is sometimes effected by microorganisms through the hair-follicles and the sweat-glands; this is, however, exceptional. The subcutaneous tissues likewise obstruct the inward growth of organisms that have penetrated the skin. The *mucous membranes* constantly secrete mucus, which is as constantly removed, and the bacteria which have been caught go with it. The membranes which line the air-passages catch upon their moist surfaces practically all the bacteria that enter with the inspired air, and few ever reach the ultimate ramifications of the bronchioles, much less the alveoli. The *gastric juice* of the stomach is markedly germicidal. Many, though not all, bacteria which enter the body with the food are destroyed there. The intestinal juices, particularly the *bile*, are mildly antiseptic and inhibit the growth of many forms, although they are without effect on others, among them the so-called normal intestinal bacteria.

Variation of Individuals in Susceptibility to Disease. Predisposing Factors.—The same individual varies greatly at times in his ability to resist infection by bacteria. *Age* frequently determines resistance to certain infections. For example, there are diseases, such as diphtheria and whooping-cough, which are much more common among children than among adults. Blackleg rarely attacks adult cattle. Advancing age seems to bring increased resistance to such infections. The mechanism of this kind of resistance to infection is not well understood. *Hunger* and *thirst* reduce the resistance of the body and predispose to infection. *Exposure to excessive heat* or the *chilling of the body surfaces by cold* will also reduce the body resistance so that organisms that ordinarily cannot produce disease gain a foothold. *Fatigue* has been demonstrated experimentally to render animals and man more susceptible to infection. The classic example of this diminution of resistance by fatigue is that of the white rat, which is normally immune to anthrax, but which, when exhausted by work in a treadmill, becomes susceptible to the disease and will succumb to infection.

Types of Immunity.—Immunity may be divided into two types, *natural* and *acquired*. The former may be subdivided again into *racial* or *specific* immunity and *individual* immunity. Acquired immunity may be either *active* or *passive*.

Natural immunity is congenital, that is, it is not acquired after birth. A *racial* immunity is one possessed by all the members of a group of individuals. Disease frequently cannot be transmitted from one *species* of animal to another, for example, man does not acquire many of the diseases of animals, such as hog-cholera and dog distemper, and, on the other hand, many diseases of man, such as measles, whooping-cough, and typhoid fever, cannot be transmitted to the lower animals. It is also said that the Algerian alone among the breeds of sheep is naturally immune to anthrax. In New York City it has been found that the Russian and Polish Jews are much more resistant to tuberculosis than are certain other races, particularly the Irish and the negroes—at least the death-rate among the former due to this disease is much lower. *Individuals* are also found who are naturally immune to disease. This resistance is perhaps more seeming than real in many cases, and has

been induced by mild infections that have resulted in recovery without the development of definite symptoms of the disease. It is a well-known fact that frequently a small percentage of the hogs in a herd which becomes infected with hog-cholera do not contract the disease, and inoculation experiments show them to be relatively immune.

Acquired Immunity.—Immunity to a disease may be acquired in many different ways. An *active acquired* immunity is one brought about by the development in the tissues of the animal of certain antibodies which prevent the growth or destroy or neutralize the products of growth of the invading microörganisms. *Passive acquired* immunity is conferred upon the animal by the injection of antibodies which have been prepared in another animal. A passively immunized animal takes no part in the production of the antibodies to which it owes its immunity.

Active Acquired Immunity.—A development of antibodies and the consequent immunization of an animal may be brought about by the various methods illustrated in the following outline:

A. Injection of living microörganisms.
  1. In quantities smaller than the amount needed to produce a fatal infection.
  2. Attenuated in various ways—
    (a) By growing upon artificial culture-media.
    (b) By growing at unusual temperatures.
    (c) By heating.
    (d) By growing in the presence of substances inimical to growth, such as weak antiseptics.
    (e) By animal passage.
B. By injection of dead organisms.
C. By injection of the products of autolytic digestion of organisms.
D. By injection of toxins.

Immunization by the injection of sublethal doses of pathogenic organisms has not been generally practised. With most pathogenic organisms it may be demonstrated experimentally that if the number of living cells injected be decreased below a certain minimum, they are no longer capable of producing disease. The method

is dangerous because the minimum may vary with different individuals and the animal utilized may in some instances prove susceptible and succumb. Usually, however, increasing numbers of the organism may be given, and the animal will eventually become entirely immune. This method is of more theoretical than practical importance, and is rarely used.

As noted above, microörganisms may be attenuated, that is, their ability to produce disease lessened in several ways. Several species of bacteria are known gradually to lessen their virulence when cultivated for a time upon artificial media; for example, the *Streptococcus pyogenes*, which produces many suppurative infections, when cultivated upon artificial media, will finally lose so much of its virulence that it proves entirely non-pathogenic when inoculated into suitable animals. Inoculation of such non-virulent types will increase the resistance of the body to the virulent forms. The converse of this is also true, for the continued growth and transfer of many organisms from one animal to another may greatly exalt the virulence. It is possible in a given species to secure in some cases every gradation from the wholly non-pathogenic type to forms that are exceptionally virulent.

Cultivation of some bacteria at a temperature higher than the growth optimum results in a diminution of virulence. The anthrax bacillus, whose optimum is 38°, may be cultivated at a temperature of 42° for a time, when it loses much of its virulence. It may then be used in the form of injections to increase resistance to the disease anthrax in animals. The organism which causes blackleg in cattle is heated to a temperature just below its thermal death-point, and is found to lose many of its pathogenic properties, although it still causes the production of immune substances when injected into the body. A closely related method is to grow bacteria in the presence of mild antiseptics. The anthrax bacillus grown in the presence of carbolic acid (1:600) has been found to lose its virulence. The growth of certain microörganisms in the body of animals other than the species in which they normally produce disease in some cases results in a decrease of virulence for the first species. The small-pox organism, for example, is grown for a time in the bodies of cattle, and is found to lose much of its virulence for man by this means. The injection of dead

microörganisms also results in conferring immunity in much the same manner, perhaps, as does the injection of non-virulent cultures. The injection of bacteria, whether dead or alive, in an effort to increase the immunity of the body, is known as *vaccination*. This is also defined as the production of an infection that will run a benign course. Bacterial cultures are sometimes allowed to stand until a considerable amount of digestion or autolysis has occurred. When the dead or living bacteria are filtered out by means of porcelain filters, the material remaining in solution or the filtrate may be used for animal injection in an effort to confer immunity. In other cases the bacteria are grown in solutions where they produce certain specific poisons called toxins. These latter are removed by filtration and used to inject animals to induce the development of an active immunity.

Acquired Passive Immunity.—Immunity may be conferred by the injection of serum that contains suitable antibodies. These may be, as will be seen later, in the nature of antitoxins, bacteriolysins, or opsonins. This method of conferring immunity should not be confused with vaccination. The animal passively immunized takes absolutely no part in the development of its immunity.

Theories of Immunity.—Four principal theories of immunity have been held since the acceptance of the germ theory of disease. The first two proposed are now of historic interest only, but the other two are well founded on fact and are generally accepted at the present time. When first proposed, these latter were supposed to be antagonistic, but as subsequently modified, they have been found to supplement each other, some facts being explained by the one and some by the other. These theories are worthy of brief consideration and comparison.

Theory of Exhaustion.—It was noted by early laboratory workers that bacteria, yeasts, and molds would grow rapidly when first planted upon a favorable medium, then the rate of growth would become slower, and finally cease. It was concluded naturally that growth stopped because all of certain of the nutrients needed were exhausted. This theory was applied to the growth of microörganisms in the body, and it was believed that immunity was established when certain requisite food materials were ex-

hausted and the organism in consequence could grow no longer.
This theory was soon disproved. It was shown, for example, that
the *Corynebacterium diphtheriœ* would grow luxuriantly on steril-
ized blood taken from a person immune to diphtheria.   Chemical
analyses also showed that not all nutrients were exhausted from
the medium in the culture tube when the organism ceased
growing.

Noxious Retention Theory.—Further study revealed the fact
that organisms ceased growing in a culture solution because they
produced substances deleterious to themselves. The organism
which sours milk, for example, produces acid until the concen-
tration is so great that it can no longer develop.   The same is
true of yeasts in the production of alcohol, and of bacteria in the
transformation of alcohol to acetic acid. The nature of the
noxious material is known in very few cases.   A logical explana-
tion of immunity seemed to be that something of the same
kind occurred in acquired immunity; that the organisms devel-
oped in the body until they produced so much material inimical
to their own growth that multiplication would cease, and the
individual would thereafter be immune. This theory was dis-
credited by subsequent workers, who proved that the substances
that prevented bacterial growth were produced by the body and
not by the bacteria.

Metchnikoff's Theory of Phagocytosis.—The theory was
advanced by Metchnikoff and his students that certain of the
body-cells, particularly the leukocytes, would take up, digest, and
destroy bacteria.   Immunization accordingly consisted in a kind
of stimulation or training of the leukocytes to destroy the patho-
genic organisms.   Cells capable of destroying microörganisms in
this manner he called *phagocytes* (Gr. phagein, to eat; kytos, cell).
Certain of Metchnikoff's ideas have not borne the test of time, but
in the main his theory still is used to account for immunity of
certain types.

Ehrlich's Humoral Theory.—Ehrlich has advanced the theory
that immunity is due to substances present in the *body humors*
which antagonize the growth and development of pathogenic
organisms or are capable of neutralizing their products.   Such
substances capable of conferring immunity he calls *antibodies*.
and to their production by the body-cells he attributes the devel-

opment of immunity. This theory has been tested in a very great variety of ways, and seems to explain better than any other most of the facts known relative to immunity.

Duration of Immunity.—Recovery from certain diseases, such as small-pox, confers a lasting immunity; from others, such as pneumonia, a temporary immunity, and in still others the immunity disappears immediately upon recovery, as in influenza. In some cases recovery from an attack seems actually to predispose to a recurrence, as in erysipelas. This last probably means simply the complete or relatively complete disappearance of immunity from a peculiarly susceptible individual. The duration of immunity may depend in some cases upon the type of antibodies produced, although this is certainly not always the case. Probably the antibodies, particularly those introduced in passive immunization, are eliminated in some of the secretions and excretions, or they may, in some cases, be easily destroyed.

Antigens and Antibodies.—It has been found experimentally that injections of many substances besides bacteria and their products cause reactions on the part of the tissues, with consequent production of *antibodies*. These injected substances are called *antigens*. An antigen is, therefore, that substance which, when introduced into the body, stimulates the tissues to the production of antibodies. An antibody may be more accurately defined as any substance present in the serum which is capable of neutralizing, antagonizing, precipitating, agglutinating, or dissolving the substance (*antigen*) which has induced the formation of such antibody. For example, the toxin of the diphtheria bacillus, when injected in non-lethal doses, induces the production of antitoxin by the tissues: the toxin is the antigen, the antitoxin is the antibody. Similarly, egg-white injected into an animal would be termed an antigen and the precipitating substance produced as a consequence in the blood-serum is termed the antibody.

Antibodies as Factors in Acquired Immunity.—The somatic reactions to the presence of antigens are now generally considered of primary importance in acquired immunity. Certain bacterial poisons called *toxins* cause the production by the animal tissues of the antibody called *antitoxin*, which will neutralize the toxin. The presence of certain bacteria in the body causes the production

of *bacteriolysins*, substances which will dissolve or destroy bacteria. *Opsonins* (Gr. opsonein, to prepare for eating) are antibodies which will unite with the bacteria and enable the phagocytes to take them up and destroy them. Acquired immunity may, therefore, be said to be either *antitoxic, bacteriolytic* (*antibacterial*), or *opsonic*, or a combination of any or all of these types. Three other types of body reactions are also generally considered in a discussion of immunity. Although they probably in no instance actually account for immunity, they are found very useful in diagnosis, and their consideration is quite essential to a full discussion of theories of immunity. The blood-serum of individuals suffering from certain infections, particularly bacterial, acquires the property of *agglutinating* or clumping these organisms. The blood-serum from a horse having glanders when dropped into a culture of the glanders bacillus will cause the bacteria to clump together and settle out, leaving the medium clear. The phenomenon of agglutination is used in the diagnosis of this and other diseases. A somewhat similar body reaction is provoked by the injection of soluble proteins derived from some other species of animal (or plant) into the body of an animal. The serum of such an animal acquires the property of precipitating the corresponding protein when mixed with it in a test-tube. This phenomenon of *precipitation* is made use of in the differentiation of many kinds of proteins. The presence of certain substances in the blood, usually proteins derived from any foreign source, may result in the *sensitization* of the body to such, rather than immunity. This phenomenon is known as *anaphylaxis* (Gr. an, against; phylasco, to guard) and has led to an explanation of many otherwise obscure pathological and bacteriological facts.

CHAPTER XIV

ANTITOXINS AND RELATED ANTIBODIES

(Antibodies of Ehrlich's First Order)

Toxins.—The word toxin has been used with a considerable variety of meanings. A substance is said to be toxic when it brings about an abnormal condition when introduced into the body. The discovery that certain microörganisms, particularly bacteria, produced their harmful effects by means of the poisons which they excreted led to the use of the term toxin to include all poisons produced by bacteria. Further study demonstrated that these bacterial poisons differed considerably in their method of action and in other characters. Ehrlich first clearly differentiated the bacterial poisons and used the name toxin to indicate a definite type. The name *endotoxin* is used to designate certain poisonous substances that are contained within the protoplasm of the cell, and are not excreted as are the true toxins. Some authors have included all these poisonous substances produced by bacteria under the name *toxine*, and recognize *toxin* as used in Ehrlich's sense.

Characteristics of a Toxin (Ehrlich).—According to Ehrlich, the toxins constitute a group of substances having the following characteristics:

1. Most true toxins are *labile*, that is, they are usually easily destroyed by heat, by acids, by exposure to light and air.

2. The chemical nature of the toxins, with one possible exception, is not understood. Beyond the fact that they are organic in origin and usually give some of the protein reactions, little is known of their chemistry.

3. Biological tests (*i. e.*, animal injections) have been found to be the only tests by which the toxins may be recognized and studied. These animal injections, as has been before stated, are quite as essential in determining the character and strength

157

of a toxin as are indicators to the chemist in his study of end-reactions.

4. Toxins act upon the body by combining chemically with definite cells and tissues. This union is not effected at once in all cases. The evidences of damage, with the clinical symptoms of poisoning, do not appear until after the lapse of a *period of incubation.* The length of this period varies with different toxins—with some of the snake venoms it is very short, in other toxins it is a matter of hours, or even days.

5. The injection of non-lethal doses of toxin into a suitable animal causes the tissues to react and to produce *antitoxin,* which will neutralize the toxin, and result in immunization.

Toxins may be differentiated from most other poisonous substances with which they may be confused by reference to the preceding. Poisonous alkaloids, such as strychnin, for example, do not cause the production of antibodies. Immunization against a toxin is, therefore, not to be confused with *drug habituation.*

Sources of Toxins.—Toxins have been found to be produced by a considerable number of plants and animals. Certain of the flowering plants form powerful toxins, such as ricin in the castor-oil bean (*Ricinus communis* and *R. zanzibarensis*), *abrin* from the jequirity bean (*Abrus precatorius*), and *robin* from the bark of the locust (*Robinia* sp.). Among the fungi, certain poisonous mushrooms (or "toadstools"), as the Amanita, have been shown to contain toxins. Certain molds are stated to produce toxins, particularly Aspergillus. Toxins have been demonstrated in the animal kingdom in the venom of snakes, scorpions, and spiders, in the skin of certain reptiles, in the blood of the eel, and of certain fish. A few species of bacteria have been shown to produce toxins, but in several cases the amount and character of the toxin are relatively unimportant. The bacteria which have been found to form appreciable amounts of toxin, and which produce lesions of the body tissues through the action of these toxins, are relatively few. The more important are the following:

Corynebacterium diphtheriæ, the cause of diphtheria.
Clostridium tetani, the cause of tetanus or lockjaw.

Clostridium botulinum, the cause of certain cases of botulism or meat-poisoning.

The organisms in which true toxins have been demonstrated, but in which the toxin production does not seem to account for the lesions of the disease, are:

Pseudomonas pyocyanea, associated with suppurative processes.

Clostridium chauvœi, the cause of blackleg.

Staphylococcus aureus, associated with suppurative processes.

Staphylococcus albus, associated with suppurative processes.

It should again be emphasized that the above list of bacteria does not include all those which may produce poisoning, but does include the most important known to produce true toxins. Many other species are known to produce endotoxins.

Specificity of Toxins.—Toxins must combine with the cells or tissues of the body in order to injure them. Toxins do not all attack the same tissue, but show a selective action. In some cases a number of tissues may be injured, in others the damage is limited quite strictly to one type. The toxin produced by the bacillus of tetanus attacks the cells of the central nervous system and is called a *neurotoxin*. One of the toxins commonly present in snake venom destroys red blood-cells (*hemotoxin*). Probably some animals owe their immunity to certain toxins to the fact that some of the less important or non-vital body-tissues will combine with the toxin and prevent its union with more vital portions.

Antitoxins.—Antitoxins are antibodies produced by the tissues of the body as a result of injection or presence of toxins. The fact of antitoxin production may be readily demonstrated by mixing the serum of an immune animal with toxin and injecting the mixture into a suitable animal. The normal toxic action will be found to be inhibited by the antitoxin of the serum. The most generally accepted and valuable of the explanations of the production of antitoxins by the body is that offered by Ehrlich, based upon his theory of cell nutrition, the *lateral chain* or *side-chain theory of immunity*.

Ehrlich's Theory of Cell Nutrition.—Several explanations have

been offered by physiologists for the phenomenon of cell nutrition. Food substances carried to the cell by the blood must pass through the vessel and cell-walls and be anchored there if they are to be used in any of the processes of cell metabolism. According to Ehrlich, the protoplasm must be made up of molecules having an affinity for a great variety of food materials. These molecules he conceives to be made up of a central portion surrounded by atomic groups which unite with certain food molecules and bind them to the cell. These atomic groups have affinity for certain food substances, and, therefore, are differently constituted. These atomic groups he calls *side-chains* or, better, *cell receptors*. The character of these receptors may be illustrated by a chemical analogy. Benzene has the following formula:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
H & & H \\
\diagdown & & \diagup \\
C & \!\!\!-\!\!\! & C \\
\diagup\diagup & & \diagdown\diagdown \\
H\!-\!C & & C\!-\!H \\
\diagdown & & \diagup \\
C & \!\!\!=\!\!\! & C \\
\diagup & & \diagdown \\
H & & H
\end{array}
$$
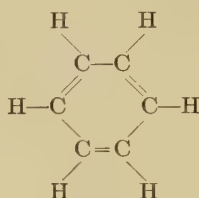
Any one of these hydrogens may be substituted by some element or group. Suppose one such to be replaced by the carboxyl group ($COOH$), another by the amino group (NH_2), another by the aldehyd group (CHO), and still another by a hydroxyl group (OH). Such a hypothetical compound might be illustrated as follows:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
H & & COOH \\
\diagdown & & \diagup \\
C & \!\!\!-\!\!\! & C \\
\diagup\diagup & & \diagdown\diagdown \\
OH\!-\!C & & C\!-\!NH_2 \\
\diagdown & & \diagup \\
C & \!\!\!=\!\!\! & C \\
\diagup & & \diagdown \\
H & & CHO
\end{array}
$$
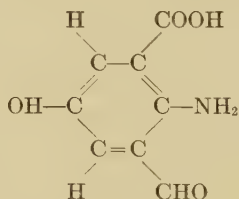
There are several possible ways in which such a compound might react. Should an alkali be brought into contact with it, the base would be taken up by the carboxyl atom group. Acids would be bound by the amino group. Other substances would be bound by other atom groups. The cell receptors must be con-

sidered in this manner, as being of different types, each one capable of uniting with some food substance—probably only one. To take up the variety of substances necessary for cell life and activity, it is evidently necessary that there should be a multiplicity of these receptors, and their action must be considered as very specific.

It is found convenient to represent these cell receptors in a diagrammatic form. Such is scarcely necessary in a consideration of antitoxin, but will be found very helpful in a discussion of the more complex antibodies.

Ehrlich's Theory of Antitoxin Production.—As has been stated previously, toxins are believed to combine with the tissue-cells before the latter can be injured. This union of toxin with the cell takes place through the medium of the cell receptors, some of which are thus diverted from their normal functions. As a result, if the cell is not too seriously injured by the toxin, it or the neighboring cells produce an increased number of receptors of the type thus used. This is in accordance with the general hypothesis enunciated by Weigert, that injury or irritation always results in an overgrowth of tissue—a hypercompensation. For example, rubbing the skin will produce a callus, leaky heart valves cause hypertrophy of the heart, and the cicatricial tissue of a newly healed wound is generally greater in amount than the tissue it replaces. These receptors are, therefore, produced in great numbers, and many are eventually displaced and escape into the cell-plasma and finally into the blood-stream. These freed cell receptors still retain their affinity for the toxin and constitute the antitoxin molecules of the serum. For each of the statements just made there seems to be a good proof. That the toxin actually unites with the body-cells has been shown by experiment, for example, the brain tissue of an animal mixed with tetanus toxin will absorb the latter and remove it from the solution, so that it is without effect when injected into animals. That there is an actual increase in the number of cell receptors may be shown by injecting a small amount of toxin into an animal, and before antitoxins have appeared in the blood, injecting more toxin. The response to the second injection will be quicker than to the first, and the animal will succumb to what is not ordinarily a fatal dose. This indicates an increased power of fixation for the toxin,

i. e., an increase in the number of the receptors. The appearance and increase in the freed cell receptors or antitoxins in the blood shows that these receptors are thrown off in large numbers. The antitoxin in the serum unites with the toxin probably in much the same manner as an acid neutralizes an alkali. The principal difference is that in carrying out the test, animal inoculations must take the place of the indicator of the chemist. The union between the toxin and antitoxin has been shown to obey the general laws of chemical union.

Constitution of the Toxin.—Toxins are easily destroyed by heat, chemicals, light, and air. It will be shown later that the loss of toxicity does not result from a total destruction of the toxin molecule, for it still is able to unite with the antitoxin. It is evident that the toxin molecule is made up of two parts— a thermostabile portion, which unites with cell receptors, either in the cell or free as antitoxins, called the *haptophore*, or binding group, and a thermolabile group, called the *toxophore*, which causes the cell injury after union by means of the haptophore has taken place. When the toxophore group of a toxin has been destroyed, that which remains is called a *toxoid*. That toxoids exist may be demonstrated in two ways. The injection of a toxin solution that has been heated to 56° for half an hour into a suitable animal does not result in the development of symptoms of poisoning, but does cause the production of antitoxin; in other words, the toxoids retain the ability to unite with the cell receptors and to bring about their increase and elimination from the cell. An antitoxic serum may be mixed in suitable amounts with a solution of heated toxin (toxoid), and after a time mixed with virulent toxin, and the latter will be found to remain uncombined. The antitoxin is completely neutralized by the toxoid, and the toxin added subsequently finds no antitoxin free with which it can unite.

Constitution of Antitoxin.—Some antitoxins are more stable than the corresponding toxin. However, they are easily destroyed by a temperature of 60° if sufficiently prolonged. There is no reason to suppose that the antitoxic molecule is made up of more than one group. Inasmuch as it has a binding group, this may be called a haptophore. It has not as yet proved possible to separate

antitoxins from serum globulins; it is inferred, therefore, that they are similarly constituted.

Diagrammatic Representation of Toxin and Antitoxins.—The preceding facts may in large part be recorded by diagrams. These are, of course, arbitrary in shape and appearance, but are helpful in an understanding of the reaction. The diagrams commonly used for this purpose are given in Fig. 65.

Preferential Union of Toxins with Body-cells.—The union of antitoxin with toxin occurs apparently as readily within the
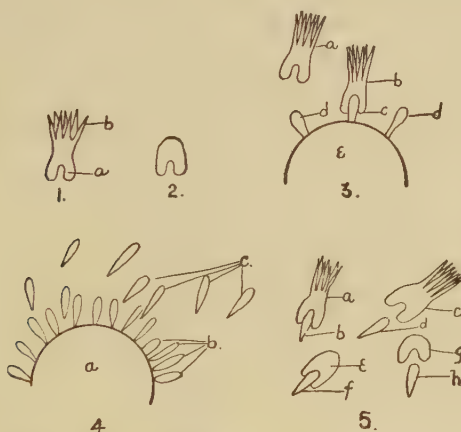
Fig. 65.—Diagrammatic representation of toxins and of antitoxin production—1, Toxin molecule: a, Haptophore; b, toxophore. 2. Toxoid, a toxin molecule that has lost its toxophore. 3, Molecule of cell protoplasm showing the union of the toxin molecule: a, Free toxin; b, toxin attached to a cell receptor c; d, other cell receptors. 4 illustrates the overproduction of receptors by the cell and their elimination (b) into the blood-stream as antitoxin molecules (c). 5, Neutralization or union of antitoxin with toxoid and toxin.

body as without. When toxins are injected and antitoxins are present in the circulation, the latter will commonly unite with the former and prevent union with the body-cells. In some exceptional conditions, however, this is shown not to occur; for some reason the affinity of cell receptors still united to the cell seems to be greater than those free (antitoxin). In other words, the tissues seem to become hypersensitive to the presence of the toxin, so that the antitoxin no longer protects. Tissue immunity

is, therefore, not always the same as antitoxin immunity. This hypersensitiveness is of unusual occurrence. An animal that is being immunized against tetanus toxin by injections of increasing amounts may suddenly and unexpectedly show a marked reaction, or may even succumb, when additional amounts are injected, even though antitoxin may be demonstrated in considerable quantities in the blood. It is evident that, although this phenomenon is of infrequent occurrence, it is of some little importance. Possibly this may be related to the reactions to be described later under the heading of Anaphylaxis.

Antitoxins of Commercial Importance.—Antitoxins specific for the venom of certain snakes and for diphtheria and tetanus toxins are prepared commercially. The manufacture and standardization of these antitoxins are of importance to the veterinarian for several reasons. The theory of immunity has been largely developed through a study of diphtheria toxins and antitoxins. The larger animals, such as the horse and goat, are generally used in the commercial manufacture of antitoxin. The tetanus antitoxin is used extensively in veterinary practice. A brief consideration of the production of diphtheria and tetanus toxin and antitoxin is, therefore, advisable.

Manufacture of Diphtheria Toxin and Antitoxin.—Diphtheria toxin is prepared by growing the diphtheria bacillus in suitable broth. A sugar-free broth is prepared as described in Chapter VII. This is titrated and the reaction adjusted accurately to +0.5. It is then placed in flat-bottomed toxin flasks in a layer a few centimeters in thickness, and autoclaved. To each flask is then added sufficient sterile dextrose solution to make a 0.2 per cent. dextrose broth. It is found in experience that different strains of the diphtheria bacilli may vary considerably in toxin production. The strain used most frequently in the United States is the one known as the Park-Williams. The organism is grown in broth tubes, where it forms a film over the surface. Portions of this film are transferred carefully to the surface of the broth in the flasks and incubated at 37° for eight days. Microscopic examination of the culture should show it to be uncontaminated. To destroy the bacteria and prevent possible infection of those handling the material 5 c.c. of phenol or similar antiseptic is then added to

each liter. In some cases it is filtered through a porcelain filter, which will remove the bodies of the bacteria, but not the soluble toxins. The amount of toxin present in the solution must be next determined for two reasons: first, to insure the presence of toxins in sufficient concentration for efficient immunization, and, second, to determine the amount that may be injected into the horse without serious injury. The amount of toxin that, when injected subcutaneously, will kill a guinea-pig weighing 250 gm. in three days is called the minimum lethal dose for the guinea-pig (abbreviated M. L. D.). The broth should contain at least 1000
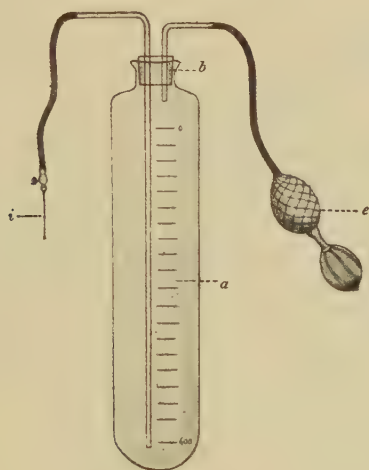
Fig. 66.—Apparatus for the injection of considerable quantities of toxin into the horse: *a*, Graduated cylinder closed by a rubber cork, *b*. Air is pumped into the constant pressure bulb *e*, and from this passes into the cylinder. The toxin is forced out through the needle at *i* (Levaditi).

M. L. D. per cubic centimeter. The horse is most commonly employed for the production of the antitoxin. Care is used that the animal is fairly vigorous and entirely free from any infectious disease. Injections of 100 M. L. D. are made subcutaneously, or, better yet, larger amounts, neutralized by antitoxin already prepared, or attenuated by mixing with Lugol's solution, are first used. The animal responds by fever and swelling at point of injection and by other minor symptoms. After a lapse of several days, or when the horse has recovered, a second injec-

tion of a larger amount is given.   Increasing doses of the toxin
are injected at intervals until as much as 500 c.c. of the toxin
may be administered at one time.   Not all horses produce
enough antitoxin in their blood to be commercially valuable;
hence the antitoxin content is usually determined some time be-
fore the process of immunization is complete.   When the animal's
blood contains the maximum amount of antitoxin, it is drawn
by a sterile trocar from the right jugular vein into wide-mouthed
sterile jars (Fig. 68).   Usually a little less than one liter of blood
for every hundred pounds weight of the horse is removed, as this
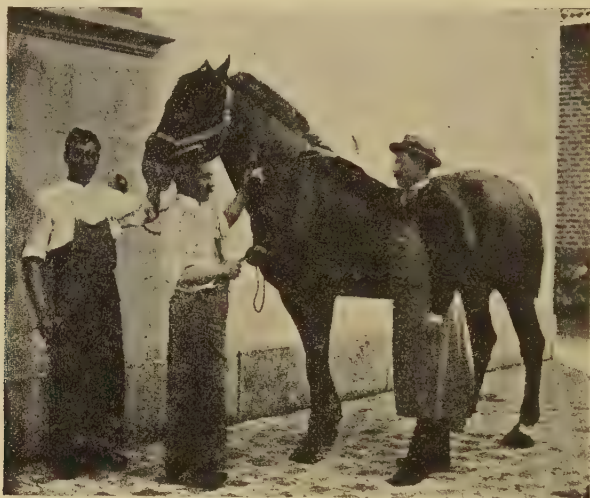
Fig. 67.—Injection of a horse with toxin (Levaditi).

amount may be withdrawn without appreciable injury.   After
a rest the horse may again be injected and bled.

The jars of blood are allowed to stand until the clot has shrunk
and the clear, straw-colored serum has separated.   This contains
the antitoxin and is the *serum antidiphtheriticum* of the Pharma-
copeia.   It must now be standardized, that is, the amount of
antitoxin per cubic centimeter determined.   Several methods
of determining the potency of the antitoxin have been pro-
posed.   Inasmuch as the unit formulated by Ehrlich has been
generally adopted (except by the French) its development will
be briefly traced.   Behring first proposed as an antitoxic unit,

the least amount of antitoxin which, when mixed with 100 M. L. D. of the toxin, would prevent a 250-gm. guinea-pig injected with the mixture from dying within four days. This implied the keeping of the toxin of a certain strength for the standardization of antitoxin. The toxin was found to be unstable, and the same toxin would at different times yield different results. Furthermore, antitoxins are neutralized by toxoids as well as toxins. The toxin cannot be preserved for long periods without deterioration, as would be necessitated if used as a government standard. Ehrlich, therefore, made use of a toxin which he had studied in his laboratory to standardize a large quantity of serum. This serum he dried in a current of warm air in a partial vacuum. As a result,
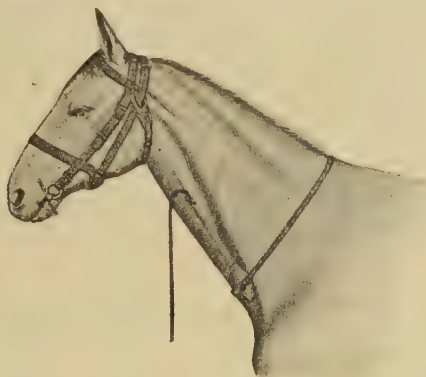
Fig. 68.—A trocar inserted into the jugular vein of the horse. The compressor causes a noticeable engorgement of the vessel (Kretz in Kraus and Levaditi).

he secured a considerable amount of serum in the form of dried scales. The number of immunity units per gram of this dried material was very accurately determined. Exactly equal amounts by weight of this standard serum were placed in each of a large number of special tubes. The serum was placed in one arm and phosphorus pentoxid (P_2O_5), an active dehydrating agent, in the other. The air was then exhausted as completely as possible by an air-pump and the tubes sealed. They then were placed in a dark refrigerator, where a constant temperature was maintained. The antitoxin under these conditions was found to retain its potency undiminished for a long period. Ehrlich

placed 1700 units in each tube. Each month a tube is opened and its content of serum dissolved in 1700 c.c. of a mixture of water and glycerin. Each cubic centimeter, therefore, contains one immunity unit of antitoxin. A careful study of the toxin which Ehrlich had used in preparing this standard showed him that it contained, in addition to the 100 M. L. D. of toxin, an equal amount of toxoid. Theoretically, therefore, this immunity unit prepared by him contains sufficient antitoxin to neutralize 200 M. L. D. of a pure toxin. In view of the fact that all antitoxin
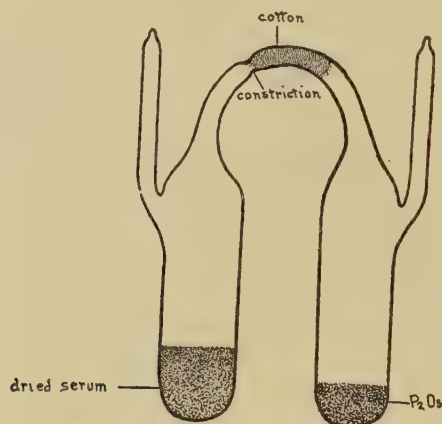
Fig. 69.—A tube used for the preservation of antitoxin by the Hygienic Laboratory of the Public Health and Marine Hospital Service: a, Serum scales, or antitoxin; b, phosphorus pentoxid, an active dehydrating agent (M. J. Rosenau, Bulletin No. 21, Hygienic Laboratory).

in this country is now standardized with reference to this U. I. of Ehrlich, the immunity unit for diphtheria antitoxin has been redefined as an amount of antitoxin equivalent to that contained in 1 c.c. of solution when the contents of the tubes prepared by Ehrlich are dissolved in 1700 c.c. of water. In the United States a similar set of tubes (Fig. 69) has been prepared by the Hygienic Laboratory of the Public Health and Marine Hospital Service, and the standard serum is sent from that laboratory to the manufacturers.

The old antitoxin cannot be used directly to determine the potency of new antitoxin, but a lot of toxin must first be standardized. It is necessary to express the strength of the toxin in terms

of the standard antitoxin.   Toxin is used which has been pre-
served until the first rapid transformation of toxin to toxoid has
ceased, and it has, therefore, become relatively stable.   A series
of syringe tubes is prepared (Fig. 70), each one containing one
standard immunity unit of antitoxin, and to these are added
varying amounts of the toxin to be tested; each is then injected
into a 250-gm. guinea-pig.   The amount of antitoxin will be more
than sufficient to neutralize the toxin in some cases, and the
animals injected will show no ill effects; in other cases the toxin
will be in excess, and the animals will die.   The amount of toxin
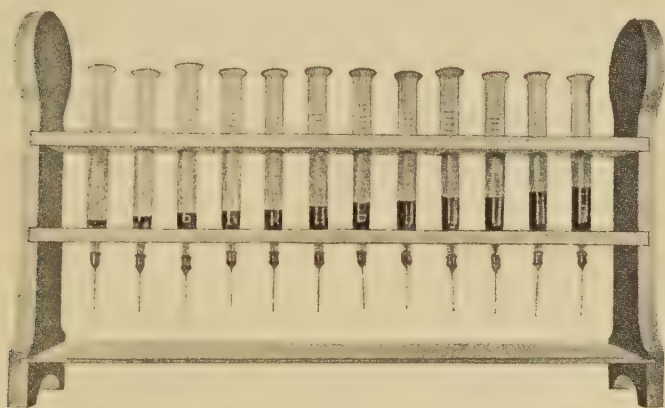
Fig. 70.—Battery of syringe tubes for testing the potency of toxin and anti-
toxin (Madsen).

which, when thus mixed with 1 unit of antitoxin, will kill a 250-gm.
guinea-pig in just four days is called the L+ dose.   The amount of
the toxin solution just necessary to neutralize an immunity unit, as
evidenced by the almost complete lack of tissue reaction at the
site of injection, is called the L0 (limit zero) dose.   In a solution
containing toxins only (no toxoids) the difference between the L+
and the L0 dose would be 1 M. L. D. of the toxin, but such toxoid-
free solutions cannot be obtained; hence the difference between
the two is greater.   The only reason that the L0 dose is determined
in practice is that a toxin solution, in which the L+ and L0 doses
differ widely, is not suitable for carrying out the test and should
be discarded.   When the L+ dose of the toxin has been satis-
factorily determined, it may then be used to determine the potency

of fresh antitoxin. A series of syringe tubes, each containing one L+ dose of the toxin, is arranged, and the varying amounts of the antitoxin serum to be tested are added. The amount of serum which will prevent a 250-gm. guinea-pig from dying in less than four days contains 1 immunity unit.

According to Ehrlich, diphtheria toxin is in reality made up of two poisons—the *true toxin* and *toxone*. The latter he holds to account for the paralyses that are frequent sequelæ in diphtheria. The same antitoxin neutralizes both the toxin and the toxone. This toxone is of some theoretic and practical importance in the standardization of the toxin and the antitoxin.

The amount of antitoxin present varies greatly in the serum produced by different horses. One which contains less than 250 U. I. per cubic centimeter is rarely used. The greater the concentration, the more valuable is the serum for prophylaxis and cure. Many efforts to concentrate diphtheria antitoxin have been made, all based upon the fact that the blood-serum is a mixture of various proteins, and that the antitoxin seems to be inseparably bound up with certain ones only of these. The removal of the proteins having no antitoxic value results in a considerable concentration of the antitoxin-holding proteins. Several methods have been devised for this purpose. All are based upon differences in solubility or coagulability of the various serum constituents. The methods of Gibson and of Banzhaf deserve mention. The former precipitates the proteins of the serum by the addition of an equal amount of a saturated solution of ammonium sulphate. This throws down the antitoxic and some other fractions of the serum, but does not precipitate certain of the non-antitoxic albumins. These are filtered out, the precipitate is dissolved in water to its original volume, and is again precipitated by ammonium sulphate. This precipitate, when filtered, is relatively free from albumins. It is then stirred into a saturated solution of sodium chlorid, which dissolves the pseudoglobulins with the antitoxin. The insoluble portions are filtered out and the clear filtrate acidified by the addition of 0.25 per cent. of 80 per cent. acetic acid. The precipitate which is thrown down is collected over hard filters, partially dried by pressure with bibulous filter-paper, and placed in a parchment bag for dialysis in running water. The acid is neu-

tralized by the addition of sodium carbonate, and dialysis is continued until the soluble salts have practically disappeared. If care is used, the antitoxin will be found to be dissolved in a much smaller quantity of water than originally present in the serum. The concentration may be from two to three and one-half times the original.

Banzhaf makes use of the various coagulation temperatures of the serum constituents in effecting their separation. The albumins and part of the non-antitoxic globulins are precipitated by heating for twenty-four hours at 58°. Sodium chlorid crystals are added to saturation, and much of the remaining globulin, transformed by heat, is precipitated, leaving the pseudoglobulins
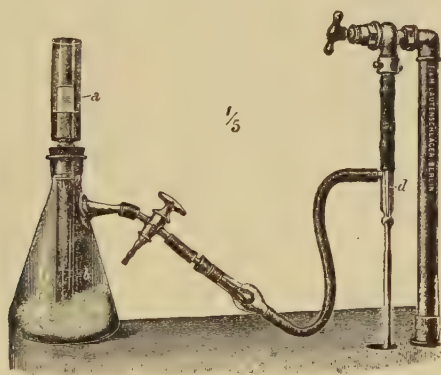
Fig. 71.—One type of filtration apparatus used for serum: *a*, Filter; *b*, test-tube within a filter flask from which the air is partially exhausted by the vacuum pump at *d* (Weidanz).

and the associated antitoxin in solution. The clear filtrate is acidified with acetic acid, and the precipitate prepared as in the preceding method. By this method it is claimed a concentration of several times the original may be obtained.

The antitoxic serum is in all cases filtered through sterile unglazed porcelain, and, after the addition of a small amount of preservative, placed in sterile containers and sealed.

Preparation of Tetanus Toxin and Antitoxin.—The tetanus toxin is prepared by growing *Clostridium tetani* in broth under anaërobic conditions. This may be accomplished by the use of a

hydrogen atmosphere, but more easily by covering the medium with a layer of paraffin or other neutral oil. The methods of preparing the toxin for use and of manufacture of the antitoxin do not differ materially from those used in the production of diphtheria antitoxin.

Unlike diphtheria toxin, the tetanus toxin may be dried and preserved indefinitely without deterioration. It is, therefore, the toxin and not the antitoxin which is sent out from the Hygienic
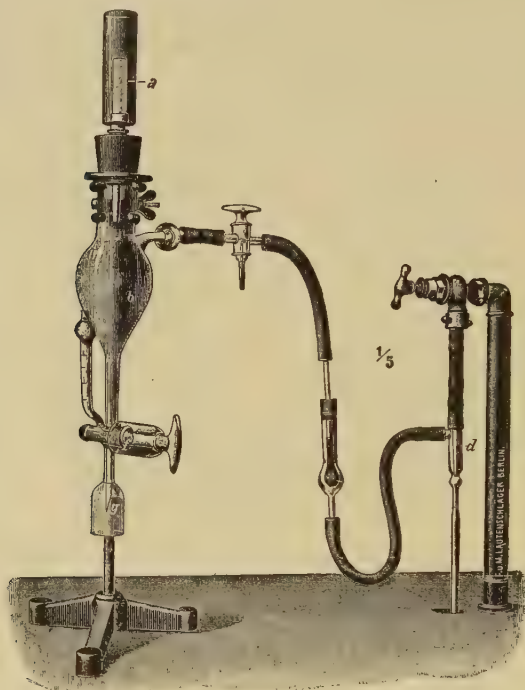
Fig. 72.—A filtration apparatus after Uhlenhuth and Weidanz.

Laboratory to the serum laboratories for the purpose of standardization in the United States. A standard toxin has been prepared at this laboratory, and its M. L. D. for a 350-gm. guinea-pig carefully determined. This is sent out in dried form, and is diluted before use, so that each cubic centimeter contains 100 M. L. D. of the toxin for a 350-gm. guinea-pig. The immunity unit is defined as follows: "The immunity unit for measuring the strength of

tetanus antitoxin shall be ten times the least quantity of antitetanic serum necessary to save the life of a 350-gm. guinea-pig for ninety-six hours, against the official test-dose of a standard toxin furnished by the Hygienic Laboratory of the Public Health and Marine Hospital Service." [1]

Another statement is that one-tenth of a unit, mixed with 100 M. L. D. of the standard toxin, contains " just enough free poison in the mixture to kill the guinea-pig in four days after subcutaneous injection." The amount of toxoid has not been accurately determined in this test-toxin used; therefore, the standardization test must in all cases be in terms of the Hygienic Laboratory toxin, no other sample of toxin being suitable. The test-dose is called the L+ dose, as in the diphtheria toxin.

Preparation of Other Toxins and Antitoxins.—As has before been stated, antitoxins have been prepared for a large number of toxins. The two already discussed are by far of the greatest importance commercially. In the development of theories of immunity considerable use has been made of antiricin and antiabrin. An antitoxin for pollen (called pollantin) has been used to some extent in hay-fever. Antitoxins against snake venom may be purchased upon the market. They are of considerable importance in certain tropical countries, particularly India, where poisonous snakes abound.

[1] Treasury Dept., Circular No. 61, Oct. 25, 1907.

AGGLUTINATION AND PRECIPITATION

(Antibodies of Ehrlich's Second Order)

GRUBER, in 1896, discovered that the blood of animals immunized against *Bacillus typhosus*, or the blood of patients having the disease, when added to a liquid culture of the organism, caused the bacteria to cease moving and to clump together. This phenomenon has been named *agglutination*. Later it was found that the use of protein substances as antigens caused the production in the body of substances which, when mixed with the protein in solution, would form a precipitate. This is known as the *precipitation* phenomenon. The antibody responsible for agglutination is called an *agglutinin;* for precipitation, a *precipitin*.

Differentiation of Precipitation and Agglutination.—The distinction between agglutination and precipitation may be stated as follows: Agglutination occurs when the antigen is in suspension in the form of individual cells or finely divided particles. Precipitation occurs when the antigen is a colloid in solution.

Agglutination.—Agglutinins may be grouped into two classes, normal and immune. A *normal agglutinin* is one present in the body without any infection or systematic immunization. An *immune agglutinin* is one that is developed as a result of the presence of an organism or its products in the body. There is no reason to suppose that the normal and immune agglutinins differ from each other in any essential particular. It is possible that all normal agglutinins are in reality produced as a result of an undetected infection or to the presence of the so-called group agglutinins to be considered later.

The agglutination reaction is said to be specific; that is, the agglutinin will agglutinate, in general, only the homologous organism. The term *homologous* is used to indicate the relation-

174

ship between an antigen and its specific antibody. The serum of a glandered animal is *homologous* for the glanders bacillus, but is *heterologous* for the typhoid bacillus.

Agglutinins are formed by the body for most foreign cells which may enter or be injected. Red blood-cells, other body-cells, protozoa or bacteria, may be the antigens which provoke agglutinin production. Under the right conditions the clumping will occur whether the cells be living or dead, motile or non-motile.

Agglutinogen.—The antigen which causes the body to react and produce agglutinins is called an *agglutinogen*. It is evident that the agglutinogen is not the cell used for injection, but some substance produced by it. A culture of *Bacillus typhosus* in broth may be passed through a porcelain filter, and the sterile filtrate will still cause agglutinin production when injected into the animal body. The agglutinogen is either something thrown off by the antigenic cell in the process of growth, or formed as a result of autolytic disintegration and digestion. Evidently some constituent of the cell excites the production of the antibodies or agglutinins, and these, therefore, unite with the corresponding material in the bacterial or other cell.

Ehrlich's Theory of Agglutinin Production.—According to Ehrlich, the agglutinogen unites with the receptors of the body-cells, which are diverted in this way from their normal function. As a result, there is an overproduction of the receptors and they are freed as agglutinins. These freed receptors or agglutinins differ in several ways from the antitoxins, for they not only combine with the antigen, but they bring about certain changes in it. Such receptors, to differentiate them from antitoxins and similar antibodies (receptors of the first order), are termed receptors of the second order.

Constitution of the Agglutinin.—The agglutinin may be shown to consist of two portions—a binding group and an agglutinating group. The presence of the binding group, or *haptophore*, may be shown by mixing bacteria with a serum containing the specific agglutinin, and centrifuging. The supernatant liquid will be found to have lost its agglutinating power—that is, the agglutinins will all have united with the bacteria first added, and will be removed thereby from solution. The agglutinating group of the agglutinin

is called the *agglutinophore*, the *zymophore*, or the *zymotoxic* group. This group is unstable, and may be destroyed by heating to a temperature of 60° to 75° and by acids and alkalis. It changes with age slowly. An agglutinin which has lost its zymotoxic group is called an *agglutinoid*. The agglutinoid still retains the capacity to unite with the antigen, but has lost the ability to act upon it. The presence of agglutinoids may be demonstrated by mixing a serum containing them with the homologous organism, and allowing the mixture to stand for a time. No agglutination will take place, nor will it occur when fresh agglutinin is added. The

Fig. 73.—Agglutination and formation of agglutinins: 1, Diagrammatic representation of bacterial or other antigenic cells with fixed (*a*) and freed (*b*) agglutinogen groups. 2, Union of agglutinogen with cell receptors of the second order: *a*, Molecule of the cell protoplasm, with a cell receptor of the first order (*e*) and of the second order (*b*), showing its haptophore (*c*) and its agglutinophore or zymophore (*d*); *f*, an agglutinogen group united to the cell receptor. 3, Overproduction of cell receptors *b* and freed receptors or agglutinin molecules at *c*. 4, Union of agglutinin with the bacterial or other cell: *a*, Bacterial cell; *b*, agglutinogen still attached as cell receptor to bacterial cell; *c*, agglutinin; *d*, agglutinin united to agglutinogen.

agglutinoid unites with the cell and blocks the union of the agglutinin. Certain investigators have claimed to have produced antiagglutinins by the use of agglutinins as an antigen, inoculating them into another species of animal. These antiagglutinins, when mixed with the agglutinins, unite with them and prevent them from uniting with the homologous antigen when it is added.

Body or Somatic and Flagellar Agglutinins.—It is probable that agglutinogen in motile organisms may originate in two ways—from the flagella or from the cell-bodies. Agglutinins have been differentiated in such cases into those that bring about agglutination

by combining with the flagella (*flagellar agglutinins*) and those
which unite with the cell-body (*somatic* or *body agglutinins*).

Method of Agglutinin Action.—Common salt must be present
in any serum which agglutinates. Its function is not thoroughly
understood, nor is the general phenomenon of agglutination itself
susceptible of a simple explanation. The older theories of the
change whereby the organisms are made glutinous by the union
of the agglutinin are to be discarded, and the true explanation is
doubtless to be found somewhere in the field of colloid chemistry.
Concerning the exact nature of the change in the cell we know
little or nothing. The cells are certainly not seriously injured;
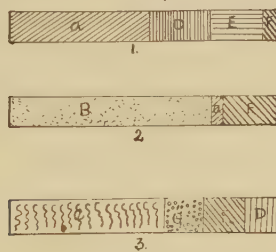
Fig. 74.—Diagrammatic representation of group agglutination: Let 1, 2,
and 3 represent the agglutinogen given off by three related species of micro-
organisms. The organisms 1 and 2 have agglutinogens *a* and *F* in common,
but in quite different proportions. No. 3 likewise has *F* in common with both
of the others, and *D* in common with 1. If the area covered in the diagrams
represents the relative proportions of agglutinogen of each kind, the readiness
with which one species may be agglutinated by a heterologous serum may
be understood.

in fact, an organism may grow luxuriantly in a serum which agglu-
tinates it. One of the delicate tests for agglutinability is to grow
the organism in such a serum, and note the production of long
threads (Pfaundler's reaction).

Probably the most helpful conception of the agglutination
reaction is to be found in a comparison with the phenomenon
termed "salting out" of proteins. A study of a bacterial sus-
pension made by passing an electric current will generally show
the bacteria moving toward the positive electrode. This shows
that the bacterial cells carry a negative charge and tend to repel
each other and thus keep in suspension. If high concentrations

12

of certain salts are added to many bacterial suspensions, the bacterial cells will flocculate. Saturated ammonium sulphate solution, for example, will flocculate or agglutinate typhoid bacilli. Apparently the electrical charge on the bacteria has been neutralized, they no longer repel each other, and tend to stick together and settle out. A study of the specific agglutination of bacteria by serum indicates the probable function of the agglutinin to be sensitization to salt, the latter producing the actual clumping. It can be shown, for example, that a salt free serum containing a specific agglutinin will not agglutinate the homologous organisms until salt is added.

Spontaneous agglutination of suspensions of bacteria sometimes occur. For example, difficulty is sometimes experienced with typhoid bacteria used for agglutination tests when suspended in physiological salt solution as a result of their spontaneous flocculation, that is, their agglutination in the absence of specific antisera. This may usually be corrected by using a lower concentration of salt. Suitable dilution of salt solution will give a concentration which will no longer cause agglutination except upon addition of the specific serum.

Some attempt has been made to use the fact that many bacteria agglutinate at definite hydrogen ion concentrations for purpose of identification. It has not proved practical.

Group Agglutinins.—The statement has been made that agglutinins are specific. This must be somewhat modified. It has been shown that the serum homologous for a certain organism may clump to a less degree some other species or closely related forms, and in rare instances forms quite unrelated. This seems to be due to the fact that not all the agglutinogen given off by a particular organism is of one type; the agglutinins produced, therefore, are likewise of different types. It is entirely probable that closely related organisms should throw off some identical agglutinogen, and, therefore, have some common agglutinins. Agglutination of an organism by a heterologous serum is termed *group agglutination.* The agglutinins which are specific for the organism are called its *chief agglutinins,* and those common to two or more organisms are termed *coagglutinins.* It may sometimes be shown that differences exist between the agglutinins produced

by different strains of the same organism. The importance is apparent, therefore, of using care in testing the agglutinating power of any serum to dilute to such an extent that the action of the coagglutinins may be negligible and that of the specific or chief agglutinins, recognized.

Agglutination Tests in Disease Diagnosis.—The fact that an organism developing in the body generally excites the production of a specific agglutinin has led to the wide use of the fact in the diagnosis of certain infectious diseases. Not all diseases cause an appreciable production of agglutinin. The test is carried out by mixing serum from the suspect with the organism. If agglutination occurs in proper dilution, it is evident that the specific organism is or has been present in the patient. The test is frequently reversed, and serum from an animal showing high agglutinating power is used to differentiate between different species and races of bacteria. The principal disease organisms which cause the production of appreciable amounts of agglutinin are as follows:

Bacterium typhi (typhoid fever), *Bacterium paratyphi* (paratyphoid), *Bacterium enteritidis* (meat-poisoning), *Bacterium dysenteriæ* (bacillary dysentery), *Bacterium coli, Pseudomonas pyocyanea, Pfeifferella mallei* (glanders), *Pasteurella pestis* (bubonic plague), *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (tuberculosis), *Bacterium melitensis* (Malta fever), *Streptococcus pyogenes*, and some other pyogenic cocci *meningitidis* (epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis), *Vibrio choleræ* (Asiatic cholera) and others. The test is not commonly used in practice for the recognition of all of them— some are of experimental interest only.

The diagnosis of disease by agglutination, particularly of typhoid, is commonly called the "Gruber-Widal," or simply the "Widal" test. The test may be made either by observation of a hanging drop or *microscopically*, or it may be made by naked-eye observation of the reaction in the test-tube, or *macroscopically*.

Microscopic Widal, or Agglutination Test.—Dilutions of the serum are generally made 1:10, 1:20, and 1:40, or even more. To prepare a 1:40 dilution for a hanging drop, place 19 loops of physiological salt solution, separately, upon a clean microscopic slide, then add one loopful of serum to be tested, and mix thoroughly with the diluent. Place one loopful of a suspension of the organism (broth culture or suspension from the surface of an agar slant

in physiological salt solution) upon each of two clean cover-glasses;
to one add one loopful of the serum dilution, to the other a loopful
of sterile physiological salt solution.   Invert over the cavity of a
hollow-ground slide and examine microscopically.   The check
should show the organisms uniformly distributed over the field,
and moving about actively, if the organism is motile.   The organ-
isms in the other may show no change, but if the serum has
come from a patient infected with the organism, the bacteria will
soon begin to clump together, and in the course of a few minutes
to an hour practically all of the organisms will be found so

A   B
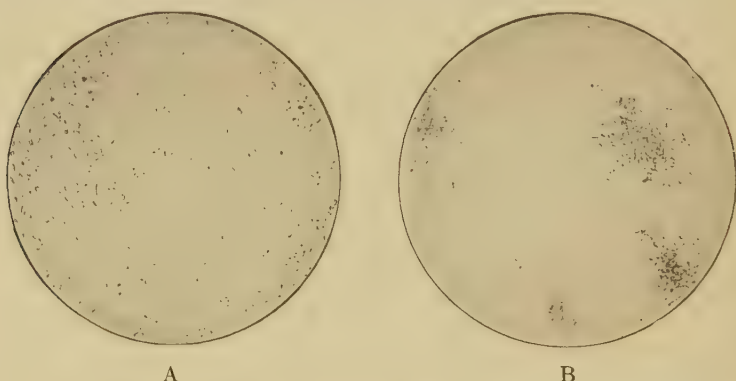
Fig. 75.—The Widal or agglutination test of the typhoid bacillus, using
serum from a typhoid patient: A, Check showing the uniform distribution
of the bacilli; B, clumps of bacteria in the positive test (Jordan).

clumped, very few or none remaining isolated in the field.   Motility
is lost in motile forms.   The test is a very delicate one, as is evi-
denced by the fact that the agglutination may sometimes be secured
in dilutions as great as 1: 100,000.   The higher the dilution
at which agglutination occurs, the greater is the specificity of
the reaction.   As has been seen, the dilution must be great enough
in every case to escape the activity of the normal and the common
group agglutinins.   Serum from an animal that has been immun-
ized against a specific organism may be used in the recognition
of that organism.   Typhoid serum in this way can be used in the
detection of the typhoid bacillus.   Such a test also enables one to
differentiate between closely related forms, as the varieties of the
dysentery and of the paratyphoid bacilli.

Macroscopic Widal, or Agglutination Test.—A series of small test-tubes is prepared, each tube containing a definite amount of a suspension of the organism.   To these are added varying quantities of serum, making dilutions of 1: 10, 1: 50, 1: 100, 1: 200, and higher. A positive reaction is indicated by the appearance of small flocculi of bacteria, which soon settle to the bottom, leaving the super-natant liquid clear.   The reaction may not be complete for several hours, and the tubes should be allowed to stand for twenty-four hours before making final observations.   Check tubes should always be kept as controls, in which the liquid should remain uniformly turbid.   Advantage is taken by certain manufacturers of the fact that dead bacteria, as well as the living, may be agglutinated.   They make " agglutinometers " containing all the apparatus and materials for making a complete test.   The bacterial suspension supplied will keep for a long period.

Pfaundler's Reaction.—Pfaundler has called attention to the fact that a mixture of serum containing typhoid agglutinin with typhoid bacteria will cause the latter organisms, when incubated, to grow into threads.   The diagnosis of typhoid as worked out by Mandelbaum is as follows: Mix the patient's blood with 15 parts of a broth culture of *Bacterium typhi* containing 1 per cent. sodium citrate.   The mixture is drawn up into a bulb pipette and incubated for five hours.   A microscopic examination of the supernatant liquid at the end of this time will show either actively motile bacilli or thread formation.   In the latter case the diagnosis is positive.

Significance of Agglutinins in Immunity.—Agglutination takes place in the body as well as without.   Clumps of typhoid bacilli may be found in various capillaries in cases of typhoid.   It is uncertain what significance is to be attached to the phenomenon. It can scarcely be of advantage, except possibly that it prevents to some degree the distribution of the bacteria through the blood.

Hemagglutinins.—Certain bacteria, and certain toxic materials from plants and animals, contain substances which agglutinate red blood-cells.   Such agglutinins are termed *hemagglutinins*. When this agglutination occurs in the blood, it results in the formation of emboli of the red blood-cells.   These emboli are of considerable significance in some diseases.   Hemagglutinins may

also be formed by the injection of the red blood-cells of one species into another.

Precipitins.—The precipitins are quite analogous to the agglutinins. They are formed as a result of the injection of a great variety of proteins or protein derivatives. An antigen which induces the development of precipitins is known as a *precipitogen*. The precipitogen is doubtless the protein molecule itself. It consists essentially of a binding or haptophore group only. The precipitin seems to be formed in a manner similar to that already described for agglutinins. It may be shown to consist of a *zymophore* or precipitating group, and a *haptophore* or binding group. The zymophore is easily destroyed by heat, but the haptophore is thermostabile. A precipitin that has lost its zymophore is known as a *precipitoid*. The precipitins are quite specific, but *group precipitation* will take place when related proteins are treated with a serum homologous to one of them. The blood-sera of various ruminants, for example, exhibit group precipitation. An antiserum homologous to human serum will precipitate the serum of anthropoid apes.

The work of Nuttall has shown quite definitely the limits of group precipitation. He tested 900 kinds of blood, using in all 30 antisera, and made a total of about 16,000 combinations. He showed that, on the whole, the closer the relationship, the greater the amount of common or group precipitation. For example, he determined that the blood of apes of the old world would yield a heavier precipitate with human antiserum than would that of apes of the new world. Another exception to specificity has been found in the protein of the crystalline lens: an antiserum for the lens protein of man or the ox will produce a precipitate in solution containing the lens protein from other animals not at all closely related. It has been suggested that the cataract of the eye may be due to the formation of an autoprecipitin for the protein of the lens and its consequent partial coagulation or precipitation *in situ*.

The mechanism of precipitation is not well understood, but it is probably to be explained on the basis of certain facts of colloid chemistry. The test is so delicate that a positive reaction

has been secured with a dilution of 1 : 100,000 of egg-white, while the ordinary protein tests of the chemist fail to show 1 : 1000.

Uses Made of the Precipitation Phenomenon.—Several practical applications have been made of precipitation in the differentiation of proteins. These are the recognition of blood-stains, the differentiation of meats from different species of animals, particularly horse-flesh from beef, and the diagnosis of many other protein-containing substances, including bacteria and their products, as in the diagnosis of glanders and of anthrax.

Recognition of Blood-stains.—It is sometimes necessary in murder trials to determine with certainty the origin of a blood-stain. The fact that the stain has been produced by blood may be easily demonstrated by the chemist, but he has no ready means of telling with certainty whether the blood is of animal or human origin. Uhlenhuth was the first to call attention to the value of this test in legal medicine. The precipitation test, when properly carried out, enables the determination to be made with a high degree of certainty. An antiserum specific for human blood must be secured first by injections of human serum into a rabbit, at intervals of a few days, for a period of several weeks. A bit of the material with the blood-stain is placed in a watch-glass and 5 c.c. of sterile physiological salt solution is added. This is allowed to stand until some of the blood proteins have been dissolved. This may be shown by blowing into the liquid through a capillary tube, when a fairly permanent foam will be produced. If any dirt or sediment appears in the solution, it is removed by filtration. An effort is made to secure a dilution of the serum of about 1 : 1000. The diluted serum is placed in a series of test-tubes, and the specific antiserum is added. If the blood-stain is from human blood, the precipitate will make itself apparent as a clouding in the course of a few minutes. The reliability of the test has been recognized by the German courts, and the results have been accepted as evidence. By varying the procedure, the same method may be used in differentiating animal bloods.

Differentiation of Meats.—Meat inspection, particularly in certain European countries, includes the differentiation of meats. In certain localities large quantities of horse-flesh are used for food, but the law forbids that horse-flesh be sold as beef. There are cer-

tain chemical differences between the two,—differences in the composition of the fat and possibly in the abundance of glycogen,—but these differences require careful chemical analysis and examination for their recognition.   The precipitation test furnishes an easier and more reliable method for reaching the same end.   Furthermore, the testing may be extended to an examination of mixed meats, as sausages, and the various kinds of meat present determined.   Specific antisera must be prepared for each of the meats which it is desired to recognize by mincing the meat and soaking it in physiological salt solution.   This material is then used in the immunization of a rabbit by repeated injections during several weeks.   The flesh to be tested is likewise extracted with physiological salt solution, the solution filtered and tested as in the blood diagnosis with the various specific antisera.   It will give a most prominent precipitate with its homologous antiserum, and the differentiation may thus be made.

Differentiation of Bacteria.—It has been found that the injection of the bacteria-free filtrates of liquid cultures of bacteria will induce the production of an antiserum specific for the filtrate from that particular type of organism.   This method is not as reliable as the agglutination method of differentiating bacteria, but it may be used, and is just as specific.

Similar tests have been made to differentiate from each other the proteins derived from certain plants and plant-seeds.   It may be stated that, in general, the injection of any protein in absolutely pure condition will cause the production of the homologous specific antiserum in the animal injected.

CHAPTER XVI

CYTOLYSINS, INCLUDING BACTERIOLYSINS, AND HEMOLYSINS

(Antibodies of Ehrlich's Third Order)

THE use of animal, plant, or bacterial cells as antigens has been found usually to cause the development, by the tissues, of specific antibodies, which have the power of destroying these cells, and in many cases of actually dissolving or digesting them. These antibodies are termed *cytotoxins*. In most cases the action is *lytic* or dissolving; the antibodies are *lysins* or *cytolysins*. Cytolysins are frequently subdivided with reference to their antigens, as *bacteriolysins, hemolysins, nephrolysins*, etc. Any substance which destroys bacterial cells is said to be *bactericidal*, and this expression is used when the method of cell destruction is not specified. Cytolysins are produced by certain bacteria, and are also found in certain snake venoms.

Bacteriolysins were first noted by Pfeiffer. He found that when cholera spirilla were injected into the peritoneal cavity of the immune guinea-pig, the serous exudate rapidly dissolved and destroyed them. This lytic action of the blood-serum is called *Pfeiffer's phenomenon*. Later, it was discovered that this reaction would take place just as well in a test-tube (*in vitro*) as in the animal body. .

Cytolysins.—Cytolysins have been shown to be made up of two elements. When a cytolytic serum is heated to 56° for half an hour, or is allowed to stand for a time, it loses its lytic property. This is regained, however, when a little fresh *normal* serum is added. The normal serum is said to *reactivate* the immune serum. The normal serum alone is not lytic, nor is the immune serum, but when mixed, they will destroy cells. It is evident, therefore, that the cytolysin is made up of two constituents, neither of which can act without the other. The thermostabile constituent of the im-

185

mune serum is termed *amboceptor;*[1] the thermolabile constituent of normal serum is termed *complement*.[2]

Action of Amboceptor.—It may be shown that the amboceptor unites with the antigenic cell with which it comes in contact. This may be demonstrated by the following experiment: A heated immune serum (*i. e.,* one containing amboceptor only) is added to the homologous cell, allowed to stand for a time, then, by means of repeated centrifugation and washings with physiological salt solution, the serum may be completely removed. To the washed cells normal fresh serum (*i. e.,* containing complement) is added, when cytolysis may be observed. This seems to show that the amboceptor unites with the cell and cannot be removed by washing, but cannot, on the other hand, destroy the cell until the complement is added.

It is apparent that the essential action is the sensitization of the antigen to the action of the complement.

Action of Complement.—Normal serum containing complement only shows no cytolytic activity. An experiment reciprocal to the preceding, the addition of complement containing serum to a suspension of cells, followed by centrifugation and washing, and the addition of amboceptor, will not result in cytolysis. The complement is evidently not bound to the cell, and can only be attached through the amboceptor. The amboceptor may be considered as a structure which links or binds the complement to the cell and enables it to destroy such cell, or, perhaps better, as a substance which sensitizes the cell to the action of the complement.

Specificity of Amboceptors and Complements.—The amboceptor is formed usually as the result of immunization, and is specific for its antigen. The amboceptor for the red blood-cells of one species of animal will not unite with those of an unrelated species. Inasmuch as normal serum will activate many different amboceptors, it has been argued that all complement is of a single type. Ehrlich has attempted to demonstrate that there are many complements, and the general activating power of certain fresh sera

---

[1] Synonyms of amboceptor are immune body, Immunkörper, Zwischenkörper, substance sensibilisatrice, copula, desmon, philocytase, fixateur, preparator, Hilfkörper.

[2] Synonyms of complement are addiment, alexin, cytase.

for many amboceptors is due to the multiplicity of the complements which they contain, but the weight of evidence is against this conception.

Ehrlich's Conception of Formation of Amboceptor and Complement.—Ehrlich calls an amboceptor a freed cell receptor of the third order. Such a receptor he believes exists in the form of a double haptophore, and unites first with food or other materials, then, by means of the other haptophore, with complement which is present in the serum. The latter doubtless normally brings
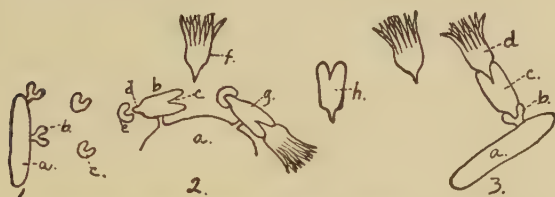
Fig. 76.—Formation and action of cytolysins: 1, Bacterial or other cell, *a*, with receptors, *b*, which are thrown off as antigens, *c*; 2, protoplasmic molecule of the body *a*, with a receptor of the third order, *b*. This receptor, by means of its cytophilous haptophore, *d*, can unite with the antigen, *e*, and by means of its complementophilous haptophore, *c*, it can unite with the complement *f*. At *g* is shown a receptor with both haptophores occupied. At *h* is a freed cell receptor or amboceptor; 3, a bacterial or other cell, *a*, to which an amboceptor has united by means of the receptor *b*, and with a complement united to *c*. This completes the lytic system, and the cell may be destroyed by the complement.

about changes of a digestive nature which enable the cell protoplasm to make use of the food. The antigens used in immunization unite with such receptors and divert them from their normal function. Possibly the cell is injured; it is, at any rate, stimulated to an overproduction of these receptors, and they are thrown free in the blood as amboceptors.

Group Cytolysins.—It may be shown that related cells contain some similar antigens, and that the cytolysins for one species of cell may dissolve in low dilutions the cells of another species. This phenomenon is similar to that of group agglutination, and seems to be based upon the same general facts.

Bacteriolysins.—Bacteriolysins are normally present for certain bacteria in the blood of some animals, as bacteriolysins for the anthrax organism in dog's blood. They may be developed for many organisms by systematic immunization, or they may appear during the course of an infection. Their presence may be demonstrated in two ways—either by direct microscopic examination or by plating methods. In the first method the organisms are mixed with the serum and examined microscopically. They can be found, by actual observation, gradually to disintegrate and disappear. The second method offers certain advantages. The serum is mixed with the bacteria, and from time to time portions of the mixture are plated out, and the rapidity of the destruction determined by the relative number of colonies that develop. Neisser and Wichsberg have developed a technic which enables them to differentiate dead and living cells by the fact that leukobases are formed from methylene-blue during life and not after death.

Bacteriolytic Sera Used in Practice.—By no means all bacteria will induce the production of bacteriolysins in any quantity in the body, as, for example, the pyogenic organisms and the pneumococcus. The members of the intestinal group and the spirilla, on the other hand, are readily destroyed by this means. Antisera have been prepared and used for several of the latter. In the manufacture of the antisera either living or dead organisms may be used. Methods of titration, whereby the actual bacteriolytic content of the serum used may be known, have not thus far been developed. The antisera generally have other antibodies developed in addition to the bacteriolysins. Plague serum and that specific for swine erysipelas contain some bacteriolysins, and probably the same is true of the sera used in immunizing against hog-cholera and against rinderpest.

Bacteriolytic sera for passive immunization are prepared by the methodical introduction of the organism into the animal body. Either the first injections must be made with dead organisms or an animal which has recovered from an attack of the disease must be chosen. The animal is *hyperimmunized* by increasing doses of the virulent organism after the first establishment of immunity. This results in the accumulation of considerable

quantities of immune substances (amboceptors) in the blood. This serum may then be used in passive immunization. *Vaccination*, or the injection of dead or living bacteria into the body, with the resultant development of an active immunity, owes its efficiency, in some cases at least, to the production, by the body, of the bacteriolysins specific for the organism.

Bacteriolytic sera for passive immunization are not employed against many diseases. Some organisms, as has been stated, cause the production of little or no bacteriolysin. The bacteriolysin developed in the blood of one species is not always suitable for the passive immunization of another. There have been various reasons advanced for this fact: the injection of the foreign serum may cause the production of anti-amboceptors, or of anticomplements, or of some other antibody which would inhibit the lytic action of the injected serum. Complement soon disappears from an immune serum; therefore the amboceptors are dependent for their activation upon the normal complement of the blood. This complement may not in all cases be suitable for combination with the particular amboceptor used, and the lytic activity be thus inhibited. When the antiserum to be used for passive immunization comes from the same species of animal, as is the case in immunization against hog-cholera and rinderpest, these objections do not seem to obtain.

Hemolysins.—Hemolysins for the red blood-cells of one animal usually may be obtained by injection of these into another. They are divided into three types, the classification being made upon the basis of relationship. *Heterolysins* are developed by the injection of the red blood-cells of one species into another; *isolysins* by the red blood-cells of one animal into another animal of the same species, and *autolysins* by an individual for his own red blood-cells. The last two, particularly the autolysins, are not easily produced or demonstrated.

The study of hemolysis has proved of great value in two ways: First, hemolysis is a phenomenon that may be easily observed, and it has been used, therefore, more than any other, in the study of the nature and activity of cytolysins. Hemolysis is readily detected, because the hemoglobin escapes into the solution which remains permanently red, while unhemolyzed red blood-corpuscles

soon sink to the bottom, leaving the blood-serum clear and color-less.   Second, it is of indirect use in the diagnosis of certain dis-eases, and in the recognition of certain organic substances.   This second use is called variously *absorption* or *fixation of comple-ment,* or, after the name of its discoverers, the *Bordet-Gengou phenomenon.*

Fixation of Complement and Its Utilization.—The method of complement fixation is one that enables us to determine the pres-ence or absence of cytotoxic, cytolytic, or similar antibodies in a serum.   Inasmuch as such substances are generally present in the serum of a diseased individual, the determination of their presence may constitute in such cases a diagnosis of the disease.   A specific example, the demonstration of fixation of complement by use of serum from a glandered horse, will first be discussed.   Five dif-ferent solutions are always needed in carrying out a test of this kind:

1. Suspension of *Pfeifferella mallei* (the glanders bacillus antigen).

2. Heated serum of glandered animal (amboceptor).

3. Normal serum, usually taken from guinea-pig (complement).

4. Red blood-cells.   Those of sheep generally used (antigen).

5. Heated serum of rabbit immunized against 4 (amboceptor).

Suppose that 1 and 2 are mixed, and a small amount of 3 added. Evidently the complete bacteriolytic system is present and bac-teriolysis should occur.   This is difficult to demonstrate micro-scopically, however, and would not be demonstrated at all in that manner if an excess of the first antigen or suspension of bacilli is used.   It is evident that the complement added will be used up or " bound " by the combination of bacillus and amboceptor.   No. 4 and 5 are next added.   They unite with each other, but, as all the complement has been used up, there can be no hemolysis. The fact that hemolysis does not occur is proof, therefore, that the complement has been removed.   Since hemolysis does not occur, amboceptors for *Pf. mallei* must be present in the horse's blood, and the diagnosis of the disease would be positive.   If hemolysis does occur, evidently the patient's serum lacks amboceptor specific for *Pf. mallei,* and the diagnosis would be negative.   The test may be reversed also, and some organism suspected of being *Pf. mallei* may be substituted for No. 1, and the same technic carried

through.   A lack of hemolysis would indicate that the organism had bound the amboceptor and complement, and, therefore, was *Pf. mallei* in fact, while hemolysis would indicate the reverse. The accompanying figure will make this clearer.   In carrying out a test of this kind it is necessary to arrange a very complete series of checks.   When properly managed the method is very accurate and has yielded results of value in many cases.
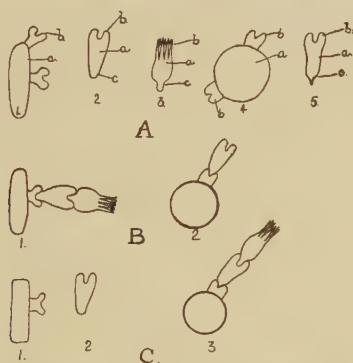
Fig. 77.—Fixation or absorption of complement: A, Diagrammatic representation of—1, Bacterial cell, *a* (*Pfeifferella mallei* in text), with antigen *b*; 2, amboceptor for the antigen of (1) (the glanders serum); 3, normal complement of the guinea-pig's blood with the haptophore *c* and the zymophore *b*; 4, red blood-cell (sheep) with the antigenic receptors *b*; 5, amboceptor from the blood of the rabbit immunized against 4.   B, 1, Bacterial cell + amboceptor + complement makes a complete lytic series; bacteriolysis occurs, and the complement is removed from solution; 2, the red blood-cell + its amboceptor; no hemolysis, as the complement has been used by the other series.   C, 1, Bacterial cell not *Pf. mallei*, to which amboceptor (2) cannot unite, hence the complement is not removed from the serum, and when the red blood-cells and their specific amboceptor are added, a complete hemolytic system (3) is formed and hemolysis occurs.

This test has been most used in the diagnosis of syphilis, the antigen being secured from a macerated syphilitic fetus or from normal beef heart and the amboceptor from the blood of the suspect.   This is known as the *Wassermann syphilis* test.   A similar test may be used for diagnosis in other diseases.   The same method may be used also in the differentiation of proteins. In this case the antigen used is the protein, and the first amboceptor is in the serum of an animal immunized against this protein. The method is even more reliable than the precipitation tests

already discussed, but is more difficult to carry out, hence is less frequently used.   It may be used for the identifications of blood-stains.

Cytotoxins.—Antisera have been prepared for a number of different body-cells, as epithelial cells, spermatozoa, and leuko-cytes.   Within limits they seem to be specific.   It is believed that some pathological conditions in the body are produced by *autocytotoxins,* substances produced by the body poisonous for its own tissues.

Conglutination.—In the course of experimentation by Ehrlich and Sachs it was observed that upon the addition of fresh unheated horse serum to a suspension of red blood-cells of the guinea-pig slight hemolysis occurred.   The addition of heated ox serum to a suspension of the red corpuscles resulted in no hemolysis.   An addition of both inactive ox serum and fresh horse serum resulted in very active hemolysis.   The phenomenon is explained on the basis that the guinea-pig corpuscles are sensitized by the ambo-ceptor of the ox serum and thus made susceptible to the action of the complement in the fresh horse serum.

In checking the experiments of the above investigators Bordet and Gay observed that the inactivated ox serum has but slight agglutinating power for the corpuscles of the guinea-pig, and that fresh horse serum likewise agglutinates them only slowly and slightly, whereas a mixture of the two sera causes rapid and complete agglutination.   The ox serum seemingly increases the hemo-lysin and agglutinin of the horse serum, and Bordet and Gay therefore concluded that this property was due to a thermostabile substance peculiar to the ox serum.   This they call conglutinin, and class it with the colloids.   Their explanation is that guinea-pig corpuscles are affected by sensitizers (amboceptors) in both the horse and ox serum.   After this sensitization the corpuscles are in a condition to fix the complement of the horse serum.   This complement possesses but slight hemolytic power.   But when the corpuscles have become sensitized and laden with the comple-ment their properties of molecular affinity are modified to the extent that they become capable of attracting the colloidal substance (conglutinin) of the ox serum which combines with

them.   The result is twofold: Strong agglutination occurs and the corpuscles are more readily destroyed by complement.

Applying these principles, Stranigg, Pfeiler, Strenge, and others have made use of the so-called conglutination test for the diagnosis of dourine, glanders, syphilis, and various other diseases.   The technic for the glanders conglutination test is much the same as that for complement fixation.   A definite quantity (established by previous titration) of normal unheated horse serum is added to a tube containing inactivated blood-serum of the horse and an extract of the glanders bacillus (previously titrated).   This mixture is incubated for one hour at $37\frac{1}{2}°$.   There are then added the inactivated ox serum (previously titrated) and a suspension of washed red blood-cells of the sheep (or other animal).   A second incubation for one or two hours is then made.

If the serum being tested is from a glandered animal the red blood-cells settle to the bottom, leaving the fluid above clear; if from an animal not glandered the corpuscles gather at first in clumps and later hemolyze slowly, making the fluid red.

The advantages claimed for the conglutination test are that it is applicable in asses and mules which possess anticomplementary substances in their blood-serum, and that the ingredients of the test are more readily obtainable than are those for complement fixation.   The test is considered even more delicate than the complement fixation and requires more careful titration of the reagents. Pfeiler claims for it a greater degree of accuracy, and cites cases in which it was positive where both agglutination and complement fixation were negative, subsequent postmortem verifying the accuracy of the test.

CHAPTER XVII

OPSONINS AND PHAGOCYTOSIS

It was observed by Parum as early as 874 that decay-producing bacteria quickly disappeared when introduced into the body, and could not be demonstrated in the blood or other tissues. To Metchnikoff, however, must be given the credit of elaborating the theory of phagocytosis. By the term *phagocytes* (Gr. phagein, to eat) is meant any body-cell which is capable of taking up and destroying other cells, usually those of foreign origin. These phagocytes are in some cases fixed body-cells, but, for the most part, are leukocytes or white blood-cells of different kinds. Upon the phagocytic activity of the body-cells Metchnikoff established his theory of immunity. It may be stated briefly as follows: If an animal is either naturally or artificially immune to a disease, it means that the invasion of the body by organisms is followed by a struggle between the organisms and the phagocytes. These phagocytes ingest the organisms and render them harmless. Metchnikoff subdivides the phagocytes in two ways—first, on the basis of their morphological and functional behavior, and, second, on the basis of their relationship to the surrounding tissue, *i. e.*, some are mobile, others are fixed. The leukocytes in the blood are in part the free-moving phagocytes. The small lymphocytes are not known to have any phagocytic power, and it is probable they are not endowed with active motion. Most cells have not been shown to be phagocytic. The polymorphonuclear and the large mononuclear leukocytes are the phagocytes *par excellence*. Certain fixed cells of the lymph-nodes and the spleen are likewise active phagocytes.

Metchnikoff terms the polymorphonuclear leukocytes the *microphages* (Gr. micros, small; phagein, to eat), and the large mononuclear, the *macrophages* (Gr. macros, large; phagein, to eat),

194

and believes that they perform somewhat different functions in the body.

Wright and Douglas, in 1902, published observations that threw much needed light on the theory of phagocytosis. They showed that, in most cases, at least, the bacteria would not be destroyed by the white blood-cells or phagocytes in the absence of blood-serum. They showed that the serum contained something that rendered the bacteria positively chemotactic or attractive for the phagocytes, and they accordingly named this something *opsonin* (Gr. opsonein, to prepare a meal).

Opsonins.—Opsonins may be shown to be present in certain sera by the following experiment: Blood of a suitable animal is drawn into citrate solution and centrifuged, thus throwing the
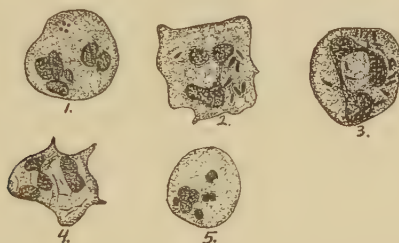
Fig. 78.—Phagocytosis by human leukocytes: 1, *Staphylococcus aureus;* 2, *Bacterium dysenteriæ;* 3, *Bact. typhosum;* 4, *Mycob. tuberculosis;* 5, *Neisseria meningitidis* (1, 2, and 3 adapted from Levaditi and Inman, 4 from Freeman, and 5 from Councilman).

cellular elements to the bottom. The top layer of corpuscles, or " cream," containing a large proportion of leukocytes, is pipetted off, and mixed with physiological salt solution and again centrifuged. A second washing and centrifugation removes all traces of adherent serum. The corpuscles are then mixed with a suspension of the bacteria and incubated for fifteen minutes. At the end of that period mounts are prepared, stained with a suitable blood-stain, such as Jenner's or Wright's, and examined. The bacteria will not, in general, be engulfed by the phagocytes. A similar series carried through, but with the addition of a little immune serum, will exhibit marked phagocytosis, and considerable numbers of the microörganisms will be found within the leuko-

cytes. Evidently the presence of the serum, or rather the op-
sonin which it contains, induces phagocytosis. Opsonins are
believed so to change or alter the bacteria as to make them posi-
tively chemotactic for the phagocytes. This does not mean that
the bacteria are destroyed, for there is no evidence that they are
in any way injured. That it is an alteration of the organisms,
and not a mere stimulation of the phagocytic cell, may be shown as
follows: A suspension of washed corpuscles prepared as before
is treated with immune serum, allowed to stand, and then washed.
When mixed with the bacterial suspension, no phagocytosis occurs;
evidently the opsonin is not bound to the phagocytes, nor does it
stimulate them when they are brought in contact with the bacte-
rial cells. The converse of this experiment may be tried, the bac-
teria added to the immune serum, and then centrifuged out and
washed free from all the serum with salt solution. When these
organisms are added to a suspension of the washed leukocytes,
active phagocytosis occurs. The opsonin is bound to the bacterial
cell, and makes it in a sense attractive to the leukocytes. The
negative chemotaxis is converted by this union into a positive
chemotaxis. The action of the opsonin has been likened to that
of an amboceptor, for it links up the bacteria and the white blood-
cells. The opsonins are, however, not identical with bacteriolytic
amboceptors.

Opsonins for some organisms are quite constantly present in
the blood. For example, human blood contains opsonins for the
organisms producing bubonic plague, Malta fever, pneumonia,
dysentery, Asiatic cholera, and for the pyogenic organisms.
These are called *normal opsonins. Immune opsonins* are those
produced as a result of infection or immunization. It is also
probable that some species of bacteria may be taken up by phago-
cytes in total absence of opsonins. On the other hand, it is be-
lieved that certain bacteria, when they invade the body, may
develop a resistance to phagocytosis. The appearance of the
capsule about the anthrax bacillus in the blood has been thought
to be a protective agency of this character. Whether the im-
mune and the normal opsonins are identical is a moot question.
Probably they may differ, it being contended that the normal
opsonin is simply the normal complement of the serum, for it has

been found to be thermolabile (58° to 60° destroys). The immune or specific opsonin is, on the other hand, relatively thermostabile.

Opsonic Index.—It is sometimes advisable to compare the opsonic content of the serum of a diseased animal with that of a healthy individual. The ratio between the two sera may be determined by the relative effect they have on the rapidity of phagocytic action. It is customary, though not in all cases necessary, to use the leukocytes of the species of animal under investigation. The technic of the operation is as follows:
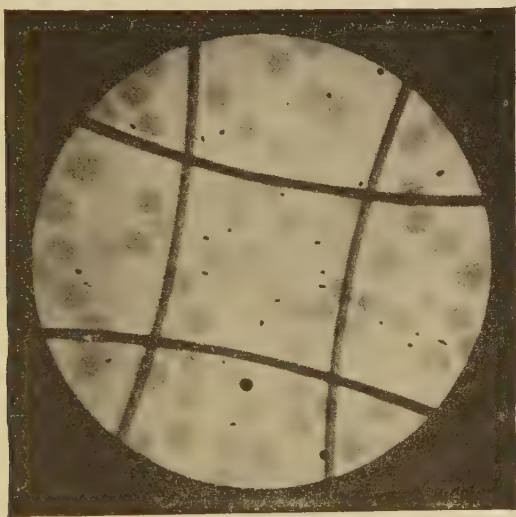
Fig. 79.—Standardization of bacterial emulsion. A photomicrograph showing the bacteria and the red blood-cells mixed (Miller).

Preparation of Leukocytes.—These may be secured by bleeding into citrate solution (1 per cent. in physiological salt solution) and centrifuging. Pipette off the serum and citrate solution, add physiological salt solution, mix, and again centrifuge; repeat the washing and centrifuging to remove the last traces of serum. Carefully pipette off the upper layer of corpuscles, rich in leukocytes, and keep in a small test-tube. Sometimes the defibrinated whole blood is used. In other cases, particularly with small experimental animals, an intraperitoneal injection of bouillon is made, and the leukocyte-rich exudate removed from the peritoneal cavity in the course of a few hours.

Preparation of Bacterial Emulsion.—The organisms must be present in a perfectly homogeneous suspension. With most

organisms a twenty-four-hour slant agar culture may be used, the growth scraped off into sterile physiological salt solution, triturated, and diluted until it shows only a faint opalescence. Filtration is sometimes necessary. This technic must be varied somewhat for different organisms.

Preparation of Serum.—Both normal serum and serum from the animal to be tested are secured by bleeding, allowing the blood to clot, centrifuging, and taking off the serum with a pipette and transferring to a small tube. Before use, the serum is sometimes diluted—usually ten times.

Fig. 80.—Opsonizing pipette containing the leukocytes, bacteria, and serum (Miller).
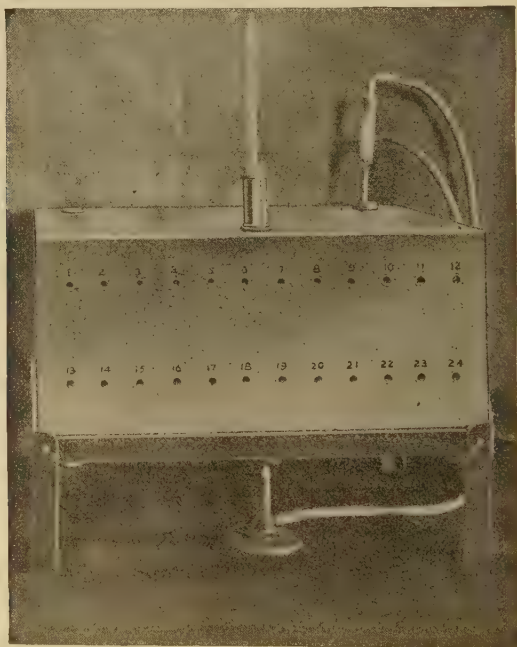
Fig. 81.—Opsonic incubator (Miller).

Technic of Test.—A capillary pipette with a fine bore is prepared from glass tubing, and a mark is made a short distance, usually

about 2 cm., from the end. The suspension of leukocytes is then drawn up to the mark, then an air-bubble is admitted, then the serum to be tested to the same mark, a second air-bubble, and finally an equal amount of the bacterial suspension. The contents of the tube are blown out upon a glass plate or into a watch-glass and thoroughly mixed. This mixture is again drawn some distance into the capillary pipette and the end sealed in the flame. It is then kept at 37° for fifteen minutes, preferably in an opsonic incubator, where it may be rotated frequently to secure thorough mixture. The end is then broken from the pipette, and smears are made and stained with some good blood-stain, such as Wright's or Jenner's modification of the Romanowsky, which will stain bacteria. Special staining methods must sometimes be used, as in the examination of the tubercle bacillus.

Determination of the Opsonic Index.—The total number of bacteria ingested by 100 polymorphonuclear leukocytes is counted and the average number per leukocyte calculated. This is termed the phagocytic index. This number is determined both with normal serum and the serum to be tested. The ratio between the number of organisms ingested by the leukocytes when treated with the specific serum and when treated with normal serum—that is, the ratio between the phagocytic indices—is called the opsonic index. In general, the opsonic index is found to be low (less than unity) in chronic bacterial infections.

McCampbell's Modification of Opsonic Test.—McCampbell has considerably shortened the technic in veterinary practice as follows: The bacterial suspension containing 0.8 per cent. sodium citrate is drawn to the 0.5 mark on the leukocyte pipette of a hemocytometer, the specific blood to be tested is drawn to the same mark, then all drawn into the bulb, mixed, replaced in the capillary tube, and the whole wrapped with a rubber band and incubated. The same procedure is carried through with normal blood. The disadvantages of this method are the presence of sodium citrate, which interferes to a slight degree with action of opsonins, and the use of two lots of leukocytes from two animals, one diseased and the other normal. Smears and examinations are made as in the preceding. It is possible there may sometimes be intrinsic differences in these leukocytes, which render direct

comparison between their activity somewhat misleading. These difficulties are more than outweighed by the increased ease of manipulation, and good results are commonly secured.

The variation in the opsonic content of a patient's blood gives valuable information relative to the development of resistance. As stated above, in many chronic infections the opsonic index is below unity. In the treatment of tuberculosis in the human, by means of minute injections of tuberculin, the determination of the opsonic index has given much information of practical nature. The injection of bacterial vaccines or bacterins which have been carefully studied is followed at first by an initial lowering of the index. This is called the *negative phase.* Later, the index should rise above unity, when the *positive phase* is said to be established. If the index can be kept above unity, the prognosis is generally regarded as favorable.

Methods of Opsonic Immunization.—Immunization due to increased opsonin is generally brought about by the introduction of bacteria or their products into the body. Such an immunity is, therefore, active. There is good reason to believe that injection of an opsonic serum in some cases confers some passive immunity. The most commonly practised method of increasing the opsonin content of the blood is by *vaccination.* This may be defined as the injection or inoculation with organisms or their products in such a way that the disease produced will run a benign course. Such a procedure in many cases induces the production of bacteriolysins, in others opsonins, and in still others both. Vaccines may consist of either living or dead organisms. If the former, they may be either virulent or *attenuated.* Vaccination with virulent organisms is not frequently practised. Some organisms do not produce typical and serious diseases unless they enter the body by a certain channel. The injection of the Asiatic cholera organism subcutaneously is not followed by any serious results, but, when the alimentary tract is the infection atrium, the characteristic symptoms of the disease are produced. This fact has been used as the basis for practical vaccination against this disease. Usually vaccines consist of attenuated organisms. Attenuation or weakening or decrease of virulence is accomplished in several ways: in some cases by growing at high temperatures, as

for anthrax, heating to temperatures just below the thermal death-point, as in blackleg, by animal passage, as in small-pox, or by growth on artificial media, as with members of the hemorrhagic septicemia group.

Vaccines consisting of dead organisms are called *bacterins*. These are prepared and sold commercially under various trade names. They usually consist of pyogenic organisms which have been killed by heat. The injection of these bacterins has been shown to increase the opsonic index for specific organisms when properly administered. It has been found, however, that there are many strains of some of the pyogenic bacterial species, for example, of *Streptococcus pyogenes*, and that vaccination against one strain does not always protect against another. Vaccines are, therefore, prepared containing organisms isolated from as many sources as possible and containing many races or strains. Such a vaccine is called *polyvalent*, a vaccine containing but one strain, *univalent*.

Autogenic Vaccines.—Inasmuch as it cannot be readily determined to what strain a particular organism causing a chronic bacterial infection, such as suppuration in a fistula, belongs, it is sometimes desirable to prepare a vaccine of this particular organism for this single case. A vaccine prepared in this manner, to be used in the animal from which the organism was isolated, is said to be *autogenic*. The use of autogenic vaccines, carefully prepared and standardized, has proved successful in many cases in the treatment of stubborn and chronic suppurative conditions. The technic of preparation and use follows.

Isolation of Organism.—In many instances a slant agar culture, made directly by securing material on a sterile platinum loop from the deeper parts of the wound or abscess, will prove to contain only the causal organism. In most cases, however, it will be found advisable to plate directly in agar and incubate at blood-heat. An examination of the colonies will reveal the causal organism (or organisms in a mixed infection).

Preparation of Vaccine (McCampbell).—Into each of two flat flasks or bottles, 100 c.c. of nutrient agar is placed, sterilized, and slanted. Streaks of the organism are made the full length of the

slant and incubated twenty-four hours at blood-heat. The water of condensation is removed without disturbing the growth, and 100 c.c. of sterile physiological salt solution added. The growth is carefully scraped from the surface with a long sterile glass rod; the suspension is placed in a sterile flask and shaken thoroughly.

Standardization of the Vaccine.—Before injections are made, the number of bacteria present per given volume of the suspension must be known in order that accurate dosage may be determined. The standardization may be effected by direct count or by use of the nephelometer. In the first method, equal parts of the bacterial suspension and of defibrinated human blood are thoroughly mixed, a smear prepared, and stained with a blood-stain or carbol-thionin. The number of red blood-cells on several fields and the number of bacteria on these fields are counted (see Fig. 79). The number of red blood-cells may be taken as 5,000,000 per cubic millimeter. The number of bacteria per cubic millimeter will be found by the following proportion:

5,000,000 : x :: number red blood-cells per field : number bacteria per field.

Suppose 20 red blood-cells per field, and 50 bacteria, the ratio becomes—

5,000,000 : x :: 20 : 50 or x (number of bacteria per cubic centimeter) = 12,500,000.

To convert the number of bacteria per cubic centimeter, multiply by 1000, which in this case would give 12,500,000,000. It is customary to dilute the bacterial suspension so that each cubic centimeter will contain a number of bacteria that is readily reckoned, usually 50,000,000 per cubic centimeter.

The nephelometer is an instrument described by McFarland, in which tubes containing varying amounts of barium sulphate in suspension in water are observed side by side with tubes of equal size containing the bacteria. After the tubes containing barium sulphate have been compared as to opacity with tubes containing known numbers of bacteria per cubic centimeter, they may be used in determining the number present in other bacterial suspensions.

Passive Opsonic Immunization.—It is probable that some antibacterial sera, as the antimeningococcic serum, owe in part their immunizing and their curative powers to the presence of opsonins. The part that these opsonins may play in passive immunization is not thoroughly understood.

Leukocytic Extracts.—It has been found possible by Hiss and others to secure an antibacterial substance or *endolysin* from leukocytes by a process of autolysis. These leukocytic extracts have not been extensively used in practice, but they are of considerable theoretic importance. Leukocytes may be obtained by injecting 10 c.c. of a sterile solution of 5 per cent. aleuronat and 3 per cent starch into the pleural cavity of a rabbit. In twenty-four hours the animal may be killed and the pleural fluid rich in leukocytes removed, using every precaution to retain sterility. It is quickly centrifuged, the supernatant liquid removed, about 2 c.c. of sterile distilled water added, and the emulsion beaten up with a platinum spatula. Sterile water is then added, and the suspension incubated at 37° for eight hours. This allows time for relatively complete cell autolysis. Injection of such autolysate has been found to influence favorably the course of experimental pyogenic infections. The endolysins are not identical with bacteriolysins, but are relatively thermostabile, they cannot be reactivated when inactivated and are not increased by the process of immunization.

Aggressins.—The term "virulence," as applied to microörganisms, is not readily defined. The reaction of an organism in the body cannot be predicted by its behavior in culture-media. The most virulent diphtheria bacillus, for example, is not necessarily the one that produces the largest amounts of toxin in culture-media. Concerning this mechanism of virulence there has been much discussion and speculation.

Bail has developed what he has termed an *aggressin hypothesis* to account for these variations in virulence. He has defined an aggressin as a substance which is secreted by pathogenic organisms, when growing in the animal body, which will neutralize the efforts of the tissues to destroy the organism. The work on this subject has been done principally by Bail and his students, although many substantiating facts have been developed by other investigators.

Sensitized Vaccines.—A method of vaccine preparation consisting of the suspension of living bacteria in their specific immune serum (serobacterin) has been proposed by Besredka and Metchnikoff. The purpose of this is to sensitize the bacteria. According to the observations of these authors and others such vaccines produce only slight local and general reactions, the negative phase being practically eliminated, while there is a general and prompt response with antibody formation The specific immune serum may assist in the disintegration of the bacteria by furnishing either opsonin or a bacteriolytic amboceptor which with the natural complement of the tissues tends to cause a lysis of the bacterial cell. The experiments of Theobald Smith with toxin-antitoxin mixture, in which he showed that dissemination of toxin was much more general through the body when the mixture was administered than when toxin alone was given inclines Smith to the view that the same principle holds true with reference to sensitized bacteria. The theory is of practical importance, inasmuch as it is claimed that the injection of bacteria-free aggressins into an animal results in the ultimate development of anti-aggressin and of an active immunity.

Bail divides bacteria into three groups—true parasites, half-parasites, and saprophytes. The true parasites include such forms as the anthrax bacillus, in which the injection of a very small number results fatally through a rapid multiplication of the organisms. The half-parasites are those having a lower degree of virulence—such that relatively large injections must be made to produce infection. The third group includes those totally devoid of pathogenic properties. The difference between these forms is a difference in the ability to produce aggressins.

Aggressin production is demonstrated by Bail as follows: A guinea-pig is injected intraperitoneally with many times a fatal dose of culture of *Bacterium typhosum* or *Vibrio choleræ*. The peritoneal exudate is removed after the death of the animal and centrifuged to remove the cellular elements, as well as most of the bacteria. The organisms remaining in the supernatant liquid are destroyed by a chemical disinfectant. If a small quantity of this exudate is injected into a guinea-pig, together with a quantity of the specific organisms that would usually be non-lethal, the animal

will die with an acute infection.   The injected exudate apparently
makes the organisms more virulent.   The aggressins are contained
in this exudate, and convert a mild infection into one that is fatal.
The repeated injection of sterile aggressin causes the development
in the animal body of an active immunity.   According to Bail,
anti-aggressins can be demonstrated in the blood-serum of such
animals.   One of the strongest links of corroborative evidence
is the fact that the bacteriolytic power of a serum *in vitro* is not an
index of the ability of the animal from which it was taken to resist
infection.   The *modus operandi* of the aggressin is to be sought
in the inhibition of phagocytosis.   Bail found that when typhoid
bacilli are injected intraperitoneally, there is a marked increase in
the number of phagocytes in the exudate within a few hours, but
when they are injected with aggressin there is no such increase—
the phagocytes are evidently not attracted.

This theory has not been accepted in its entirety by many
bacteriologists.   The facts given by Bail are largely accepted,
but the theory is not well established.   Some authors claim to have
shown that the so-called aggressin is simply endotoxin released in
the body by the lysis of the bacterial cells.   It is also claimed that
there is no demonstrable difference between the endotoxins pro-
duced in culture-media and the aggressins formed in the body.
Peritoneal exudate containing aggressin, according to Bail, has been
filtered through porcelain, and found to be toxic for guinea-pigs
after filtration.   Bail has attempted to develop practicable methods
of immunization in several diseases by an application of the theory.
None of his methods have come into general use.

CHAPTER XVIII

ANAPHYLAXIS AND HYPERSUSCEPTIBILITY

THE body normally takes its food through the intestinal tract, or by *enteral* introduction. Any foreign proteins introduced in this manner are generally changed by digestion, so that they may be used by the body-cells or assimilated. When introduced by *parenteral* injection (outside the alimentary canal, as subcutaneously, intravenously, etc.) antibodies of different kinds are produced. Thus far we have considered three antibodies which antagonize bacteria or other antigens which are introduced, but there exists still another type of body reaction, *sensitization toward*, rather than *immunization against*, an antigen. This phenomenon is exhibited only under certain conditions, and the body is then said to show *anaphylaxis* or *hypersensitiveness* to the antigen. The significance can best be understood by a study of specific examples. A number of these have been noted independently and are deserving of mention.

Phenomenon of Arthus.—Arthus injected rabbits subcutaneously with horse serum at six-day intervals. The first three injections were readily absorbed by the tissues, the fourth was followed by some edema at the site of injection, and, after the sixth or seventh injection, the skin at the site became gangrenous, and a deep abscess scar was finally formed. If the sensitized animal be injected intravenously with the serum, it appears restless, lies on its belly, and respiration frequently increases; it defecates frequently, finally falls upon its side, and commonly dies, all within the space of two or three minutes.

Serum Sickness in Man.—Many observers have noted that the injection of antitoxic sera into man sometimes is followed by a fever, the appearance of a rash or urticaria, pains in the joints, etc. In some individuals the reaction is shown after the first injection, in most cases only after a second injection, given some time after

the first. Evidently there may be an inborn or a developed sensitiveness in man to serum injection.

Theobald Smith Phenomenon.—Theobald Smith made the observation that when guinea-pigs are injected with horse serum, and a second injection is given after the space of ten days or more, the pig will show signs of hypersensitiveness, and if a sufficient quantity, 5 or 6 c.c., is injected intraperitoneally, death will result in a few minutes. The first injection serves to sensitize against the second. This phenomenon in the guinea-pig is so striking that it has been used by many investigators in a study of the reaction. The general phenomenon was given the name of *anaphylaxis*. This will be discussed, and its utilization in diagnosis and in explanation of certain hitherto obscure body reactions reviewed.

Vaughn's Split Proteins.—Vaughn and Wheeler and their co-workers have succeeded in showing that proteins in general may be split by chemical means into a portion which when injected into an animal gives rise to symptoms resembling those of anaphylaxis, and a portion which is inert. The protein to be split is boiled in absolute alcohol containing 2 per cent. sodium hydrate. The toxic fraction is soluble in alcohol, the non-toxic insoluble. Each of these fractions gives the protein reactions and is to be classified as a protein or at least as a complex polypeptid or peptone. When injected into guinea-pigs these fractions behave quite differently. The alcohol-insoluble portion cannot produce anaphylactic symptoms, but can be used in sensitizing animals against the protein from which it was derived. The alcohol-soluble portion produces anaphylactic symptoms when injected, but does not sensitize against the protein.

Mechanism of Anaphylaxis.—Many theories of the mechanism of the phenomenon of anaphylaxis have been proposed, but even yet many factors are unknown, and an entirely adequate explanation is lacking. The following facts seem to be firmly established:

1. It is possible to sensitize a suitable animal by means of a great variety of proteins, such as blood-serum of various animals, egg-white, milk, plant proteins, bacterial proteins, and yeast proteins. Sensitization may be effected in many cases by the injection of minute quantities of the proteins, in some cases only a frac-

tion of a milligram is required.   The protein may be heated without destroying its sensitizing power.

2. It is possible to secure an anaphylactic shock in an animal that has been previously injected with a sensitizing dose of protein only after the lapse of a definite period following the first injection, the length depending in part upon the size of the sensitizing dose.

3. The sensitization of an animal in general can be effected best by the parenteral introduction of the protein.   Some cases are on record, however, of sensitization as the result of ingestion or rectal injections.

4. The type of anaphylactic reaction secured differs with the species of animal, and to a less degree with the site and method of making the second injection, and the amount of protein used.   In the guinea-pig the first sign of reaction is usually evidenced within a few seconds to a few minutes after injection.   The animal then appears restless, and scratches its nose with its front feet.   Usually urine and feces are passed.   The breathing becomes more rapid and the animal falls on its side.   There is evidence of dyspnea.   Generally the animal dies in convulsions, or in some cases quietly.   Usually the heart beats for a time after breathing ceases.   If smaller quantities of protein are injected the animal may show the first symptoms, but gradually recovers.   In acute anaphylaxis death may occur in two to five minutes.   There is also a decided drop in temperature in animals showing anaphylactic shock, even though the reaction be a slight one.

Rabbits show the anaphylactic reaction readily upon a second injection of the antigen.   There is generally defecation, urination, and decided weakness, the body resting on the ground and the head drooping.   Breathing becomes irregular and labored.   Convulsion and death may follow promptly, or death may result only after several hours.

In dogs the anaphylactic symptoms are. a decided fall in blood-pressure and evidence of cerebral anemia.   The animals usually vomit, urinate, and defecate; they may gradually grow weaker and die.

Anaphylactic shock has also been observed in cattle, horses, and goats.   This is of some practical importance, as a repeated injection of a heterologous serum into one of these animals may

give rise to severe symptoms or even produce death.   For example, Bang attempted to immunize cows against infectious abortion by the injection of horse-serum broth-cultures of the organism at intervals.   He found that the second injection was followed by very grave anaphylactic symptoms, necessitating the substitution of ox serum for horse serum in the preparation of the medium.

5. The reaction is highly specific.   An animal sensitized against a particular protein will react only when that protein is injected.

6. A condition of passive anaphylaxis may be induced by the injection of blood-serum from a sensitized animal into a normal animal.   Such an animal will react to the injection of the protein in the same manner as an actively sensitized individual.

7. There is a very material diminution in the complement of the blood of an animal immediately following an anaphylactic shock. Experiments show that the complement itself takes some part in the production of the shock, for animals whose blood has been depleted of complement by other means do not react upon injection of the protein.

8. A mixture of blood from a sensitized animal and of antigen will produce anaphylactic shock when injected into a normal animal under certain conditions.   It is probable, therefore, that the reaction is due primarily to the development of some poisonous substance in the blood as a result of the interaction of the protein and some antibody formed as a result of the sensitizing injection. Certain experiments, however, tend to show that in some cases at least there is an active participation of the body-cells in producing the reaction.

9. The injection to produce the anaphylactic reaction gives the quickest results when made intravenously or into the heart. Intraperitoneal injection is somewhat less rapid in its action, and subcutaneous still less.

10. An animal which has just recovered from an anaphylactic shock does not show the same symptoms when a second injection is made soon after.   Or if a small dose of protein is injected into the animal a large dose injected later may cause no reaction.   It is possible that an explanation of this phenomenon of *anti-anaphylaxis*, as it is called, is to be found in the fact that the first injection uses up all of the specific antibody formed.

Many theories of anaphylaxis have been proposed, but none as yet seem adequately to explain all of the phenomena connected with it. The theory of Vaughn and Wheeler in many respects seems to fit conditions best. These investigators claim that the sensitizing dose of protein when injected is gradually broken up by the body into the two fractions corresponding to those secured by laboratory method (see above). The portion corresponding to their alcohol-insoluble fraction stimulates the tissues to the production of a specific antibody, a lysin, which can break down the protein readily. Gradually this lysin accumulates in the body fluids, and upon the injection of the second dose the protein is split rapidly and the toxic fraction formed so quickly and in such amounts as to give rise to the symptoms of poisoning.

Relationship of Anaphylaxis to Certain Body Reactions.—The anaphylactic explanation of serum sickness in man has already been discussed. Several cases are on record where injection of diphtheria antitoxin has resulted in death within a few minutes. Rosenau and Anderson have recorded cases in which the prophylactic injection of antitoxic serum into normal individuals resulted in explosive manifestations of anaphylaxis, such as a prickling sensation in chest and neck, labored breathing, paralysis, convulsions, and death within five minutes after injection. It seems evident that the individual was naturally hypersensitive. Fortunately, such cases are extremely rare. The prophylactic and curative value of diphtheria antitoxin far outweigh its dangers.

Rosenau and Anderson have also recorded some evidence that certain of the toxemias of pregnancy, particularly *puerperal eclampsia*, are to be accounted for by a sensitization of the body by the cells of the placenta. It was found that guinea-pigs might be sensitized with the placenta of the same species by a single injection, and a second injection later gave a typical anaphylactic reaction.

Bacterial Anaphylaxis.—It has been shown by several investigators that proteins from bacteria may be used in sensitizing animals against a second injection; in other words, they resemble proteins from other sources in this respect. Extracts from *Bacterium coli*, *B. anthracis*, *Mycob. tuberculosis*, *Bact. typhosum*, and others have been shown to sensitize. This fact has been

deemed of considerable practical importance in disease diagnosis. There is reason to suppose that infection with certain bacteria will sensitize the body to the injection of the bacterial proteins or extracts or to the dead bodies of the organism. It has been found, for example, if the dead organisms, or extracts from them, be rubbed into the skin of an infected individual, an inflammation, marked by some edema, redness, and frequently the formation of papules, will occur. This is true in tuberculosis and some other diseases. That this is one of the manifestations of anaphylaxis seems probable. The injection of tuberculin, consisting of dead tubercle bacilli and their products of growth, into an animal having tuberculosis will cause a characteristic rise in temperature, and is, therefore, of great diagnostic value. This reaction resembles the anaphylactic reaction in many ways. For example, a second injection following soon after the first will give no reaction; probably the body is in a state of anti-anaphylaxis. Furthermore, advanced cases of the disease do not respond—perhaps they are either constantly anti-anaphylactic or show anaphylactic immunity due to the constant presence of large numbers of organisms in the body. On the other hand, there are some unexplained differences between this reaction and that typical of anaphylaxis produced by other proteins. Many points remain still to be explained. That it is, however, of a similar nature seems to be altogether probable. A similar reaction may be secured with the emulsion of dead glanders bacilli (mallein) in glanders.

SECTION IV

PATHOGENIC MICROÖRGANISMS EXCLUSIVE OF THE PROTOZOA

CHAPTER XIX

GROUPS OF PATHOGENIC MICROÖRGANISMS

THE microörganisms which produce disease can best be studied after the related forms are classified into groups. The characteristics common to all members of a group are more easily remembered than the characteristics of each member of all the groups.

A classification of microörganisms may be based upon the character of the disease produced, that is, it may be pathologic, or it may be based upon the characters of the organisms themselves, their morphology, physiology, and culture. A pathologic classification is open to the objection that very different types of infection may be produced under different conditions by the same or closely related organisms. Certain pus cocci, for example, may produce erysipelas, wound suppuration, septicemia, pyemia or local infection, and inflammation of any organ of the body. On the other hand, infections having somewhat similar clinical characters may be produced by very different organisms.

The groupings used in this text will be based upon relationships rather than pathological resemblances.

MAIN DIVISIONS OF PATHOGENIC MICROÖRGANISMS

The microörganisms which cause disease may be separated into four principal groups: the **bacteria,** the **yeasts,** the **molds,** and the **protozoa.** The bacteria only will be subdivided here, the other main groups being reserved for later chapters.

The pathogenic bacteria of veterinary interest may be divided into twenty-two groups. They may be differentiated by the following key:

PRINCIPAL GROUPS OF PATHOGENIC BACTERIA

A. Cells spherical, cocci
   B. Cells occurring typically in chains   1. *Streptococcus* **group**
   BB. Cells not typically in chains
     212

C. Cells typically in pairs

 2. Specific pyogenic coccus group (*Diplococcus* and *Neisseria*)

 CC. Cells typically in irregular groups

 3. *Staphylococcus* group

AA. Cells not spherical
 B. Cells not forming long threads, not mycelium like
  C. Cells not spiral
   D. Cells not fusiform
    E. Producing endospores
     F. Aërobic

 4. Anthrax group (*Bacillus*)

     FF. Anaërobic

 5. Blackleg-tetanus g r o u p (*Clostridium*)

    EE. Not producing endospores
     F. Not acid fast
      G. Not hemoglobinophilic
       H. Gram negative
        I. Not producing a fluorescent pigment
         J. Polar stain- ing

 6. Hemorrhagic septicemia group (*Pasteurella*)

         JJ. No polar staining
          K. Characteristic honey-like growth on potato

 7. Glanders group (*Pfeifferella*)

          KK. Not as preceding
           L. Aërobic

 8. Intestinal group (*Bacterium*)

           LL. Microærophilic

 9. Bovine abortion group (*Bacterium* or *Brucella*)

        II. Producing a fluorescent pigment

 10. Fluorescent group (*Pseudomonas*)

       HH. Gram positive
        I. Producing metachromatic granules. Aërobic

 11. Diphtheria group (*Corynebacterium*)

        II. No metachromatic granules
         J. Microærophilic

 12. Swine erysipelas group (*Erysipelothrix*)

         JJ. Hemoglobinophilic, or at least requiring serum for growth

 13. Influenza group (*Hemophilus*)

     FF. Acid fast

 14. Tuberculosis group (*Mycobacterium*)

    DD. Cells fusiform, elongate

 15. Fusiform group (*Fusiformis*)

  CC. Cells spiral
   D. Cells relatively short and plump

 16. *Vibrio* group

   DD. Cells relatively long, slender and flexuous

 17. Spirochete group (*Treponema*, etc.)

 BB. Producing long threads

 14. Ray fungus group (*Actinomyces, Actinobacillus,* etc.)

CHAPTER XX

THE GROUP OF STREPTOCOCCI. THE GENUS STREPTOCOCCUS

THE Streptococcus group of bacteria includes all those forms whose cells are spherical and occur usually in chains of greater or less length. All of the species described are non-motile, and most are Gram-positive. Spores are never produced. The various species show differences in their ability to produce acid from various carbohydrates. In general, they give scant growth on the surface of culture-media, preferring anaërobic or micro-aërophilic conditions.

The bacteria of this group are widely distributed, but are most common upon the skin of man and animals, in intestines, in milk, etc. They are not common as saprophytes in nature apart from animals or their excretions.

A satisfactory classification of the streptococci has not yet been formulated, although a considerable amount of work has been done.

Several species of *Streptococcus* are pathogenic. Many pyogenic infections in man and more rarely in animals, mastitis of certain types, brustseuche, strangles or distemper of equines, septicemia in birds, follicular vaginitis in cattle, petechial fever, possibly abortion in mares are to be ascribed to organisms of this group.

As previously stated, no systematic effort to classify all of these forms on the basis of morphology and physiology has been successful. Lingelsheim in 1899 suggested that two types to be known as *Streptococcus longus* and *Str. brevis* be recognized, the more virulent forms he believed to produce longer chains usually of more than six cells, and the less virulent forms he found to form short chains. A strict adoption of this classification proved impracticable because of variations in different media and under different environments.

Schottmüller's classification proposed in 1903 the use of blood-agar in differentiation. The more virulent types he termed *Strep-*

tococcus longus or *Str. erysipelatos.* These formed long chains and hemolyzed the blood-cells. His *Str. mitis* or *Str. viridans* he found to be less virulent, to produce shorter chains, and to be devoid of the power of hemolysis. His *Str. mucosus* proved to be an encapsulated form, and more closely related to the pneumococci.

The classification proposed by Andrewes and Horder in 1906 is given here likewise, because it has been the basis of a considerable amount of recent work and because these names are frequently used. The summary of the groups as given by Buerger[1] is as follows:

(A) *Streptococcus equinus:* A saprophytic group in which most of the organisms ferment only saccharose and glucosides. Non-pathogenic. Found usually in horse dung.

(B) *Streptococcus mitis:* Saprophytic, in the human saliva and feces, fermenting sucrose and lactose and not glucosides.

(C) *Streptococcus pyogenes:* Long chained, hemolytic, acidifying milk without clotting; fermenting sucrose, lactose, and salicin. Most of the virulent streptococci belong here.

(D) *Streptococcus salivarius:* Short chains, fermenting sucrose, lactose, and raffinose. Usually non-pathogenic.

(E) *Streptococcus anginosus*, much like *Str. salivarius.* Clots milk, reduces neutral red, and produces acid in sucrose and lactose and often raffinose.

(F) *Streptococcus fæcalis:* Short chain form which ferments lactose, sucrose, and mannite. Occasionally pathogenic, typically of intestinal origin.

Holman's Classification of Species of Streptococci

A. Non-hemolytic

    I. No acid from lactose

        (*a*) No acid from mannitol

            1. No acid from salicin   *Streptococcus ignavus*

            2. Acid from salicin   *Str. equinus*

        (*b*) Acid from mannitol

            1. No acid from salicin   *Str. non-hemolyticus III*

            2. Acid from salicin   *Str. non-hemolyticus III*

[1] Buerger, Leo, Jour. of Exp. Med., 9, 429, 1907.

II. Acid from lactose

    (*a*) No acid from mannitol

        1. No acid from salicin   *Str. salivarius*

        2. Acid from salicin   *Str. mitis*

    (*b*) Acid from mannitol

        1. No acid from salicin   *Str. non-hemolyticus I*

        2. Acid from salicin   *Str. fecalis*

B. Hemolytic

    I. No acid from lactose

        (*a*) No acid from mannitol

            1. No acid from salicin   *Str. subacidus*

            2. Acid from salicin   *Str. equi*

        (*b*)   Acid from mannitol

            1. No acid from salicin   *Str. hemolyticus III*

            2. Acid from salicin   *Str. hemolyticus II*

    II. Acid from lactose

        (*a*) No acid from mannitol

            1. No acid from salicin   *Str. anginosus*

            2. Acid from salicin   *Str. pyogenes*

        (*b*) Acid from mannitol

            1. No acid from salicin   *Str. hemolyticus I*

            2. Acid from salicin   *Str. infrequens*

It will be noted that the primary division in the preceding key is upon the basis of hemolytic power.

The species of *Streptococcus* that will be considered here are *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Str. equi*, *Str. gallinarum*, *Str. vaginitidis*, and *Str. lacticus*.

Streptococcus pyogenes

Synonyms.—*Streptococcus erysipelatos; Str. puerperalis; Str. articulorum; Str. pyogenes malignis; Str. septicus; Str. scarlatinosus;*

The large amount of study devoted to the streptococci in recent years has led to many relatively elaborate classifications. That of Holman is important enough to justify inclusion.

Str. phlogogenes; Str. mastitidis; Str. agalactiæ vaccarum; Str. pyogenes bovis.

Pasteur first recognized the Streptococcus in pus, but Ogston, between 1880 and 1884, first definitely isolated and described it. Fehleisen, in 1883, found the organism in erysipelas, and Rosenbach described it in detail and gave it its present name.

The student will find no more puzzling group of organisms than the Streptococci. They have been found in connection with all types of inflammatory processes. Some strains are exceedingly
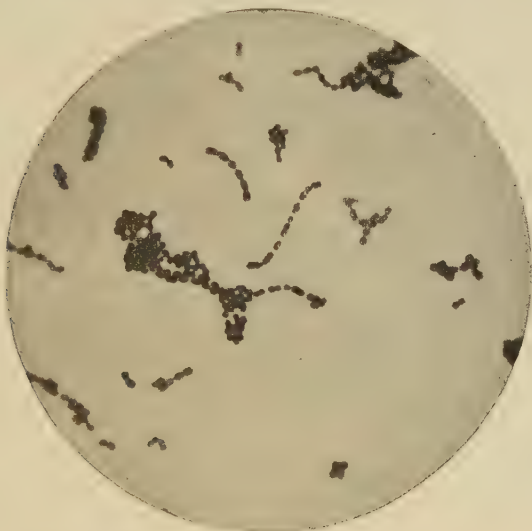
Fig. 82.—*Streptococcus pyogenes* in lactose broth (Heinemann in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

virulent, others wholly lack the power of disease production. Differences have been recorded in the cultural characters of isolations from different sources, and the species split into several on the basis of these variations. None of these classifications has proved to be wholly satisfactory, and, for the present, it is probably best to treat all the forms as varieties merely of one rather polymorphic species.

Distribution.—*Streptococcus pyogenes* does not adapt itself as readily to a saprophytic mode of existence as do the staphylococci. It is commonly present upon the skin of man and animals,

and has been isolated from a great number of different inflammatory and suppurative processes in both.

Morphology and Staining Characters.—This organism is a coccus about 1 μ in diameter, occurring in chains of greater or less length. Sometimes there is a tendency toward diplococcus formation, and the threads may be made up of many such diplococci. Where two organisms approximate, they are more or less flattened. The organism is non-motile, does not produce spores, is easily stained by the common anilin dyes, and is Gram-positive. The length and character of the chains is variable in different media and under varying growth conditions, and likewise in strains isolated from different sources. This latter fact has been made use of by some investigators in an effort to perfect a classification. The typical form does not produce capsules, although capsulated varieties have been described.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may frequently be isolated in pure culture directly from the wound, but it is generally necessary to pour plates and isolate from the colonies. Care must be used in this latter method not to overlook the colonies, for many strains produce minute colonies only, and in mixed infections they may be missed. Inasmuch as most strains ferment lactose, with the production of acid, the use of litmus-lactose-agar plates is sometimes helpful, the colony appearing surrounded by a zone of red.

Growth occurs in most of the laboratory media, particularly upon the addition of a sugar, such as dextrose. The colonies upon agar and gelatin are small,—rarely larger than a pinhead, —at first transparent, and almost dewdrop-like. Later they may become somewhat opaque. The gelatin is not usually liquefied, although saprophytic strains are known which possess this property. Whether these latter are typical *Streptococcus pyogenes* is uncertain. Upon agar slants this organism tends to grow in the form of discrete colonies. Bouillon is sometimes clouded by a uniform distribution of short chains; in other cases it remains clear, the organism growing in masses of long, tangled threads which remain as a sediment at the bottom. Blood-serum is unusually favorable as a medium. A growth is frequently produced upon the potato, though many strains refuse to develop on this medium.

Milk may or may not be coagulated, with acid production and no digestion of the curd.

Physiology.—*Streptococcus pyogenes* is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. Its optimum temperature is about 37°, but growth will usually take place at room-temperatures. The thermal death-point differs in various strains—usually about 60° for fifteen minutes is sufficient to destroy. Antiseptics and disinfectants are efficient in destruction. No pigment is produced. No coagulating or proteolytic enzymes are developed in the typical strains, although, as indicated above, gelatinase has been reported in some saprophytic types. No indol is produced. No gas is developed in any medium. Acid is produced by most strains from many sugars, particularly dextrose and lactose. Efforts have been made to classify the various types of Streptococcus on the basis of their acid production in various sugars. This seems to be helpful in determining the origin of intestinal types in some cases.

Pathogenesis.—Unexplained differences and variations in pathogenesis may be noted in the various strains which have been studied. Virulence for a given species of animal may be increased by passage through that species.

Fig. 83.—*Streptococcus pyogenes* on a slant agar culture (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Mechanism of Disease Production.—Little more is known of the mechanism of disease production with this organism than with the staphylococci. Neither the hemolytic streptolysin nor the endotoxins, which have been described, seem adequately to explain its pathogenesis. Changes are usually brought about in tissues which are in more or less intimate contact with the organism. No class of infections shows better the necessity of virulence of an organism and lack of resistance on the part of the tissues in order to bring about pathologic changes.

Experimental Evidence of Pathogenesis.—Inoculation experiments of animals have duplicated practically every infection with

which this organism has been found associated in man and animals. The causal relationship of the organism to many infections has been abundantly demonstrated. All laboratory animals may be infected with strains exhibiting sufficient virulence.

Disease and Lesions Produced.—*Streptococcus pyogenes* is associated as primary cause with a long list of infections in both man and animals. As a secondary invader it is of great importance in many other diseases. Mixed infections with *Staphylococcus aureus* and other organisms are common. Some of the more important are worthy of note.

Wound Infection and Suppuration.—*Streptococcus pyogenes* is not as common in surgical wounds and other traumata as the *Staphylococcus aureus* and *S. albus.* Karlinski, in 1890, examined suppurative processes in man, animals, and birds, and found that Streptococcus was present in about 22 per cent. of the cases in man, 27 per cent. in lower animals, and 15 per cent. in birds. Staphylococci were present in about 70 per cent., 54 per cent., and 55 per cent. respectively. Lucet found Streptococci alone in 9 cases, and associated with other organisms in 10 cases, out of a total of 52 examinations of abscesses in cattle. According to this author *Streptococcus pyogenes* is not commonly found in suppuration in horses, and this result has been repeatedly confirmed. Pus production as a result of infection with *Str. pyogenes* in sheep and in swine is probably rare.

Septicemia and Pyemia.—When an unusually virulent Streptococcus gains entrance to the blood-stream it may cause septicemia (blood-poisoning). Direct growth through a blood-vessel wall may result in the formation of an infected blood-clot, and later, when broken up, this produces thrombi and may lead to embolism. Abscess formation proceeds at the new foci of infection. Multiple metastatic abscess formation of this character is known as pyemia.

Erysipelas.—This infection in man is characterized by a severe inflammation of the skin, in which this organism is present in the lymph-spaces of the subcutaneous tissue. Erysipelas seems to be due to an invasion with a peculiarly pathogenic organism and to a lack of resistance on the part of these tissues. Somewhat similar lesions have been noted upon lower animals. The erysipelas of

swine must not be confused with this disease, as it is caused by a totally different organism.

Infection of Mucous Surfaces.—*Tonsillitis* in man, *enteritis* in children, non-diphtheritic *anginas*, and similar inflammations of mucous surfaces are commonly caused by Streptococcus. *Puerperal fever*, an infection of a mucous surface following childbirth and its consequent septicemia, has been demonstrated in many cases to be due to Streptococcus infection, not infrequently contracted from a case of erysipelas. Less is known of the relationship of Streptococcus to related diseases in animals, though doubtless it plays an important part.

Peritonitis following an enterotomy is frequently due to infection of the peritoneum with *Streptococcus pyogenes*, although other organisms are equally capable of giving rise to this condition.

Pneumonia, particularly the traumatic pneumonia of the horse, may be caused by this organism. The so-called contagious pleuropneumonia of the horse is believed by many investigators to be due to an organism which has not been shown to differ materially from *Streptococcus pyogenes*, except for its exceptional virulence and mode of attack. The disease is contagious, and in this respect differs from most types of streptococcic infection.

Ulcerative Endocarditis.—This affection is produced most commonly by Streptococcus, although a Staphylococcus is found in some cases. Cauliflower-like excrescences of the heart-valves, with consequent valvular insufficiency and embolism due to the breaking off of these particles, are the characteristic lesions.

Arthritis.—Inflammation of the bone covering (periostitis), infections of the bone-marrow (osteomyelitis), and of the joints (arthritis) are generally the result of streptococcic invasion. In all newborn animals there is danger of infection through the navel, and consequent production of "navel ill" (omphalophlebitis). The umbilical vein, according to Moore, becomes heavily infected with bacteria, which invade the joints by metastasis. The selective action of the organisms in infecting certain tissues at one time and others at another is not well understood. Rheumatic fever in man (acute articular), and probably in animals, has been shown to be sometimes due to *Streptococcus pyogenes*. The infection atrium in man appears to be the tonsils.

Suppurative Cellulitis.—Under this heading Moore has described the streptococcic infections of the subcutaneous tissues, particularly of the lower extremities. In sheep it is called locally "foot-rot."

Mastitis is commonly caused by Streptococcus. Here again the particular strain selects a particular organ, and may be transferred from one animal to another by the hands of the milker. Several different species of the Streptococcus have been described as associated with garget or infectious mastitis, but there does not seem to be any good reason for believing them to be anything but specialized strains of the *Streptococcus pyogenes*. As will be seen later, the presence of Streptococcus in milk does not necessarily predicate mastitis, for non-pathogenic forms are common. According to Sven Wallan Ernst the mastitis streptococci can be differentiated from the non-pathogenic forms by the possession of a thin capsule-like membrane, which in some cases becomes considerably thickened. Furthermore, the pathogenic strains do not sour milk.

Septic Sore Throat.—Several epidemics in man of septic sore throat have been traced to milk, and in some cases to milk from cows suffering from mastitis.

Petechial fever or *Morbus maculosus* of the horse has been commonly ascribed to infection with *Streptococcus pyogenes*.

Immunity.—A hemolytic toxin, streptolysin, may be demonstrated in some strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes*. For this an antitoxin has been produced. It seems probable that there is also a toxin which injures or destroys leukocytes. These toxins vary in amount, however, in cultures of different strains, and seem to vary independently of the virulence. They certainly do not account for the pathogenic nature of the organism. Agglutinins may occasionally be demonstrated, but are not of diagnostic importance. Endotoxins are produced by both virulent and non-virulent strains. Bacteriolysins are probably not important. Opsonins, normal and immune, and the phagocytosis induced by them probably explain any immunity which is exhibited by the body. This immunity, like others produced by opsonins, is not lasting; in fact, it is so transient that it may be said that an attack of erysipelas, for example, renders one even more subject to recurrence.

Treatment by use of the bacterins, and particularly autogenic vaccines, has been found successful in chronic suppurations in both man and animals. In acute attacks it is of little or no value. It seems to be the consensus of opinion among investigators that the use of a polyvalent vaccine is more efficacious than a univalent when it is not autogenic.

Antistreptococcic sera are produced for use by both the veterinarian and the physician. The serum of Marmorek is prepared by the use of a culture having such virulence for rabbits that $\frac{1}{1,000,000}$ c.c. proves fatal. Horses are immunized by repeated injections of such broth cultures and their serum used. This seems to be of distinct benefit in immunizing passively an animal against the same strain, but does not protect against others. Polyvalent sera are prepared by immunizing horses against a considerable number of strains of the Streptococcus. The results from the use of such sera have not proved as successful as hoped, though some have reported excellent results. Such a serum
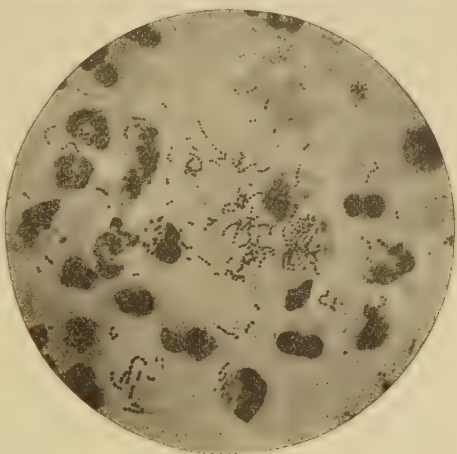
Fig. 84.—*Streptococcus pyogenes* in pus (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

doubtless owes its protective influence to its opsonic content, but Hektoen and Ruediger have shown that in some antistreptococcic sera on the market the opsonin content was below normal. The advisability of the use of antistreptococcic serum in general streptococcic infections in veterinary practice cannot be determined at present from the data available. It is possible that in some diseases, particularly of equines, a serum, either curative or prophylactic, prepared from a homologous organism, may prove practicable and helpful.

Diagnosis.—Smears of pus stained with methylene-blue or by Gram's method will usually reveal the organism if present

in any numbers. Sometimes the pus seems to be practically sterile upon microscopic examination, but cultures prepared from it will reveal the presence of the Streptococcus.

Transmission and Prophylaxis.—The constant presence of various strains of this organism upon the hair and skin makes the prevention of its entrance into wounds difficult. Cleanliness and the use of mild antiseptics are the only practicable methods of inhibiting its growth. In those infections which are characterized by a specialized organism, and which are more or less contagious, isolation of infected animals and quarantine of those exposed, with disinfection of barns, particularly stalls and mangers, are the methods which must be used in checking the spread.

Streptococcus equi

Synonym.—*Streptococcus coryzæ contagiosæ equorum.*

Disease Produced.—Strangles or distemper in equines.

The disease strangles in horses has a long recorded history. It was described by Solleysel in 1664, and its contagious nature determined by Lafosse in 1790. Schütz (1888) first isolated and described the organism now generally considered to be the specific cause.

Distribution.—The disease is quite widely distributed both in Europe and America. It generally attacks young animals.

Morphology and Staining Characters.—The organism is a Gram-positive Streptococcus, resembling the *Streptococcus pyogenes* in both morphologic and staining characters. Some authors state that the organism is Gram-negative, for it is decolorized if the alcohol remains too long in contact. Even forty-five seconds' exposure to alcohol is sufficient for decolorization. The chains in pus are usually long and twisted.

Isolation and Cultural Characters.—The organism may be isolated in pure culture, in most cases from the deeper portion of the characteristic abscesses, by the same methods used for *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Preliminary purification by mouse injection may be necessary. Bureschello claims that in many cases strangles is a mixed infection of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus equi*. In such cases plating would be necessary to differentiate the species of organisms present. The media for growth of *Str. equi* must be

slightly alkaline to phenolphthalein. The addition of glycerin or glucose favors growth. The best growth is secured upon solidified horse serum, serum agar, serum broth, and sugar broth. On agar the organism produces thin, bluish, transparent colonies. In the water of condensation there is a whitish flocculent precipitate. In agar stabs characteristic outgrowths from the line of puncture develop. Hemolysis is produced on blood agar. Gelatin is not suitable as a culture-medium because of the temperature requirements of the organism. In milk there is good growth without change in the appearance of the medium. On potato there is no visible surface growth.

Physiology.—A temperature of 60° will destroy the organism in an hour; of 80°, in thirty minutes. It is destroyed readily by direct sunlight and by disinfectants. The organism does not persist in nature for a long period outside the animal body. It grows well only at blood-heat. According to Holth it produces acid from glucose, mannose, galactose, fructose, maltose, cellobiose, sucrose, glycogen, dextrin, soluble starch, salicin, and in slight degree from arbutin. No acid is formed from sorbose, xylose, arabinose, rhamnose, glycoheptose, trehalose, formose, gentiobiose, lactose, raffinose, inulin, sorbit, mannit, dulcit, adonit, glycerin, erythrit, perseit, and amygdalin. It is claimed that the sugar reactions are sufficient to make certain the differentiation from other organisms found in the horse.

Experimental Evidence of Pathogenesis.—Pus from abscesses in strangles kills white mice, with evidence of acute septicemia in two to four days, or after a longer period as a result of pyemia. An abscess generally develops at the point of inoculation. Rabbits and guinea-pigs succumb to the injection of large quantities of the organism, but are not readily infected. Cattle, sheep, swine, dogs, and birds are very resistant. Subcutaneous inoculations of the horse will usually provoke abscess formation at the point of inoculation. Typical strangles in horses was caused by Schütz and others by the use of pure cultures. The introduction of the pure culture into the nose of young susceptible horses gave rise to the characteristic purulent catarrh with secondary abscess in the lymph-nodes. It seems evident, however, that there must be some predisposing factor to the disease in most cases.

15

Inoculations upon the nasal mucous membrane frequently fail to infect, particularly when old cultures are used, for the organism rapidly loses its virulence in culture-media. Müller and others have shown that ingestion is the common method of infection. Some authors have been inclined to believe that the true cause of strangles has not been discovered, and that *Streptococcus equi* is a secondary invader, but the work of Müller, Schütz, and others indicates that this organism stands in strict etiologic relationship to the disease. Age is a predisposing factor, young animals are most commonly infected. Other predisposing causes are fatigue and exposure to cold, hard work, or any other factor that lowers the vitality. Variations in virulence wholly unexplained probably account for the epizoötic character of the disease.

Diseases and Lesions Produced.—The infection atria are probably the upper air-passages. The disease may be produced in simple or malignant form. A catarrhal discharge, with inflammation of the nasal mucous membranes, is generally first noted, followed quickly by a swelling of the adjacent lymphatic glands and of the submaxillary and pharyngeal lymph-nodes. These generally develop into abscesses. The infection spreads through the lymph-channels, but generally remains localized in the tissues adjacent to the original point of infection. Metastatic infections may occur in practically any of the organs of the body, and in the chronic types of the disease great variations in localization will be found. Fatal termination is rare (0 to 3 per cent.), but sometimes occurs, due to septicemia, pyemia, or pneumonia.

Immunity.—Toxins and antitoxins, agglutinins, and bacteriolysins have not been satisfactorily demonstrated for this organism. Immunity is conferred by an attack of the disease, but is transitory, and the same animal may suffer from the disease a second time. Animals over five years old are quite generally immune. Probably immunity can be best accounted for by increased opsonin content of the blood and consequent stimulation of phagocytosis.

Immunization by vaccination with living and with dead cultures has not given wholly satisfactory results. Possibly the injection of autogenic cultures may have a protective influence. Todd has prepared a vaccine by growing the organism on blood-serum for twenty-four hours, then large flasks, containing 10 per

cent. serum broth, are inoculated and incubated a month. Six per cent. of sterile glycerin is added, and the material concentrated at 60° for two days over unslaked lime. The organism is destroyed by this means and the material evaporated to a thick paste. This is diluted and used as a vaccine. He has reported favorable results. Kitt prepared a bacterin by heating serum bouillon cultures to 53–55°. Marxer used a bacterial extract prepared by shaking a culture with 25 per cent. urea or galactose for four and one-half days. The use of the serum of animals recovered from the disease and hyperimmunized by repeated injections has been followed by even better results. Certain veterinarians have secured unusually good results by the prophylactic injection of such a serum. The immunity conferred is not permanent. The curative effect seems sufficient to warrant its use in many cases. Jensen concludes that in incipient cases, where only catarrhal inflammation of the nasal mucosa is in evidence, the disease is often aborted; but that the action in more advanced cases is relatively uncertain, particularly if suppurative lesions have developed; and that in pyemic and complicated cases it is quite valueless.

Diagnosis.—Presumptive bacteriologic diagnosis may be made by identification of a Gram-positive Streptococcus from the lesions characteristic of the disease.

Transmission probably occurs frequently by the use of common drinking troughs and by ingestion of infective food, perhaps rarely by inhalation. The fact that the organism does not persist long outside of the body indicates that infection is frequently the result of direct contact. The work of Müller indicates that the most common infection atrium is probably the upper part of the alimentary tract, the organisms gaining access to the lymphglands. It is probable that the organism may remain in the glands and follicles of the nasal mucosa after recovery of some animals, and such animals might easily infect others.

Streptococcus gallinarum

Synonyms.—Streptococcus of Nörgaard and Mohler. *Streptococcus capsulatus gallinarum* (?).

Disease Produced.—Apoplectiform and other septicemias in chickens.

This disease was first described, and its cause isolated, by Nörgaard and Mohler in 1902. The same disease was studied by Moore and Mack in 1905. Damman and Manengold (1906) recorded an epidemic of "fowl sleeping sickness," due to a Streptococcus, and later, in 1908, noted a similar outbreak.

Distribution.—The disease has been reported from the original outbreak in Virginia, from northern New York, from Sweden, and a similar, if not identical, disease from Germany.
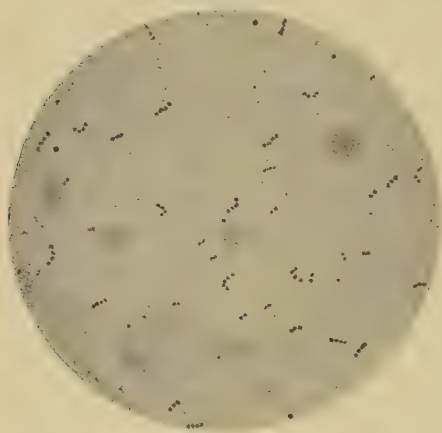
Fig. 85.—*Streptococcus gallinarum* (Magnusson).

Morphology.—The organism is a typical Streptococcus with chains of variable length, cells 0.6–0.8 μ in diameter, stains readily by the ordinary anilin dyes, and is positive to Gram's stain. With the exception of the doubtful difference in diameter, there appear to be no morphologic characters which differentiate it from *Streptococcus pyogenes*. The German type is described as forming capsules in the blood, and may be entirely distinct.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may be isolated from the blood and internal organs of affected fowls. It does not produce sufficient acid to coagulate milk, but differs culturally otherwise in no marked degree from *Str. pyogenes*.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Inoculations of pure cultures into fowls, rabbits, mice, and swine are fatal, while those into the guinea-pig, sheep, and dog are not.

Disease and Lesions Produced.—The disease is a typical septicemia, marked by parenchymatous degenerations and hemorrhage. Nörgaard and Mohler state that fowls frequently die in twelve to twenty-four hours after the first symptoms.

Immunity.—Little is known relative to the causal organism and its products. Probably they differ little, if at all, from those

of *Str. pyogenes.* The discoverers state that active immunity may be conferred by the injection of bouillon culture filtrates and by vaccination with killed cultures, and passive immunity by the injection of the blood-serum of an immunized animal.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be identified as a Gram-positive organism in smears from the blood and internal organs and by culture.

Transmission.—According to the German authorities the disease is not very contagious, but its appearance in considerable numbers of fowls at one time remains unexplained.

Streptococcus vaginitidis

Synonym.—Streptococcus of Ostertag.

Disease Produced.—Contagious granular or verrucose vaginitis in cattle.

Ostertag, in 1898, isolated and cultivated a Streptococcus from the purulent discharge and from the deeper layers of the mucous membrane in cases of infectious vaginal catarrh. His findings have been confirmed by the work of Hecker, Raebiger, and Hess. The latter edited a report of the Swiss Veterinary Surgeons Society in 1903, which gives a very complete summary of the knowledge of the disease and its cause.

Distribution.—The disease has been reported from all parts of Europe, and is wide-spread in North America.

Morphology.—The organism occurs in short chains of six to nine individuals, held together by a delicate capsule. It stains readily with common anilin dyes, and is *decolorized* by Gram's method. This latter differentiates it sharply from the *Str. pyogenes.*

Isolation and Culture.—Isolation may be made upon agar or gelatin. Plate cultures are usually necessary, as there are generally many other bacteria constantly present in the infected vagina. Growth occurs on gelatin (without liquefaction), blood-serum, and agar, particularly glycerinized. It produces a diffuse clouding of bouillon. Acid production is so weak that milk is not coagulated.

Physiology.—The organism is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. Acids are produced in small quantities, if at all, in carbohydrate

media.   The optimum growth temperature is blood-heat, but good growth occurs at room-temperature.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The organism is not pathogenic for any of the laboratory animals, nor can it produce disease in horses, hogs, sheep, or dogs when inoculated into the vagina.   Inoculation of pure cultures into the vagina of heifers has been found to reproduce the disease, so that there seems to be little doubt of its etiologic relation to the disease.   It seems to be an example of extreme specialization, such as is found in the organism causing gonorrhea in man.

Disease and Lesions Produced.—The disease in an acute form produces a swelling of the labia of the vulva, with increased secretion from the mucous membranes of the vagina.   Later the discharge becomes purulent, then granules from the size of a pinhead to a rape-seed develop.   These are the enlarged lymph-follicles of the mucous membrane.   The acute stage lasts usually for several weeks, the discharge becomes less prominent, and finally the chronic stage sets in, and may persist indefinitely or gradually disappear.   The organism may be isolated from the pus in the acute stage, or from the deeper layers of the mucosa in the later stages.   In the bull the glans penis may show granules similar to those of the vagina, or there may be a purulent catarrh of the prepuce.   In the cow the disease may involve the uterus and possibly produce abortion and even sterility.

Immunity.—Recovery from the disease presumably results from the development of an active immunity, perhaps opsonic in nature.   No means of artificial immunization have been employed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The presence of a *Gram-negative* Streptococcus in the depths of the mucous membranes should be diagnostic of the disease.   Identification in the discharges would necessitate cultures.

Transmission.—The disease is probably most commonly transmitted by coition or by immediate contact with soiled litter and fodder.

Other Streptococci of Uncertain Significance

Streptococcus mastitidis sporadicæ.—(*Str. agalactiœ conta-giosœ;* Str. der infektiösen Induration des Euters).

Organisms of mammitis or mastitis in cattle have been found in all parts of the world, frequently associated with the disease in epidemic form. This organism was originally reported as Gram-negative, but the *Str. mastitidis,* Gram-positive, is reported by the local government board in England as the commoner type. There are no good differential characters other than pathogenesis to separate this latter form from *Str. pyogenes* and *Str. lacticus.* On account of the general occurrence of this latter species in milk, direct microscopic examination of the milk is often insufficient for the purpose of determining the condition of the udder, *i. e.,* whether or not it is infected with garget.

Streptococcus Sp.—Epizoötic pleuropneumonia in equines. Stable pneumonia.

A number of investigators have demonstrated a Streptococcus present in the lesions of certain pneumonias in the horse. The organisms isolated by different investigators have not always the same cultural, morphologic, and physiologic characteristics. By some the organism is regarded as identical with *Str. equi,* by others as a specific type, and by still others it is believed that the specific organism is still unknown, and the Streptococci described are but secondary invaders. An organism resembling the human pneumococcus, if not identical with it, has been isolated from some cases of equine pneumonia, and will be considered in connection with that organism.

Streptococcus lacticus

Synonyms.—*Bacillus lactis acidi; Streptococcus lactis; Str. acidi lactici; Bacterium lactis acidi.*

Strangely enough, the organisms first isolated from milk, and described as the cause of its souring, are not the ones now regarded as most commonly associated with this change. These were members of the intestinal group, or bacilli that produce both acid and gas in milk. Leishman, in 1899, gave the name *Bacillus lactis acidi* to an organism which he isolated from soured milk, and regarded as the common cause of this fermentation. Kruse later

showed that Leishman had been mistaken in regarding it as a bacillus, and renamed the organism *Streptococcus lacticus*. Since then experimental data have accumulated, which seem to demonstrate quite conclusively that normal souring of milk is brought about in the vast majority of cases by this organism. The work of Heinemann in this country served materially to clear up the relationship between this and other forms.

Distribution.—*Streptococcus lacticus* is found generally in milk, butter, and cheese, upon the skin and hair of cattle, and in feces.

Isolation, Morphology, and Culture.—This organism may be most easily isolated from milk by plating in litmus-lactose gelatin. The characteristic non-liquefying colonies surrounded by red may be easily recognized. Its morphologic characters differ in no marked degree from *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Culturally,

Fig. 86.—*Streptococcus lacticus* (Heinemann, in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

many strains of this latter organism appear to be identical with *Str. lacticus*. In fact, the resemblance is so close that there is a good reason to believe that *Str. lacticus* is a strain of *Str. pyogenes* which has adapted itself to a saprophytic life.

Physiology.—Its physiologic characters differ in no noteworthy

degree from the preceding. Acid is produced from dextrose and lactose. According to Heinemann the dextro acid is produced by this organism and the levo by the *B. lactis aërogenes* and other members of the intestinal group.

The heat resistance of *Str. lacticus* is of particular importance in connection with pasteurization of milk. It has been generally regarded that pasteurization would certainly kill all organisms of this type, and it has been believed that pasteurized milk would contain only the spores of putrefactive bacteria, and if improperly handled would "rot." Ayers and Johnson have shown recently the falsity of this assumption. There are practically always present in any given sample of raw milk one or more strains of the lactic-acid organism which will resist the temperature of the pasteurizer, and will bring about normal souring in the milk pasteurized.

The production of lactic acid in milk is of considerable importance in preventing the growth of undesirable bacteria. Milk entirely freed from these forms, as by heating to the boiling-point, does not sour, but undergoes a putrefactive fermentation, brought about by organisms ordinarily held in abeyance by the development of the lactic acid.

Pathogenesis.—Heinemann, by a series of animal inoculations, has shown it possible to exalt the virulence of typical *Str. lacticus* so that it would kill rabbits as quickly as virulent *Str. pyogenes.*

The close relationship of the two forms can scarcely be questioned. Before the work of Heinemann it had been concluded by many workers that the presence of streptococci in milk was necessarily an indication of udder infection, and examination for streptococci was made a part of the routine work of certain board of health laboratories. Inasmuch as it is now known that the *Str. lacticus* is normally present in practically all milk, it is evident that such examinations are of little use. A streptococcic milk standard is not practicable.

Utilization.—The statement is common in the literature that different strains of *Streptococcus lacticus* are used in pure culture as *starters* for the purpose of ripening cream in the manufacture of butter. The work of Hammer and others has recently demonstrated that this statement scarcely gives the exact status.

It has been shown that the desired aroma and flavor characteristic of good butter are due to the adsorption by the butter fat of certain volatile acids produced by bacteria in the ripening cream. These are not produced by the *Streptococcus lacticus* itself, but by certain associated organisms, particularly by *Streptococcus citrovorus*. The latter organism produces the desirable volatile acids probably in large part from the citric acid of the milk and from the lactic acid produced by *Streptococcus lacticus*. A desirable starter is one containing a suitable mixture of *Streptococcus lacticus* and *Streptococcus citrovorus*. The desirable flavor is the result therefore of an associative action.

THE GROUP OF SPECIFIC PYOGENIC COCCI. THE GENERA DIPLOCOCCUS AND NEISSERIA

THE group of diplococci includes those organisms which when single are usually spherical or oval in shape, and whose cells are usually in pairs. All the organisms are non-motile and do not produce spores. They are usually strict parasites.

The organisms of this group may be divided into two genera, the separation being made upon the basis of the reaction to the Gram stain. The Gram-positive form is *Diplococcus pneumoniæ*, the Gram-negative forms *Neisseria meningitidis*, *N. gonorrhœæ*, and *N. intracellularis equi*. Not all of these produce disease in animals, but all are of sufficient importance to warrant brief discussion here.

Diplococcus pneumoniæ

Synonyms.—Pneumococcus; *Streptococcus pneumoniæ; Diplococcus lanceolatus; Micrococcus pneumoniæ; Micrococcus lanceolatus.*

Disease Produced.—Pneumonia in man, and probably some animals, particularly the horse.

Sternberg, in 1880, described this organism from normal sputum, but Fränkel, in 1885, first definitely associated the organism with croupous pneumonia. Considerable difficulty early arose, due to the confusion of two distinct organisms; namely, the form under consideration with the pneumobacillus of Friedländer. A somewhat similar organism, possibly a Gram-negative variety of this form, has been found by Mayer associated with pneumonia in the horse.

Distribution.—Throughout the world, in diseased and healthy individuals.

Morphology and Staining.—Usually occurs in twos, more rarely in chains of four or six, spherical or more generally flattened at the point of contact, and with opposite side somewhat elongated and pointed, whence the name, *lanceolatus*. Capsules may be

demonstrated in the body, but do not appear in culture-media ex-
cept in serum broth.   It stains readily with ordinary anilin dyes
and is Gram-positive.

Isolation and Cultural Characters.—The organism may in some
cases be isolated from the blood directly in pure cultures.   It
is most readily obtained from the sputum by animal passage.
Growth occurs on most laboratory media except potato.   Growth
is never luxuriant, the organism developing as discrete, transparent,
dewdrop-like colonies upon the surface of the medium.   Bouillon
is slightly clouded.   Milk is acidified and coagulated.   The addition of glycerin, and particularly blood-serum, stimulates growth in most media.

Physiology.—The optimum temperature is 37°; little or no growth will occur at lower temperatures.   Desiccation for several months, particularly in sputum, does not always kill the organism.   Twelve hours' exposure to direct sunlight is fatal.   Acids are produced from many carbohydrates.

Fig. 87.—*Diplococcus pneumoniæ* in pure culture (Weichselbaum) (Kolle and Wassermann).

Pathogenesis.—The pneumococcus produces acute septicemia
when injected into the mouse, guinea-pig, or rabbit.   The produc-
tion of typical pneumonia is attended with difficulty if, indeed,
it has been satisfactorily demonstrated.   Its principal claim to
recognition as the etiologic factor in the disease rests upon its
presence in the lesions and its general pathogenic relationship to
animals.   The fact that it is quite commonly present in the sputum
of normal individuals seems to indicate that there are great differ-
ences in disease-producing power among different strains.   Whether
or not the organism isolated by Mayer from pneumonia in the horse
is identical with this organism cannot at present be determined,
nor can its relationship to "Brustseuche" be said to be satisfac-
torily proved.

The tissues of the lung invaded by the organism become con-

gested, and blood-plasma is poured into the alveoli. The fibrinogen coagulates and the lung becomes "hepatized," that is, liver-like in consistency. Frequently there is more or less hemorrhage, largely by diapedesis, and the lung becomes reddened. Later leukocytes, particularly the polymorphonuclear type, invade, and the tissues become gray. Autolytic digestion of the fibrin and other exudates supervenes, and the material passes off through the air-passages or is resorbed.

Metastatic infections with the pneumococcus are common in man. Inflammations of the endocardium, the pericardium, the pleura, and the meninges have been found to be due to this organism in a small percentage of cases. Otitis media is sometimes the initial infection, and may be followed by meningitis.

Immunity.—No toxin has been demonstrated in this organism. Endotoxins may be demonstrated, but whether they account for

Fig. 88.—*Diplococcus pneumoniæ* colony on agar plate (×100) (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

its pathogenicity is uncertain. Agglutination of the pneumococcus occurs with the blood-serum of an infected individual, but not usually in greater dilutions than 1 : 50. Opsonins, both normal and immune, have been demonstrated, and likewise there has been isolated from virulent Pneumococci a substance that inhibits phagocytosis.

Immunity to pneumonia is transient; relapses frequently occur, possibly due to decrease in immunity during convalescence. Recovery in some cases seems to be followed by increased susceptibility. The immunity developed is evidently opsonic in nature.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The most conclusive method of bacteriologic diagnosis is by isolation and cultivation of the organ-

ism.   A demonstration of the characteristic lanceolate, capsulated, Gram-positive diplococci is often diagnostic.   The agglutination test is not conclusive.
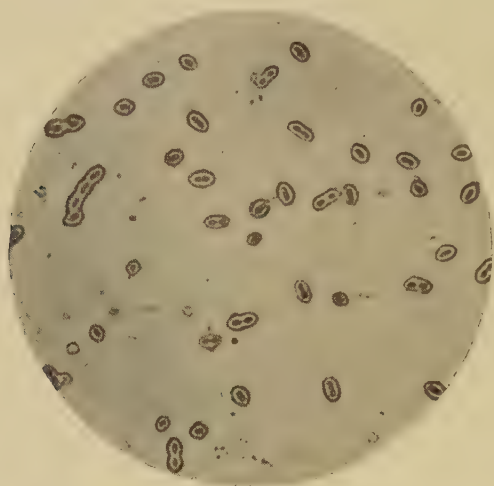
Fig. 89.—*Diplococcus pneumoniæ*. Stained preparations showing capsules (Buerger, in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

The relationship of this organism to pleuropneumonia and contagious pneumonia in equines is uncertain, and further work needs to be done before the connection can be made clear.

Neisseria meningitidis

Synonyms.—*Diplococcus intracellularis meningitidis; Micrococcus weichselbaumii; Streptococcus meningitidis;* meningococcus.

Disease Produced.—Epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis in man.

Weichselbaum, in 1887, first adequately described this organism from meningeal exudate, and proved its pathogenic nature by animal experimentation. It has since been observed repeatedly in many epidemics both in Europe and America.

Morphology and Staining.—*Neisseria meningitidis* in stained smears of meningeal exudate usually appears as a diplococcus, or in groups of four.   In culture-media it is about 1 μ in diameter, and is usually in pairs, rarely in short chains.   The latter fact would seem to indicate that this organism should be classed as a

Streptococcus, but the tetrad formation sometimes seen seems, on the contrary, to show that cell division may be in two planes, hence the use of the generic name, Micrococcus. No capsules are produced. It stains readily with the ordinary anilin dyes, but is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may be obtained by a lumbar puncture with a sterile hypodermic needle, and transferred directly to artificial media. It is best to use a medium containing serum for the first isolation, for this bacterium frequently does not grow well on artificial media at the first. Upon blood-serum at 37° white, viscid, coherent colonies develop. Serum may be added to agar or bouillon and will be found to favor the growth. Milk is not changed. Frequent transfers are necessary to the preservation of cultures in artificial media.

Physiology.—The meningococcus is killed almost immediately by desiccation. In culture-media autolysis rapidly occurs, and the organism soon disappears. No acids are produced in carbohydrate media. Proteolytic enzymes are not produced.

Pathogenesis.—The meningococcus does not readily infect common laboratory animals unless intraperitoneal injections of comparatively large amounts of the culture be used. Even in this case the result seems to arise from the absorption of the toxic products rather than from an invasion of the tissues. Injection of pure cultures into the spinal cavity of the goat has been found to produce meningitis, and inoculation into the monkey has resulted practically in a duplication of the disease as it occurs in man. The relationship of the organism to the disease is, therefore, well demonstrated.

The disease is an acute inflammation of the meninges, accompanied by a purulent exudate. The organism sometimes, though rarely, enters the blood. Metastatic involvement of the lungs and other organs occurs in a few cases.

Immunity.—No true toxins have been demonstrated; endotoxins are probably produced, and released through the autolytic disintegration of the organism. Agglutinins are developed in sufficient quantity, so that the blood of a patient frequently agglutinates in a dilution of 1 : 50. Although no distinct bacteriolysins have been demonstrated, specific amboceptors for the organ-

ism may be shown to be present in the blood by the hemolytic absorption of complement test. Opsonins probably play the largest part in the development of immunity. All these antibodies mentioned have been determined to be present in the serum of immunized horses.

Vaccination against the disease is not practised. Flexner and Jobling have prepared an immune serum from the horse by the injection of dead bacteria, followed by the injection of living
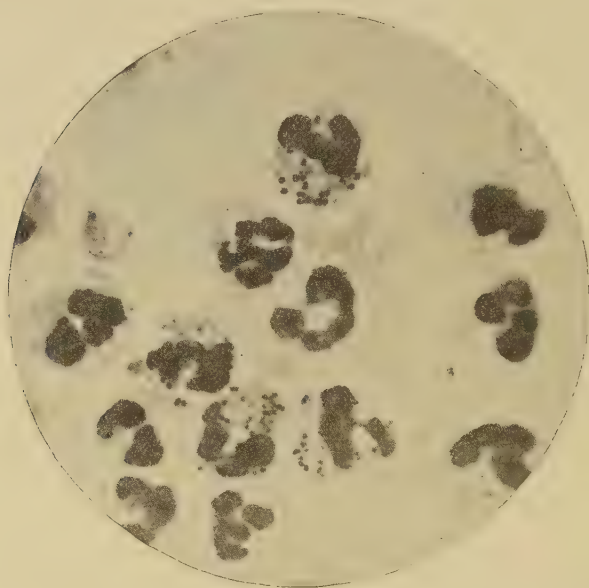
Fig. 90.—*Neisseria meningitidis* in a preparation of pus from a brain abscess. Note that the organism is generally intracellular (Flexner).

bacteria and the products of their autolytic digestion. The serum is injected directly into the spinal canal after the withdrawal of an equal amount of the purulent exudate. It comes in direct contact, therefore, with the organisms, and probably stimulates phagocytosis by its opsonin content. The use of this serum has proved highly successful; by its means mortality has been materially reduced.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Lumbar puncture, with demonstration in smears of a Gram-negative diplococcus, occurring prin-

cipally within the leukocytes, constitutes a satisfactory diagnosis. The agglutination test may be applied, but is not used in practice.

Transmission and Prophylaxis.—How the organism gains entrance to the spinal and brain cavities is not certainly known. It is found in the early stages of the disease upon the nasal mucous membranes. It is spread probably by the use of infected handkerchiefs or by the inhalation of infectious droplets.

Neisseria intracellularis equi

Synonyms.—*Micrococcus intracellularis equi; diplococcus intracellularis equi.*

An organism in no important particular differing from the meningococcus has been reported by Johne, Ostertag, and others in epizoötic or cerebrospinal meningitis, or Borna disease in horses. Ostertag succeeded in producing the disease in horses by subdural injections of pure cultures. Other organisms have been found in similar outbreaks by other investigators. Careful study of the relationship of these organisms to the diseases must be made before conclusions as to their importance as an etiologic factor would be justified. This epizoötic infection should not be confused with the far more common type of so-called meningitis produced by forage poisoning.

Neisseria gonorrhœæ

Synonyms.—*Micrococcus gonorrhœæ;* gonococcus; diplococcus of Neisser.   Diplococcus gonorrhœæ.

Diseases Produced.—Gonorrhea and its sequelæ in man.

Neisser, in 1879, noted the occurrence of a characteristic coccus in gonorrheal pus. Bumm, in 1885, succeeded in obtaining the organism in pure cultures, and determined by inoculations into human subjects the causal relationship of the organism to the disease.

Distribution.—Gonorrhea is a common disease in all classes of men, particularly in civilized countries.

Morphology and Staining.—The gonococcus closely resembles the meningococcus. In stained preparations of gonorrheal pus the organisms occur generally in pairs inside the polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The cells are usually coffee-bean shaped. The individual cells measure about 1.6 by 0.8 μ. There is little or no tendency to chain formation, the cells being arranged in irregular

16

masses in culture-media. The organism stains readily with the ordinary anilin dyes and is Gram-negative. This latter fact is important, as it renders differential diagnosis between the common staphylococci and the gonococcus possible.

Isolation and Cultural Characters.—The organism may be isolated directly from gonorrheal pus, care being exercised to secure pus not contaminated with organisms from the skin. Considerable difficulty is sometimes experienced in securing cultures. Usually no growth will occur on ordinary agar or gelatin, although, when considerable quantities of pus are spread over the surface, some colonies will develop. Wertheim's medium, composed of 1 part of human serum to 2 parts of nutrient agar, is commonly
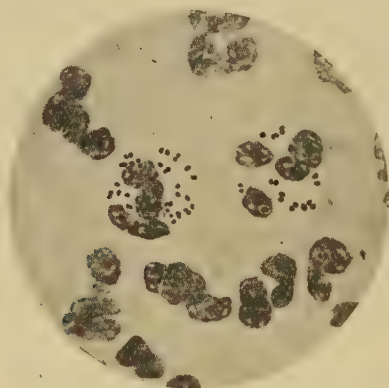
Fig. 91.—*Neisseria gonorrhœæ* in pus (Günther).

found to be the one on which growth is most readily secured. The organism gradually adapts itself to growth on artificial media, and after a few transfers develops more luxuriantly. The colonies resemble those of the *Str. pyogenes*, being small, discrete, and transparent.

Physiology.—The organism is aërobic. It is easily destroyed by desiccation, although when dried in pus it may retain its vitality for weeks. It must be transferred every two days if kept at thermostat temperatures, less frequently in the refrigerator, to keep it alive.

Pathogenesis.—*Evidence of Pathogenesis.*—That the gonococcus causes gonorrhea is evident from the fact of its universal

occurrence in gonorrheal pus, and from inoculation experiments upon man. The laboratory animals do not contract the disease upon inoculation.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The organism ordinarily causes an acute urethritis in both sexes. It may also produce gonorrheal ophthalmia, particularly in the newborn. The urethritis may become chronic and lead to stricture. Secondary involvement of the Fallopian tubes, ovaries, and peritoneum in the female, and of the epididymis and bladder in the male, frequently occurs. Metastatic infections of the joints, causing gonorrheal rheumatism; of the heart valves, causing endocarditis; of the brain and cord, causing meningitis, are not uncommon. The organism may persist for a long period in a dormant state.

Immunity.—No true toxins are produced by the gonococcus, but endotoxins have been demonstrated, as have also specific agglutinins and precipitins. Little or no immunity is developed as the result of an infection. The presence of specific amboceptors in the blood has been shown by the method of fixation of complement. Vaccination with the autolytic products of the organism, and with cultures killed by heat, and by mixture with strong solutions of lactose or other sugars have been used with a moderate degree of success. Porrey has prepared an antigonococcus serum from the rabbit by immunization with living cultures, and claims to have secured favorable results from its use.

CHAPTER XXII

STAPHYLOCOCCUS GROUP

THE Staphylococcus group includes those Gram-positive cocci associated in irregular masses (not in chains) which in general produce non-specific pyogenic infections. All the species are aërobic, non-motile, and, in general, liquefy gelatin and digest casein.

The principal species are *Staphylococcus aureus, St. albus, St. citreus,* and *St. (Botryomyces) ascoformans.* These organisms are the most frequent cause of pyogenic infections in animals as well as in man. They are widely distributed in nature, but in general are parasitic or semiparasitic.

Staphylococcus aureus

Synonyms.—*Micrococcus pyogenes aureus; Staphylococcus pyogenes aureus; Micrococcus aureus.*

Staphylococci were definitely described as present in pus by Ogston (1881). Three years later Rosenbach (1884) cultivated them upon artificial media and differentiated several species, among them the one under consideration. Other investigators have frequently isolated this organism from pus in man and practically all domestic animals.

Distribution in Nature.—*Staphylococcus aureus* occurs quite constantly upon the skin and hair of man and animals, in the nose and mouth of man, occasionally in human feces, and frequently in milk. It is often carried about in atmospheric dust, and is not uncommon in water, especially when contaminated with sewage. Lucet found *St. aureus* associated with pus production in the horse three times in pure culture and forty-four times in association with other organisms out of a total of 93 cases.

Morphology and Staining Characters.—The organism is spherical, sometimes slightly flattened where two cells are appressed. In pus and in the blood it is usually in masses like grape-clusters (whence the name, Staphylococcus); in culture-media the cells are

244

grouped irregularly. The diameter of the cells is about 0.7 to 0.9 μ, rarely larger. It stains well with ordinary anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.

Isolation and Culture.—*Staphylococcus aureus* may be frequently secured in pure culture by making cultures directly from a fistula or other suppurating focus, first cleansing the outer portion and securing material on a sterile platinum needle. In general, it is best, however, to plate out the drop of pus obtained in this way. This is not only important in preventing contamination, but in order to diagnose mixed infections, especially in isolations made for the purpose of preparing autogenic vaccines. The organism

Fig. 92.—Stained mount of the *Staphylococcus aureus* from agar (Günther).
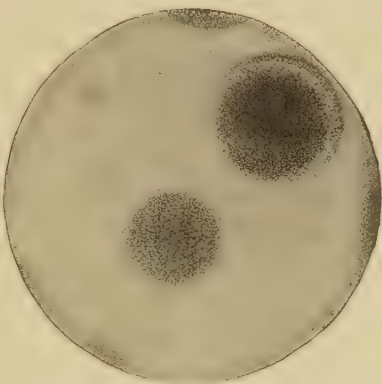
Fig. 93.—Colony of *Staphylococcus aureus* on agar (Heim).

grows well in all the common laboratory media. The colonies upon gelatin appear as disks with smooth, definite edges, and with granular, dark interior. Within a few days the colony sinks in a cup of liquid. The liquid is cloudy, with a golden-yellow sediment. The growth on agar is abundant, shining, and well circumscribed. Upon the potato the growth is luxuriant, and the orange pigment is produced here in greatest abundance. Bouillon is clouded. Milk is curdled with a slight acid reaction, and the curd is eventually digested.

Physiology.—A study of the physiologic characters of this organism makes it apparent that there are many races of which

account must be taken. It has not been satisfactorily demonstrated, however, that there is any relationship between these variations and pathogenicity.

Pigment Production.—An orange-yellow pigment is produced.

Fermentation.—A slight power to produce acid in milk has been noted. No gas is formed. Nitrates are reduced to nitrites. A proteolytic enzyme which digests casein is produced in milk. Gelatinase, rennin, and maltase have been demonstrated.

Relation to Oxygen.—The organism is aërobic and facultative anaërobic.

Vitality.—There is a marked resistance to desiccation, although it is not probable that the organism can remain alive for very long periods in this condition. Cultures upon media will remain alive for months. The optimum growth temperature is blood-heat, although growth is good at room-temperatures and below. The various isolated strains have shown great variation in heat resistance. Usually a temperature of 60° for half an hour suffices to destroy all the cells, but some require 80° for the same length of time. The cells are easily destroyed by common disinfectants.

Pathogenesis.—*Mechanism of Disease Production.*—Staphylococci have been shown to produce a leukocytotoxin called leukocidin. A stained mount of pus will frequently show that many of the leukocytes have been destroyed, and that the cells are beginning to disintegrate. Staphylolysin, a hemolytic toxin, is also produced, particularly by the virulent strains. It seems to have been demonstrated, however, that these two toxins do not explain the pathogenic nature of the organism satisfactorily. Possibly anaphylaxis will explain some of the reactions secured, but there seems to be some poisonous property, possibly an endotoxin, which is not at present understood. We have no satisfactory explanation for its mechanism of disease production.

Experimental Evidence of Pathogenesis.—The causal relationship of this organism to pus production and wound infection has been amply demonstrated. One-tenth c.c. of a twenty-four-hour culture of a moderately virulent strain will kill a rabbit, when injected intravenously, in four to eight days, and, upon postmortem examination, abscesses containing the same organism will be found in many of the internal organs.

Types of Natural Infection.—As has been stated previously, *Staphylococcus aureus* is most frequently found associated with wound infections, and is also a common cause of abscesses, carbuncles, boils, acne, and furuncles in man and animals, of poll-evil and fistula in the horse, and similar lesions in other animals. The organism may gain entrance to the circulation and produce septicemia or pyemia in man, rarely in animals. It has also been found in man as the cause of certain metastatic infections, particularly of the bone-marrow (osteomyelitis), and ulcerative endocarditis. These have also been produced experimentally in the laboratory animals. Inflammation of the udder (mastitis) in cows is occasionally caused by this organism.

Immunity.—The production of two specific toxins, the hemolytic staphylolysin and the leukocidin, has already been noted, as also the probable importance of an endotoxin. Antitoxins for the two first mentioned have been produced, but do not seem to confer immunity. Agglutinins have been demonstrated in normal as well as infected animals; they seem, however, to be of no diagnostic value. The precipitation reaction has likewise been obtained with the bacterial filtrate. Bail has claimed

Fig. 94.—*Staphylococcus aureus* in pus (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

that the production of aggressins accounts for pathogenicity, but his results are inconclusive. Bacteriolysins for *Staphylococcus aureus* are not produced in appreciable quantities, and are probably not of any immunizing value. Opsonins may be demonstrated in both normal and immune blood, and seem to be the most important serum component in determining immunity.

Immunization.—Bacterins and vaccines, both univalent and

polyvalent, have been prepared, and have been extensively tested in cases of chronic suppuration. The results of repeated injections have been encouraging in many cases. A check has been kept on the development of immunity in man by repeated determinations of the opsonic index. Care is used to eliminate the negative phase as far as possible in making the injections. Autogenic vaccines have proved even more successful in both man and animals. The methods of preparation of such a vaccine have already been discussed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—A mount of pus stained by Gram's method reveals the organism distinctly, if present. Its characteristic morphology will, in general, render its recognition easy. This method has proved to be of particular value in differentiating this organism from certain other pyogenic forms, such as the gonococcus. Frequently a stained mount will reveal but a few bacteria, and cultures are then necessary. These must be made in any event where it is desired to make a positive diagnosis.

Transmission and Prophylaxis.—The fact that the organism is constantly present on the skin and hair makes it particularly difficult to prevent its entrance into wounds. The common practices of aseptic surgery are the best preventives of infection.

Staphylococcus albus

Synonyms.—*Micrococcus pyogenes albus; Staphylococcus pyogenes albus.*

This organism differs principally from *Staphylococcus aureus* by being devoid of color. In certain cases of suppuration it has been found alone, and in many cases associated with the preceding. In all other respects what has been said with reference *St. aureus* will apply to this form. It is believed by some investigators that those two organisms are simply varieties of one form which they term *St. pyogenes.* Lucet found this organism associated with three-fourths of the pyogenic infections of the horse. He isolated it in pure culture from 11 cases and in mixed culture from 63 out of 93 cases studied.

Staphylococcus citreus

Synonyms.—*Micrococcus pyogenes citreus; Staphylococcus pyogenes citreus; Micrococcus citreus.*

This organism was originally described by Rosenbach as present on the skin. It is doubtfully pathogenic and relatively uncommon. It differs principally from aureus in the production of a lemon-yellow pigment on agar and potatoes and its lack of power to liquefy gelatin. In other respects it resembles the two preceding forms, and is possibly but a variety of them.

Staphylococcus (pyogenes) bovis

Synonym.—*Micrococcus pyogenes bovis.*

This organism is somewhat smaller than *Staphylococcus aureus*, and does not liquefy gelatin. It has been claimed to be more commonly the cause of suppuration in cattle than the typical *Staphylococcus aureus*. It is doubtful whether there is a valid specific difference between the two.

Staphylococcus ascoformans

Synonyms.—*Micrococcus botryogenus; Botryococcus ascoformans; Botryomyces ascoformans; Zoöglœa pulmonis equi; Micrococcus ascoformans; Ascococcus Johnei; Discomyces equi.*

Disease Produced.—Botryomycosis.

Animals Infected.—Equines, more rarely cattle and swine.

The organism associated with botryomycosis was described in 1870 by Bollinger, and later investigated independently by Rivolta and Micellone in 1879, by Johne in 1885, and by Rabe in 1886.

Distribution.—The disease is not uncommon in horses both in America and Europe. According to Eberlena, 5 per cent. of all horses admitted to the surgical clinic of the Berlin Veterinary School were affected with botryomycosis.

Morphology.—The cocci in the tissues are relatively large, 1 to 1.5 μ in diameter. They are embedded in the thick capsules of the organism, forming a gelatinous mass of considerable size, a zoöglea. These masses of cocci are frequently large enough to be visible to the naked eye as bunches of granules the size of tiny

sand grains. Under the microscope they look like mulberries. The capsular material forms a sac-like membrane around the entire colony, and other colonies or masses appear to arise as though by a process of budding.

Upon culture-media the capsule formation is not very evident, if present, and the cells are usually in pairs or tetrads grouped as a Sarcina, rather than as a Micrococcus, while in many respects it resembles the *Staphylococcus aureus*. It stains readily with anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.

Isolation and Culture.—*Staphylococcus ascoformans* may be isolated in pure culture from the characteristic lesions, or in mixed infection it may be secured by plating. In most of its cultural characters it resembles a weakened strain of *Staphylococcus aureus*. Gelatin colonies are small, hemispherical, and sharply defined. They vary from silvery gray to gold gray. Glage characterized a thickly seeded plate as having the appearance of being sprinkled with pollen. Slight liquefaction and cupping of the medium when at the surface is claimed by some authors and denied by others. In gelatin stab the growth is filiform and white, followed by a slow, crateriform liquefaction. The colonies on agar are scarcely visible in most strains, although more vigorous types have been described. On potato the growth is yellowish and has an aromatic odor.

Physiology.—This organism produces a small amount of gelatinase, as evidenced by the liquefaction of the gelatin. The temperature optimum is apparently 20° to 30°. At 37° growth is slower and the golden yellow color is not produced. The cells are relatively resistant to desiccation.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Guinea-pigs injected with *St. ascoformans* generally succumb to septicemia. Mice are not susceptible. Sheep and goats develop ulcers at the point of inoculation. Injection into the horse usually results in suppuration, but occasionally the typical botryomycomata are developed. Whether or not this is a variety of *St. aureus* is unsettled, but it seems improbable that it is a distinct species.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The lesions resemble superficially certain fibromata and other neoplasms. The infection usually takes place where the surface of the skin has been abraded, as by harness, through wounds at castration,

on the udder, and elsewhere on the body. The tissues involved become grayish red, then lardaceous, and eventually form a mass resembling a fibroma. These sometimes reach considerable size. Metastatic infection through the lymph-channels may result in the involvement of considerable areas and infection of the internal organs, particularly the lungs.

Immunity.—Methods of developing immunity have not been devised. It is possible that autogenic vaccination might be of value.

Transmission.—As noted above, infection generally occurs through wounds or abrasions of the skin.

CHAPTER XXIII

ANTHRAX GROUP. THE GENUS BACILLUS

THE GROUP OF AËROBIC SPORE-PRODUCING BACILLI

THE organisms which belong to this group resemble each other in that all are *aërobic rods* (some are also facultative anaërobes) and *produce endospores*. Practically all the species also *liquefy gelatin* and are *Gram-positive*. Many also show a decided tendency for the cells to remain united in chains.

Many species of aërobic spore-bearing bacilli are known. They are often termed collectively the "hay bacillus" or *Bacillus subtilis* group. Some species are among the most abundant of bacteria in dust and soil. They are the organisms which are most active in the soil in bringing about the decomposition of organic substances, particularly those changes grouped together under the heading of Ammonification. They are, therefore, of great importance in the maintenance of soil fertility. Because of the resistance of the spores to high temperatures and desiccation these organisms are among those which most frequently contaminate culture-media in the bacteriologic laboratory.

The various species are differentiated from each other by the size, shape, and position of the spores, the tendency to chain formation, motility, by differences in cultural and physiologic characters, and in pathogenesis.

One species only exhibits sufficient disease-producing power to merit consideration here. This is *Bacillus anthracis*, the cause of anthrax. It can be separated with certainty from some of the common saprophytic soil species only by animal inoculations, by physiologic and serologic studies, or by careful observation of colony characters.

252

Bacillus anthracis

Synonym.—*Bacterium anthracis; Bacteridium anthracis.*

Disease Produced.—Anthrax. The disease is also known in cattle as splenic fever. (German, Milzbrand; French, Charbon.) In man the disease may be termed "malignant carbuncle" or "woolsorters' disease." The animals most commonly attacked are cattle, sheep, and swine, more rarely horses and man.

Historical.—The anthrax bacillus was first noted in literature by the French physician Rayer, in 1850, though it is probable that Fuchs had seen the organism as early as 1842. The first accurate description was that of Pollender in 1855. The last author stated that he had observed the rods in blood in 1849.

The complete demonstration of the causal relationship of this organism to the disease was furnished by the work of Robert Koch, published in 1876. This is of interest historically as the first instance of the cultivation of an organ-

Fig. 95.—*Bacillus anthracis*, rods without spores (Günther).

ism on solid media in the laboratory, and the successful reproduction of disease after repeated transfers in pure culture.

Distribution.—The organism is a true parasite, and probably in nature does not increase outside of infected animals. The disease has been recorded from all parts of the world. There are accurate records of its existence in Asia and Europe in ancient times.

It is known at present from every continent. It has been reported from about one-third of the States in the United States, and probably occurs sporadically in most of them, though the disease is at present not common except in a few localities.

Morphology and Staining.—*Bacillus anthracis* is a large rod, straight, usually with truncate ends, 1 to 1.25 by 4.5 to 10 μ, in short chains when examined in tissues or blood and in long chains in culture-media. It is non-motile. Capsules may be demon-

strated in smears from blood and other tissues.   Spores are pro-
duced only when the organism is grown in the presence of free oxy-
gen.   They do not, therefore, occur in the bacillus as found in the
blood and the tissues.   The single spore produced by a cell is oval
or spherical, occupies the middle of the cell, and is of almost the
same diameter.   The spores are much more refractive than the
protoplasm of the non-sporulating cells.   The spores germinate
on being brought under favorable growth conditions by breaking
through the spore wall at the pole.   They may be demonstrated
by a contrast spore stain.   The vegetative rod stains readily with
the aqueous anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.   Metachromatic
granules may rarely be demonstrated.

Many methods have been used for the demonstration of the
capsules in blood-smears.   The contrast stain of Klett or the single
stain of Johne or of Räbiger (*q. v.*) are satisfactory.   The Roman-
owsky blood stain also shows capsules and granules well, the cap-
sules being colorless, the granules red, and the protoplasm blue.
The capsules can be best found in smears of blood from infected
animals.   They have been found, however, to develop in culture-
media containing egg-white or blood-serum.   Suitable staining
technic may sometimes demonstrate capsules from pure cultures
in other media.

The more suitable spore stains are those of Möller and of Klein.

Occasionally asporogenous strains of *Bacillus anthracis* have
been discovered or have developed in the laboratory.   Some of
these have been found to possess undiminished virulence, but in
most cases the pathogenicity was largely lost.

Isolation and Culture.—*Bacillus anthracis* may be readily iso-
lated in pure culture upon any of the common laboratory media by
direct inoculation from the blood of an infected animal or from the
internal organs, particularly the spleen or liver.   Plate cultures in
agar or gelatin are sometimes necessary when the organism is mixed
with other forms.   The colonies microscopically are found to con-
sist of long chains of bacilli, which, under the low power, resemble
tufts of curled hair.   This appearance is quite characteristic, but
is closely duplicated by certain soil organisms of the *Bacillus sub-
tilis* group.   In gelatin stabs a "spiking" occurs, *i. e.*, filaments
radiate from the line of puncture and give the appearance of an

inverted fir tree. The gelatin is liquefied slowly. The growth on potato is creamy in color and rather dry in consistency. Blood-serum is slowly liquefied. Milk is rendered slightly acid, curdled by a lab ferment, and the casein digested. In bouillon the organism frequently forms a pellicle which readily settles to the bottom. Clouding of the medium does not usually occur.

As will be noted from the preceding descriptions, the *Bacillus anthracis* grows readily on practically all the culture-media, particularly if they are neutral or have a weakly alkaline reaction.

All of the characteristics of the *Bacillus anthracis* on culture-media can be duplicated in the growths of other members of the group which are strictly saprophytic. Care should, therefore, be used in the diagnosis of this organism from cultural characters alone.

Physiology.—*Bacillus anthracis* grows best in the presence of oxygen, and produces spores only under such conditions. Under anaërobic

Fig. 96.—*Bacillus anthracis*, with spores (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

or semi-anaërobic conditions, as in lackmus molke and litmus agar, it decolorizes or acts as a reducing agent.

The optimum growth temperature is 30–37°. Good growth may be secured at room-temperature or even below. At low temperatures the spores are not produced, the optimum for spore development being 25–32°. The maximum growth temperature is about 45°.

The vegetative rods are readily destroyed by heat, five and one-half minutes at 65° sufficing. The spores are much more resistant, requiring 100° for from three to twelve minutes. When dried they have been heated to 140° for three hours before being killed. They likewise exhibit great resistance to desiccation. When dried upon

threads they have been known to retain their vitality for many years. Because they are probably the most resistant of the spores of pathogenic bacteria, they have been commonly used as test objects in determining the efficiency of disinfectants. Five per cent. phenol kills the spores only after prolonged contact, according to some investigators even forty days.

Several other species of bacteria, particularly the *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*, inhibit the growth of *B. anthracis*. Pyocyanase (*q. v.*), a preparation made from cultures of *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*, will dissolve *B. anthracis in vitro*.
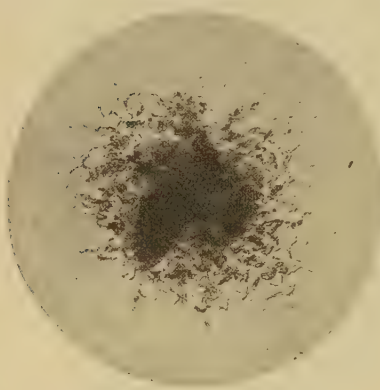
Fig. 97.—*Bacillus anthracis* colony (Günther).

Fig. 98. —*Bacillus anthracis*, stab culture in gelatin (Günther).

Indol is not produced. Small quantities of hydrogen sulphid develop in peptone solutions. The enzyme gelatinase, which digests gelatin, has been demonstrated in the bacteria-free filtrates from cultures. A rennet-like enzyme and others which digest casein and blood-serum are produced. Some acid is formed in certain media, but it is not marked. The organism causes hemolysis when grown in blood-bouillon or on blood-plates.

Pathogenesis.—Mice and guinea-pigs are highly susceptible to infection with anthrax, rabbits only slightly less so. These animals usually succumb in from twenty-four to forty-eight hours after inoculation. Rats are less susceptible, but show considerable variations. They usually die in about three days, but the disease sometimes assumes a subacute or chronic form and the animal may

live for several days to as many weeks. Sheep die quickly after the injection of minute doses of the organism, cattle are slightly more resistant, but usually succumb. Horses, swine, and goats may also be infected, but do not contract the disease spontaneously as frequently as do the other species. Dogs and cats are also somewhat susceptible. Certain birds may sometimes be infected, but, in general, are relatively immune. Cold-blooded animals are refractory. Man is relatively susceptible.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The type of disease and the lesions produced vary somewhat with the animal infected.

In cattle the disease is usually an acute febrile infection with no external localization. The temperature goes to 41 to 42°, there are difficulty in respiration, hematuria, and bloody discharges from the body openings. It is very quickly fatal usually; the animal sometimes dies within a few minutes or hours after the first symptoms; in other cases the animal may live for several days. Occasionally the disease manifests itself as an anthrax carbuncle, usually on the shoulder, breast, or neck. This type is not quite so uniformly fatal.

Sheep die very quickly; usually the symptoms are not manifest more than a few hours. Carbuncles are very rare. Horses usually have the disease in acute form, dying in a day or two. Occasionally in localized anthrax (carbuncles) they live for somewhat longer periods. Swine, being decidedly more resistant, show carbuncles of the mucous membranes and localized glandular infections not infrequently chronic or terminating in recovery. Anthrax in the dog is much as in swine.

Three methods of infection in man determine the three types of anthrax which may develop: *Pulmonary anthrax* or woolsorters' disease is contracted by the inhalation of anthrax spores. The possible presence of anthrax spores in hair, wool, and on hides necessitates careful disinfection. The disease runs its course as an atypical pneumonia, practically always fatal. *Intestinal anthrax* results from the ingestion of living anthrax bacilli. The disease is very rare, but usually fatal. In its earlier stages it is probably localized. *Cutaneous anthrax*, or malignant carbuncle, is the result of infection through scratches or cuts in the skin. At first
17

the lesion resembles that of a common furuncle. Soon there is necrosis of tissues near the primary pustule, and blood infection and death frequently follow. However, in many cases the infection remains localized and eventually heals.

The disease is in most animals a rapidly fatal septicemia. The most characteristic change to be noted upon autopsy is the great enlargement of the spleen, with distention of the capsule and softening of the pulp, congested and usually dark in color. In the vicinity of areas of localized infection there are generally hemorrhages and hemorrhagic exudate. The liver, kidneys, and lungs are usually congested and ecchymotic. The organism is found in great numbers in the blood-stream.
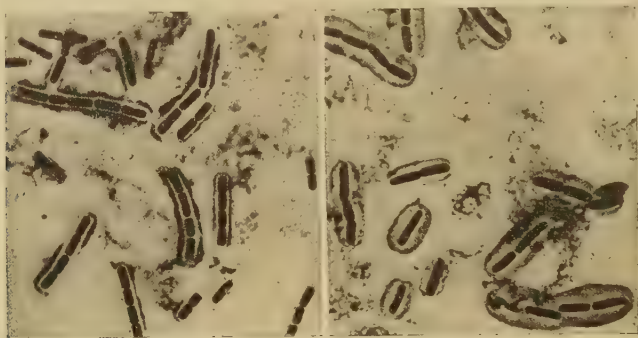
Figs. 99 and 100.—*Bacillus anthracis*, stained mount of blood, showing the capsules of the bacilli (Preisz).

Immunity.—No true toxin has been demonstrated for the anthrax bacillus; in fact, it is difficult to account for the pathogenicity of the organism on the basis of specific poison formation. Immune serum is claimed by some investigators to have a considerable specific agglutinative power, but others have failed to demonstrate this. It seems that this reaction is inconstant and may be entirely absent, even though the serum have a high immunizing value. Certain normal bloods, as from the dog, show bacteriolytic power, but specific bacteriolysins cannot be demonstrated in most immune sera. Opsonins, both normal and immune, have been demonstrated.

No wholly satisfactory explanation of the factors which determine immunity in animals naturally insusceptible and those

which have acquired immunity has been developed. Among the facts which apparently must be taken into consideration are the following:

1. Immunity cannot be wholly due to the natural bactericidal power of the serum, for the serum of the highly susceptible rabbit has as much anthracidal power as that of the relatively resistant wild rat. There is apparently no direct relationship between the natural anthracidal power of a serum and the resistance of the animal.

2. There is apparently some other factor in determining immunity than phagocytosis, for the white blood-cells of susceptible animals may rapidly engulf virulent anthrax bacilli *in vitro*.

3. The *Bacillus anthracis* when growing in the animal tissues usually produces capsules. This same character may be developed by growing the organisms in sera in the laboratory. Such organisms have been termed "animalized." It has been claimed by some authors that these capsulated organisms are far more resistant to the phagocytic and bactericidal action of immune blood than are the uncapsulated. Both points have been disputed by other writers. It seems doubtful if the development of the capsule really can account for the ability of the organism to invade the body of an animal and produce a disease.

4. The work of Bail and others seems to show that in infection of a susceptible animal two distinct stages may be noted. The intraperitoneal injection of considerable numbers of anthrax bacilli into a guinea-pig is followed by a rapid diminution of these numbers, due to phagocytosis and bacteriolysis. Some organisms apparently persist, and after a time begin multiplying rapidly in the tissues and blood-stream. Possibly these organisms are more resistant, or the defences of the body have been broken down. Bail explains the phenomenon by the assumption that the persisting bacteria produce an aggressin which effectively neutralizes the immune bodies of the tissues. The bacteria are thereupon free to multiply. He claims that a true active immunity may be developed only by causing the body to form an anti-aggressin, an immune body which will effectually neutralize the aggressins of the bacillus, thus enabling the other antibodies to destroy the bacteria.

Active immunization by vaccination has been extensively practised. The organism may be attenuated in a variety of ways. The first method developed was that of Pasteur, and it is still the one most commonly used. The organism is grown at a temperature of 42° to 43° for varying lengths of time. The pathogenicity gradually decreases until injections no longer kill the rabbit; longer growth attenuates it until the guinea-pig is not susceptible, and finally, even the mouse will not succumb. The exact length of time required for attenuation in each instance can be determined only by experimentation, as there are many unknown or uncontrolled factors involved.

In Russia the Zenkowsky modification of the Pasteur method has been used. The organisms are attenuated until 0.2 gm. of Vaccine I will not kill a 350-gm. guinea-pig when injected subcutaneously, but 0.01 gm. is regularly fatal for the white mouse. Vaccine II kills a guinea-pig on the third day, while 0.5 gm. will not kill an 800-gm. rabbit. The organisms are grown on agar slants until spores are produced. These are then mixed with 30 to 40 per cent. glycerin. The advantage of this method of preparing lies in the fact that it may be kept for a longer period without deterioration.

The immunity lasts about a year. Attempts to use killed cultures of anthrax bacilli or their sterile products in producing immunity have not yielded satisfactory results in practice. Bail claims that an active immunity may be established by the use of aggressins. The material used is the serous fluid from animals dead from anthrax. This is sterilized by phenol and injected into an animal to be immunized. The aggressin should preferably be secured from the same species of animal as the one to be immunized. The immunity is not established until after the lapse of ten days or more. When established, it is claimed that the animal will resist infection with fully virulent cultures. This method of immunization with aggressins has not been thoroughly tested out in practice.

Passive immunization by means of antisera has been tried by numerous investigators. Cattle, the horse, ass, and sheep have been used in the production of such sera. The animals are first immunized by Pasteur's method of vaccination, and in ten days

or two weeks from $\frac{1}{1000}$ to $\frac{1}{200}$ of a loop of a fully virulent culture is injected. Two or three weeks later a somewhat larger dose is given, and the dosage is gradually increased until many loopfuls—then entire cultures—are injected. In three to four months an immunity is developed such that the subcutaneous injection of several cultures from agar slants may be made without noteworthy reactions. The blood is drawn about two weeks after the last injection. The animal may then, after the lapse of two weeks, be again injected and again bled. The serum is pipetted off and preserved with 0.5 per cent. phenol. Exact methods of standardization such as are used with antitoxins cannot be employed. An approximation of the potency can be reached by the intravenous injections of varying amounts of serum into rabbits, followed five to ten minutes later by inoculating each subcutaneously with $\frac{1}{1000}$ of a loop of a virulent culture. A serum is regarded as usable if 2 out of 5 animals injected with 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 c.c. of the serum survive, and the remainder live longer than control animals. The serum shows *in vitro* no higher bacteriolytic power than serum from normal animals of the same species. The potency of the serum cannot be estimated by complement fixation reaction; nor can the activity of the serum be ascribed to its opsonin constant. Bail claims the activity to be due to the anti-aggressins present. Agglutinins are present, but cannot be used in determining the titer of the serum. The serum may be used both in prophylaxis and cure. It is of therapeutic value in man also. Ten c.c. is a prophylactic dose for sheep. The serum is of greatest use where it is necessary to immunize large numbers of animals quickly, as in a herd of sheep in which anthrax has made its appearance.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The disease may be diagnosed by the following bacteriologic methods: 1. Microscopic examination. 2. Cultures. 3. Animal inoculations. 4. Precipitation.

Microscopic Examination.—Fresh blood from animals having septicemic anthrax will show the organisms in the hanging drop. Mounts from blood or infected tissues, particularly the spleen, may be stained with methylene-blue, by Gram's method, or by a suitable capsule stain.

Cultures.—Agar plates may be poured or streaked. The colonies showing the characteristic curled-hair margins should be fished and used for animal inoculation.

Animal Inoculation.—A suspension of the suspected material should be injected into mice or guinea-pigs.

Precipitation Test.—This test, first worked out by Ascoli and usually termed the Ascoli thermoprecipitation test, is based upon the fact that it is possible to secure precipitating sera of high titer from immunized animals for the anthrax bacillus and its soluble constituents. The test is most commonly employed in the recognition of anthrax in tissues and organs submitted for diagnosis. The task of securing a suitable precipitating serum is not always an easy one, as animals immunized in the same manner will show great differences in the precipitin content of the serum. A portion (1 to 2 gm.) of the organ to be examined (usually the spleen) is heated for five minutes in a tube with 5 c.c. physiologic salt solution, cooled, and filtered. The clear filtrate is placed in a narrow tube, and 0.5 c.c. of the precipitating serum placed in the bottom by means of a capillary pipette. A positive test is evidenced by the formation within fifteen minutes of a whitish cloud near or at the point of contact. Reactions which develop after two hours are not to be regarded as specific. This test is a useful adjunct to the other methods discussed. A reaction may often be secured even when putrefaction of the tissues is far advanced.

The isolation of anthrax bacilli from soil, wool, hides, etc., is relatively difficult. The material may be heated to 60–70° for one-quarter to one-half hour to kill the vegetative cells, and the material used for animal inoculation.

Transmission.—Anthrax is usually transmitted from one animal to another by ingestion, more rarely through skin lesions. Cutaneous infection and infection by inhalation are most common in man. The organism does not sporulate within the body. Dead animals should be burned or buried deeply. The excretions from an infected animal, the feces in particular, contain many bacteria which can form spores on leaving the body. Pastures once infected may remain so for many years, as the spores are not readily destroyed by desiccation and may persist in the soil for a long time. Blood-sucking flies sometimes spread the disease from one

animal to another by direct inoculation.   Care should always be used in dealing with infected animals, as the disease is fatal to man as well.

CHAPTER XXIV

BLACKLEG—TETANUS GROUP. THE GENUS CLOSTRIDIUM

THE bacteria of this group include all the *anaërobic spore-producing bacilli.* Most of the organisms are obligate anaërobes, some are micro-aëropholic, but none are aërobic. With few exceptions the organisms are motile. They are, in general, Gram-positive, though there is considerable variation in the rapidity with which decolorization takes place.

The following are the more important forms which have been described as species of this group: *Clostridium tetani,* causing tetanus in man and animals; *Cl. chauvœi,* causing blackleg in cattle; *Cl. welchii,* causing an infectious edema in man and animals; *Cl. gastromycosis ovis,* causing bradsot in sheep; *Cl. botulinum,* causing botulism or meat-poisoning in man; *Cl. œdematis,* causing malignant edema in animals and man; *Cl. sp.* of Ghon-Sachs, causing an emphysematous edema in swine and man, and the *Cl. sp.* of Hibler, causing gaseous edema. In addition, *Cl. sp.* of Novy and the *Cl. enteritidis sporogenes* are capable of producing disease in experimentally infected laboratory animals. Several non-pathogenic putrefactive and soil species of this group have been isolated, among them *Cl. putrificus, Cl. amylobacter,* and others.

The separation of the various pathogenic and closely related non-pathogenic species is a matter of considerable difficulty. The first attempt to find criteria for adequate differential diagnosis was that of Hibler.[1] More recently the British committee appointed to study the bacteriology of war wounds have greatly clarified the problem. They showed that many of the irregularities and discrepancies of the older literature were due to the failure to have pure cultures. The work of Meyer, Heller and their associates has also served to indicate the organisms of this group which are of most importance in animal pathology.

---

[1] Untersuchungen über die pathogenen Anäeroben, Jena, 1908.

Clostridium tetani

Synonyms.—Bacillus of Nicolaier; *Plectridium tetani; Bacillus tetani.*

Disease Produced.—Tetanus or lockjaw in man and animals. (German, Starrkrampf.)

Nicolaier, in 1885, observed the *Clostridium tetani* in pus from laboratory animals that had died following subcutaneous inoculation with small amounts of garden-soil. He cultivated the organism, but did not succeed in securing it in pure culture. Kitasato, in 1889, succeeded in growing the organism in pure culture, and in transmitting the disease experimentally. Kitasato and Veyl, in 1890, described the production of the tetanus toxin.

Distribution.—The organism is found in all parts of the world. It is particularly common in street-dust and fertilized garden-soil, and is found quite constantly in the alimentary tract of herbivorous animals. Lukas found it present in the excrement of 16 out of 17 horses which he examined. It is possible that it may for a time maintain a saprophytic existence and multiply in the soil under certain conditions.

Morphology and Staining.—*Clostridium tetani* is a rather long, slender rod, 0.5 by 2 to 5 μ with rounded ends, usually single, rarely in short chains. It is motile by means of numerous peritrichic flagella. Capsules are not produced. Spores are formed abundantly. Their size and position are so characteristic as to be practically diagnostic. They are spherical, two or three times the diameter of the rod, and terminal, giving

the organism the appearance of a drumstick. The organism stains readily with the ordinary anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.

Isolation and Culture.—The isolation in pure culture of *Clostridium tetani* is attended with considerable difficulty, largely on account of its being an obligate anaërobe. Kitasato first succeeded in isolating it by producing tetanus in experimental animals, then inoculating broth, and, after growth had taken place, heating to a temperature of 80° for half an hour. This temperature should destroy all but spores. The broth may then be inoculated into agar or gelatin and kept under anaërobic conditions. If spores of other anaërobes are present, it may be necessary to make several consecutive animal inoculations and isolations.
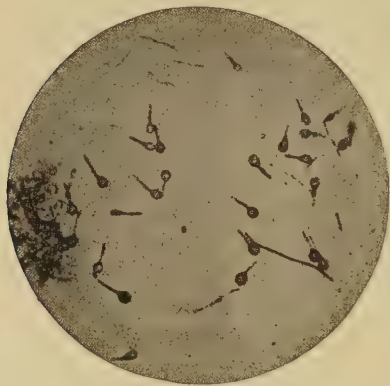
Fig. 101.—*Clostridium tetani,* rods and spores (Günther).

The colonies of the tetanus bacillus upon gelatin plates show minute radiating lines of growth from a central nucleus resembling somewhat those of *Bacillus subtilis.* Gelatin stabs show an arborescent growth. The gelatin is slowly liquefied. Growth is favored by the presence of reducing substances, such as dextrose or lackmus solution. Radiating filaments are also produced in glucose agar stabs. Bouillon is clouded and a sediment forms. Blood-serum is liquefied. Milk is more or less completely peptonized; it may or may not show coagulation. Hibler's brain medium is made alkaline and blackened as the result of the formation of iron sulfid.

Physiology.—The optimum growth temperature is 37.5°, but the organism multiplies rapidly at room-temperatures, though not below 14°. It is an obligate anaërobe, and in pure culture requires practically complete exclusion of oxygen. It will develop, however, under aërobic conditions when in mixed cultures with

aërobes. The spores resist desiccation indefinitely. They are also much more than usually resistant to the action of disinfectants. Likewise, resistance to heat is so marked that Theobald Smith found in one case exposure to live steam for seventy minutes failed to destroy the organism, although usually a shorter period suffices.

Acid is produced from carbohydrates, and a small amount of gas, consisting of methane and carbon dioxid from dextrose. Enzymes which liquefy gelatin and blood-serum have been demonstrated.
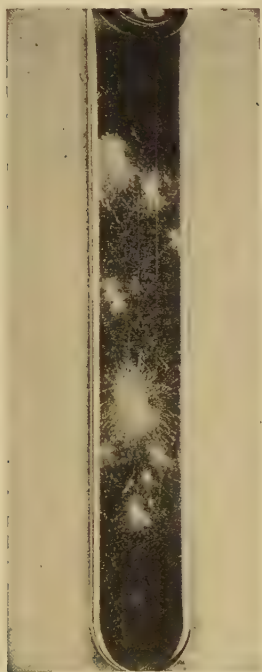
Fig. 102.—*Clostridium tetani*, colonies in dextrose gelatin (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Fig. 103.—*Clostridium tetani*, deep stab culture in dextrose gelatin (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Injection of pure cultures of *Clostridium tetani* into experimental animals causes the development of a typical tetanus. The white mouse is among the most susceptible of animals to inoculation. Infection of the animal is within one to three days followed by tetanic convulsions and death. Birds are not ordinarily susceptible to infection. The

disease is most common in men and in the horse, although no mammalia are immune. The disease is not transmitted by ingestion. The injection of the characteristic toxin is followed by the symptoms of the disease.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The disease is a typical toxemia. There is rarely, if ever, a general invasion of the tissues. The organism remains localized at the seat of inoculation, and produces the toxin which brings about the characteristic symptoms. The entrance of the organism into a wound is not always followed by the development of tetanus, for anaërobic conditions must obtain, and it has been found that tetanus spores entirely freed from toxin cannot germinate when introduced into the tissues in moderate numbers. It is evident that the organism has little initial pathogenic power. Frequently considerable amounts of dirt are introduced into the wound simultaneously with the organism in natural infections, and produce proper conditions for rapid development. When conditions are not favorable to the germination of the spores at the site of inoculation, they may remain alive *in situ* for considerable periods of time. They may also be taken up by leukocytes and transported in the body fluids to other tissues where they may remain dormant indefinitely, being incited to growth only by some tissue injury at their point of lodgment. Such localization and subsequent activation doubtless account for the so-called cryptogenic infections. The tetanus toxin produced is in part absorbed by the end-organs of the motor nerves, and travels to the nerve-cells of the central nervous system by way of the axis-cylinders of the peripheral nerves, and in part is carried to the central ganglion-cells by the blood-stream. The incubation period noted is due to the time required for toxin to be produced and for it to reach the central nervous system. That the toxin has a special affinity for nervous tissue, and may be bound by it, has already been noted in the discussion of toxins and antitoxins. The period of incubation in man averages about nine or ten days. In the horse it varies from four to twenty days. Under exceptional conditions this period may be much longer. Mortality is over 90 per cent. when there is a short period of incubation, and over 50 per cent. where the period is prolonged. The characteristic symptom in all animals is a *tetanus*, or stiffening of the muscles. The muscles at the

site of inoculation may be the first, and in mild cases they may be the only ones, affected. In the horse the appearance of the tetanus or lockjaw, the retraction of the eyes and protrusion of the nictitating membrane, spasmodic contraction of other muscles of the head, and those of other parts of the body are diagnostic. A postmortem examination usually shows absence of gross lesions. Certain degenerative changes in the motor cells of the cord may be observed in stained sections. Hemorrhages in different organs are an inconstant accompaniment of the disease.

Immunity.—For the preparation of toxin the organism is grown in bouillon under anaërobic conditions, i. e., in an atmosphere of hydrogen, with surfaces of the medium covered with paraffin or paraffin oil or with oxygen excluded in some other manner. After incubation for a period of one or two weeks the broth is filtered through porcelain. The toxin may be prepared in dried form by precipitation with an excess of ammonium sulphate. After standing overnight the brown scum is removed and dried, first between hardened filter-paper, then in a desiccator, pulverized, and preserved in a darkened refrigerator. Various methods of purification have been devised, such that a dried toxin may be prepared of which 0.00000025 gm. will prove quickly fatal to a white mouse. As has been said, this toxin has a peculiar affinity for the cells of the central nervous system. Two poisonous constituents of the toxin have been differentiated—*tetanolysin*, which lakes the red blood-cells, and *tetanospasmin*, which gives rise to the characteristic tetanus symptoms.

In the preparation of antitoxin the unprecipitated toxic broth or a solution of the dried toxin is used. The smallest amount of toxin that will certainly kill a 350-gm. guinea-pig in three to four days is taken as the unit of toxicity. Increasing amounts of the toxin are injected at intervals into a horse. The blood-serum of the immunized horse contains the specific antitoxin. Many methods of standardization of the antitoxin have been used. In the United States it is titrated by guinea-pig injections against a standard toxin sent out by the Hygienic Laboratory of the Public Health and Marine Hospital Service. It is used in both human and veterinary medicine, principally as a prophylactic. The tetanus antitoxin has not taken the place in the treatment of tetanus that is

occupied by the antitoxin specific for diphtheria in the treatment of that disease. It seems that the symptoms of the disease are exhibited only after the union of the toxin with nerve-cells; that is, after much of the damage has already in large measure been accomplished. The injection of antitoxin at this time will doubtless neutralize any toxin present in the blood, but cannot remove the toxin already bound to the nerve-cells. The antitoxin is generally injected subcutaneously, but in severe cases intravenous, intraneural, and intraspinal injections are made to insure the contact of antitoxin with the toxin present. Its use is doubtless indicated in all cases. As a prophylactic it has been found quite certainly to prevent the development of tetanus when injected before the appearance of symptoms. In human medicine it is customary to make injections following severe wounds into which dust and dirt have gained entrance, such as Fourth-of-July wounds. The same may be said with reference to severe wounds, nail-punctures, and similar traumata in the horse.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may sometimes be recognized in stained mounts of the pus from the wounds. The drumstick shape of the sporulating cells is quite characteristic. Isolation in pure culture and animal inoculation may also be used. The symptoms of tetanus are so distinctive, however, that these methods are rarely called into use.

Transmission.—Tetanus is one of the best examples of a noncontagious, infectious disease. Infection occurs almost invariably directly through the skin. The almost universal presence of the organism about stables renders infection easy. Nail-punctures are particularly apt to result in tetanus, as they introduce the organism deep into the tissues; superficial healing and exclusion of air quickly take place, and conditions are then right for rapid multiplication. In some localities tetanus is a common disease following castration of domestic animals. Infection through the umbilical cord in the newborn sometimes occurs. It should again be emphasized that it seems very difficult for the tetanus bacillus to gain a foothold and proliferate except in tissues that have been injured. The constant presence of these organisms in the intestines does not produce disease. So-called cryptic infections are not of uncommon occurrence, particularly in the horse. In these the point at which the organ-

ism gains entrance to the body frequently cannot be determined. Usually this comes either from the wound having healed superficially, so as to be difficult of recognition, or from the wound having been originally so insignificant as to have escaped notice. Some investigators believe that the organism may occasionally gain entrance to the blood-stream from the intestines, but is unable to produce an infection except when it lodges in tissue traumatically or otherwise injured, such as a broken bone or a bruise. Spores may be carried from a wound to other parts of the body, and develop only when the tissue has been injured.

Clostridium chauvæi

Synonyms.—*Bacillus feseri; Bacillus chauvæi; B. chauvæi; B. chauveaui; B. anthracis symptomatici.*

Diseases Produced.—Blackleg, symptomatic anthrax, quarter evil, quarter ill, Rauschbrand, charbon symptomatique; in cattle and rarely, in sheep and goats.

Arloing, Cornevin, and Thomas, in 1889, described the *Clostridium chauvæi* as the cause of blackleg, and proved its etiologic relation to the disease. Kitasato (1889) first grew the organism in pure culture. It has also been studied extensively by Grassberger and Schattenfroh and by Hibler.

Morphology and Staining.—*Clostridium chauvæi* is a large bacillus with rounded ends, usually single, but occasionally in pairs, 0.5 to 0.6 by 3 to 5 μ. When stained smears from fresh serous exudates or muscles are examined the organism is found never to occur in long chains or filaments. This fact is of value in the differentiation of this organism from the related *Cl. œdematis* of Koch and from the Ghon-Sachs bacillus. It is motile by means of peritrichic flagella. Involution forms, consisting of greatly enlarged rods, are frequently encountered, particularly in old cultures. Capsules when produced in the body fluids are relatively thin. Spores are produced, sometimes central, but more frequently near a pole, rarely quite terminal. They are long ellipsoidal in shape and are not generally more than twice the diameter of the rod. The ability of the organism to produce spores in media containing carbohydrates is of use in differentiating it from *Cl. welchii*. Spore production is not abundant

when the medium becomes acid.   The organism is easily stained by the common aqueous anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.   There is frequent occurrence of Gram-negative cells in old cultures. Smears prepared from muscles and treated with iodin potassium iodid show the presence in many cells of red stained granules termed "erythrogranulose."

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may in many cases be isolated in pure culture directly from the tissues infected.   Growth in culture-media is quite de- pendent upon the reaction of the medium, and to a less de- gree upon the presence of carbo- hydrates.   For the best growth $\frac{1}{8}$ per cent. soda content beyond
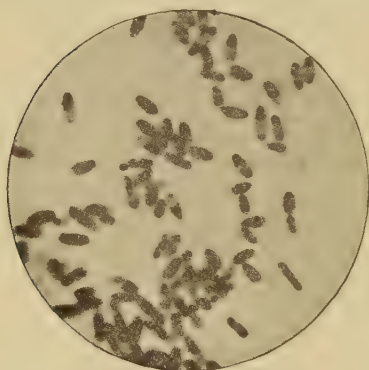
Fig. 104.—*Clostridium chauvœi* (Kolle and Wassermann).
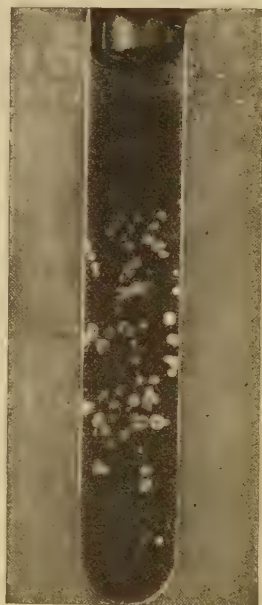
Fig. 105.—*Clostridium chauvœi*, colonies in a dextrose gelatin shake culture (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

neutrality is advisable.   Body fluids or tissues except as they may act as reducing agents or contain carbohydrates do not increase the suitability of media containing them.   Inoculation of bits of infected tissue into broth containing a bit of paren- chymatous tissue to act as a reducing agent will generally give a pure culture.   Plates may be poured and kept under anaë- robic conditions.   The colonies are spherical, or somewhat irregular, with microscopic radiations.   Dextrose gelatin is an exceptionally favorable medium.   In a shake culture the

colonies appear in the lower portion of the tube, each usually with its gas bubble, and surrounded by a liquefied area. These colonies show numerous radiating threads, or papillæ, giving the appearance of a chestnut burr. Bouillon is clouded, gas is produced, and a flaky white deposit forms. Growth in Hibler's brain medium results in the development of a permanent acidity and no blackening, but with the evolution of considerable quantities of gas. Milk is not particularly favorable as a medium without the addition of serum or tissues. Little gas is formed in milk. Usually a flocculent curd is formed, but this is not digested.

Physiology.—Serum media are not peptonized. The optimum growth temperature is about blood-heat, but good growth occurs at room-temperatures. The organism is a strict anaerobe. Concerning its other physiologic characters there is considerable disagreement among investigators. This may be due to the fact that there are strains which react very differently, and may constitute distinct varieties, or still more probably to the fact that impure cultures have been studied. Grassberger and Schattenfroh claim that the organism shows considerable variability, and that certain characters are easily lost. The spores are quite resistant to desiccation, living in this condition for years. Heating for six minutes at 100°, according to Hibler, is necessary certainly to destroy them. The dry spores are quite heat resistant. Gas is produced from many carbohydrates including glucose, levulose, maltose, lactose, sucrose, but not from mannitol, glycerol, dulcitol, salicin and inulin. It is also produced in meat medium. Alkaline carbohydrate media is first neutralized and then becomes acid.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Inoculation of pure cultures into laboratory animals results in death, with production of many of the characteristic symptoms of blackleg, particularly the edema about the point of inoculation. Intramuscular injection of the guinea-pig is followed by the first symptoms in about fourteen hours. A soft inflamed swelling develops at the site of inoculation. In twenty-four to thirty hours the inflammation has spread to other muscles, and these have become emphysematous. Inoculation is usually fatal; occasionally the disease runs an atypical course and

18

the animal recovers.   Upon section, in typical cases, the tissues are found to be *edematous* and *hemorrhagic*, and the muscles to contain many gas bubbles.   The body cavities usually show an abundant serous exudate.   The disease may also be produced experimentally in cattle, so that there is no doubt as to the etiologic relationship of this organism to the disease.   It has not been found in man.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—Rabbits, white mice, and white rats may be infected.   The gray rat appears to be relatively immune.   Blackleg in cattle is characterized by a swelling, edema, and emphysema of the muscles and the sub-cutaneous tissues of the infected part.   Infection appears most commonly in the shoulder or hindquarter.   The swelling increases rapidly in size, and the emphysema soon manifests itself by the crackling sound produced when the thumb is drawn firmly across the part.   After death the organisms continue to grow and the body becomes distended with gas.   The subcutaneous tissues of the infected part are edematous, even gelatinous, with blood and gas bubbles.   The underlying muscles are dark brown or even blackish, whence the name, blackleg.   The disease usually results fatally in cattle in from one to three days after the first appearance of the symptoms.

Immunity.—The production of true toxins by *Clostridium chauvœi* is not well understood.   According to some authors no toxin can be demonstrated.   Others believe that there is a relatively thermostabile toxin produced which will endure a temperature of even 115°.   Grassberger and Schattenfroh, who have made the most careful study of this problem, claim to have succeeded in producing broth cultures containing a toxin that, in doses as small as those employed with diphtheria toxin, will kill laboratory animals.   This toxin is produced by certain strains of the organism only, but these they believe are the more patho-genic.   This toxin they have shown to be *thermolabile*.   They have worked out methods of standardization closely resembling those of Ehrlich for diphtheria.   Antitoxin may be produced by the injection of increasing doses into suitable animals, particu-larly cattle, and this antitoxin has a protective influence when injected into other animals.   This method of immunization has never come into general use.

Animals that have recovered from an attack of the disease acquire immunity to a recurrence.   Very young cattle and aged cattle have a considerable degree of natural immunity.   To what the immunity developed may be due is not well understood. Probably it is in part opsonic.

Active immunization of animals by vaccination is extensively practiced.   Many methods of attenuation of the organism for the vaccine have been developed.   The one so long in common use in the United States is the one adopted by the Bureau of Animal Industry, and is essentially that developed by Kitt.   Fresh material is secured by macerating in a mortar the muscle tissue from a blackleg tumor and squeezing the fluid through a linen cloth. This is spread in a thin layer and dried to a brown scale at a temperature at about blood-heat.   This dried virus retains its virulence for several years at least.   The vaccine is prepared by mixing 1 part of this material with 2 parts of water and placing in a hot-air oven at a temperature of 95° to 99° for six hours. This dries the material and attenuates the organism.   It is then pulverized and put up in packages containing a definite number of doses.   Before use a cubic centimeter of water for each dose is added, and the material mixed and then filtered.   The injection then is made with 1 c.c.   The dried material, pressed into the form of tablets, is sometimes inserted under the skin without suspending it in water.   In some cases threads soaked in suspensions of the attenuated organisms are drawn into the subcutaneous tissues by means of a needle.   Vaccination has proved quite satisfactory.

Improved methods of more recent time include the use of aggressins and filtrates.   Schobl showed by experiments that the edematous fluid derived from blackleg lesions when made sterile by filtration through porcelain, possessed remarkable immunizing properties.   Following his method of treatment the Kansas Experiment Station tested the germ free fluid on many thousands of cattle and found it highly efficient.   The affected tissues from blackleg calves were placed in a press and the juices expressed.   These were then filtered, preservative added and used in doses of 8 to 15 c.c. and found to produce sufficient immunity to protect calves against doses of virus which promptly killed non-vaccinated calves.

At present there is in successful use a product known as black-leg filtrate, which consists of the medium on which blackleg bacteria have been grown, passed through porcelain filters to make it germ free. The results obtained have been very satis-factory. The chief advantage claimed for these new immunizing agents is that there is no possibility of the disease being produced, a thing which frequently occurs when the attenuated vaccine is used.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—A presumptive determination of the organisms may be made by smear preparations from the in-fected tissues. The lack of chains and filaments in smears from serous effusions is particularly characteristic, according to Hibler. Anaërobic cultures will demonstrate the specific organism in pure culture if inoculated with a bit of the tissue before decomposition has begun and before putrefactive bacilli have gained entrance. Animal inoculation, particularly subcutaneous inoculation into the guinea-pig, may prove useful. Usually the symptoms of the disease are so characteristic that a bacteriologic test is wholly unnecessary.

Transmission.—It is believed that *Clostridium chauvœi* is widely distributed in nature. The disease occurs only in certain localities. There are districts which are never affected. Attempts have been made to correlate the topography of the country, such as character of soil, presence of marsh land, etc., with the prevalence of the dis-ease without marked success. Organisms closely related to *Cl. chauvœi* may be found widely in the soil, but, for the most part, they do not possess the peculiar pathogenic characters of this form. Infection is believed to occur through wounds. The dis-ease is rarely, if ever, contracted directly by one animal from another. It is not always possible to locate the point at which the organisms gained entrance—in fact, these cryptic infections con-stitute a considerable proportion of the cases. It is possible that the explanation sometimes offered for similar infections in tetanus will hold good here also; that is, that the organisms may occasion-ally gain entrance to the blood from the intestinal tract or from old wounds and that they cannot produce disease except when they lodge in some tissue that has been injured, as from a bruise.

Clostridium gastromycosis ovis

Disease Produced.—Braxy or bradsot in sheep.

Distribution.—The disease is recorded from the northern portion of Europe, particularly in Ireland, the Faroës, the Shetlands, Scotland, portions of England, Norway, and North Germany. Gilruth claims the disease is also present in Tasmania.

Historical.—The organism was first described in 1888 by Nielsen, who clearly differentiated the disease from anthrax, with which it had previously been confused. The Highland and Agricultural Society and the British Board of Agriculture and Fisheries have instituted investigations as to the disease and its causal organism. Among the most careful studies have been those of Jensen.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism is a large bacillus, about 1 by 2 to 6 μ, with rounded ends. The cells are usually single, but in smears made from serous effusions chains and filaments are common, in this respect differing from the organism of blackleg. Spores are produced both in tissues and in cultures. They are ellipsoidal, usually central, only occasionally polar, and cause but little enlargement of the cells. They are motile by means of peritrichous flagella. Capsules are not recorded. The cells stain readily and are Gram-positive.

Isolation and Culture.—This organism grows readily in most media under anaërobic conditions, particularly if some sugar is present. Agar-plate colonies, at first smooth and lens shaped, in forty-eight hours become covered with outgrowths resembling those of *Clostridium chauvœi*, giving the colony a felted appearance. Gelatin colonies are gradually surrounded by an area of liquefied medium. The addition of serum to the medium favors the growth of the organism. It grows well in milk, causing an acid coagulation, but no peptonization of the casein.

Physiology.—The optimum growth temperature is between 35° and 40°, although good growth takes place at room-temperatures. The spores are resistant to desiccation, but are readily killed by boiling. It resembles the bacillus of blackleg in that the most favorable reaction of the medium is slightly alkaline, little or no growth occurring in an acid medium. While growth is favored by the presence of sugar, it is soon stopped by the acids developed.

Gas and acid are formed (according to Bahr) from the following sugars: Dextrose, mannose, galactose, fructose, lactose, maltose, and glycerin, but not from saccharose, raffinose, sorbose, arabinose, xylose, rhamnose, mannite, dulcite, adonite, and erythrite.

The ability of the organism to produce gas from pure proteins is not well demonstrated. Gelatinase is produced; other proteolytic enzymes are seemingly not formed.

Pathogenesis.—The disease is primarily one of infection through the walls of the omasum. It is characterized by the presence of reddish slimy fluid in the abomasum, edema and swelling, and frequently extensive necrosis of the mucous membranes and submucosa. Generally there is a marked hemorrhagic infiltration in the region of the pylorus. Edema and necrosis and often emphysema of other tissues may be noted.

Subcutaneous inoculation of sheep gives rise to an infection closely resembling symptomatic anthrax or blackleg. The organism has been shown to be pathogenic for sheep, goats, swine, calves, guinea-pigs, pigeons, and fowls, while mice and rabbits are more resistant.

Immunity.—Small quantities of a toxic substance are present in culture filtrates. Whether true toxins are present has apparently not been conclusively demonstrated.

Jensen has used several methods of immunization. The vaccine most used is prepared similarly to that for blackleg by drying spore-bearing broth culture, then heating thirty minutes at 100° C. Suspensions of this material are injected subcutaneously. This vaccine has been used quite extensively and successfully. His serovaccine consists of a mixture of the above vaccine with dried immune serum.

Transmission.—The site of the principal lesions of the disease leads to the assumption that the infection follows ingestion of the organism. Feeding experiments in general, however, have failed to produce the disease. A completely adequate explanation of seasonal prevalence, distribution, and method of infection has not been given.

Clostridium welchii

Synonyms.—*Bacillus aërogenes capsulatus; Bacillus welchii; Bacterium welchii; B. phlegmonis emphysematosœ; B. enteritidis*

sporogenes; B. perfringens; Granulobacillus saccharobutyricus immobilis; B. anaërobicus cryptobutyricus; B. cadaveris butyricus; B. emphysematis vaginæ.

Disease Produced.—Gaseous edema in man, a secondary invader in various animal diseases. Welch and Nuttall, in 1892, described *Bacillus aërogenes capsulatus* from the body of a man who died from an aortic aneurysm. The internal organs and subcutaneous tissues showed considerable emphysema. Since that time it has been repeatedly isolated in Europe and America. It was independently described by Fränkel in 1893 as *B. phlegmonis emphysematosæ* from 4 cases of gas gangrene.

Distribution.—The organism is common in garden-soil, particularly that contaminated with excreta.

Morphology and Staining.—*Clostridium welchii* is a rod, 1 to 1.5 by 4 to 8 μ, with usually rather square ends. Very short, almost coccal forms, and long filaments may be found under certain growth conditions. Some strains show curved rods. Involution forms (club shapes, filaments, tadpole forms, granular types, etc.) are found particularly in old cultures upon coagulated serum. It frequently occurs in chains, but may be found in pairs and small groups. The organism does not appear in serous infusions in chains or filaments. It is non-motile. In this respect it differs from the other members of this group. Spores are sometimes found in infected wounds, but are most readily formed in such media as casein broth, alkaline egg broth and coagulated serum, free from fermentable carbohydrates. They are rarely seen in fermentable media. Individual strains vary in their spore producing ability. The spores are large, oval in shape and with slightly flattened ends, subterminal or central in position. They are central, and the cells develop as clostridia. Capsules may be demonstrated in the body fluids and in media containing serum. The organism stains readily with the common anilin dyes and is Gram-positive in young cultures with frequent occurrence of Gram-negative individuals in old cultures. Involution forms are frequent in artificial media.

Isolation and Culture.—McCampbell has described a modification of Welch's method of isolation as follows: "1 gm. of soil is shaken in sterile NaCl solution (0.85 per cent.), and inoculated

into sterile neutral litmus-milk tubes, which are covered with 25 mm. of neutral paraffin oil, for the purpose of securing anaërobiosis, and then incubated for twenty-four hours at 37°. At the end of this time the milk in the tubes is coagulated and shows acids and gas. A subculture is made in a second litmus-milk tube under oil, and incubated for twelve hours in order to prevent the possible overgrowth of other bacteria. At the end of this time the milk usually shows coagulation, acid and gas production, as in the first instance ('stormy fermentation'); 0.5 c.c. of the whey in the subculture is then injected into the posterior auricular vein of a rabbit. In three or four minutes the animal is killed by a blow on the head, and the body is incubated at 37° for eight to ten hours, at the end of which time the abdomen is markedly distended with gas. When ignited, this explodes and burns with a hydrogen flame. The thorax of the animal is carefully opened, and cultures made from the heart blood in dextrose broth, covered by neutral paraffin oil. In from eight to twenty-four hours the culture tubes show a marked cloudiness, abundant gas production, and, in most instances, an odor of butyric acid."

Fig. 106.—*Clostridium welchii* (Jordan).

The colonies upon agar and gelatin plates are round, grayish, semitranslucent; they are usually nucleated, and resemble those of *Clostridium tetani*. Upon agar slants a thin, coalescent, yellowish-white growth occurs. Gelatin may or may not be slowly liquefied. Bouillon is clouded with a heavy precipitate. Little or no growth occurs on potato. Upon blood-serum the growth resembles that upon agar with no change in the medium. Milk is quickly coagulated, with gas and acid production.

Physiology.—Growth occurs best at 37°. The thermal death-point for non-sporulating culture is 50° for ten minutes, for spores 100° for fifteen minutes. Gas is produced from dextrose, levulose,

galactose, maltose, lactose, and saccharose, but not from mannitol, dulcitol, or salicin. Probably some differences are to be found in various strains. Gas is likewise produced from pure proteins, such as recrystallized egg-white. Butyric and lactic acids have been detected.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Intravenous injection of the rabbit frequently, though not always, causes death, but subcutaneous inoculations are without effect. Guinea-pigs are susceptible, as are also pigeons and mice.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—Infections with *Clostridium welchii* among the lower animals have been noted in a few instances only, and then only in the rabbit and in the dog, as a result of severe injuries. However, it may quickly invade tissues after death, and give opportunity for mistaken diagnosis. It has been isolated from cattle dead of anthrax, swine that have succumbed to cholera, together with *Cl. chauvœi* from blackleg lesions in cattle, etc. It has not been shown satisfactorily that it ever invades the tissues generally before death. It is a secondary invader in practically every instance of natural infection. It has been found in emphysema of many organs in the human body. Herter believes that the presence of large numbers of this organism or its varieties in the intestines is responsible for the production of primary pernicious anemia, particularly in children.

From the veterinary standpoint the organism is of principal interest, not so much because of its slight pathogenic power, as the fact that it may be confused upon isolation with other spore-bearing anaërobes.

Immunity.—Fränkel failed to secure immunity in laboratory animals by injections of killed cultures, though an immune serum was secured from a dog after a process of immunization.

Cl. welchii produces a specific toxin which when injected into animals stimulates the production of a specific antitoxin. Well washed emulsions of the organism when introduced into experimental animals produce no infection. Combined, however, with a sub-lethal dose of toxin a fatal gas gangrene rapidly develops. Bull and Pritchett have proved that the necrosing and hemolytic properties of filtrates of *Cl. welchii* are due to the presence of an exotoxin, which is destroyed by heating to between

60° and 70° C., and which is capable of stimulating the production of antitoxin. This antitoxic serum when employed under proper conditions inhibits and arrests infection with *Cl. welchii.* Opsonins are present in normal and in increased quantities in immune sera, as are also specific bactericidal substances.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism can be recognized certainly from tissues only by isolation, and a study of its morphology, physiology, and effect upon animals. Its Gram-positive staining characters, lack of motility, and the difficulty with which spores may be demonstrated are significant. By the use of specific antitoxin the bacteriologic diagnosis may be confirmed. A liquid culture of the organism under study may be mixed with varying doses of the specific antitoxin before injection into a suitable laboratory animal. If infection is inhibited the organism is *Cl. welchii.* Or if an injection of the antitoxin renders an animal passively immune to infection with a particular organism, then that organism is *Cl. welchii.*

Transmission.—The organism probably gains entrance to the body through wounds or after death invades the tissues from the intestines.

Clostridium œdematis

Synonyms.—*Vibrion septique; Bacillus œdematis maligni,* Koch.

Diseases Produced.—Malignant edema; Malignes Edem, œdeme malin, septicemie gangreneuse, in various animals and in man.

Pasteur, in 1877, found that the injection of putrid flesh into a rabbit was followed by an edema at the point of inoculation, and ultimately by the death of the animal, with changes in many of the internal organs. That these changes were due to a specific organism and not to the poisons of the putrid flesh alone, was shown by transfers from one animal to another, and by the isolation of an anaërobic bacterium. Koch later (in 1881) studied the disease.

Morphology and Staining.—The *Clostridium œdematis* closely resembles the *Clostridium chauvœi* morphologically, and was long considered closely related to it but the work of Meyer seems

to prove that the two are quite distinct. The organism is a rod, 0.8 to 1 by 2 to 10 μ, with rounded ends, single or in chains. Many of the cells are long and filamentous. This is particularly evident in smears made from serous effusions. It is motile, with numerous peritrichic flagella. Capsules have not been demonstrated. Spores are produced, usually polar, but sometimes equatorial. The spore is short ellipsoidal. The rod is not greatly distended by the spore, although the snowshoe or clostridium shape is usually evident. The organism is Gram-positive, though more readily decolorized by alcohol than are most Gram-positive forms, and stains readily with the common anilin dyes.

Isolation and Culture.— The organism may be secured in pure culture without difficulty, under anaërobic conditions, from the edematous tissues of the infected animal. Its cultural characters in many
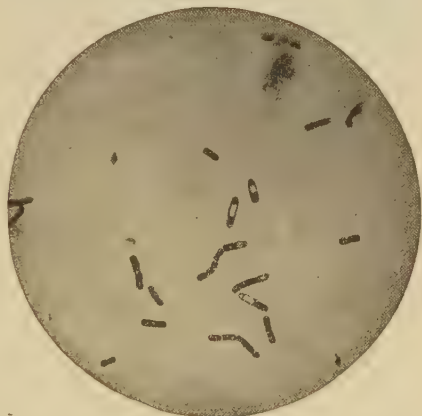
Fig. 107.—*Clostridium ædematis*, spores and rods from an agar culture (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

ways resemble those described for *Clostridium chauvœi*. In Hibler's brain medium alkalinity and blackening develop. Gelatin is digested, milk is curdled, and the casein digested is made alkaline. Coagulated serum is not liquefied.

Physiology.—The organism is an obligate anaërobe. Growth is luxuriant at room-temperature as well as at blood-heat. The spores are resistant to desiccation and to heat. Hibler states that they can resist several hours' heating to 98°. The optimum temperature is about 37°, though good growth occurs at 18°. Gas is produced from dextrose, levulose, galactose, maltose, lactose and salicin, but not from sucrose, mannitol, dulcitol, glycerol or inulin, probably also from proteins. Enzymes that liquefy gelatin are present. Milk is clotted in 3 to 7 days. There is no proteolysis of meat or solid serum.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Inoculation of pure cultures of the organism into the laboratory animals, and also into the horse and other domestic animals, will produce a typical infection. The most infective material is 24–48 hour glucose broth.
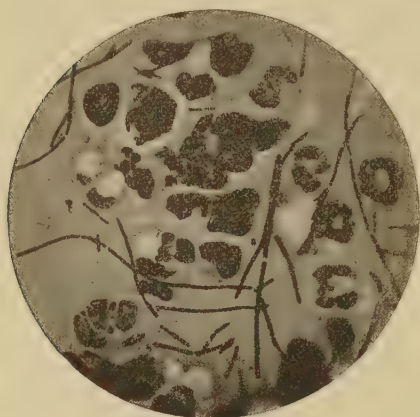
Fig. 108.—*Clostridium œdematis,* tissue smear showing rods without s p o r e s (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.— The tissues at the point of invasion, infiltrated with yellow or red serum, are usually hemorrhagic. The muscle becomes an intense deep red and is softened, but there is no putrid o d o r . Hemorrhages are generally to be found in the subcutaneous tissues. Many cases of the disease have been noted in man, and it is not uncommon in the horse and the sheep. It is probable that the cases of so-called symptomatic anthrax in the horse have been, in reality, infections with this organism. Infection has also been observed in swine, dogs, and rabbits.

Immunity.—Animals which recover from an infection are found to be thereafter immune. The organism is also known to produce a leukocidin which destroys white blood-
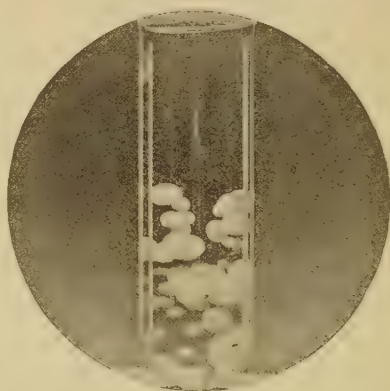
Fig. 109.—*Clostridium œdematis,* dextrose gelatin culture (Günther).

cells. Antisera have been prepared, and have been shown to contain antibacterial substances and antitoxins. The antitoxic serum, unlike that of *Cl. welchii,* does not protect if given after the infection is once established. Agglutinins are produced in

the blood of rabbits inoculated intravenously with heated, washed cultures.

Transmission.—The organism usually gains entrance through wounds, although the possibility of a cryptic infection, such as is claimed to occur in tetanus, should not be ignored. In man the disease has been known to occur following injections in which an unclean hypodermic syringe was used, and a case has been reported in which the organisms were believed to have gained entrance to the body through the intestinal ulcers of typhoid fever. Infection may follow delivery, castration, shearing of sheep, use of unclean syringes or instruments, or dirty wounds of any kind.

Clostridium of Ghon-Sachs

Synonyms.—*Bacillus œdematis maligni* of Ghon and Sachs.

Disease Produced.—Gaseous edema in man and animals.

Distribution.—Like the other members of this group, it is probable that this organism is widely distributed in the surface soils.

Historical.—The organism was isolated from a case of gaseous gangrene in man by the above named investigators and they assuming that the *Cl. œdematis maligni* was proteolytic, and finding that this non-proteolytic described it as a new organism. Recent investigation of the bacteria of war wounds seems to leave little doubt but that this organism was the same as the vibrion septique of Pasteur. It has been isolated from a variety of animals, particularly cows with puerperal infection, and from swine.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism is a motile rod very similar in morphology to *Clostridium chauvœi*. In smears from serous effusions, however, it occurs in chains and long filaments. The sporulating cells are somewhat swollen. The spores are ellipsoidal in shape. No capsules have been demonstrated. The cells stain readily and are Gram-positive.

Culture.—The colonies in solid media resemble those of the blackleg bacillus. Milk is usually coagulated with gas and acid production, but with no digestion of the curd. Hibler's brain medium is acidified and not blackened.

Pathogenesis.—The organism is pathogenic for guinea-pigs, rabbits, white rats, gray rats, and mice. In experimental inoculation an emphysematous edema without much hemorrhage is produced.

Clostridium sporogenes Metchnikoff

This organism was found present in a large proportion of war wounds in acute cases of gas gangrene as well as in conditions in which the wound was progressing satisfactorily. It is generally in association with other organisms. In general it is not lethal for laboratory animals in doses up to 4 c.c. Some strains are, however, capable of producing a putrid, perforating gangrene. The organism is of importance principally because of the possibility of confusion with other members of this group and because of its extraordinary capacity for persisting in the presence of other organisms.

Clostridium botulinum

Synonym.—*Bacillus botulinus.*

Disease Produced.—Meat, sausage, and food poisoning in man, botulism (*botulus*, sausage).

Van Ermengem, in 1896, isolated an organism from sausage, which he believed to be the cause of poisoning. The organism has since that time been several times isolated, and is, therefore, of some hygienic importance, particularly in meat inspection and in meat hygiene. This disease or poisoning should not be confused with that produced by the *Bacterium enteritidis*.

Distribution.—A few well-authenticated reports of the isolation of the organism are on record, from European countries, many, within the past few years from the United States, from man, the horse, mule, cow and domestic fowls. The disease has been reported as caused by the eating of sausage, fish, lobsters, oysters and vegetables such as preserved beans and peas and in animals from eating spoiled ensilage and grain.

Morphology and Staining.—*Clostridium botulinum* is a large bacillus, with usually rounded ends, 0.9 to 1.2 by 4 to 6 μ. It is commonly single or in pairs, sometimes in short chains. Involution forms frequently occur. It is motile by means of four to

eight peritrichic flagella. Capsules have not been demonstrated. Small oval spores, somewhat greater in diameter than the bacillus, are produced in a subterminal position. The organism stains readily with the anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.

Isolation and Culture.—Growth is sparse in media which contain no sugar. The colonies on dextrose gelatin are at first circular, transparent, light yellow, and soon liquefy the gelatin. Under the low power of the microscope they appear to consist of granules in constant motion. Later the colonies become brown and opaque. According to Van Ermengem, milk is not curdled and the organism grows spar-ingly. Graham suggests the following method for the isola-tion and identification of the organism. "A s a m p l e of watery extract of the feed pre-ceding final filtration is diluted and seeded under conditions favorable for the development of *B. botulinus.* Pork broth faintly alkaline plus 2 per cent. dextrose is then inoculated with various dilutions and placed in an atmosphere of hydrogen; or anaërobiosis may be ob-

Fig. 110.—*Clostridium botulinum* (van Ermengem in Kolle and Wassermann).

tained by covering the surface of the tubes with sterile paraffin oil. The pyrogallic acid or vacuum methods can also be em-ployed. Preceding the period of incubation, the inoculated tubes should be subjected to a temperature of 80° C. for fifteen or twenty minutes. After incubating in the dark at room tem-perature for ten days, pathogenicity of cultures is determined following oral administration of 0.5 mil of the mixed broth culture to guinea-pigs. The production of characteristic symptoms and death in guinea-pigs by the broth culture of obligate spore-bearing anaërobes, and facultative anaërobic spore-bearing bacilli is considered diagnostic. Immunological tests may be projected on guinea-pigs if toxic broth cultures are encoun-tered, antitoxic sera (A and B) being used to establish the

relation, if any, of the intoxication induced to B. botulinus. Pure cultures are obtained by seeding in plain agar and fishing colonies to pork agar shake cultures containing 2 per cent. dextrose.''

Physiology.—The organism is an obligate anaërobe. Its optimum growth temperature is 25 to 30°. Some strains grow little, if at all, at blood-heat, and when developing at this temperature produce numerous involution forms. Gas is produced from dextrose and lactose but not from saccharose. Acid, in part butyric, is produced in dextrose media.

Pathogenesis.—Injections of the organism into the body of laboratory animals have revealed the fact that some strains of the organism are pathogenic only by virtue of the toxins that are elaborated outside of the body. It does not apparently increase . in numbers in the tissues. Probably this may in part be accounted for by its normal optimum growth temperature. The toxin produced, on the other hand, is very poisonous, whether injected or ingested. The use of raw or imperfectly cooked animal foods or of infective canned foods may give rise in man to the symptoms of botulism in the course of twenty-four to thirty-six hours, often with fatal termination.

Immunity.—The toxin produced by *Clostridium botulinum* is among the most powerful known—0.00005 to 0.0001 gm. is fatal in three to four days when injected subcutaneously into a guinea-pig, and 0.0001 to 0.0005 gm. will destroy a rabbit. A most striking characteristic of this toxin, and one which distinguishes it from those of diphtheria and tetanus, is its ability to produce poisoning when taken into the body by way of the alimentary tract, withstanding the gastric and intestinal digestive processes. Guinea-pigs and even apes are killed by the ingestion of 0.01 mil. of a dextrose broth-culture solution in which the organism has been grown. The toxin is destroyed by exposure to light and air. Heating to a temperature of 80° renders it non-toxic. Antitoxin has been prepared from the goat and from the horse by gradually increasing doses of the toxin. This antitoxin exerts both a prophylactic and a curative effect when injected. Immunologic tests with the antitoxin of *Clostridium botulinum* indicate that there are two types of the organism designated by Burke, Type

A and Type B. The latter type according to Graham is most frequently encountered in animals; the Type A from canned fruits and vegetables and from ensilage. Chickens are not susceptible to Type B, but are to Type A. The antitoxic serum prepared against one strain is not effective in neutralizing the toxin from the other strain nor in checking the disease produced by the other strain. This would suggest the use of a polyvalent antitoxic serum in the treatment of spontaneous cases.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—This can be accomplished only by isolation and cultivation of the specific organism by serological tests with known antitoxin against suspected toxin and by the agglutination test.

Transmission.—The organism has been isolated from poisonous meat, canned vegetables and fruits, ensilage and grains and from normal swine feces. The disease can be produced only by the ingestion of substances in which the organism has been growing.

19

CHAPTER XXV

PASTEURELLA, OR HEMORRHAGIC SEPTICEMIA GROUP

THE organisms belonging to this group are all aërobic, non-motile, Gram-negative bacilli that do not produce spores, and that show a decided tendency to polar staining. They exhibit comparatively slight powers of fermentation.

The bacteria of this group were first recognized as closely related by Hueppe in 1886. He included in his species *Bacillus septicemiæ hæmorrhagicæ*, the causal organism of chicken cholera, rabbit septicemia, swine plague, hemorrhagic septicemia of cattle and wild animals, and several others. Trevisan included all of these organisms as separate species in a new genus which he named *Pasteurella*, after Pasteur, who had studied the causal organism of chicken cholera. The name *pasteurellosis* is, therefore, frequently used to designate a disease caused by an organism of this group. The classification proposed by Lignieres in 1901 has been extensively used, particularly by the French bacteriologists.

The organisms which are to be grouped with certainty here are those which cause the following animal diseases: Hemorrhagic septicemia of cattle, of sheep, septic pleuropneumonia of calves, fowl-cholera, rabbit septicemia, and the "Löffler-Schütz" swine plague. Here is also to be included the organism which causes human plague.

The great similarity of these various organisms to each other has led many writers to include them as varieties of a single species which has been variously named *Bacillus bipolaris septicus*, *B. plurisepticus*, *Bacterium bipolare pluricida*, *Bacillus septicemiæ hæmorrhagicæ*, *Coccobacillus*, and *Bacterium multicidum*.

There is still great need of careful comparative studies of the organisms belonging to this group. It is by no means certain how many species are included. It is probable that in certain of the diseases the organism is a secondary invader. Non-virulent strains and perhaps species are known to occur frequently in nature.

290

Since it has thus far not proved possible to differentiate the organisms associated with the various diseases by means of their morphologic or biologic characters, it is necessary to adopt tentatively a pathologic classification, and group them with reference to the animals naturally infected and the diseases produced. The following list includes only the more important types that have been described, and is not complete:

A. Organisms which produce disease in lower animals only:
1. In birds. *Pasteurella (aviseptica) cholerœ gallinarum*.
2. In swine. *Pasteurella suiseptica*.
3. In cattle. *Pasteurella boviseptica*.
4. In equines. *Pasteurella equiseptica*.
5. In rabbits. *Pasteurella cuniculicida*.
6. In rats and other rodents. *Pasteurella pseudotuber-culosis rodentium*.

B. Organism producing disease in man: *Pasteurella pestis*.

Because of the close resemblance among the organisms causing hemorrhagic septicemias of the lower animals, the discussion of morphologic, physiologic, cultural, and biologic characters common to all species will be given first, limiting the discussion under the species to the characters of value in differentiation and to problems of immunity and pathogenesis.

HEMORRHAGIC SEPTICEMIA GROUP

Distribution.—Organisms having all the morphologic and biologic characters and sometimes even the pathogenesis of the disease-producing members of this group have been isolated many times from the mouth, nose, and alimentary tract of many animals. They are undoubtedly common as secondary invaders, and in some diseases have served to obscure the real causal organism by the regularity of their presence. It is contended by some writers that the sporadic nature of these diseases is due to the sudden acquisition of virulence by forms already present in the body. Not only the relative virulence of these ubiquitous organisms is in need of study, but also careful comparative studies of their cultural and physiologic characters.

Morphology and Staining.—The organisms are non-motile rods. In body fluids they are usually about 0.5 by 1 μ, and with aqueous

anilin dyes show intensive coloration at the poles, the central portion of the cell staining faintly or not at all. Giemsa's stain shows the polar granules well. In culture-media there occurs considerable variation in size. There do not seem to be well-marked differences in size among the different species. In pure cultures the organisms may be cocci, diplococci, or short rods. The polar staining character is much more difficult to demonstrate in cultures than in body fluids. By the use of carbol-fuchsin applied for one-half to one second many cells with polar granules may be demonstrated. The organisms are uniformly Gram-negative.

Cultural Characters.—All species are readily cultivated on suitable artificial media.

Gelatin colonies are small, white, and usually irregular, without marked distinctive characters. Gelatin slants show numerous small, round, flat, gray to translucent dewdrop-like colonies, which later become gray white and opaque. The gelatin is never liquefied.

On agar plates the colonies resemble those on gelatin. There is no tendency for the colonies to spread over the medium. The addition of blood-serum increases the luxuriance of growth, dextrose and glycerin have no perceptible effect.

The organism does not grow in Endo medium or on malachite green agar. On Drigalski's medium there is good growth without a change of color. Blood agar shows no hemolysis.

Little or no growth occurs upon potato.

In broth uniform clouding occurs with occasional clearing by sedimentation. Old broth cultures are often slimy.

No change occurs in milk.

Luxuriant growth occurs on Huntoon's hormone medium and on meat medium.

Physiology.—The optimum temperature is about 37°, the minimum, 12° to 13°, and the maximum, 42° to 43°.

The organisms are aërobic, growing little or not at all under anaërobic conditions.

Gas is never developed in any sugars; small amounts of acid may be.

No enzymes liquefying gelatin or blood-serum are produced.

Indol is formed by some organisms, apparently not by others. Slight development of hydrogen sulphid and reduction of nitrates have been recorded.

Pathogenesis.—The most susceptible of the laboratory animals is the rabbit. Intravenous injections usually prove fatal in a few hours to a day. Autopsy reveals the development of a septicemia in which the lesions are not particularly characteristic. Petechial hemorrhages are commonly noted on the mucous membranes of the respiratory and digestive tracts, and there may be swelling of lymph-nodes and spleen, congestion and edema of the lungs, and hyperemia of the kidneys.

Practically all species are also pathogenic for mice and for sparrows. Guinea-pigs are somewhat more resistant.

Other species of animals are much more distinctive in their reactions. Fowls, for example, are quite susceptible to the bacillus of fowl cholera, but quite resistant to infection with mammalian types.

No true toxin has been demonstrated and, in consequence, no antitoxin. The disease in its acute form in any animal is a bacteremia in which enormous numbers of bacteria are present in the blood-stream.

Immunity.—An endotoxin is produced which goes into solution slowly as a result of the autolysis of the cells. Broth filtrates of young cultures are innocuous, while autolyzed cultures are toxic. The toxicity of various strains has been shown to vary, but it is apparently a variable quite independent of virulence. MacFadyean has also demonstrated the presence of intracellular poisons by grinding the cells at the temperature of liquid air and by extracting with a dilute alkali.

Weil and Bail have sought to explain the virulence of this organism and the peculiarities of the infection by the use of the aggressin hypothesis. It seems evident that certain strains are capable of paralyzing the antibacterial defences of the body and thereby prevent phagocytosis. Citron and others have shown that such inhibiting substances may be dissolved from virulent cells.

Pasteurella choleræ gallinarum

Synonyms.—*Bacillus choleræ gallinarum; B. choleræ; Bacterium avicidum; Bacillus avisepticus.*

Diseases Produced.—Fowl or chicken cholera, in domestic fowls and other birds.

Distribution.—The disease has a wide distribution in Europe and America.

Historical.—Perroncito, in 1878, first discovered this organism. Pasteur, in 1880, succeeded in cultivating it, and with it performed many experiments on attenuation and immunization. Considerable historical importance is attached to it as marking the beginning of the study of experimental immunity.

Morphology and Staining.—Typical of the group. Considerable variations in size of the organisms from different strains may occur.
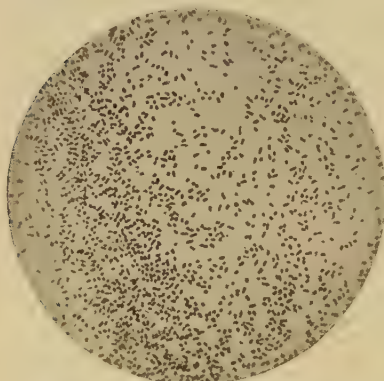
Fig. 111.—*Pasteurella choleræ galli-narum*, from an agar slant (× 1000) (Günther).

Isolation and Culture.—Characteristics of the group.

Physiology. — Characteristics of the group. According to Hadley, indol may or may not be produced and nitrates are usually reduced. Some acid is produced from dextrose, but not from saccharose, lactose, or mannite.

Pathogenesis.—Great variations in virulence have been noted among various strains. It may prove pathogenic upon inoculation or in some cases upon ingestion to fowls, geese, pigeons, mice, and rabbits, producing very rapidly fatal septicemias. Guinea-pigs are relatively immune.

The pigeon is among the most susceptible of experimental birds. The injection of minute quantities of a virulent culture into the breast muscle will prove fatal in from twelve to twenty-four hours. At the site of inoculation there develop an induration and thickening of the skin. The subcutaneous tissues show a straw-colored exudate. Usually there is found an acute pericarditis, enlargement of the spleen, and severe hemorrhagic enteritis.

In domestic fowls there appears congestion of the heart with an accumulation of serum in the pericardial sac. The liver is also congested, frequently showing petechiæ. The spleen is enlarged and softened. The lungs usually are congested and may show areas

of hepatization. Enteritis is usually demonstrable, frequently hemorrhagic.

Rabbits are likewise susceptible and succumb in ten to twenty hours with characteristic symptoms.

Infection may also be secured in the larger animals, producing in many cases typical hemorrhagic septicemias.

Immunity.—No true toxin has been demonstrated for this organism. Endotoxins are produced. One attack of the disease with recovery confers immunity. Agglutination in dilutions of 1 : 6000 has been shown with blood of animals artificially

Fig. 112.—*Pasteurella choleræ gallinarum,* in pigeon's blood (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

immunized. The nature of this immunity is not certainly known, although opsonins have been demonstrated.

Pasteur, in 1880, worked out a method of prophylaxis by the use of vaccines prepared by attenuating the organisms by long-continued cultivation upon artificial media. Broth cultures were allowed to stand from three to ten months. Under these conditions the virulence is gradually lost, and inoculation into the fowl is followed by a mild local reaction only. This immunizes against subsequent injections of the virulent form. Pasteur believed that the attenuating factor was the abundant supply of oxygen, for

cultures which he sealed from the free entrance of air he found to retain their virulence even after ten months. He also found that various strains showed great differences in their rate of attenuation. The Pasteur method of vaccination has never come into general use. Tests have shown that the use of the vaccine sent out by the Pasteur Institute was apt to produce typical cholera in some fowls. It has been shown that some degree of immunity is conferred by the injection of killed cultures of the organism.

It has also been found that immunization against one of the members of the hemorrhagic septicemia group immunizes like-wise against others. Injections of the *Pasteurella boviseptica*, for instance, will protect against subsequent injection with *Past. choleræ gallinarum*. Lignières has prepared a polyvalent vaccine by growing at 42° to 43° organisms isolated from sheep, cattle, horses, dogs, hogs, and fowls in bouillon. When allowed to grow for five days it constitutes the Vaccine I; for two days only, Vaccine II. One-eighth c.c. of I is injected, and twelve to fifteen days later the same amount of Vaccine II. By this means he claims to be able to immunize against all types of hemorrhagic septicemia in animals other than fowls. This method has not been utilized in practice, although a few recorded tests have been favorable.

Hadley has succeeded in isolating one strain (his No. 52) of a non-virulent organism which has very high immunizing value when used as a vaccine. He has found that vaccination with this strain confers an active immunity against all pathogenic strains tested. Hadley also concludes that the virulence of various strains of fowl-cholera organisms is subject to far less variation than has been supposed.

Kitt and Mayr, in 1897, showed that it is possible to secure a protective serum from the horse and other animals, as goats and swine, by injections of living fowl-cholera organisms, and this serum, when injected in suitable quantities into susceptible animals, will protect them from injections of virulent bacilli. Schreiber, in 1899, elaborated upon an observation of the preceding investigation that animals immunized against swine-plague bacilli (*Pasteurella suiseptica*) were likewise immune to fowl cholera. In 1902 he gave the name "septicidin" to a polyvalent serum

which he prepared by immunization with *Past. suiseptica* and *Pasteurella choleræ gallinarum*. The reports relative to the efficiency of this serum are conflicting. It has not come into general use. Hertel, in 1902, reported that by intravenous injections of dead bacteria followed by living bacteria into an ass he secured a serum which in injections of 0.5 c.c. protected pigeons against 10,000 times the normal lethal dose of the organism. Lignières and Spitz have also prepared a polyvalent serum, using the Lignière vaccine noted above. There is no record of a practical utilization of this method. Kitt and others, in 1904, have described sera which protect fowls experimentally inoculated with *Past. choleræ gallinarum*, but, like the others described, these have not come into general use. It may be concluded, therefore, that while immunization against fowl-cholera, either vaccination or the use of antisera, has been shown to be possible, it has not been proved practicable.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Stained mounts of the blood which reveal the presence of Gram-negative bacilli showing prominent bipolar staining are diagnostic. The bacillus may be readily isolated in artificial media. Whether or not serum reactions, particularly agglutination, might be utilized in diagnosis is not known.

Transmission.—The disease is supposed to be transmitted from bird to bird by ingestion of food or water fouled with excretions containing the specific organism.

Pasteurella suiseptica

Synonyms.—*Bacterium suicidum;* Löffler-Schütz bacillus; *Bacillus suicida; Bacillus suiseptica.*

Disease Produced.—Swine-plague, Schweineseuche.

Distribution.—The organism has been isolated from swine many times in Europe and America.

Löffler and Schütz, in 1886, published results which established the identity of swine-plague as a specific disease by the discovery of the causal organism. In the same year Smith isolated what proved to be the same organism from hogs in the United States. Since that time it has been isolated from animals in many parts of Europe and the United States. From the beginning the close relationship between the swine-plague and fowl-cholera bacilli was recognized. In the early literature of swine diseases in America there is much confusion relative to the use of the terms

"swine-plague" and "hog-cholera." The discovery that hog-cholera is caused primarily by a filterable virus has made neces-sary a very careful retraversing of the knowledge relative to swine-plague, and it has been urged that probably the *Pasteurella suiseptica* is a secondary invader merely, as is the hog-cholera bacillus, and that the two diseases differ not at all in their primary cause. The evidence at present seems to point, however, to a specific disease caused by *Past. suiseptica* and en-tirely distinct from hog-cholera. The question cannot be said to be satisfactorily settled at the present time. In the United States it seems probable that swine-plague, if such really exists, is relatively un-important in compari-son with hog-cholera. The situation is still fur-ther complicated by the fact that many writers
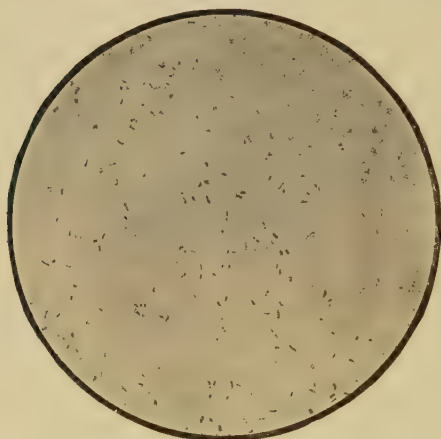
Fig. 113.—*Past. suiseptica* (after deSchwein-itz and McFarland).

have found in the respiratory tracts of normal swine numerous bacteria having all the characteristics of typical *Past. suiseptica*, even to pathogenicity.

Morphology and Staining.—Typical of the group.

Isolation and Culture.—Typical of the group.

Physiology.—Typical. Slight acid production in dextrose and saccharose. Indol production and nitrate reduction appear to be variable.

Pathogenicity.—The different strains show great fluctuations in virulence. In general, the pathogenicity for laboratory animals appears to be that of the group. The mouse and rabbit are particu-larly susceptible. The guinea-pig is somewhat more resistant.

In fowls and pigeons large injections are usually required to produce infection. Experimental infection may also be secured in the horse, in cattle, sheep, dogs, and cats. The results in swine have proved quite variable. The injection of a highly virulent

culture may lead to the death of the animal within one to three days from septicemia, with an extensive hemorrhagic edema about the site of inoculation. The injection of less virulent cultures or the use of animals showing some degree of resistance may lead only to local edema followed by abscess formation, or to a more chronic infection which terminates fatally in a few weeks. In the latter, section shows extensive lung lesions including partial hepatization with necrotic areas, fibrinous pleuritis, and enlargement of the spleen.

Intravenous injection of swine is usually followed by a fatal septicemia.

A disease closely simulating the typical swine-plague has been produced in swine by intratracheal injections and by inhalation.

The spontaneous infection of swine may occur as a septicemia which proves very quickly fatal, as a pneumo-enteritis characterized by the involvement and hepatization of considerable lung areas, or as a chronic type.

Fig. 114.—*Pasteurella suiseptica* in blood (after de-Schweinitz, Report Bureau of Animal Industry).

The evidence seems to point to the *Past. suiseptica* as a normal inhabitant of swine. It is possible that, like the pneumococcus, it can produce infection and increase its virulence under certain conditions, decrease in body resistance, etc.

Immunity.—As with the fowl-cholera bacillus, no true toxins have been demonstrated. Both active and passive immunization against the *Past. suiseptica* have been accomplished. Active immunization has been attempted in many different ways. The killed and living cultures have not, in general, proved satisfactory in immunizing the hog, although they have been successfully used in the preparation of antisera from the horse and other animals. Weil has elaborated the following technic, making use of the so-called "natural aggressins" for the establishment of immunity: A rabbit is injected intraperitoneally with 5 c.c. of bouillon containing a drop of twenty-four-hour culture of a highly virulent strain of the organism. The animal should die within the next twenty-four hours. The exudate, varying in amount from 1 to 20 c.c., is pipetted off and sterilized by the addition of 0.5 per cent. of

phenol, then heated to 44° for three hours, then its sterility deter-
mined by transfers to broth.   If the broth shows no growth, the
material is sterile and is ready for use.   This may be used to inject
laboratory animals and thereby establish immunity.   The animal
immediately after injection becomes more susceptible to the disease,
presumably due to the presence of aggressin in the blood, but later
a relatively permanent active immunity is produced.   In practice
it is found that in the immunization of hogs it is necessary that the
exudate containing the aggressin be obtained from other hogs
rather than from rabbits.   Wassermann and Citron have de-
veloped a somewhat similar method of immunization by the use
of so-called "artificial aggressins" or bacterial extracts.   These
methods of immunization are of much more theoretic than prac-
tical importance.

Passive immunization by means of antisera has been studied by
several investigators.   A rabbit may be actively immunized by
one of the preceding methods, and its serum may protect a mouse
in doses of less than 0.1 c.c. against a fatal injection of a highly
virulent organism.   Wassermann and Ostertag and their pupils
have shown that an antiserum specific for one strain of *Past.
suiseptica* is not always effective for others.   They, therefore,
prepare serum by the systematic immunization of a horse against
several strains of the organism until a serum of high potency is
produced.   Its strength is determined by injections into mice.
Experiments upon young pigs with this serum are claimed to have
been highly successful, but the method has not come into general
use.   Simultaneous injections of immune sera and of *Past.
suiseptica* have also been advocated.

In summary it may be said that immunization against swine-
plague is still in the experimental stage, and that no completely
satisfactory method has been evolved.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The identification of the causal
organism by actual isolation is the only practicable method of
bacteriologic diagnosis.

Transmission.—The means by which the disease spreads natu-
rally are not fully understood.   It is possible that it is by ingestion,
probably sometimes by inhalation.

Pasteurella boviseptica

Synonyms.—*Bacterium bovisepticum; B. bipolare multicidum; Bacillus bovicida, B. vitulisepticus: Bacillus bovisepticus.*

Diseases Produced.—Hemorrhagic septicemia in cattle, buffalo, and related wild animals; septic pleuropneumonia of calves; Rinderseuche, Wildseuche.

The early descriptions of the disease refer to it as attacking cattle, wild animals, and swine. Bollinger, in 1878, first described it as Wild- and Rinderseuche, attacking wild boar and deer. Kitt, in 1885, isolated an organism belonging to the hemorrhagic septicemia group. Since that time numerous investigators have reported epizoötics of the disease in many countries. Fernmore, in 1898, first noted its presence in the United States. It has been repeatedly found since that time, particularly in the Mississippi Valley.

Morphology and Staining.—Typical of the group.

Culture and Physiology.—Typical of the group.

Pathogenesis.—The organism is usually pathogenic for the mouse, pigeon, rabbit, and sparrow. Highly virulent cultures produce a quickly fatal septicemia in calves.

The lesions in the adult animals are characteristically petechiæ in many of the body organs, particularly in the serous surfaces. Hemorrhages are quite uniformly present also in the subcutaneous tissues. In some cases these are quite extensive and involve a considerable portion of the body surfaces.

Septic pleuropneumonia in calves is one of the most frequent types of infection. In this disease the pleura is often partially covered with thick fibrin layers, the interstitial connective tissues of the lungs show a serohemorrhagic infiltration, the remainder of the lung tissue is hemorrhagic. According to Jensen, in those cases in which the infection progresses more slowly, the exudate laid down in the connective tissue is responsible for the development of firm white yellow layers which surround the thickened lung lobules, which are dark red or mottled in color.

Immunity.—Repeated injections of animals at first with nonvirulent and later with virulent organisms will produce a relatively high degree of active immunity. The serum from such animals has considerable power to produce passive immunity. Some inves-

tigators claim that there are many strains of hemorrhagic septi-
cemia and, therefore, a polyvalent serum must be secured either
by injecting many strains of organisms into the serum animal, or
by mixing the serum secured from several animals each immun-
ized against several strains.

Bacterins prepared by killing cultures of *Past. boviseptica*
by heat or antiseptic have been used for prophylactic purposes
with apparently good results. Such bacterins are frequently
polyvalent.

Other Hemorrhagic Septicemias of Animals

Organisms belonging to this group have been isolated from
a considerable number of animal diseases in addition to the
ones which have already been described. Rabbit septicemia or
rabbit plague (*Pasteurella cuniculicida*), pneumo-enteritis, or
hemorrhagic septicemia of sheep and of the horse, infectious
pneumonia of goats, Büffelseuche or pasteurellosis of the buffalo,
dog typhoid or dog pasteurellosis, hemorrhagic septicemia of
elephants, of geese, wild birds, and many other animals have been
ascribed to *Past. septicemiæ hæmorrhagicæ*. As has been before
stated, the evidence in some of these cases seems to be inconclusive.

Pasteurella pestis

Synonyms.—*Bacterium pestis; B. pestis bubonicæ; Bacillus
pestis.*

Disease Produced.—Bubonic plague in man and rodents.

Yersin and Kitasato, in 1894, independently described the
organism which causes bubonic plague. Since that time it has
been isolated and described by many observers in numerous
outbreaks.

Distribution.—The disease is endemic in parts of China and
India. At various times it has spread as an epidemic over the
entire civilized world. Cases have been reported within recent
years in most of the civilized countries.

Morphology and Staining.—The *Pasteurella pestis* morphologi-
cally resembles the other members of this group. Involution
forms are produced so readily upon appropriate culture-media,
such as partially desiccated agar and salt agar, that their develop-
ment has been regarded as diagnostic. Capsules may sometimes
be demonstrated on culture-media, but not in tissues.

Isolation and Culture.—Growth in general is typical of the group. One character found useful in diagnosis is the "stalac-
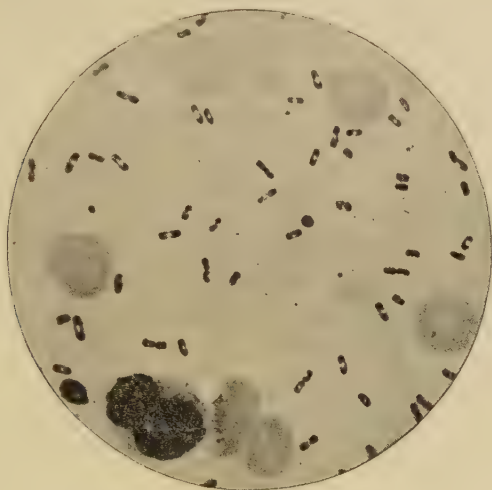
Fig. 115.—*Pasteurella pestis* (Wherry).

tite" formation in broth covered with oil and allowed to remain without being disturbed. Under these conditions long delicate threads are produced which hang from the oil and resemble the stalactites found in caves.

Physiology.—Reactions in general are those typical of the group. Dextrose broth is acidified, but no gas is produced. Indol is not formed.

Pathogenesis. — *Experimental Evidence.*—The organism readily infects mice, rats, guinea-pigs, rabbits, dogs, cats, and monkeys when they are experimentally inoculated. The symptoms and
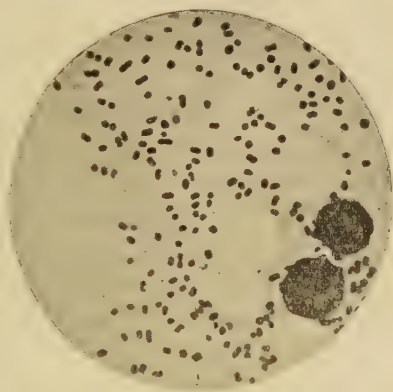
Fig. 116.—*Pasteurella pestis*, bacilli from a bubo (Günther).

lesions produced are entirely typical of bubonic plague in man. Accidental infection of man resulting in 4 cases of plague occurred

in a Vienna laboratory at a time when bubonic plague did not exist elsewhere in Europe. The causal relationship of the organism to the disease may be held to be fully established.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The disease in experimental animals may be a rapidly fatal septicemia, or in those animals which are somewhat resistant, as the rat, typical buboes (enlarged and suppurating lymph-nodes) or abscesses in the spleen or liver are produced. The disease in man may be one of three types—septicemic, usually rapidly fatal with the organisms generally distributed through the blood and various tissues of the body; the pneumonic, also rapidly fatal; and the bubonic, the most common, in which the lymph-nodes are infected, become enlarged, and ulcerate. The bubonic type is less fatal, recovery taking place in a small percentage of cases. The septicemic type of the disease is often accompanied by extensive subcutaneous hemorrhages, which gave the name "black death" to the epidemics of medieval Europe.

Immunity.—No true toxin has been demonstrated for *Pasteurella pestis*, although endotoxins have been shown to be present. Agglutinins for this organism may be found in the blood of advanced cases and of convalescents, but they appear too late to be of any diagnostic value. The reaction is rather doubtfully specific. The reaction occurs only in low dilutions—rarely above 1 : 20. Agglutination in much higher dilutions may be secured with immune serum—sometimes as high as 1 : 1000 has been observed. Precipitins have also been noted in laboratory experimentation. Opsonins for *Past. pestis* have been demonstrated in normal human serum and in immune serum. Bactericidal substances are present in the serum of artificially immunized animals.

Active immunization of man against bubonic plague has been quite extensively practised. The procedure consists in every case of injection of killed or attenuated bacilli or their products as a prophylactic measure. The use of the various substances has proved quite successful. Haffkine's vaccine has been used in India. It consists of a killed six-weeks' culture of plague bacilli in broth. Modifications of this method have been utilized by many investigators. The immunity established is probably both opsonic and bactericidal.

Passive immunization by the injection of the serum of horses hyperimmunized against *Pasteurella pestis* has been highly successful, according to some, and of no material advantage according to others. Several procedures have been advocated. The following is that of Kolbe and Kumbein: A culture of *Past. pestis* is passed through rats to exalt its virulence. This is planted upon agar and incubated forty-eight hours at 30°, the growth washed off, and suspended in physiologic salt solution. The suspension is killed by heating to 70° for an hour and its sterility determined. The horse is injected at intervals of a few days with gradually increasing doses of the dead bacteria, until after seven or eight injections the bacteria from six or more culture-tubes are injected at one time. Injections of minute quantities of the living organism are then begun, and finally, after repeated injections, the living organisms from 16 cultures are used. The interval between injections is governed by the reaction of the animal. Usually it is from five to eight days. The animal is then bled, and the serum preserved by the addition of 0.5 per cent. phenol.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be recognized in stained mounts from the pus from a bubo as a small Gram-negative bacillus, with characteristic bipolar staining. It may also be isolated upon culture-media and identified by its growth characteristics.

Transmission.—The pneumonic form of the disease may be transmitted by the inhalation of infectious droplets. Plague is not known to occur in the human following ingestion of the organism. The bubonic or most common type is probably transmitted to man by the bite of fleas (or from their excretions scratched into the skin), which have left rats dead of the disease. An epidemic of plague in the human is commonly preceded by an epizoötic among the rats of the community. It has been shown experimentally that a flea may transmit the disease from an infected to a non-infected individual. It is also known that the cannibalistic tendency of rats to eat their dead is in part responsible for the spread of the disease among vermin. The annihilation of the rat is the best prophylaxis known. The disease has in certain places, as about San Francisco, been found to spread to such rodents as the ground-squirrels and wood-rats. When a region once becomes thoroughly infected it is, therefore, difficult to stamp out the disease.

20

CHAPTER XXVI

GLANDERS GROUP. THE GENUS PFEIFFERELLA

ONE organism only, the *Pfeifferella mallei*, the cause of glanders and farcy in equines, is known to belong to this group. It should be noted that the so-called pseudoglanders and the causal organisms are treated under other chapter headings. These latter organisms are not related to the organism in question except in that they produce lesions which are sometimes confused with glanders clinically. Some of the pseudoglanders organisms belong to such disease groups as the bacteria, the blastomycetes, and the hyphomycetes.

Pfeifferella mallei

Synonyms.—*Bacterium mallei; Mycobacterium mallei; Bacillus mallei.*

Diseases Produced.—Glanders and farcy in equines; Rotz; morve.

Löffler and Schütz, in 1882, demonstrated the presence of a characteristic rod (*Pf. mallei*) in the nasal discharge of a horse affected with glanders. Kitt, in 1883, and Weichselbaum, in 1885, confirmed these results and added to our knowledge of the organism.

Distribution.—Glanders is known in practically every civilized country.

Morphology and Staining.—The glanders bacillus is a short rod, usually straight, but sometimes somewhat curved. The ends are rounded. It is usually single, more rarely in pairs or short chains in artificial media. In tissues the organism is generally in pairs. The cells are usually thicker and shorter in broth than on solid media. In stained mounts from the caseated pus from the lymph-gland of a guinea-pig, or from a glanders nodule from the liver of a field mouse, the cells are thicker and show a decided tendency to polar staining. Involution forms are frequently produced; enlarged cells, clubbed forms, filaments, and even branching have been observed. This last fact has led to the grouping of

this form with the higher fungi by some authors.   The normal rods vary from 0.5 to 1.0 by 1.: to 5 μ.   The organism is non-motile, and does not produce spores or capsules.   It stains with the ordinary anilin dyes, and still better with stains containing a mordant.   It sometimes shows some granular differentiation of the cytoplasm resembling the diphtheria bacillus.   It is not acid-fast and is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—The glanders bacillus is rarely in pure cultures in the nasal discharges, so that for its isolation from such sources a special technic is necessary.   It is customary to inject intraperitoneally a male guinea-pig with a small quantity of the discharge from an ulcer, mixed with a little bouillon or physiologic salt solution. Within two to four days the testes swell and give evidence of acute inflammation.   The animal is then killed, a testis removed and opened under aseptic conditions, and the contents of one of the small

Fig. 117.—*Pfeifferella mallei* from glycerin agar ($\times$ 1000) (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

abscesses or foci of inflammation removed on a sterile platinum needle to suitable media.

The glanders bacillus grows upon the ordinary culture-media, particularly upon those that contain glycerin, upon blood-serum, and potato.   The colonies upon agar and glycerin-agar plates are whitish or yellowish, glistening, usually circular.   Upon the slanted medium the colonies are coalescent and form a moist, shining layer of a slimy consistency.   In bouillon and glycerin bouillon it produces an initial turbidity, followed by sedimentation; a shining white pellicle is likewise formed when the medium is not shaken.   On blood-serum the colonies are first discrete, clear, yellowish, viscous, hemispheric drops which coalesce to form a transparent layer over the surface; this later becomes

gray and opaque. Gelatin is not liquefied. The growth upon potato is perhaps the most characteristic. It may be described as forming within forty-eight hours a yellow, honey-like, semitransparent growth that gradually becomes brownish or amber in tint. The potato itself is tinted greenish or greenish brown. This reaction is not characteristic if potatoes having too acid a reaction are used. They may be neutralized previously to inoculation by soaking in dilute sodium carbonate.

Physiology.—The glanders bacillus is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. Its optimum growth temperature is 30° to 40°, but its growth limits, at least in freshly isolated cultures, are about 25° and 42°. Its thermal death-point is 55°, with ten minutes' exposure.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—There is an abundance of evidence to prove that *Pf. mallei* is the cause of glanders. All the lesions of the disease may be duplicated by the experimental inoculation of pure cultures into laboratory animals and the horse. The guinea-pig is very susceptible. A subcutaneous
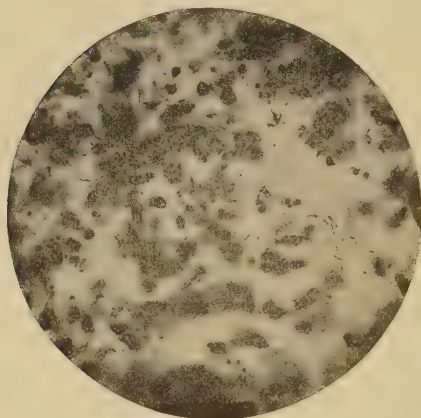
Fig. 118.—*Pfeifferella mallei*, in section from the spleen of a field-mouse (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

inoculation is followed within a few days by local swelling and induration, which soon ulcerates and discharges to the surface. The disease spreads largely through the lymph-channels, and the lymph-nodes enlarge and suppurate. Various metastatic infections of the joints, the lungs, liver, and other organs occur. Death seems to be due to exhaustion. Infection may similarly be transmitted to the rabbit. The horse may be readily infected, as may sheep, goats, the cat, and the dog. Cattle and the house-rat do not contract the disease. It occurs in man through infection from glandered animals and through working with pure cultures in the laboratory.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The disease as found in equines may be either of an acute or a chronic type. The former is commoner in the ass and mule, and the latter in the horse. The acute type of disease is commonly ushered in with a chill, there is a mucopurulent discharge, and death usually occurs in from one to four weeks. The chronic type shows no marked characteristics in its early stages; the lymph-nodes in various parts of the body become infected and enlarge. This may exist for a long period in an animal, and may terminate finally in an acute attack. The lesions in the chronic type are generally present on the nasal mucosa, in the lungs, and in the lymph-glands. The nodular glanders of the nasal mucosa is the most frequent type. The nodules, small at first, enlarge to the size of a pea, then break down, suppurate, and form chronic ulcers. When healing of the deeper ulcers occurs, the star-shaped scar resulting is quite characteristic. In the lungs lesions are almost invariably to be found; these may be nodular, or consist of infiltration of considerable areas of tissue. In farcy or cutaneous glanders the nodules form in the skin; the lymph-vessels become swollen and feel like a string of beads or a knotted cord. These nodules occasionally break through to the surface and ulcerate. In man the organism commonly gains entrance through abrasions or wounds in the skin, or by inhalation, and the infection produced is practically always fatal.

Immunity.—No toxins have been demonstrated for *Pf. mallei*, although endotoxins are produced. Agglutinins are present in the blood-serum of normal animals, but in much greater concentration in the blood of infected animals. Precipitins may also be demonstrated. Of the bactericidal and opsonic nature of sera less is known.

Active Immunization.—Immunization by the use of suspensions of dead bacteria or their products (mallein) has been attempted both in prophylaxis and cure. Although some favorable results have been reached, the subject needs further study. No method of vaccination or active immunization has as yet been shown to be practical and successful.

Passive Immunization.—The blood-serum of animals, such as the ox, naturally immune to glanders has been claimed to possess

immunizing power when injected into smaller laboratory animals, as the rabbit. Nocard and Prettner have each attempted immunization by the administration of serum from cattle that had been repeatedly injected with virulent cultures of the glanders bacillus, but found the method ineffective. Galtier observed that treatment with such serum only prolonged the course of the disease which had been induced by experimental inoculation.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—A presumptive bacteriologic diagnosis may be made by an examination of properly stained pus or sections of tissue, and a more positive diagnosis by the methods of animal inoculation, agglutination, precipitation, absorption of complement, and by the use of mallein.

Examination of Pus and Tissues.—The nasal secretions and the pus from ulcers always contain a mixed bacterial flora, and are consequently unsatisfactory for microscopic examination. The bacilli of glanders are not readily recognizable and are, therefore, very difficult to differentiate from other bacteria. The nodules of the disease and the subcutaneous tissues are exceptions to the above rule, as are the foci in the submaxillary glands. These may be freshly incised and satisfactorily stained. For demonstration of the organism in tissues the method of Kühne is recommended as giving good results. Carbol-methylene-blue (methylene-blue, 1.5 gm.; alcohol, 10 c.c., and 5 per cent. aqueous phenol or carbolic acid, 100 c.c.) is used to stain the sections one-half hour; they are then washed in water, then in very dilute hydrochloric acid (10 drops to 500 c.c. of water), and quickly transferred to a solution of lithium carbonate (8 drops of a saturated solution to 10 c.c. of water), then to distilled water, dehydrated in absolute alcohol containing a little methylene-blue, then cleared in anilin oil. The bacteria should show plainly, but are few in number and not always readily discovered.

Diagnosis by Animal Inoculation.—*Strauss' Reaction.*—A male guinea-pig is inoculated intraperitoneally with a small amount of the suspected material. This is preferably obtained from the interior of encapsulated nodules or abscesses, or from the base of fresh ulcers. The nasal discharge is less satisfactory because of the presence of large numbers of other varieties of bacteria, which may cause the death of the animal prematurely from peritonitis or sep-

ticemia. In from two to four days, exceptionally not until the twelfth, the testes become enlarged and tender, the skin above them is reddened and shiny. The animal, in case of a positive reaction, should be killed and the contents of the testes examined microscopically to determine the presence of a Gram-negative characteristic bacillus. If not killed, abscesses which discharge large numbers of bacteria develop, and the animal emaciates rapidly, dying within two weeks. Other organisms may give the orchitic reaction, but they are Gram-positive, with the exception of *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*. A culture should always be made from the pus in the scrotum to make diagnosis certain.

Agglutination Test for Glanders.—The serum of a normal horse will frequently agglutinate the glanders bacillus when in dilutions of 1:100, 1:500, rarely more. The following general rule as mentioned by Hutyra and Marek is quite applicable and reliable: Agglutination, if appearing in dilutions of 1:400 or less, with few exceptions denotes freedom from infection; in dilutions of 1:1000 or more, also with few exceptions, agglutination indicates the presence of infection; in dilutions of 1:2000 agglutination signifies recent infection. The organisms used in the agglutination test may be either living or dead. The latter are commonly used, as it does away largely with danger of infection to man. The bacterial suspension is prepared by removing the growth from a young culture on agar and suspending it in physiologic salt solution containing 0.5 per cent. phenol. This is heated at 70° for two to four hours; this kills the bacteria, but does not interfere with the agglutination reaction. Equal amounts of this suspension are placed in a series of small test-tubes, and to these are added equal amounts of different dilutions of the serum to be tested, and the final dilutions of the serum determined. Dilutions are usually prepared 1:100, 1:200, 1:400, 1:500, 1:800, 1:1000, and up to 1:4000 or more. The tubes are kept at 37° for from twenty-four to thirty-six hours, or the reading of the result may be hastened by centrifugation. A positive reaction is indicated by a film covering the entire bottom of the tube, a negative by no precipitate or a little sediment in the bottom of the convexity, not forming a film. Whether or not a positive reaction is accompanied by a complete clearing of the test fluid depends upon the concentration of the

suspension and the dilution and potency of the serum used. The fluid may remain somewhat cloudy in a positive reaction in the higher dilutions, not all the organisms being agglutinated. The suspensions of killed organisms may be secured ready for use from some pharmaceutical houses, together with tubes and materials for preparing the proper dilutions. The suspension when properly prepared and preserved in the dark will keep for a considerable time. The microscopic test for agglutination has not proved practicable, as normal serum agglutinates microscopically in high dilutions. When properly carried out the macroscopic test is claimed by some to be an even better diagnostic than mallein.

Konew's Precipitation Test, or the Ring Test.—A solution of glanders bacilli prepared by adding 10 c.c. of an 8 per cent. antiformin[1] solution to the bacilli washed from the surface of a forty-eight-hour slant agar culture. The bacteria will go into solution within two hours. It is well to add even more of the organism if it appears to dissolve rapidly, as it is desirable to get as concentrated a solution as possible. The solution must then be carefully neutralized, preferably by the use of 5 per cent. sulphuric acid. This is then filtered through paper, then through a Berkefeld filter, to remove all undissolved bacteria. The filtered solution is termed "mallease." A test-tube is filled to a depth of 3 cm. with mallease, and blood-serum from a suspected case is introduced by means of a pipette. The end of the pipette should be passed through the layer of mallease and should rest against the bottom of the tube before the serum is allowed to flow. A quantity of serum about equal to the mallease is introduced. The pipette is withdrawn quickly and carefully to prevent any mixture of the two liquids. The serum has a higher specific gravity and remains at the bottom, with the mallease as a distinct superficial layer. If the serum is from an animal free from the disease, there will be no reaction. A positive diagnosis of glanders is indicated by a white cloudiness that appears along the line separating the two liquids. This is due apparently to precipitation by the specific precipitins formed in the serum. In acute or well-marked cases the reaction occurs almost immediately, and usually in all cases within fifteen

---

[1] The composition of antiformin is given on p. 380 It is a patented disinfecting solution, and may be purchased upon the market.

minutes.   Observations recorded up to the present indicate that this method is giving satisfactory results in most instances.   The possibility of demonstrating precipitins in chronic cases presents an additional advantage for this method.

Fixation of Complement Test.—Schütz and Schubert[1] have described a satisfactory method of adapting Wassermann's syphilis test by fixation of complement to the diagnosis of glanders. Mohler and Eichhorn[2] have tested out the method and found it highly satisfactory.   Hemolytic amboceptor is prepared, preferably by a recent method described by A. F. Coca.   Rabbits are given two intravenous injections of washed erythrocytes of the sheep of 1 c.c. or at most 2 c.c., at intervals of not less than four days.   At the end of five days after the last injection the rabbits are bled and their blood-serum obtained.   Such amboceptor is usually highly potent and the potency remains uniform for a long time. It must be inactivated by heating to 56° for thirty minutes before it can be used.

Fresh guinea-pig serum is used as complement.   The antigen used is an extract of glanders bacilli prepared from the growth on slant glycerin-agar tubes.   The growth is washed off with physiologic salt solution and heated to 60° for four hours to kill the bacteria.   The suspension of organisms is then placed in flasks and shaken in a shaking apparatus for four days.   It is then centrifuged, the clear liquid removed, and 10 per cent. of a 5 per cent. solution of phenol added.   This antigen may be preserved without material deterioration for several months if kept in a cool, dark place.

It is necessary to titrate the rabbit serum and likewise the antigen in order to determine the amounts most suitable for carrying out the test.   For each set of determinations of diagnosis fresh guinea-pig serum must be used.   Blood-serum from the animal that is suspected of having glanders must be inactivated by heating to 58° for thirty minutes.   The materials necessary for the test are—

1. Washed sheep corpuscles, 5 per cent. suspension (antigen 1).

2. Inactivated serum from rabbit immunized against 1 (amboceptor 1).

[1] Arch. f. Wiss. u. prakt. Tierheilkunde, Band 35, pp. 44–83, 1909.
[2] Bull. 136, Bureau Animal Industry, U. S. Dept. of Agriculture.

3. Fresh guinea-pig serum (complement).

4. Extract of glanders bacilli (antigen 2).

5. Inactivated serum from suspected animal (amboceptor 2).

The test is carried out in test-tubes. In tubes 1 and 2 there is placed 0.1 c.c. of the serum (No. 5, above), and in tubes 3 and 4, 0.2 c.c. of the same. One c.c. of the established dilution of glanders bacilli (No. 4, above) is then added to tubes 1 and 3. To each tube is then added 1 c.c. of the dilution of fresh guinea-pig serum that has been established by preliminary test. Each tube is now made up to 3 c.c. with physiologic salt solution. They are then placed in the thermostat at 37° for an hour. They are then removed and to each tube is added 1 c.c. of the previously standardized rabbit serum (No. 2, above) and 1 c.c. of the sheep corpuscles (No. 1, above). The tubes are shaken and incubated for ten hours. A positive diagnosis is indicated by lack of hemolysis in tubes 1 and 3 and complete hemolysis in tubes 2 and 4. Checks must be made to determine the hemolytic activity of each of the above constituents independently.

This method is essentially a laboratory one and quite impracticable for field work. There seems to be no reason why blood samples or, better, serum samples from suspected cases should not be sent to properly equipped laboratories for diagnosis and report. The method apparently is capable of giving good results, and seems to be more accurate than the mallein test.

Conglutination Test for Glanders.—The conglutination reaction has been advocated by Anderson and others as a satisfactory method of diagnosis in glanders. The following materials are necessary in the test:

1. Suspension of killed glanders bacilli . . . . 0.05 c.c.
2. Inactivated serum of horse suspected, in various
    amounts, from . . . . 0.001–0.1 c.c.
3. Normal horse serum (containing complement) . . . . . 0.1 c.c.
4. Inactivated cattle serum (containing conglutinin) . . 0.04 c.c.
5. Suspension of goat corpuscles in physiologic salt
    solution . . . . 0.5 c.c.

Each volume is made up to 2.5 c.c. with physiologic salt salution. Numbers 1, 2, and 3 are first mixed and allowed to stand one-half hour at 37°, then numbers 4 and 5 are added. The reaction is

determined after standing one hour at 37°. The test has been claimed to be quite specific, but it has not been extensively tried out. (See page 192.)

Mallein Test for Glanders.—Mallein is a suspension of killed glanders bacilli, together with the products of their autolytic disintegration. What the active principles in bringing about the characteristic reaction in a glandered horse may be is not known. Probably they are the soluble bacterial proteins, possibly true endotoxins. The various laboratories use different methods of preparing mallein. The most important of these are worthy of note.

The mallein of Roux is prepared by the Pasteur Institute as follows: The virulence of the glanders bacillus used is increased by passage through rabbits, and is such that mice and rabbits are killed in less than thirty hours by intravenous injections. Flasks containing 250 c.c. of glycerin bouillon are inoculated and incubated a month at 35°. The cultures are killed by exposure to a temperature of 100° for thirty minutes in an autoclave, then evaporated to one-tenth the volume, and filtered through filter-paper ("papier Chardin"). The final product is a dark-brown, syrupy liquid, containing 50 per cent. glycerin. For use this is mixed with nine times its volume of 0.5 per cent. carbolic acid. The diagnostic dose is 2.5 c.c. of this dilution.

The mallein of Vladimiroff, used in the Russian Empire, is prepared by inoculating a considerable number of flasks, each containing 600 to 800 c.c. of beef-broth, with a vigorous culture of *B. mallei*, and incubating for eight months at 37°. The flasks are shaken from time to time to cause the shiny, gray-white pellicle which forms to sink to the bottom. The culture is then examined for purity, sterilized in the autoclave at 110°, and filtered. This is concentrated and again diluted until the diagnostic dose for the horse is 1 c.c.

The mallein or morvin of Babes is prepared by inoculating potato paste with the glanders bacillus, and incubating six weeks. It then is heated at 68° for three and one-half hours, emulsified with water, filtered through a Witt filter, and precipitated with alcohol. This precipitate is washed in alcohol, then in ether, and dried. The diagnostic dose is 0.02 to 0.03 gm. It is prepared for injection by dissolving in a mixture of glycerin and water.

The *malleinum siccum*, or dried mallein, of Foth is prepared by growing the glanders bacillus in 4.5 per cent. glycerin broth. The cultures used are rendered virulent by passage through cats, guinea-pigs, and field-mice. The material is incubated at 37.7° for three weeks. It is concentrated, and the organism killed by evaporation at a constant temperature of 76° to 80° to one-tenth of its former volume. This is filtered and poured into absolute alcohol, in which a precipitate immediately forms. This precipitate is washed in alcohol and dried in a desiccator. The final product is a white powder which readily dissolves in water. The diagnostic dose for the horse is 0.045 to 0.05 gm.

The mallein prepared in the laboratories of the Bureau of Animal Industry consists of glycerinated broth in which the *Pf. mallei* has grown four to five months, has been heated, concentrated, and filtered. It is diluted by the addition of one-half its volume of glycerin and one and one-half times its volume of 1 per cent. phenol. The diagnostic dose is 1 c.c.

No practicable method of standardizing mallein has been worked out other than trial upon a considerable number of healthy and infected animals. The variations in the methods of production of mallein given above are due to a desire to secure a very uniform product.

There are three methods of applying mallein in use at the present time. They are the subcutaneous, ophthalmic, and cutaneous.

Subcutaneous Mallein Test.—Following subcutaneous injection of a suitable dose of mallein, animals suffering from glanders show a rise of temperature beginning usually between the fourth and eighth hour. From this time on to the fourteenth hour, in exceptional cases later, the rise continues. After reaching the maximum the decrease is gradual until normal. Organic symptoms, such as increased respiration and heart action, muscular tremor, depression, dulness, and loss of appetite, may frequently be observed and are of value in diagnosis. The appearance of an inflamed, edematous swelling at the point of inoculation is also usually noted. In general, an increase of 2° C. rising above 40° C. is considered a positive reaction. Students are referred to texts on practice for complete discussion of this phase of the test.

Ophthalmic Mallein Test.—This consists of introducing into the conjunctival sac of one of the eyes several drops of a specially prepared mallein.   This may be introduced either with the aid of a camel's-hair brush or a medicine-dropper.   The reaction begins from the fourth to the sixth hour after application and may continue for twenty-four to thirty-six hours.   It consists of a conjunctivitis marked by swelling of the lids, redness of the membrane, and a purulent secretion which collects at the inner canthus and on the hair below the eye.   The test is recognized by the Bureau of Animal Industry as a reliable one.

Cutaneous Mallein Tests.—These may be carried out either by scarification of the skin, followed by application of concentrated mallein, or by intradermal injection of concentrated mallein. Either case is marked by edematous swellings whose extent depends upon the quantity of mallein injected.   The limited number of tests of this character furnish a very unsatisfactory basis for conclusions regarding the reliability and accuracy.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted from one animal to another through infected food, mangers, drinking troughs, etc.; rarely through wounds or skin abrasions.   Veterinarians and horsemen sometimes become infected through the skin, rarely by inhalation.

Bacilli of Selter, Babes, and Kutscher.—Organisms morphologically similar to the preceding have been isolated from pus by Selter and by Babes, and from the nostrils of a healthy horse by Kutscher.   They may be differentiated readily by their lack of pathogenesis, and would rarely, if ever, lead to mistakes in diagnosis.

CHAPTER XXVII

INTESTINAL OR COLON-TYPHOID GROUP. THE GENUS BACTERIUM

THE organisms belonging to this group may be characterized as plump, Gram-negative rods, frequently though not always motile; they produce no spores, do not in general liquefy gelatin, and in most cases ferment certain sugars, with acid and sometimes gas production. There is no distinct tendency to the formation of polar granules. The group contains many undoubted species that may be easily differentiated, but there are many intergrading types and forms showing similar morphologic and cultural characters, but differing considerably in kind and in degree of virulence. These latter make a systematic presentation of the group as a whole difficult. The group name is given because of the prominence of these organisms in the intestinal flora in disease and health in both man and animals. They are, therefore, abundant in sewage and water contaminated thereby, and in soil, particularly that which has received additions of barnyard manure. They are less common in virgin soil and uncontaminated water.

The members of this group are divided, for convenience in study, into three subgroups. This arrangement seems to represent evident relationships. The fermentative powers of the organisms are used as a basis upon which to make the groupings. The first of these is known as the colon bacillus subgroup, the second as the intermediate, hog-cholera or enteritidis subgroup, and the third as the typhoid-dysentery subgroup. The principal points of difference among these subgroups may be summarized in the following table, giving the fermentation reactions in dextrose and lactose broth:

Subgroup I. Colon subgroup.			Subgroup II. Intermediate subgroup.			Subgroup III. Typhoid-dysentery subgroup.		
	Acid.	Gas.		Acid.	Gas.		Acid.	Gas.
Dextrose	+	+	Dextrose	+	+	Dextrose	±	—
Lactose	+	+	Lactose	—	—	Lactose	—	—

The differences may be summarized as follows: The organisms of Subgroup I ferment both dextrose and lactose, with formation of both acid and gas; those of Subgroup II form acid and gas from dextrose, but not from lactose; and those of Subgroup III may or may not form acid from dextrose, but never from lactose, and gas from neither of the sugars.

The fermentations of other carbohydrates and related compounds are used to differentiate species and varieties from each other. A few can be satisfactorily differentiated only by the agglutination reaction. Those organisms which produce gas in the fermentation tube grow in both the open and closed arm, as do those which produce acid, and those which do not ferment the sugar are usually confined to the open arm. The composition of the gas, that is, the relative proportion of CO_2 and H_2, is also of diagnostic value.

SUBGROUP I. COLON SUBGROUP

The organisms of the colon subgroup are characterized by their ability to ferment both dextrose and lactose with formation of both acid and gas. A satisfactory classification of the species has not been worked out as yet. Even the approximate number of species to be recognized is uncertain. Many characters to be noted in separation of species have been proposed; those which have proved helpful are the following:

1. Motility and capsule production.
2. Indol production.
3. Carbon dioxid-hydrogen gas ratio.
4. Acid production, particularly hydrogen ion concentration in various sugars.
5. Gas production from different sugars.
6. Production of acetyl-methyl-carbinol (Voges-Proskauer reaction).
7. Utilization of uric acid as a source of nitrogen.

The organisms of this subgroup are of interest because several are normal inhabitants of the intestinal tract, and their presence in water is, therefore, an evidence of fecal contamination and because some of the species are pathogenic. It is as yet impossible to prepare a logical classification which includes all forms. The subgroup, for convenience, will be considered under three sections:

1. Organisms primarily of sanitary significance.

2. Organisms associated with infectious diseases of animals, particularly calf diarrhea.

3. Organisms showing capsule formation, and sometimes pathogenic.

These sections overlap; the same species in some cases must be considered under all three sections.

The name *Bacterium coli* or *Bacillus coli communis* is often used to include all of the species here discussed, very often, indeed, to include all forms of sanitary significance.

ORGANISMS OF THE COLON SUBGROUP PRIMARILY OF SANITARY SIGNIFICANCE

The organisms of this section are frequently used as an index of water pollution. They are all inhabitants of the intestinal tracts of man and most animals; certain species are not uncommon in soil, on grains, etc.

The following key to some of the more important species is of assistance in their separation. It should be emphasized that the names *Bacterium coli* and *B. coli communis* are often used to include all of these species.

KEY TO THE MORE IMPORTANT SPECIES OF THE COLON GROUP

I. Not producing acetyl methyl carbinol (Voges-Proskauer reaction negative); acid to methyl red, and carbon dioxide and hydrogen produced in approximately equal volumes from glucose. Cannot utilize uric acid as a source of nitrogen.
   A. Sucrose not attacked.
      1. Salicin fermented with acid and gas.

COLI SECTION.
1. *Bact. coli.*
      2. Salicin not attacked.   2. *Bact. acidi-lactici.*
   B. Sucrose fermented with acid and gas.
      1. Motile.   3. *Bact. communior.*
      2. Non-motile.
         (a) Salicin fermented with acid
             and gas.   4. *Bact. neapolitanum.*
         (b) Salicin not fermented.   5. *Bact. coscoroba*
II. Producing acetyl methyl carbinol (Voges-Proskauer reaction positive); alkaline to methyl red, and forms two or more times as much carbon dioxide as hydrogen from glucose. Capable of utilizing uric acid as a source of nitrogen.

A. Glycerol and starch fermented with
   acid and gas formation; non-motile,
   gelatin not liquefied.   6. *Bact. Aërogenes.*
B. Glycerol and starch not fermented;
   motile, gelatin liquefied.   7. *Bact. cloacæ.*

Bacterium coli

Synonyms.—*Bacillus coli communis; B. pyogenes fœtidus; Bacterium coli commune;* colon bacillus.

Emmerich, in 1885, isolated an organism which was later named *Bacillus neapolitanus,* from the feces of patients suffering from Asiatic cholera. Escherich, in 1886, isolated a related organism which he termed *Bacterium coli commune,* from normal feces. Since that time organisms of this group have been found to be constantly present in the intestines of man, most animals, and even some birds. The question of its occurrence in nature independent of fecal contamination is a moot one, but there is increasing tendency to consider that reports of its common occurrence in water and soils are due to confusion with *Bacterium aëro-genes.* That it may maintain a saprophytic existence outside the body for some time seems to be well established, but the evidence that it does not usually long so maintain itself is increasing.
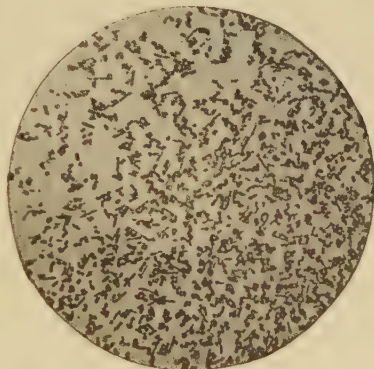
Fig. 119.—*Bacterium coli,* stained preparation from a twenty-four-hour agar slant ($\times$ 650) (Heim).

Distribution.—Not all investigators are in agreement as to the proportion of lactose fermenting bacteria from the intestines which belong to the species *Bacterium coli.* MacConkey concluded about 38 per cent. from human feces and 25 per cent. from bovine feces were of this type. Clemesha gives 17 and 9 per cent. respectively. Levine found 5 per cent. of *Bact. coli* in horse feces, 22 per cent. from the pig, 25 per cent. from the

21

cow, 5 per cent. from sheep, and 15 per cent. from man. The work of Ferriera, Horta, and Paredes indicated that this type is widely distributed in the feces of animals.

Morphology and Staining.—The *Bacterium coli* is a rod, varying from 0.4 to 0.7 by 2 to 4 μ, sometimes shorter and almost coccus-like with rounded ends, usually single, but occasionally in short chains. It does not produce spores or capsules. It is rather sluggishly motile, at least in young cultures, usually with 2 to 8 flagella, rarely more. It stains readily with the ordinary anilin dyes, sometimes showing some vacuolization and polar granules. It is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—*Bacterium coli* may be readily isolated from feces or sewage by plating the material in various dilutions in litmus-lactose agar and incubating at blood-heat. The colonies of *Bact. coli* appear surrounded by a zone of red, due to the formation of acids from the lactose. The colonies must be fished and tested in various carbohydrate solutions, so that those of true *Bact. coli* may be differentiated from other members of the subgroup. Upon gelatin plates the colonies are moist, grayish white, opaque, becoming darker and more coarsely granular. Gelatin is not liquefied. Stab cultures in gelatin show a filiform growth along the line of puncture and a spreading growth at the surface. The agar cultures resemble those on gelatin. Bouillon is quickly clouded, sometimes with formation of a pellicle. On potato a moist, spreading growth occurs, and the potato is darkened. Milk is coagulated by the formation of acids; the curd shrinks, but is not digested. The various media used in the recognition of *Bact. coli* in water analysis will be discussed under that heading.

Physiology.—*Bacterium coli* is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. Its optimum growth temperature is 37°, but growth is luxuriant at room-temperature and even below. The thermal death-point is 60° for fifteen minutes. The following carbohydrates are fermented: levulose, galactose, dextrose, maltose, lactose, salicin, glycerin, dulcite, but not saccharose. The gas formula from dextrose is approximately $\dfrac{CO_2}{H_2} = \dfrac{1}{1}$. When grown in dextrose (0.5 per cent.) phosphate medium the solution

becomes permanently acid to methyl-red.   Indol is produced in
Dunham's solution.   Peptonizing and proteolytic enzymes have
not been demonstrated.   The Voges-Proskauer test is negative.
It cannot utilize nitrogen from uric acid.

Pathogenesis.—The following quotation from Jordan epito-
mized our present estimate of the pathogenicity of *Bacterium
coli:* "The common occurrence of agonal or postmortem invasion
of the body by the colon bacillus tends to diminish the value of
the supposed evidence
derived from finding the
colon bacillus in the in-
ternal organs after death,
and there can be no
doubt that the rôle in
human pathology as-
signed to the colon bac-
illus by some investiga-
tors, notably certain
French bacteriologists,
has been greatly exag-
gerated.   Failure to dis-
tinguish between the
true colon group and the
group of meat-poisoning
bacilli is doubtless re-
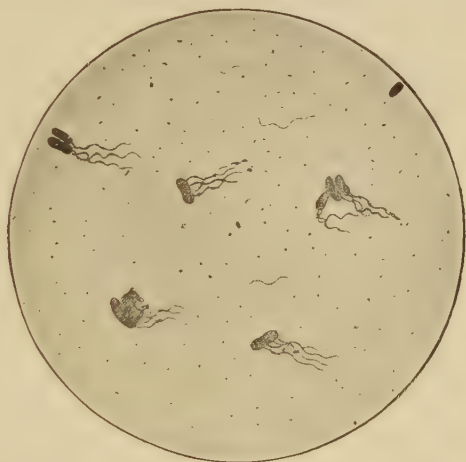
Fig. 120.—*Bacterium coli* showing the flagella
(Migula).

sponsible for some of the statements attributing pronounced
pathogenic properties to *Bact. coli*.   The frequent ascription
of various inflammatory processes, particularly those occurring
in the appendix and peritoneum, to the unaided activities
of *Bact. coli* appears to be without sufficient justification.
Many of the cases reported rest on the evidence derived from
simple aërobic cultivation, and the possible concurrence of
anaërobic or other organisms not growing by ordinary methods
has not been excluded."   The preceding was written with
pathogenesis for the human body in mind, but the conclusions
are even more true with reference to its pathogenesis for ani-
mals.   Many diseases in domestic animals have been ascribed
to infection with varieties of *Bact. coli* from insufficient evi-

dence. It has been shown that even in the normal body colon bacilli sometimes escape from the intestines, and are to be found in the mesenteric lymph-nodes, and occasionally in some of the other internal organs.

Experimental Evidence of Pathogenesis.—The intraperitoneal injection of broth cultures of *Bact. coli* into the guinea-pig results in the death of the animal, usually within three days. Animal experimentation has demonstrated quite conclusively that there are considerable differences in virulence of colon bacilli isolated from different animals or from the same animal at different times.

Character of Lesions and Disease Produced.—*Bacterium coli* has been isolated from suppurations in pure culture. In man it is known occasionally to invade the gall-bladder, and is a common cause of cholecystitis. It may serve as a nucleus for gall-stones, and is probably instrumental in their formation by the precipitation of cholesterin. Inflammation of the ureters and of the urinary bladder is commonly caused in many by organisms that cannot be differentiated from typical *Bact. coli*. It has been reported as the cause of calf diarrhea or white scours, and from malignant catarrh in cattle. These will be discussed later. Usually the colon bacillus does not give rise to putrefactive products, and must be regarded as a harmless or possibly even useful commensal.

Immunity.—A considerable degree of immunity to *Bacterium coli* may be induced by injections of cultures, killed or living. Agglutinins are present in normal serum, but may be greatly increased by systematic immunization. Specific precipitins for the bacterial proteins are present in the immune serum. Opsonins are present in normal serum. The body has naturally a high degree of immunity against the *Bact. coli*. This may be accounted for by the presence of *Bact. coli* in the intestines and the continued opportunity for infection. The toxic properties of the organism are probably due to the presence of endotoxins.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The isolation of the characteristic colonies upon litmus-lactose agar from Endo- or from Conradi-Drigalski plates are all simple and quick methods of determining the presence of *Bact. coli*. The recognition and isolation of this organism from water will be discussed at greater length under the heading of Water Analysis.

Bacterium acidi lactici

This organism was first isolated from milk by Hueppe. It has been frequently confused because of similarity of name, original source of isolation, and the production of lactic acid with *Lactobacillus lactis acidi*, a totally unrelated form. In all essential characteristics this organism resembles the *Bact. coli* except that it does not ferment dulcite with the production of gas.

Organisms of this type are not uncommon in feces. Mac-Conkey found 34 per cent. in human feces and 16 per cent. in bovine, Clemesha found 53 and 40 per cent. respectively. Levine found 15 per cent. in horse dung, 45 per cent. from pig, 25 per cent. from cow, and 5 per cent. from sheep.

It is possible that some of Jensen's calf-scours organisms belong to this type.

Bacterium communior

Synonyms.—*B. coli communior; Bacillus communior.*

This organism was named *Bacillus coli communior* by Durham because he believed it to be even more common in the intestines than his *B. coli communis*. It differs from *Bact. coli* in its ability to ferment saccharose. MacConkey found about 15 per cent. of this type in human and 48 per cent. in bovine feces. Clemesha gives 7 and 10 per cent. respectively. Levine found about 60 per cent. in the horse, 20 per cent. in the pig, 25 per cent. in the cow, and 45 per cent. in sheep. Its occurrence in water has the same significance as *Bact. coli*. It is probable that the most common of the calf-scours bacterial types of Jensen belong to this species.

Bacterium coscoroba

This organism has been several times reported. It resembles *Bacterium acidi lactici*, but ferments saccharose.

Bacterium aërogenes

Synonyms.—*Bacterium lactis aërogenes; Bacillus pyogenes; Bacillus lactis aërogenes.* The capsulated *B. pneumoniæ* of Friedländer, *B. rhinoscleromatis*, and *B. ozænæ* quite probably belong here or are closely related.

Escherich, in 1885, described this organism which he isolated from sour milk. The typical *Bact. aërogenes* seems to be quite widely distributed in nature; it has been found commonly present on grains by several investigators, and has been found to be the predominant organism of this group in soils by Johnson and Levine. It is not so typically fecal in habitat as many other members of the group.

Morphology and Staining.—*Bacterium aërogenes* differs morphologically from the *Bact. coli* principally by the lack of flagella and in the ability to produce capsules when grown in milk.

Isolation and Culture.—This organism may be isolated in the same manner as *Bacterium coli* upon litmus-lactose agar. The colonies upon agar and gelatin are larger, thicker, and more slimy than those of the colon bacillus. Milk is curdled more rapidly. In gelatin stabs the growth along the streaks is filiform; that at the surface is thick, convex, and circumscribed. The whole stab culture is frequently described as "nail-like."

Physiology.—In most respects this organism resembles *Bacterium coli*. It ferments dextrose, lactose, and saccharose and glycerol with production of both acid and gas. Many strains also ferment starch. Indol is not commonly produced in Dunham's solution. Dextrose (0.5 per cent.) phosphate medium becomes alkaline to methyl-red. The Voges-Proskauer reaction is positive, showing the development of acetyl-methyl-carbinol. This reaction is one of the most distinctive in the differentiation of this species from other coli-like organisms. Gelatin is not liquefied. Grows in media containing uric acid as sole source of nitrogen.

Pathogenesis.—This organism is not known to possess pathogenic powers. It is of interest principally because of its close relationship to *Bacterium coli* and association with it. In making water examinations in the past no distinction has ordinarily been made between *Bact. coli* and *Bact. aërogenes*, inasmuch as they resemble each other so closely and it has been assumed that they come from the same sources. It seems probable as the result of more recent work that the presence of this organism has much less sanitary significance than the preceding species.

Bacterium cloacæ

Synonym.—*Bacillus cloacæ.*

This organism was isolated from polluted water by Jordan, and has been repeatedly found by subsequent workers. It differs from *Bact. aërogenes* in the power to liquefy gelatin, is motile and glycerol is not fermented. It is not common in feces. Its sanitary significance is uncertain.

Organisms Associated with Calf Scours or Calf Diarrhea

Organisms belonging to the first subgroup of the intestinal group are generally regarded as the causal organisms of calf scours or calf diarrhea. The principal work has been that of Jensen in Denmark.

Morphology and Staining.—These appear to be typical of the colon subgroup.

Culture and Physiology.—Jensen has noted considerable variation in the colony types of different races of the calf-scours organisms. The most marked differences, however, were found in sugar fermentations. He recognized two main groups (termed A and B) with three races in the first and four in the second. All the races agree in producing both acid and gas in the following sugars: Glucose, arabinose, xylose, rhamnose, maltose, and lactose. The races are differentiated on the basis of variations in sugar reactions in sucrose, sorbose, dulcitol, and adonite. The following key shows the groupings:

A. Producing acid and gas from sucrose.   Adonite negative.
    Group A.
      1. Producing acid and gas from sorbose.
        (*a*) Producing acid and gas from dulcite.................Race A. I
        (*b*) Not producing acid and gas from dulcite............Race A. II
      2. Not producing acid and gas from sorbose...............Race A. III
B. Not producing acid and gas from sucrose.   Adonite negative or positive.
    Group B.
      1. Producing acid and gas from sorbose.
        (*a*) Producing acid and gas from dulcite.................Race B. I
        (*b*) Not producing acid and gas from dulcite............Race B. II
      2. Not producing acid and gas from sorbose.
        (*a*) Producing acid and gas from adonite. Dulcite negative. Race B. III
        (*b*) Not producing acid and gas from adonite.
          (1) Dulcite positive.....................................Race B. IV
          (2) Dulcite negative....................................Race B. V

The one found most commonly (A. I) seems to be closely related in fermentation reactions to *Bacterium communior*. Much work still remains to be done on the relationships of these organisms. It is possible that some of these types may constitute distinct species. Jensen also records cases in which apparently typical *Bact. aërogenes* was the causal organism. Jensen has noted that it is usually the same race that causes trouble year after year in different animals on the same farm.

Pathogenesis.—The characteristic symptoms do not seem to differ as a result of infection with different races of coli.

The disease usually appears soon after birth, frequently within forty-eight hours. The calf shows fever, loss of appetite, and colic. The feces are liquid, usually yellowish, foul, and often mixed with gas. They may also show blood resulting from intestinal hemorrhage. Death may result promptly or there may be a more or less persistent diarrhea. Autopsy shows the mucous membranes of the abomasum to be congested or hemorrhagic, as also the intestinal mucosa. The mesenteric glands are often swollen and red. The spleen is usually more or less swollen.

Immunity.—Effective means of prophylaxis and cure by means of sera is complicated by the fact that so many races of colon bacilli may be responsible. Antisera may be prepared either against single strains or the sera may be polyvalent.

The polyvalent serum is prepared by repeated intravenous injection of the horse with numerous races of colon bacilli isolated from cases of calf diarrhea. By combining the serum from different horses Jensen has prepared a polyvalent serum against as many as forty strains.

No accurate method of determining the potency of the serum has been evolved.

Bacterins, both univalent and polyvalent, have been prepared and used for prevention of the disease in districts or on farms where the annual losses are high.

CAPSULATED PATHOGENIC ORGANISMS

Several species of capsulated bacteria belonging to this group have been described. The most important of these are *Bacterium pneumoniæ*, *Bact. mucosum capsulatum*, *Bact. rhinoscleromatis, and Bact. ozænæ*. One only, the *Bact. pneumoniæ*, will be discussed.

Bacterium pneumoniæ

Synonyms.—*Bacillus pneumoniæ; Bacillus capsulatus mucosus;* pneumobacillus; pneumococcus of Friedländer.

Friedländer, in 1883, discovered this organism in the sputum from a case of croupous pneumonia, and it was believed by him to be the cause of the disease. He failed to discover the real cause of pneumonia because the pneumococcus of Fränkel does not grow readily upon plate cultures prepared by the method used. It has since been found repeatedly in normal saliva, and is still believed to be an occasional cause of pneumonia. It sometimes is found in the feces and in sewage.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism as it occurs in the sputum is sometimes so short as to resemble a coccus. Usually it is single, rarely in chains. It is surrounded by a capsule in sputum and in milk. It is non-motile. It resembles the preceding organisms closely in all other respects.

Isolation and Culture.—Isolation is accomplished by plating upon gelatin. Growth upon most media resembles that of the *Bacterium aërogenes.* Milk is not coagulated, although litmus milk is reddened.

Physiology.—The organism shows markedly less fermentative power than *Bacterium aërogenes*, but otherwise closely resembles it. Dextrose, lactose, and saccharose are all fermented, but usually not vigorously. Growth occurs best at blood-heat, but the organism develops well at room-temperature. The thermal death-point is about 56°. Indol is produced.

Fig. 121.—*Bacterium pneumoniæ*, showing capsules (Günther).

Pathogenesis.—*Bacterium pneumoniæ* has a very low virulence—only exceptionally will it infect any of the lower animals. It has been isolated in pure culture from the vegetations upon the heart valve in endocarditis, from otitis media, and occasionally it

is believed to cause catarrhal or lobular pneumonia.   It is noted here simply because of its obvious relationship to the preceding organisms of the group.

SUBGROUP II. INTERMEDIATE, HOG-CHOLERA, ENTERITIDIS, OR GÄRTNER SUBGROUP

The classification and relationships of the organisms belonging to this subgroup are much confused at present.   Whether or not the various forms described are all distinct species is doubtful. The most important will be discussed under the names by which they are commonly known, but this uncertainty as to correct grouping must constantly be borne in mind.

The different races or species belonging to this subgroup have been differentiated in many ways, but no classification has been worked out that is entirely satisfactory.   A grouping proposed by Harding and Ostenberg has been found useful by some workers. It is based upon the production of red in fuchsin sulphate agar when various carbohydrates are present.

Jordan differentiates the more important types as follows;

I. Xylose not fermented.   *Bact. paratyphosum* (Paratyphoid A).
II. Xylose fermented with acid and
   gas.
   A. Arabinose and dulcitol rapidly
     fermented.   *Bact. enteritidis* and *Bact. schotmulleri*
              (Paratyphoid B).
   B. Arabinose and dulcitol not
     attacked or fermented very
     slowly.   *Bact. choleræ suis.*

Bacterium enteritidis

Synonym.—Bacillus of Gärtner.   *Bacillus enteritidis.*

Diseases Produced.—Meat-poisoning and enteritis in man and in cattle.

Gärtner, in 1888, studied an outbreak of meat-poisoning in a village in Saxony, and isolated from a fatal case and from the uncooked flesh of a cow the organism now known as *Bacterium enteritidis*.   This organism since that time has been found in similar outbreaks of meat-poisoning and associated with certain infections in cattle.   The organism has been found in meat, or so-called "ptomain"-poisoning in the United States.

Schmitz found as a result of routine investigations carried on four years on flesh of slaughtered animals that this organism had never been found in mature beef or pork, but that it had been found many times in veal. He regards the organism as having an etiologic relationship to calf diarrhea. Several investigators have isolated organisms of this type from rats.

Morphology and Staining.—*Bacterium enteritidis* resembles *B. coli* morphologically. The organism is short and thick, sometimes with a thin capsule, motile by means of numerous or few flagella. It does not produce spores. It stains well or irregularly with the anilin dyes and is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism has been isolated directly from the blood-stream and the spleen, and from the intestinal contents by plate cultures. Malachite green dulcite broth has been used successfully by several investiga-

Fig. 122.—*Bacterium enteritidis* (Kolle and Wassermann).

tors as an enrichment medium, as this seems to discourage the growth of colon bacilli. The cultural characters as reported vary with different authors, probably because different strains were studied. Colonies upon gelatin and agar resemble those of *Bacterium coli*. Bouillon is clouded, a delicate pellicle may form, and in a few days a whitish sediment collects. A yellowish, glistening layer forms on potato, frequently turning brownish with age. Growth in milk seems to vary with the organism studied. Some have been described as coagulating milk, but the typical form does not.

Physiology.—*Bacterium enteritidis* is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. Its optimum growth temperature is between 30° and 40°, but it grows well at room-temperature also. The thermal death-point, as determined by Mohler and Buckley, is 58° for twelve minutes. Dextrose and dulcite are fermented with production of acid and gas. Lactose, saccharose, salicin, and glycerin

are not fermented by the typical strains, although some strains have been reported by a few investigators to ferment lactose. Indol is not produced. Gelatin is not liquefied. Milk may show initial acidity, but this is followed by a permanent alkalinity.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—*Bacterium enteritidis* is pathogenic for the guinea-pig, mouse, and pigeon, but not for the cat. The guinea-pig may be fatally infected by intraperitoneal of subcutaneous injections and by ingestion. The same is true of the rabbit. Mohler and Buckley produced a fatal infection in young house-rats, while other authors report the rat as immune. The same is true of the dog, though this animal is relatively resistant. Chickens are immune. Sheep are readily infected. The hog succumbs to intravenous injection, as well as through feeding.

Type of Disease and Lesions Produced.—In man the infection is marked by a severe enteritis and enlargement of the lymph-follicles and Peyer's patches, and by small hemorrhages. The mortality in infections is low—probably less than 5 per cent.

The infection in cattle, as observed by Mohler and Buckley, was characterized by degeneration of the heart muscle (frequently fatty) and hemorrhages therein; in the liver parenchymatous degeneration was accompanied by localized hemorrhagic extravasations; the spleen was enlarged and hemorrhagic and the lesions of acute enteritis, with necrosis of the epithelium, were evident.

Immunity.—The so-called "toxin" of the *Bacterium enteritidis* is probably an unusually soluble and potent endotoxin. It differs from true toxins in being exceptionally heat resistant. Meat which has been quite thoroughly cooked is sometimes found capable of giving rise to toxic symptoms when ingested. The bacteria-free filtrates from bouillon cultures and cultures in which the organisms have been killed by heat will kill guinea-pigs when injected in suitable quantities. It is probable that this endotoxin is responsible for the quick development of symptoms in those who are poisoned by eating infected food. Specific agglutinins are developed in the blood of infected individuals, as are also coagglutinins for other members of the intestinal group. Some differences in agglutinability of the different strains isolated·

have been noted.   It has been proposed that meat may be tested for the presence of *Bacterium enteritidis* by expressing the juice and determining its agglutinating power.   This has not been proved practicable.   It is probable that the bacilli already present in the meat would in some cases fix all the agglutinins present if stored for any length of time.   Practicable methods of prophylactic or curative immunization have not been demonstrated.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be demonstrated by inoculation of infected flesh into suitable enrichment medium, such as malachite green dulcite broth, followed by plating.   In man the disease may be diagnosed by the agglutination test, although with difficulty, for, as has been noted above, the various strains agglutinate differently, and blood from a typhoid or a paratyphoid patient may show a marked capacity to agglutinate *Bacterium enteritidis.*

Transmission and Prophylaxis.—Probably a large proportion of the cases of so-called ptomain-poisoning is due to infection with *Bacterium enteritidis* and to the toxic products of metabolism of this organism.   Such infection undoubtedly occurs frequently enough to justify rigorous measures for its prevention.   Meat or milk from animals showing severe gastro-intestinal disturbances should never be used, as the infection in the human has in several well-authenticated instances been traced directly to such practices.   Probably most cases of meat-poisoning originate from use of flesh of diseased animals, but the possibility of infection with the organism after the animal has been slaughtered should not be ignored.   Experiments have shown that when fresh meat is inoculated upon the surface with a culture of *Bact. enteritidis* the organism rapidly penetrates the tissues, even at low temperatures.   Such infection might easily occur in unsanitary abattoirs through flies and careless handling.

It should be noted that certain types of the paratyphoid bacillus are very similar to this form, if not identical with it, and doubtless are the cause of meat-poisoning as well.

Bacterium choleræ suis

Synonyms.—*Bacillus suipestifer; B. choleræ suis.   B. salmoni;* Salmonella.

Salmon and Smith, in 1885, described this organism as the cause of the disease called by them swine-plague. In the following year Smith discovered another organism associated with a different disease of swine. This led to a revision of terminology which has since come into common use, and the organism first described is now known as the hog-cholera bacillus. Smith recovered this organism from the spleens of about 500 hogs affected with hog-cholera. It was quite generally accepted as the cause of the disease until deSchweinitz and Dorset reported an outbreak of hog-cholera in which the *Bact. choleræ suis* was not the primary
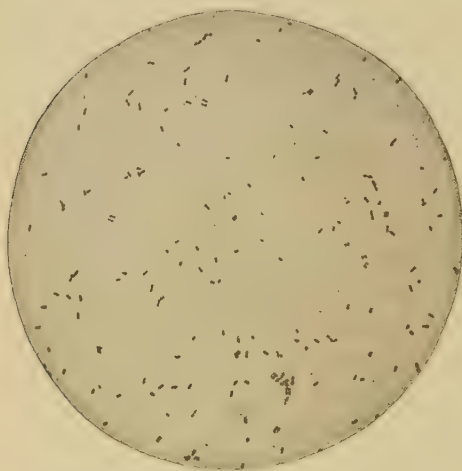
Fig. 123.—*Bacterium choleræ suis*, organisms from a young culture (deSchweinitz, Bureau Animal Industry).

infecting agent. This was shown by the transmission of the disease by blood filtered through fine-grained porcelain bougies, a procedure which removed the bacillus completely, as shown by the fact that the filtrate was quite incapable of infecting culture-media. By the subsequent work of Dorset, Bolton, and McBryde it was shown quite conclusively that the *Bact. choleræ suis* is not the cause of hog-cholera in the Mississippi Valley, and but a secondary invader at most. Other investigators in the United States and in Europe have confirmed these results. Hog-cholera and its virus will be considered, therefore, under the heading of Diseases Caused by Filterable Virus. The *Bact. choleræ suis*, however, doubtless plays some part in the disease as a secondary invader, and is, therefore, worthy of consideration. Uhlenhuth and his collaborators in a study of 600 swine found organisms indistinguishable from this form in the intestines of 8.4 per cent.

Morphology and Staining.—This organism differs morphologically in no essential character from *Bacterium enteritidis*.

Isolation and Culture.—*Bacterium choleræ suis* may frequently be isolated at once in pure culture from the organs of infected animals, particularly from the spleen. It has likewise been isolated by plating the intestinal contents of normal and infected animals. The organism grows upon agar and gelatin, forming a grayish, glistening, non-viscid growth, which is not particularly characteristic. Upon Conradi-Drigalski agar blue colonies are formed. On Löffler's malachite green clouded but translu-
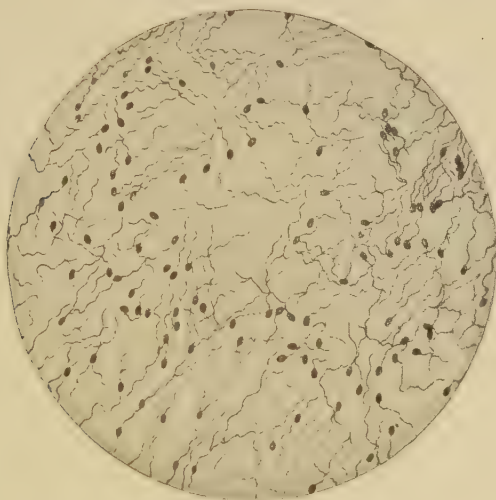
Fig. 124.—*Bacterium choleræ suis*, showing flagella (deSchweinitz, Bureau Animal Industry).

cent colonies appear, in whose vicinity the agar is made yellowish. Endo plates give colorless colonies. No growth occurs upon potatoes having a decided acid reaction, but upon those which are neutral or alkaline a thin, glistening, usually yellowish layer is formed. Bouillon is uniformly clouded; a slight pellicle may appear in time. A grayish, friable sediment is formed. Milk shows a slight initial acidity, but soon becomes alkaline, and gradually becomes opalescent, and finally translucent. In Petruschky's lackmus molke the medium is reddened, then it turns blue and becomes intensely alkaline. It will be noted that there

are no marked cultural differences between *Bact. enteritidis* and *Bact. choleræ suis*.

Physiology.—*Bacterium choleræ suis* is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. The optimum growth temperature is about 37°; it grows also, but more slowly, at room-temperature, and it will develop also at 45° C. The thermal death-point is 58°, with ten minutes' exposure. The organism will remain viable for several days when dried. Gas and acid are produced in dextrose broth, also from arabinose, xylose, fructose, galactose, mannose, maltose, dulcite, mannite, and sorbite. Lactose and saccharose are not fermented, and no growth occurs in the closed arm of the fermentation tube containing these sugars. Glycogen, inulin, adonite, starch, erythrite, and raffinose are not attacked. Indol is not ordinarily produced. Gelatin is not liquefied. Hydrogen sulphid is formed from peptone.

Pathogenesis.—It should again be emphasized that the *Bacterium choleræ suis* is not the primary cause of hog-cholera, but that it is a secondary invader of importance, and may be occasionally the primary cause of disease in hogs, but this disease probably would possess, according to Dorset, Bolton, and McBryde, a low degree of contagiousness.

Experimental Evidence of Pathogenesis.—Some differences in virulence have been observed in cultures obtained from different sources. Rabbits succumb to septicemia in five to eight days when inoculated with $\frac{1}{10}$ c.c. of a virulent bouillon culture. Guinea-pigs are more refractory, and die after seven to twelve days. Subcutaneous and intravenous injections and feeding experiments rarely produce death in the hog. The animal may sometimes show fever and depression, particularly after intravenous inoculation, but the infection is rarely fatal unless 1 or 2 c.c. or more of culture are used. However, some highly virulent cultures have been described. Feeding with large quantities of culture or long-continued feeding sometimes proves fatal.

Undoubtedly this organism sometimes causes spontaneous infection of swine independently of the filterable virus. Schern and Stange have suggested for this type of disease the name parapest.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—An examination of a rabbit killed by injections of *Bact. choleræ suis* shows lesions

differing in no material respect from those discussed under *Bact. enteritidis.*   To just what extent the characteristic lesions in hog-cholera, particularly in the chronic types, are due to infection by this organism is uncertain.   It is probable that in many cases, at least, it is responsible for the development of intestinal ulcers. Inasmuch as it is sometimes found in the blood of animals infected by hog-cholera, it is probable that death may be due directly to their activity.

Immunity.—The topic of immunity against hog-cholera will be considered under that heading.   The *Bacterium choleræ suis* produces no true toxin, but there is considerable formation of endo-toxin.   Agglutinins are present normally in the blood of the hog, and immune agglutinins may be produced by the systematic immunization of animals by killed cultures.   Group agglutination with other members of this subgroup has been demonstrated. It has also been shown that immunization of the hog against true hog-cholera results in a considerable increase of agglutinins for *Bact. choleræ suis* in the blood.   Opsonins for *Bact. choleræ suis* have been shown to be present in normal serum.   Since the discovery of the filterable virus efforts at immunization by the use of vaccines and sera prepared by the use of *Bact. choleræ suis* have been practically abandoned.

Bacterium typhi suis

Synonyms.—Bacillus of Glässer, probably also *Bacillus suipestifer* of Voldagsen.

These are perhaps best regarded as strains of the *Bacterium choleræ suis* isolated by Glässer and by Voldagsen, and showing some special characteristics.   Generally these organisms give a somewhat more delicate growth on culture-media than the typical *Bact. choleræ suis.*

In milk frequently there is no change, or at least the change to alkalinity is relatively slow.   Uhlenhuth and Haendel have concluded that the differences from *Bact. choleræ suis* are insignificant.

The men who first worked with these organisms concluded that they have unusually high pathogenicity for swine particularly for animals not more than four months old.   They ascribe to them a causal relationship to pig typhoid.

22

Bacterium paratyphi

Synonyms.—Paratyphoid or paracolon bacillus. *Bacillus paratyphosus.*

Disease. Produced.—Paratyphoid in man, possibly similar infections in animals.

Gwyn, in 1898, isolated from a clinical typhoid case an organism which belonged to the intermediate subgroup of intestinal organisms rather than to the typhoid-dysentery subgroup. In 1900 Schottmüller isolated two types of organisms from somewhat similar cases. He termed these paratyphoid A. and paratyphoid B. Similar organisms have been isolated repeatedly since that time—in some instances from an atypical typhoid case, in others from cases that had all the clinical symptoms of typhoid, but that did not give the agglutination reaction.

Morphology and Staining.—This organism corresponds closely in morphologic and staining characters to the *Bacterium enteritidis* and the *Bact. choleræ suis.*

Isolation and Culture.—The organism has been isolated in pure culture directly from the blood, and by plate cultures from the internal organs in disease, and particularly from the intestinal contents of man and of the lower animals. In general cultural characters the organism resembles the *Bacterium enteritidis.* It has been found in practice that two varieties may be differentiated, termed A and B respectively. Type A does not produce a terminal alkalinity in milk and dissolve the casein, and in that respect differs from *Bact. enteritidis;* it produces an almost invisible growth on potato, lactose whey is made permanently acid. Type B grows more luxuriantly, even on potato, milk is made strongly alkaline and cleared, lactose whey is also made alkaline.

Physiology.—Not markedly different from *Bacterium choleræ suis,* but according to Harding and Ostenberg producing red coloration on fuchsin sulphite agar containing either arabinose or xylose.

Pathogenesis.—Paratyphoid fever in man has been attended by a low mortality; in consequence few autopsies have been reported. In both animals and man infection partakes more of the nature of an acute enteritis than does typhoid fever; the lymphatics are not generally invaded as in typhoid, and the Peyer's patches are not swollen and ulcerated.

Immunity.—Probably an endotoxin, less soluble, but in some respects similar to that of *Bacterium enteritidis*, is produced by these organisms. Agglutinins are produced in infected individuals. The agglutination reactions of types A and B differ markedly. It was this difference which first suggested the exist-
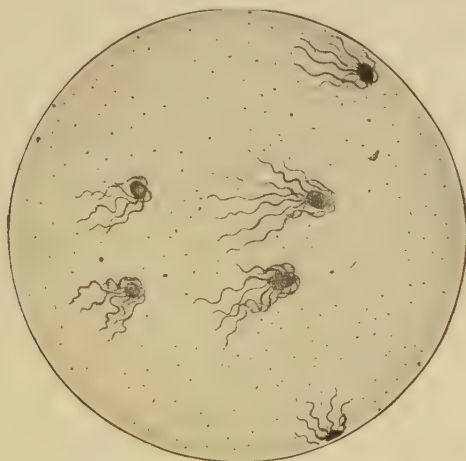
Fig. 125.—*Bacterium typhi murium* (Migula).

ence of the two types. No method of practical immunization against the disease is known.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The differentiation of paratyphoid may be made clinically by the specific agglutination tests. The absence of a test in a case of clinical typhoid calls for a repetition with the two types of paratyphoid bacilli.

Transmission.—It is probable that certain gastro-intestinal infections in cattle may be caused by organisms of this type, and that meat and milk may become contaminated from these sources. Milk and meat are probably the most common sources of infection, although water has been clearly shown, in some instances, to be the source of epidemics.

Bacterium typhi murium

Synonym.—*Bacillus typhi murium.*

Löffler, in 1889, described an organism as the cause of an epidemic among the mice kept for experimental purposes. Danysz, in 1900, described a similar, probably identical, organism, and

recommended its use in the destruction of rats. These forms have all the morphologic and cultural characteristics of the enteritidis group, but show some differences in pathogenicity and in formation of specific agglutinins. Cultures of these organisms have been widely exploited as specific for mice and rats, producing a rapidly fatal disease, but as harmless to the higher animals. Reports as to their efficacy when fed to the vermin are conflicting; the results seem in some cases to have been favorable. It evidently is true that the virulence of the organism is subject to considerable variations, for the careful work of Rosenau showed the culture which he possessed to be worthless in the extermination of rats. On the other hand, there is some evidence that the organism is not so free from harmful effect on the human as has been supposed. Fatal infections in man have been reported from Japan.

Bacterium pullorum

Synonyms.—*Bacillus pullorum.*

Disease Produced.—White diarrhea of chicks.

Rettger and Harvey have described the *Bacterium pullorum* as the specific cause of a white diarrhea in young chicks. The adult fowl is also affected but the mortality is lower. As a source of infection of the young chick through the egg or by contact the diseased adult bird is of great importance. The type of organism found in the young stock differs slightly from that found in adults. Type A, found in young stock, shows a greater tendency to form acid in several sugars than does type B (adult stock), and is aërogenic (Hadley).

Morphology and Staining.—*Bacterium pullorum* is a rod, 0.3 to 0.5 by 1 to 2.5 μ, with rounded ends. It occurs singly or very rarely in chains. It is non-motile, does not produce capsules or spores. It stains readily and uniformly with ordinary aqueous anilin dyes and is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may be isolated from the infected chicks by opening the body with aseptic precautions, and making streaks upon the surface of agar slants with blood or the pulp of the spleen or liver. Upon the agar slant the colonies are discrete, and at first resemble the pin-point, translucent colonies of the Streptococcus. They enlarge later. Upon gela-

tin the colonies resemble those of the typhoid bacillus. Little growth occurs upon potato. Milk is a suitable medium; but there is little change, no coagulation, and no proteolysis.

Physiology.—The organism is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. The optimum growth temperature is about 37°. Dextrose and mannite are fermented, with the production of both acid and gas (Rettger). Maltose, lactose, and saccharose are not fermented. Indol is not produced.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Rettger has isolated the specific organism in several outbreaks of the disease from the internal organs, particularly the livers of chicks that had died of the disease or were showing symptoms. He also isolated it from abnormal egg-yolks in the ovaries of hens, from freshly laid eggs, and from the yolk-sacs of fully developed chicks within the shell. He also succeeded in infecting chicks by feeding, but the disease was not always contracted. Subcutaneous injections always proved fatal. The disease has appeared as a highly fatal one in several flocks of adult chickens, the organism recovered being agglutinable by immune serum of the type found in young stock but differing from the latter mainly in its reactions in sugar as above mentioned.

Characteristics of Disease and Lesions.—The most noticeable antemortem characteristics are emaciation and wasting of the chick, and the white diarrhea. The lesions are confined principally to the intestines, and are particularly evident in the cecum. The liver is sometimes congested in areas. In the adult the ova present are irregular in appearance, instead of showing the normal spherical shape, while the color is greenish yellow to green.

Immunity.—Practicable methods of immunization have not been evolved.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be isolated in pure culture from the internal organs, particularly the liver. To determine whether organisms resembling this organism are common Rettger, Hadley and others have found diagnosis by means of the agglutination reaction accurate and reliable and by the application of this test have succeeded in eliminating the infected birds of a flock, thereby eradicating the disease.

Transmission and Prophylaxis.—Rettger claims that the

disease is sometimes present before hatching, the organism being present in the ovaries and oviduct, and that contamination of the food likewise results in infection.

SUBGROUP III. TYPHOID-DYSENTERY SUBGROUP

The three important organisms belonging to this subgroup— *Bacterium typhi, Bact. dysenteriæ,* and *Bact. fæcalis alkaligenes*— are not ordinarily pathogenic for the lower animals. They are, however, pathogenic for man, and since many of our diagnostic methods for other diseases have been discovered through their study, they are discussed briefly.

Bacterium typhosum

Synonyms.—*Bacillus typhi; B. typhi abdominalis;* Eberth or Eberth-Gaffky bacillus, *Bacillus typhosus.*

Disease Produced.—Typhoid fever in man.

Eberth, in 1880, discovered the *Bacterium typhosum* in the spleen and other internal organs of the body of persons who had died of typhoid fever. Gaffky, in 1884, cultivated the organism. It is now generally conceded to be the cause of typhoid fever, although the experimental animals cannot ordinarily be infected.

Distribution.—Typhoid fever is widely distributed throughout temperate and tropical countries. It is constantly present, frequently in epidemic form, in the United States.

Morphology.—*Bacterium typhosum* is a short, plump rod, usually varying between 0.5 and 0.8 μ in diameter, and 1 to 3 μ in length. It is motile by means of numerous flagella. It does not produce capsules or spores. It stains readily with aqueous anilin dyes. Granular staining is sometimes observed, although the cells usually stain uniformly. It is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—The desirability of isolating *Bacterium typhosum* from contaminated water has led to the development of many media in an effort to accomplish this. A quantitative estimation of the typhoid bacillus from such sources does not seem to be practicable, but the qualitative determination of presence may be carried out. The methods used are to inhibit the growth of the purely saprophytic organisms present by the use of antiseptic substances, such as malachite green, caffein,

and crystal violet, and to incubate such media at blood-heat. These media do not inhibit, in general, the growth of either *Bact. typhosum* or *Bact. coli*, and dependence is placed upon differences in colony characters and media reactions to separate them upon subsequent plating.

The colonies upon gelatin are somewhat smaller and more delicate than those of the *Bacterium coli*. This organism was originally described as producing a thin, "invisible growth" upon potato. This is true upon potato with an acid reaction, but upon alkaline or neutral potato the growth is relatively abundant.

Physiology.—*Bacterium typhosum* develops best at a temperature of 37°, but will grow at room-temperature. It is an aërobe and facultative anaërobe. No indol is produced. Acid, but no gas, is formed from dextrose. Neither acid nor gas is produced from lactose or saccharose. Some strains ferment xylose.

Fig. 126.—*Bacterium typhosum*, clump in a section of a spleen (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

There may be slight initial acidity in milk, but there is never coagulation of the casein. Proteolytic enzymes are not developed in cultures.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The lesions typical of typhoid in man are not produced either by injection or feeding experiments upon most laboratory animals. The symptoms after intraperitoneal injection of a guinea-pig do not differ greatly from those produced by the *Bacterium coli*. Feeding experiments with anthrapoid apes within recent years have shown the possibility of producing the typical lesions of the disease in these animals. Infection with typhoid bacilli in laboratory workers has several times occurred following the accidental ingestion of pure cultures of the organism.

Character of Lesions and Disease Produced.—Clinical diagnosis of typhoid is frequently difficult, as the characteristics of the disease are often not well marked. The organism invades the intestinal lymph-system, and particularly the Peyer's patches. The latter become ulcerated, and perforation of the intestinal wall is not an uncommon result. The spleen is swollen. The bacteria are usually found in the blood, though not commonly in large numbers, but are abundant in the spleen. Cystitis, cholecystitis, and bone metastases are not uncommon sequelæ to the infection.

Immunity.—No true toxin has been demonstrated for *Bacterium typhosum*, but an endotoxin is present. Agglutinins and
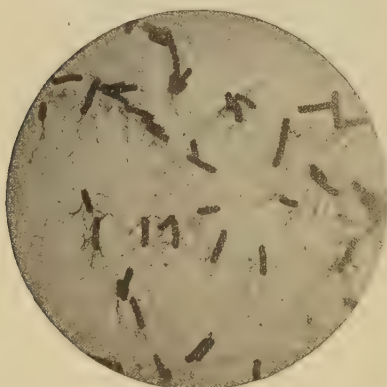
Fig. 127.—*Bacterium typhosum*, showing flagella (Günther).
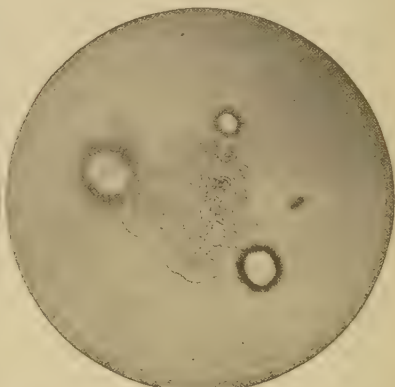
Fig. 128.—*Bacterium typhosum*, colony on agar (Günther).

precipitins specific for the organism are likewise produced. Bacteriolysins may be demonstrated in the blood of animals that have been artificially immunized by injections of the typhoid bacillus. There is developed in the body of an individual that has recovered from typhoid a certain degree of immunity, but this disappears, so that it is not unusual for a person to have several attacks of the disease. This immunity is probably both bacteriolytic and opsonic in nature.

The use of antisera in passive immunization against typhoid and in curing the disease has not proved successful. The injection of such sera has not been shown to have either an immunizing or a curative effect in man. Active immunization by the injection of dead or living bacteria or their products has, on the contrary, been

quite successful. Usually the organisms are scraped from the surface of agar cultures, suspended in physiologic salt solution, and killed by heat, or a broth culture may be used.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The Widal or agglutination test is commonly used in the diagnosis of typhoid. A dilution of 1 : 40 and higher is generally made to minimize the effect of the normal agglutinins which may be present in the blood. Both microscopic and macroscopic tests are used; the former is the more delicate, but the latter somewhat more reliable. The agglutinins often appear early in the course of the disease—usually by the fifth day or rarely later. Blood or serum for making the test may be either liquid or dried. It is received in the latter condition by many of the state and municipal bacteriological laboratories. The bacteria may be cultivated directly from the blood of a patient. Frequently the organisms can be found in the blood somewhat before the serum exhibits a marked agglutinating power. Isolation of the organisms directly from the feces is sometimes resorted to in an effort to determine the occurrence of the so-called "bacillus carriers."

Transmission.—Typhoid fever is contracted from contaminated drinking-water, milk and other foods, and by contact, the frequency being in about the order named. Flies probably are commonly instrumental in carrying the organism from dejecta of typhoid-fever patients to food materials. The term *bacillus carrier*, or *germ-carrier*, is used to designate an individual who still harbors a pathogenic organism in the body after convalescence. Such germ-carriers are particularly dangerous, as they may give rise to an epidemic that is almost impossible to trace to its source. The danger of milk infection is probably the greatest from individuals that are employed in dairies. Several epidemics have been traced to this origin.

Bacterium dysenteriæ

Synonyms.—Bacillus of Shiga; Bacillus of Flexner. *Bacillus dysenteriæ*.

Disease Produced.—Bacillary dysentery in man.

Shiga, in 1898, discovered in the feces of patients suffering from dysentery a bacillus which he believed to be the specific cause of the disease. Previous to this it had been shown that

amebæ may cause dysentery, and it was when examining stools for these protozoa that Shiga discovered this organism. In 1900 Flexner published the results of work in Manila and described another type of organism. Since that time many epidemics have been studied, and it is generally believed that the type described by Shiga is the more common, but that the bacillus of Flexner occurs in a certain proportion of the outbreaks, more particularly in the tropical countries. Other authors, Hiss in particular, have differentiated even more groups
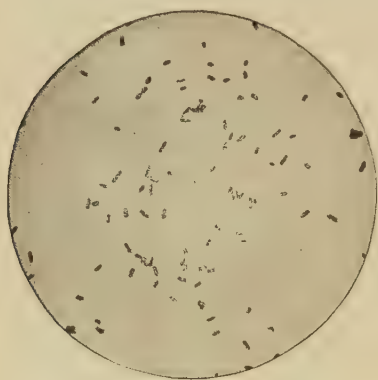
Fig. 129.—*Bacterium dysenteriæ* (Kolle and Wassermann).

Morphology.—*Bacterium dysenteriæ* and *Bact. typhosum* are practically indistinguishable under the microscope in stained mounts. The *Bact. dysenteriæ*, however, is non-motile. Spores and capsules are not produced. It stains uniformly and is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may be isolated directly from the dejecta by plating. The cultural characters in general closely resemble those of *Bacterium typhi*. Milk is rendered permanently alkaline, however.

Physiology.—The physiologic characters of *Bacterium dysenteriæ* closely resemble those of *Bact. typhosum*. The ability to produce acid in solutions of various carbohydrates and of the related alcohols is used as a means of differentiation of the varieties. Otho listed some fifteen different types by this means. A more conservative and valuable classification is that of Hiss, as modified by Shiga.

Recent work seems to indicate that the dysentery group may be divided into a number of species which may be differentiated by the following key.

KEY TO THE DYSENTERY AND ALLIED BACILLI

I. Mannitol not fermented.
  A. Indol not formed: rhamnose not fermented.   1. *Bact. shigæ*.
  B. Indol positive; rhamnose fermented with acid. 2. *Bact. ambiguum*.

II. Mannitol fermented forming acid.
   A. Xylose not fermented.
      1. Lactose not fermented; milk slightly acid then alkaline; indol usually positive; rhamnose usually not fermented.   *3. Bact. flexneri.*
      2. Lactose fermented with acid; milk rendered strongly acid and usually coagulated; indol not formed, rhamnose fermented with acid.   *4. Bact. sonnei.*
   B. Xylose fermented with acid.
      1. Lactose and sucrose fermented forming acid; milk acid and clotted; dulcitol not attacked.   *5. Bact. dispar*
      2. Lactose and sucrose not fermented; milk alkaline; dulcitol attacked with acid production.   *6. Bact. alkalescens.*

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The belief that the varieties of *Bacterium dysenteriæ* are the important etiologic factors in the disease is based upon the following facts:

1. This organism in some one of its varieties has been shown to be present with great constancy in the patient's excreta.

2. Injections of the organisms and their products kill laboratory animals, particularly rabbits, although typical dysentery is not readily induced by feeding experiments.

3. The blood-serum of a patient will, in general, agglutinate in high dilution the strain isolated from the feces.

4. Antiserum has been successfully used in the prevention and cure of the disease.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The intestine, particularly the colon, is inflamed and is sometimes ulcerated, and may even show diphtheritic necrosis. With the exception of this there is little that is characteristic of the disease. Unlike the typhoid bacillus, it does not commonly invade the blood or the internal organs, with the exception of the mesenteric glands. The disease is rather a toxemia than a bacteremia.

Immunity.—A soluble toxin has been demonstrated for the Shiga type, but repeated efforts have failed to show that any such is produced by the Flexner type. This poison was at first believed to be an unusually potent endotoxin. Conradi first demonstrated the toxin by growing the organism upon agar, then suspending it in physiologic salt solution, and allowing the bacteria to undergo

autolysis. Later, Rosenthal and others showed that toxin will be produced in considerable quantities in an alkaline bouillon, but not in one that is neutral or acid. This bouillon is either filtered through porcelain filters, or 0.5 per cent. phenol is added and allowed to stand, and then filtered through paper until clear. The toxin may be precipitated by ammonium sulphate, and after dialysis and drying of such, 1 to 2 gm. may be a lethal dose for a kilo of rabbit. It is weakened by prolonged heating at 70°, and destroyed at 80 to 100°. The rabbit is very susceptible to the injection of the toxin, while the guinea-pig is relatively resistant. The effect upon the rabbit may be characterized as a hemorrhagic necrotic enteritis.

Shiga first used antisera in the treatment of dysentery. He regarded its curative properties as wholly bactericidal. Todd, Koram, Doerr, and others have, by systematic immunization of a horse, secured a serum that neutralizes the toxin actively. This has been used with very favorable results in the treatment of dysentery caused by the Shiga bacillus.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The disease may be recognized by the Widal or agglutination test, and the several types of organisms differentiated in the same manner. The organism may likewise be isolated directly from the stools by plating.

Transmission.—Dysentery is spread in much the same manner as typhoid, and the same preventive measures must be used.

CHAPTER XXVIII

ABORTION—MALTA FEVER GROUP. THE GENUS BRUCELLA

Brucella (Bacterium) abortus of Bang and *Bacterium melitensis* are placed in this group. It should be noted that other organisms besides the *Bact. abortus* one here discussed are doubtless occasionally responsible for abortion in cattle and other animals.

Brucella (Bacterium) abortus

Synonyms.—*Abortion bacillus* of Bang; *Bacillus abortus; Bacillus abortionis.*

Disease Produced.—Infectious abortion disease in the cow.

Bang, in 1897, described a bacillus as the probable cause of infectious abortion in the cow. The specific organism was isolated with difficulty. It has been isolated since that time in Europe several times, and more recently in the United States. Several investigators in the United States have described members of the colon group and of other groups as present in infectious abortion, but it is doubtful whether in many cases appropriate cultural methods have been utilized for the isolation of this organism.

Distribution.—Contagious abortion has been reported from many localities on the continent of Europe and in Great Britain. It is known to occur in many sections of the United States.

Morphology and Staining.—*Bacterium abortus* is very small, 1 to 2 μ long, 0.3 to 0.8 μ broad, and, according to Nowak, resembles the bacillus of chicken-cholera. Nowak, on the basis of its morphology, groups it with the Pasteurellas or hemorrhagic septicemia bacilli. It is polymorphic in culture-media. Involution forms occur as branched and clubbed types. It is non-motile, and neither capsules nor spores have been demonstrated. It stains readily by the aqueous anilin dyes, frequently showing polar granules. Carbol thionin, methylene-blue, or borax methylene-blue and Giemsa stain furnish beautiful pictures of the organism. It is Gram-negative.

349

Isolation and Culture.—The isolation and cultivation of *Bacterium abortus* are attended with peculiar difficulties. The organism may be frequently obtained at once in pure culture from the heart blood or the intestines of an aborted fetus. Bang used a medium consisting of nutrient agar ($\frac{3}{4}$ per cent.) and liquid gelatin (5 per cent.) to which was added an equal quantity of sterile liquid blood-serum. These tubes were inoculated with suspected material, mixed well, and kept at blood-heat. In the course of three days numerous small, punctiform to pin-form colonies developed in a definite stratum a few millimeters below the surface. As will be noted under the discussion of physiology, the organism has an unusual relationship to oxygen, and the amount of oxygen needed
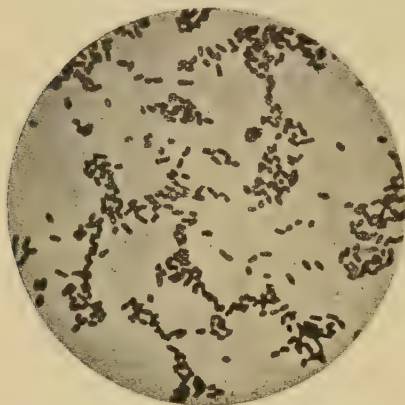
Fig. 130.—*Bacterium abortus* (Nowak).
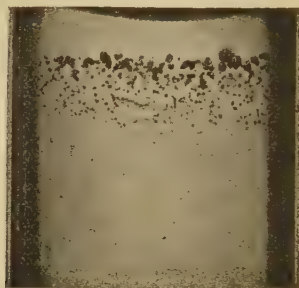
Fig. 131.—*Bacterium abortus*. Culture in serum agar showing the definite stratum in which the colonies develop (Nowak).

for its development is to be found at the depth at which the colonies form. These colonies are compact, rounded, or somewhat irregular, sometimes showing a dense nucleus surrounded by a lighter zone. When the organism is present in impure culture, as in the vagina of the cow, other methods are necessary for its isolation. Nowak has described a procedure which has proved satisfactory in the hands of several investigators. Probably simpler methods will be devised in time, but this appears to be the best thus far developed. The material is smeared over the surface of successive tubes of serum agar or over the surface of this medium in Petri dishes. These are allowed to stand for several days, and the colonies which develop are marked, as they are not *Bact. abortus.*

The plates are then placed in a desiccator whose cubic contents of air has been determined, and plates of agar thickly seeded with *B. subtilis* are introduced, so that about 16 sq. cm. of surface is present per every 240 c.c. of space. It has been found experimentally that this will diminish the oxygen pressure to a point where the *Bact. abortus* will develop. After three days the plates are examined and search made for the *Bact. abortus* in the spaces between other colonies on the original plates. This same device, of reducing oxygen pressure by means of cultures of *B. subtilis*, may be used in the study of growth-characters on other media. Schroeder and Cotton, Evans and Steck have isolated the *Bact. abortus* directly from milk in ordinary petri dishes, even in gelatin medium. Traum has isolated it directly from the amniotic fluid and from the liver of aborted pigs in open unsealed slants of the beef-liver-peptic-digest agar of Meyer. After primary culture the organism soon adapts itself to the ordinary oxygen tension and grows readily. The organism will grow in agar without addition of serum, particularly at the surface, but the addition of serum is decidedly beneficial. The colonies develop at the surface in about three days at 37° as small, usually discrete, transparent dots. In shake cultures in serum agar they appear in about four days in a well-defined stratum about 10 to 20 mm. below the surface. The individual colonies may reach a diameter of 1 mm. when well separated from each other. Growth in gelatin at room-temperature is slow. Bouillon cultures show development some millimeters below the surface, the medium above this remaining clear. Milk is not coagulated. Little or no growth takes place on potato.

Physiology.—The optimum growth temperature is 37°, although the organism is found to multiply slowly at room-temperature. The relationship to oxygen, which has already been discussed, classifies the *Bacterium abortus* as a micro-aërophile rather than a strict anaërobe. Strangely enough, Bang reports that the organism will also grow in an atmosphere of pure oxygen; two oxygen optima are, therefore, evident. More recent work has shown that the organism may be cultivated under strict aërobic conditions after a few transfers on laboratory media. It is relatively resistant to desiccation. It will remain alive for

months in a retained mummified fetus, and for a year or more in a culture-medium. Acids and gas are not produced from carbohydrates.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Bang demonstrated the etiologic relationship of the organism to the disease by intravenous injection, and by injection into the vagina and uterus of pregnant cows, also by feeding experiments. Sheep were also infected both by injection and feeding. Preisz did not succeed in transmitting the disease by vaginal injections into the cow, guinea-pig, or rabbit. More recent work has shown that inocu-
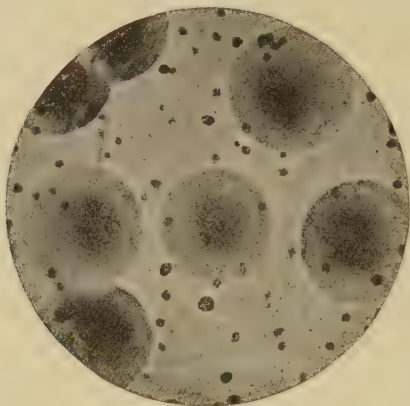
Fig. 132.—*Bacterium abortus*, colonies on serum agar (Nowak).

lation of these animals results in a chronic infection characterized by specific changes in the liver and spleen, and by arthritis. Pregnant animals will abort. Nowak succeeded in producing typical abortion of dead feti in guinea-pigs and rabbits by intraperitoneal and intravenous injections. He did not succeed by intravaginal injections.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—There are few symptoms either preceding or following the expulsion of the fetus. It is characterized as a rule by an interference with the development of the fetus frequently resulting in its premature expulsion either dead or alive. There is also a frequent manifest inflammation of the fetal membranes and of the maternal cotyledons together with retention of the placental membranes.

Immunity.—It is known that cows that have aborted one or more times may become immunized against the disease. Vaccination and serum treatments have been attempted, but their worth has not been thoroughly proved. Bang showed that it is possible to immunize sheep and goats by subcutaneous injections of increasing quantities of living cultures to such an extent that they can withstand severe infection through food. Killed cultures did not prove to be effective. His trials with heifers did not prove to be as successful, although vaccination in badly infected herds has been claimed to be successful in some cases.

Passive immunization by the use of the serum from cows which have aborted two or more times and then calved normally has been attempted, but results are not conclusive.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—This may be made certain by the isolation of the specific organism in culture as outlined above. A tentative diagnosis may be made by preparing stained mounts, and demonstrating the presence of a short, Gram-negative bacillus in the uterine exudate and in the blood and tissues of the fetus.

The agglutination and complement fixation reactions have been extensively used in diagnosing this disease. Both have proved reliable. The German Imperial Board of Health recognizes as positive those tests in which agglutination occurs in serum dilutions of 1:100 or over; as negative those under 1:100. Pohle has shown that a precipitation test may be used.

The presence of the organism in milk can best be recognized by injection of guinea-pigs, which will show the characteristic lesions.

Transmission.—It has been proved that the *Bact. abortus* can enter the body through the digestive tract. It cannot be disputed that it may also enter through other channels, neither has it been definitely proved.

Brucella (Bacterium) melitensis

Synonym.—*Micrococcus melitensis.*

Disease Produced.—Malta fever in the goat and in man; Mediterranean fever.

Bruce, in 1887, discovered a microörganism in the spleen of men dead from Malta or Mediterranean fever. Since that time

23

it has been studied carefully by numerous investigators, and its relationship to the disease is well established.

Distribution.—The disease is known to occur in all countries bordering on the Mediterranean, in southern Asia, South Africa, the Philippines, some of the islands of the West Indies, and in Mexico and Texas.

Morphology and Staining.—Until the work of Meyer and Shaw in 1920, this organism was considered a coccus. These investigators found by a study of 21 cultures identified as *Micrococcus melitensis* by various laboratories in the United States, England, Algiers and Italy that, confirming the repeated observations at previous times, the organism in smears made from young cultures and even from tissues is a typical short rod. Stained with gentian violet, the organism appears as short, oval rods frequently tapered at both ends. Identical smears stained with dilute carbol fuchsin show the organism more coccoid in morphology. Frequently in the water of condensation or liquid medium, short chains of 4–10 single, elongated coccoid elements can be recognized. The organism stains well with ordinary anilin dyes, but is Gram-negative..

Isolation and Culture.—It may be isolated from the spleen during life or after death in pure culture, or by plating. On agar slants a fine granular film appears in from 24–36 hours. After 3 days a slight brownish tinge changes the moist well defined growth. Growth continues on peptic digest agar for weeks, even at room temperature, until a stringy, greasy, rather thick layer covers the surface. In gelatin the organism produces dark brownish granular colonies after from 10–30 days, but never liquefies the medium. In infusion broth, there is a slight initial turbidity, followed by clearing and the deposit of a stringy, tenacious sediment, occasionally a ring or pellicle formation. Milk is not changed. Meyer reports beef liver peptic digest agar admirably suited for isolation and growth of the organism.

Physiology.—The *Bacterium melitensis* does not produce acid from any of the carbohydrates. Desiccation does not destroy it quickly, for the organism has been found to remain alive and virulent when dried for a considerable time. Pasteurization is fatal.

Pathogenesis.—The disease is a true bacteremia. Inoculation of pure cultures reproduces the disease in the goat, cow, and monkey. Accidental laboratory infections have proved its power of producing disease in man. Infection probably usually arises through ingestion. The disease is characterized by its low mortality, its long duration in man, and the accompanying articular rheumatism. It is a disease primarily of the goat, though it is possible that cattle may sometimes harbor and transmit it. Horses have also been experimentally infected. In guinea-pigs and rabbits the disease runs a chronic course.

Immunity.—No toxins have been demonstrated. Agglutinins are present in the blood in infected individuals, so that agglutination may sometimes be

Fig. 133.—*Bacterium melitensis* ($\times$ 1200) (Jordan).

secured with high dilutions—occasionally as high as 1 : 6000. This test is one of the readiest methods of diagnosing the disease.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Diagnosis may be made by isolation of the organism by a puncture of the spleen, or by demonstrating the presence of specific agglutinins in the serum in dilutions of 1 : 50 or greater. Mohler and Eichhorn found that complement fixation is a satisfactory method of diagnosis in the disease, and more reliable than agglutination.

Transmission and Prophylaxis.—The organism is excreted in the feces, urine, and milk from infected animals. Most cases in the human are acquired by drinking the milk of infected animals. The disease infects, in either the acute or chronic form, so large a proportion of the animals in some countries that the use of unheated milk is always attended with danger.

CHAPTER XXIX

DOG DISTEMPER GROUP. THE GENUS BACTERIUM

Bacterium bronchisepticum (bronchicanis)

Diseases Produced.—Canine distemper and similar diseases in other animals.

Ferry, in 1910, published a report of the bacterial findings in canine distemper in which he described an organism associated with the disease and which he believed to be the primary cause. He gave to this organism the name *Bacillus bronchicanis,* subsequently changing this to *B. bronchisepticus.* His findings have been corroborated by M'Gowan, Torrey, and Rabe.

Ferry[1] (1916) calls attention to the close morphologic, cultural and serological characters of the *Bact. bronchisepticum* and *Bact. pertussis.* Smith[2] finds the *Bact. bronchisepticum* and *Pseudomonas pyocyanea* closely related except in pigment production and action in gelatin.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism is a short slender rod, 2.3 to 5 μ long, usually found singly, but often in pairs. In primary inoculations in broth the organism may be larger and oval in shape.   Here, too, filaments may be observed.   No spores are produced.   It stains best with methylene-blue, with a characteristic bipolar staining and is Gram-negative.   Active and progressive motility is noted.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism is frequently in mixed infections with staphylococci, so that isolation is difficult.   It is found in the nasal secretions, blood, and internal organs.   Ferry reports positive findings in blood-cultures in 28.5 per cent. of cases.   Others have found it less frequently.   One to 5 c.c. of blood are planted in a flask containing 50 c.c. of broth.   After twenty-four hours incubation plates or slant agar cultures in successive tubes are made.   On agar the colonies appear after twenty-four hours as very fine, dewdrop-like, later enlarging and becoming opaque.

[1] Journ. Bact., 1918, **3**, p. 193.
[2] Journ. Med. Res., 1913, **29**, p. 299.

Bouillon is clouded with a heavy stringy growth in old cultures.

Physiology.—No gas is produced in any carbohydrates. Litmus milk remains strongly alkaline. No indol is produced.

Pathogenesis.—Dogs, guinea-pigs, rabbits, and monkeys are susceptible to infection. Inoculations into the air-passages of young dogs produce the disease in its characteristic form. Older animals are resistant.

Character of Disease.—The disease is marked by catarrh of the air-passages, intestinal catarrh, discharge from the eyes, pustules on the skin in a small percentage of cases, and nervous symptoms.

Immunity.—Recovery from the disease confers an immunity. Ferry reports satisfactory results from bacterin and serum treatment and recommends the former as a prophylactic and the latter as a curative measure. Best results seem to be derived from a mixed bacterin of *Bacterium bronchisepticum* and staphylococci.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The serum of animals suffering from natural infection agglutinates in dilutions of from 1 : 40 to 1 : 800. Little use of the agglutination test for the diagnosis of the disease has been made. The finding of the characteristic organism in smears from the nasal mucous membranes is of value in diagnosis.

Transmission.—The disease is readily transmitted from animal to animal, or through exposure in kennels where diseased animals have been kept.

CHAPTER XXX

FLUORESCENT GROUP. THE GENUS PSEUDOMONAS

THE group of fluorescent bacilli includes those forms which produce a water-soluble, diffusible bluish green or greenish pigment. All of the species are Gram-negative, do not produce spores, are aërobic and facultative, and usually motile by means of one or more polar flagella.

Several species belonging to this group have been described, the more important being *Pseudomonas fluorescens*, with several varieties, and *Ps. pyocyanea*. The latter is the only form which has distinct pathogenic properties.

Pseudomonas pyocyanea

Synonyms.—*Bacillus pyocyaneus; Ps. aëruginosa;* bacillus of green or blue-green pus in man and animals.

Gessard, in 1882, described the *Pseudomonas pyocyanea* from blue-green pus. Since that time it has been isolated and studied by numerous investigators both in Europe and America.

Distribution.—This organism has been isolated from the feces of man and animals, from sewage and surface waters, from the soil, and from air and dust. It is usually saprophytic or commensal in its growth, and is only rarely pathogenic.

Morphology and Staining.—*Pseudomonas pyocyanea* is a slender rod with rounded ends, about 0.6 by 2.6 μ or smaller, usually single, rarely in chains of 2 to 6 individuals. It is motile by means of a single terminal flagellum. No spores or capsules are produced. It stains readily by the ordinary anilin dyes and is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—This organism is readily isolated by plating out pus which contains it, as the colonies are quite characteristic on account of the green pigment which they diffuse. It grows readily on all the common laboratory media. Upon agar and gelatin plates the thin, poorly defined colonies are characterized by the fluorescent pigment surrounding them. Upon

slant agar the color diffuses until the whole of the medium is a light green, then a darker blue green, and finally a brown or brown red. Gelatin is rapidly liquefied. Bouillon is clouded, a pellicle forms, and the fluorescent pigment diffuses from the top downward. Potatoes support a slimy growth and turn green, then brown. Milk is coagulated by a rennet-like enzyme and the curd peptonized.

Physiology.—This organism is preferably an aërobe, and grows most luxuriantly in the presence of oxygen, but growth will continue under anaërobic conditions. Proteolytic ferments which will digest gelatin, fibrin, and casein are produced. Two pigments are usually formed—one green and fluorescent (fluorescin), soluble
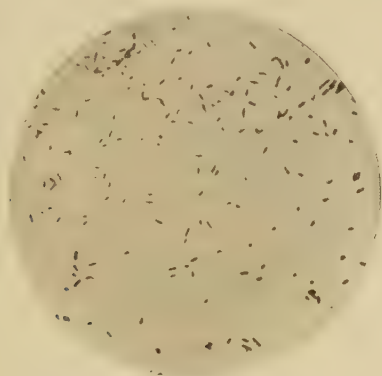
Fig. 134.—*Pseudomonas pyocyanea* (Kolle and Wassermann).

in chloroform, the other (pyocyanin) bluish and insoluble in chloroform. Pigment is not produced in the absence of oxygen. In old cultures the pigments become yellow or brown. Autolytic disintegration of the cells takes place in old cultures. Mucin, a compound made up of a protein and a carbohydrate, has been found present in cultures. To this may be ascribed its slimy consistency on agar or even in bouillon. The organism is resistant to desiccation.

Pathogenesis.— *Experimental Evidence.*—Injection of cultures of *Ps. pyocyanea* subcutaneously into the guinea-pig or rabbit causes rapidly spreading edema, suppuration, septicemia, and death within a day or two. Not all cultures are equally pathogenic.

Character of Infection Produced.—The *Ps. pyocyanea* is usually a secondary invader, although in man it has been found causing primary infections. It has not yet been proved ever to cause suppuration alone in any of the domestic animals, but is not uncommon in pus, to which it gives a green or blue-green color. In man it has been found in purulent otitis media, meningitis, bronchopneumonia, infantile diarrhea, and generalized infections. Koske and others have ascribed to this organism an etiologic relationship to chronic rhinitis ("bullnose") in swine.

Immunity.—A true toxin is produced by virulent cultures. Wassermann found 0.2 to 0.5 c.c. of this fatal for the guinea-pig. Poels has described a "pyocyaneus bacillosis" in calves in a single herd. The disease was characterized as an acute diarrhea. An antitoxin has been prepared for this pyocyaneus toxin. An endotoxin has also been demonstrated. A leukocytic poison, *leukocidin*, and a hemolytic toxin, *hemotoxin*, have been differentiated. Immunity has been experimentally produced by the injection of killed cultures. Emmerich and Low have proposed the name pyocyanase for the broth filtrate of old cultures of *pyocyanea* concentrated in a vacuum. This material has been found to be very high in proteolytic ferments and has been suggested for many clinical uses, among them the destruction of bacteria *in vitro*, the solution of diphtheritic membranes, the spraying of infected membranes to destroy the causal organisms, etc. While it has been extensively experimented with, it has never come into common use.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organisms may be most readily determined by plating.

DIPHTHERIA-PSEUDOTUBERCULOSIS GROUP. THE GENUS CORYNEBACTERIUM

THE organisms which belong to this group are all rod-shaped bacteria of moderate size. They are non-motile, do not produce spores, are Gram-positive, and not acid fast. All are aërobic and facultative. They are all characterized by the possession of granules which cause irregular or banded staining of the cell, and all show a decided tendency to the production of branched and club-shaped cells.

A number of species of these so-called "diphtheroid" bacilli have been described. Some of these are pathogenic, others are not. The latter are important principally because of the difficulty in differentiating them from the pathogenic types in disease diagnosis.

The important pathogenic organisms of this group are the *Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis*, the cause of bovine caseous lymphadenitis, equine ulcerative lymphangitis and bovine lymphadenitis, and pyelonephritis, and the *Coryn. diphtheriæ*, the cause of human diphtheria. *Coryn. xerosis*, from the eye, *Coryn. hoffmanni*, the pseudodiphtheria bacillus, and some other diphtheroids less well known, belong here.

Methods of separation of the organisms of this group from each other are not entirely satisfactory, but in some cases are quite necessary because of importance in disease diagnosis, particularly in diphtheria. Acid production in carbohydrates and development of a true toxin are among the tests which have been used. Morphology is also of much assistance.

The four most common members of the group may be differentiated by means of their reactions in Hiss's carbohydrate serum-water medium.

	Acid production in 1 per cent.			
	Dextrose.	Glycerol.	Saccharose.	Dextrin.
Corynebacterium diphtheriæ	+	+	−	+
Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis	+	−	−	−
Corynebacterium xerosis	+	±	+	−
Corynebacterium hoffmanni	−	−	−	−

All of the organisms named except *Corynebacterium hoffmanni* also acidify maltose. Morse[1] has named two other non-pathogenic members of this group *B. hoagii* and *B. flavidus*. The former produces acid from dextrose, the latter from dextrose, maltose, and glycerin. The latter also produces a yellowish pigment.

Morphologic and cultural differences among these species may be noted, and means of differentiation by their aid will be discussed under the several headings.

Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis

Synonyms.—*Bacillus pseudotuberculosis ovis*, Preisz; *Mycobacterium pseudotuberculosis*; *Bacillus lymphangitidis ulcerosa*; *B. renalis bovis*; *B. pseudotuberculosis murium*, Kutscher; *Corynethrix pseudotuberculosis murium*, Bongert; *Bacillus furunculosis ulcerosæ*, Kitt; Bacillus of Preisz; Preisz-Nocard bacillus.

To differentiate from the acid-fast bacteria resembling the tubercle bacillus, it has been suggested that the latter be called *pseudotubercle bacilli*, and the former *pseudotuberculosis bacilli*. There is not entire agreement among investigators as to the actual identity of many of the organisms listed above as synonyms. Some have believed that all constitute a single somewhat pleomorphic species, others divide into two or more species upon the basis of pathogenicity, serum reactions, and culture.

Diseases Produced.—The infections produced by this organism have received a variety of names depending upon the animals attacked and the lesions produced. In sheep the disease has been known as caseous lymphadenitis, pseudotuberculosis, and pyobacillosis; in equines, ulcerative lymphangitis (sometimes termed pseudofarcy and pseudoglanders); in cattle, caseous lymphadenitis, pyelonephritis, and pyobacillosis; and in rabbits and other rodents, pseudotuberculosis and lymphadenitis.

Distribution.—The disease in sheep has been reported from France, Germany, the United States, Argentina, Australia. Somewhat similar infections in horses have been described from France and the United States. In Argentina 10 per cent. of sheep slaughtered and in Australia even 15 per cent. are affected.

[1] Morse, M. E., Jour. Inf. Dis., 1912, 11, p. 281.

Historical.—This organism was first described from the lesions of sheep by Preisz and Guinard[1] and later by many other writers from France.

Turski[2] recorded the presence of the disease in Germany, and Nörgaard and Mohler[3] in the United States.

The organism as a cause of "pseudofarcy" in horses was first noted by Nocard[4] in 1892. Later he concluded his organism to be identical with that of Preisz from sheep.

Dunkel,[5] as the result of comparative studies of *Bacillus pseudotuberculosis ovis* and *B. pyogenes suis*, Grips, and *B. pyogenes bovis*, Künnemann, came to the conclusion that the latter could be transformed into the former, and that they should all be classed as the same species. The more recent work of Priewe and of Glage indicates, however, that the last two species are quite distinct from the first and are far more closely related to the influenza group (*q. v.*).

Morphology and Staining.—The organism is a non-motile bacillus about 0.4 by 1 to 3 μ. It resembles the diphtheria bacillus in the formation on artificial media of thickened and club-shaped forms. It is non-motile and does not produce spores or capsules.

It stains well with the ordinary anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.

Isolation.—Pure cultures may be obtained by smears upon suitable culture-media directly from a caseous nodule. Growth is scant at first, but becomes better after a time as the organism adapts itself to artificial media.

Cultural Characters.—On agar at 37° dry colonies are formed within two days, the maximum size being reached in six to eight days. The colony usually shows a folded or granular surface, frequently with concentric rings and a papillate center. Glycerin agar is unfavorable.

On gelatin the organism grows sparingly when kept at 22°. Potato shows no growth according to some authors, others re-

---

[1] Preisz and Guinard, Jour. de Med. Vet., 1891, 42, p. 503.

[2] Turski, Zeitschr. f. Fleisch. u. Milchhygiene, 1897, p. 173.

[3] Nörgaard and Mohler, Sixteenth Annual Report Bureau of Animal Industry, 1899, p. 638.

[4] Nocard, Annales del' Institut. Pasteur, 1892.

[5] Diss., Giessen, 1908.

port a grayish white, slightly moist, irregular film, often scarcely visible.

Solidified serum shows characteristic colonies of creamy gold yellow or orange color, reaching a diameter of 1.5 mm.

No change occurs in milk.

Solidified egg-white is as suitable as blood-serum, though the yellow color does not appear.

Sterile cattle serum gives abundant yellow flocculent growth, with decided clouding and yellowing of the serum. Finally, a heavy yellow sediment collects.

Bouillon is not permanently clouded, a granular deposit forms, together with a dry surface pellicle.
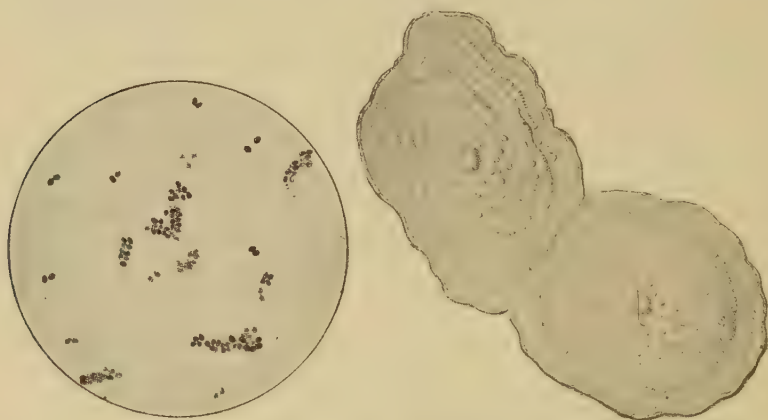
Figs. 135 and 136.—*Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis*, colony and mount (Nörgaard and Mohler in Report of Bureau of Animal Industry).

Physiology.—A temperature of 65° for ten minutes will destroy the organism. Its optimum growth temperature is 37°, but some growth occurs even at 18°. It is relatively resistant to drying. In culture-media it remains viable for many months. Virulence apparently remains unimpaired for years. The organism is easily destroyed by disinfectants. Toxins (see below) may be developed in broth.

Coryn. pseudotuberculosis is aërobic. Gas is not produced from sugar. Acid is formed from dextrose, but not saccharose, glycerin, or dextrin.

Pathogenesis.—The organism is pathogenic for mice, guinea-pigs, rabbits, goats, sheep, and probably for the horse. Fowls and pigeons are immune. Although toxins may be demonstrated in cultures, they probably are not sufficient in quantity to account for the development of the disease.

Intravenous injection of the guinea-pig results in death in from four to ten days, with foci of suppuration and caseation in various internal organs, particularly the lungs and the liver. Subcutaneous injection is followed by enlargement and caseation or suppuration of the lymph-glands, with fatal termination in from fifteen to twenty-eight days. Particularly characteristic is the development of orchitis in male guinea-pigs following intraperitoneal injection. This resembles in many ways that following the injection of glanders bacilli.

Mice are even more susceptible than guinea-pigs. They succumb to ingestion of the organism in from two to four weeks. Rabbits have about the same degree of susceptibility as guinea-pigs.

This organism has most frequently been reported as the cause of ovine caseous lymphadenitis, but it is probably identical with organisms isolated from similar lesions in cattle and from equine ulcerative lymphangitis.

The disease in sheep is found chiefly in breeding ewes. It progresses slowly, and is frequently not recognized until the animal is slaughtered. The lymphatics are usually affected. The glands enlarge, caseate, and are often encapsulated. In more advanced cases the various internal organs are also infected, nodules somewhat resembling those of tuberculosis appearing in the lungs, spleen, liver, and kidneys. The disease is not commonly found in young animals, probably because the lesions have not had time to develop sufficiently to cause enlargement of the glands noticeable on inspection.

The disease as described in the horse is an ulcerative lymphangitis, the subcutaneous lymph-nodes being chiefly affected. These enlarge and break through to the surface, producing a condition which may readily be mistaken for farcy. Involvement of deeper glands and of the internal organs may occur later in the progress of the infection.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Because of the character of the lesions produced the disease may be confused with tuberculosis in the sheep or true farcy in the horse.   Smears from the lesions in sheep show the Gram-positive, non-acid-fast organism which is very distinct from the tubercle bacillus.   The glanders bacillus is Gram-negative; a mount of pus from equine lymphangitis stained by Gram's method should show the characteristic organism.

Care in the differential diagnosis of farcy based upon the ability of the glanders bacillus to produce an acute orchitis in the male guinea-pig should be used, for this reaction is quite as characteristic of *Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis*.   Pure cultures secured are readily differentiated both morphologically and culturally.

The *Coryn. pseudotuberculosis* resembles the diphtheria bacillus morphologically in many ways, but may be easily distinguished by annual inoculation and sugar fermentation reactions.

Immunity.—This organism produces a true toxin when grown in broth culture.   This reaches a sufficient concentration so that 1 c.c. of the culture filtrate will kill a guinea-pig in twenty-four hours.   Rabbits are likewise susceptible, but mice, cats, and dogs are more refractory.   Intravenous injection of sheep with 10 c.c. is fatal within eighteen hours.   The toxin resembles that of the diphtheria bacillus in many respects.   It is readily destroyed by heat.   An antitoxic horse serum has been produced which will protect sheep or laboratory animals against injection of the toxin. However, these animals are not protected against infection with the organism when introduced.   This antitoxic immunity is, therefore, of little practical significance.   It is also claimed that diphtheria antitoxin will at least in part neutralize the toxin of the *Coryn. pseudotuberculosis*.   Carré found that sheep that had recovered from infection were not affected by injection of the toxin. This investigator also developed a method of vaccinating lambs against the disease by means of two vaccines of different degrees of virulence.   While he claimed this to be successful, it has never come into use.

Transmission.—In many cases the disease foci are closed and the bacteria are not eliminated from the body.   It is probable it usually takes place as the result of ingestion, or possibly the organism may gain entrance through skin abrasions.

Corynebacterium diphtheriæ

Synonyms.—Klebs-Löffler bacillus; *Bacillus diphtheriæ; Bacterium diphtheriæ; Mycobacterium diphtheriæ.*

Disease Produced.—Diphtheria in man, rarely in some animals.

Historical.—Klebs, in 1883, described an organism present in the false membrane of diphtheria, which Löffler, in 1884, secured in pure culture and showed to be pathogenic. A similar organism was isolated by him from a healthy child, so that he was reluctant to conclude that he had found the true cause of the disease. Roux and Yersin, in 1888-1890, showed that the various pathologic con-

Fig. 137.—*Bacillus diphtheriæ* (Epstein in Journal of Infectious Diseases).

ditions most characteristic of diphtheria could be duplicated in animals by injection of the broth filtrate containing the toxin.

Distribution.—Occurs in epidemics, particularly among the young, in Europe and America.

Morphology and Staining.—*Corynebacterium diphtheriæ* is closely related to some of the higher bacteria or even the fungi. It stains readily with the common anilin dyes and is Gram-positive. When stained with methylene-blue a smear, prepared directly from an infected mucous membrane, will show rods varying from 0.4 to 1 μ in diameter and 1.5 to 3.5 μ in length,

frequently slightly curved, sometimes pointed or club shaped, sometimes staining uniformly, but usually containing metachromatic granules, which stain more deeply than the remainder of the cell, and give a barred or granular appearance to the cell contents. These same variations may be observed in the organism taken from suitable culture-media, particularly Löffler's blood-serum. Occasionally branched forms may be observed. Demmy has shown that the diphtheria bacillus varies almost from hour to hour in its morphology when grown upon blood-serum. In five hours after the culture is made the cells take the stain uniformly; in eight hours some cells show vacuolization; in twelve hours the or-

Fig. 138.—*Corynebacterium diphtheriæ*, Wesbrook's types: *a, c, d*, Granular types; *a*[1], *c*[1], *d*[1], barred types; *a*[2], *c*[2], *d*[2], solid types (× 1500) (McFarland).

ganism is larger and stains unevenly, and within forty-eight hours irregular and clubbed forms are abundant. Wesbrook has constructed a chart which is in common use in laboratories in the designation of the different types of bacilli observed. Upon media, where growth occurs more slowly than upon serum, the organism remains smaller and stains more uniformly. Whether or not the morphologic types of Wesbrook represent true varieties or differ in their pathogenic properties is a matter of dispute. Wesbrook claims the types which develop rapidly upon blood-serum and show distinct granulation are virulent, while the slower-growing, solid types are relatively non-virulent. It is claimed by others

that the latter simply represent pseudodiphtheroids.   No spores or capsules are produced.   The organism is non-motile.

Isolation and Culture.—*Diphtheria bacillus* may usually be isolated directly from the throat of a diphtheritic patient in pure culture upon agar or, better, upon blood-serum.   In mixed infections glycerin-agar plates may be poured from the growth on blood-serum.   It grows well upon most of the laboratory media. Upon Löffler's blood-serum distinct colonies are sometimes visible within twelve hours as minute, pin-point, translucent dots; these enlarge, and within twenty-four hours show as small, opaque, gray colonies, usually discrete.   The organism develops somewhat less luxuriantly upon agar and gelatin, although repeated transfers tend to increase the luxuriance.   Growth occurs in milk, with but little or no observable change in the medium. Broth may be clouded.   A delicate film or pellicle forms on the surface after a time, and if transfers of this are made to fresh

Fig. 139.—*Corynebacterium diphtheriæ*, mount from blood-serum showing the characteristic metachromatic granules (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

broth, the growth may be largely confined to pellicle production. Advantage is taken of this fact in growing the organisms in production of diphtheria toxin.

Physiology.—This organism is aërobic.   Upon culture-media it will remain alive for long periods.   Desiccation of a diphtheritic membrane does not necessarily destroy the bacillus, and it has been isolated from such after a period of months.   The heat of pasteurization, 60° for thirty minutes, destroys it.   In the dried condition it is more resistant.   Dextrose is fermented by virulent forms in general, with the production of acid, but no gas.   Glycerin and dextrin are also fermented, but not saccharose or lactose. The non-virulent types are believed to show less power of acid

24

production. Nitrates are reduced to nitrites. No indol is produced. Proteolytic enzymes are not formed; gelatin is not liquefied.

Pathogenesis.—*Mechanism of Disease Production.*—Diphtheria is one of the best examples of a toxemia, as the organism remains upon the surface of the mucous membranes and in the necrotic tissues, rarely, if ever, entering the blood-stream, and brings about the characteristic lesions of the disease by means of the toxins which it produces. These are absorbed into the blood and bring about changes in many of the organs of the body. Death is sometimes due directly to asphyxiation by the false membranes occluding the air-passages.
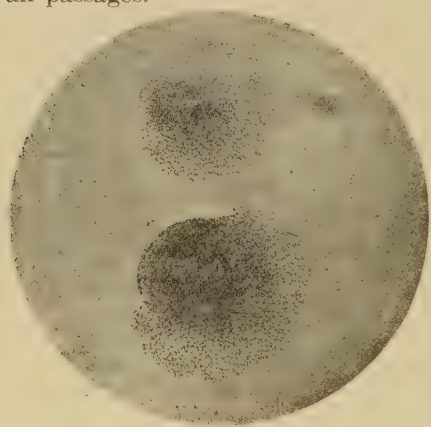
Fig. 140.—*Corynebacterium diphtheriæ,* twenty-four-hour colony on agar ($\times$ 100) (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Experimental Evidence of Pathogenesis.—The typical diphtheritic inflammation of the mucous membranes may be reproduced in young animals by direct inoculation in the trachea, and in older animals as well if the membranes are injured previously. The histologic lesions of the body organs can be produced by injections of the toxin of the organism. Paralysis due to toxin-poisoning may be developed under certain conditions. That this organism is the specific cause of diphtheria is, therefore, definitely established.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The pharynx is most commonly affected; the larynx and the nasal mucous membranes are sometimes involved. There may also be diphtheritic conjunctivitis, diphtheritic infections of the middle ear and of the mucous membranes of the genital organs. The organisms remain localized, rarely entering the blood-stream, cause necrosis and degeneration of the epithelial cells and the deeper tissues as well. Blood-serum and fibrin are exuded from the vessels and, together

with fragments of the necrosed tissue, form the diphtheritic membrane. Acute interstitial nephritis, fatty degeneration of the myocardium, and sometimes of the nerve tissues are due to the absorption of the toxins. There is no constant ratio between the extent of the diphtheritic process in the throat or elsewhere and the severity of the symptoms and lesions produced by the toxin.

Immunity.—The diphtheria bacillus, according to Ehrlich, produces two types of poison—the true toxin and the toxone. The first is responsible for the acute symptoms of poisoning, the latter for the paralysis that frequently occurs during convalescence. The haptophores of both toxin and toxone are believed to be identical, and to be naturalized by the same antitoxin. A consideration of the production of diphtheria antitoxin has been taken up in the chapter on Toxins and Antitoxins, under the heading of Immunity. Agglutinins may develop in the blood, but are not constant, and are of no practical value in diagnosis. They may be produced in experimental animals by the injection of killed cultures of the diphtheria bacillus. Precipitins have likewise been produced by artificial immunization, but usually cannot be demonstrated in the blood of infected individuals. Bactericidal sera may be prepared by repeated injections of killed, washed cultures of diphtheria bacilli, and favorable results have been reported in the use of such a serum in freeing the throat of convalescents from the bacteria. Its clinical value can scarcely be said to be proved. Opsonins have not been demonstrated.

The value of diphtheria antitoxin for prophylactic and curative injections is well established. It has resulted in materially lessening mortality whenever it has been used. As much as 100,000 units have been injected in some cases, but the usual curative dose is 8000 to 15,000 units.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Sterile swabs are used to swab out the throat and nose of the suspect, and are smeared over the surface of blood-serum. Mounts made in five to eighteen hours thereafter, stained with Löffler's methylene-blue, should show the characteristic organism with its metachromatic granules. Diagnosis may sometimes be made directly from smears taken from the throat.

Transmission.—The organism doubtless sometimes gains en-

trance into the body by the inhalation of infective droplets, but more commonly by the use of common drinking vessels and through fomites.

Corynebacterium hoffmanni

Synonyms.—*Bacillus pseudodiphthericus; Bacterium pseudo-diphthericum;* Hoffmann's bacillus; *Bacillus clavatus,* and *Coryne-bacterium pseudodiphthericum, Bacillus hoffmanni.*

This organism is non-pathogenic and of importance only because of the possibility of confusion with the preceding forms. It has been isolated many times from the throats of normal and even in some cases from diphtheria patients. The principal points of difference are:

1. The cells are, on the average, shorter and thicker than those of the diphtheria bacillus; they are usually straight and somewhat enlarged at one or both ends.

2. They stain more uniformly, sometimes showing transverse bands, rarely more than one or two in number.

3. Neisser's stain does not reveal polar granules.

4. The organism grows more luxuriantly on culture-media than *Coryn. diphtheriæ.* In broth there is more of a tendency to clouding and less to film formation.

5. In Hiss serum-water *Coryn. hoffmanni* produces acid from none of the sugars.

6. No toxins are produced, and the organism is non-pathogenic to animals.

Corynebacterium xerosis

This organism is the cause of a type of conjunctivitis in man known as xerosis. It is of interest here because of its close resemblance to the diphtheria bacillus. The principal difference is the ability of *Coryn. xerosis* to produce acid from saccharose, but not from dextrin, while *Coryn. diphtheriæ* produces acid from dextrin and not from saccharose. This organism does not produce toxin and is not pathogenic for the laboratory animals.

CHAPTER XXXII

SWINE ERYSIPELAS GROUP. THE GENUS ERYSIPELOTHRIX

Two organisms have been described as belonging to this group—the *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ* and *E. muriseptica.* As will be noted later, there is good reason to believe that these organisms are identical. The group may be characterized as made up of very minute, slender, non-motile, non-spore-producing, Gram-positive rods.

Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ

Synonyms.—*Bacillus rhusiopathiæ suis; B. erysipelatis suis; Erysipelothrix porci; Bacillus rhusiopathiæ.*

Disease Produced.—Swine erysipelas, red fever of swine, rouget, Rotlauf.

Löffler, in 1885, first described the organism present in swine erysipelas. The disease had previously been differentiated from anthrax by Pasteur and Thuiller.

Distribution.—The disease has been reported from most of the European countries, and an organism resembling the *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ* has several times been reported from the United States, although there has been no satisfactory demonstration of the presence of the disease in this country. In Europe the disease is of considerable economic importance.

Morphology and Staining.—*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ* is a slender rod, variously given as 0.2 to 0.4 by 1 to 2 μ, as it occurs in the blood is usually straight, but sometimes somewhat curved, single or in chains. In culture-media the cells are more variable and may be filamentous. It is non-motile, does not produce spores or capsules. It stains readily with the anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may be secured in pure culture by plating the blood or pulp from some of the internal

organs, the spleen in particular. The colonies in the gelatin plate appear on the second or third day, and are quite characteristic. Each colony is found to be surrounded by a zone of much-branched threads. They permeate the medium, and are not found upon the surface, as is the case with anthrax and other forms which produce colonies with filamentous edges.

Gelatin stab cultures develop only below the surface of the medium, showing the micro-aërophilic or semi-aërophilic growth characters of the organism. The mature stab has the appearance of a test-tube brush, streaks and disks of growth radiating from the center. Streak cultures do not develop well upon agar or blood-serum except by growth under anaërobic conditions, preferably by absorption of the oxygen by the alkaline pyrogallate method. Bouillon is clouded and produces a grayish-white sediment with no pellicle. Ordinarily no growth occurs upon potatoes even under anaërobic conditions.

Fig. 141.—*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ*, stab culture in gelatin—four days (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Physiology.—The *E. rhusiopathiæ* grows better anaërobically than aërobically. It is unusually resistant for a non-spore-producing form. Desiccation frequently fails to destroy the organism in several weeks. The thermal death-point is recorded by some authors as low as 52° for fifteen minutes, by others as high as 70°. The optimum growth temperature is 37°, but growth occurs well at room-temperatures. Gelatin is not completely liquefied, but generally softened.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Mice die of septicemia when inoculated with pure cultures. Death occurs usually within four days, frequently within forty-eight hours. Field-mice are immune, as are guinea-pigs, cattle, horses, and other equines, dogs, cats, chickens, and geese. Rabbits inoculated subcutaneously develop an edema and redness at the point of inoculation, and this erysipelas-like lesion spreads to other parts of the body and the animal dies. Intravenous injection is quickly

fatal through the development of a septicemia. The white rat, the sparrow, and the pigeon are likewise susceptible. The typical disease may be produced in swine by inoculation of pure cultures. There is no doubt but that the *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ* is the cause of the disease. There is some evidence that the infection in a mild urticarial form is occasionally transmitted to the human.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—Small numbers of bacteria can generally be demonstrated in the blood, and abundantly in various of the body organs, particularly the spleen and the lungs. In the acute type of the disease the mucous membrane of the alimentary tract is reddened and shows petechial hemorrhages. The spleen and the lymph-nodes are somewhat enlarged and the lungs are usually congested. The most characteristic lesions are those of the skin, where numerous congested areas and local hemorrhages give rise to the spotted appearance. In chronic cases there is generally a verrucose or ulcerous endocarditis which is quite characteristic.

Immunity.—No true toxin has been demonstrated for the *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ*. The presence of specific amboceptors in immune serum may be shown by the method of complement absorption, but just what part these play in immunity has not been satisfactorily demonstrated. Opsonins are present and probably account in part for the immunity.

Very young animals—under three months—and those over one year rarely contract the disease. Animals that recover from the disease are thereafter immune.

Active Immunization.—It has been shown by the researches of Pasteur, later by Kitt and others, that passage of strains through certain animals, particularly the rabbit or the pigeon, leads to an attenuation such that the material may be used for vaccination of the hog. It is also known that continued cultivation usually reduces the virulence of the organism for mice. The virulence is subject to great and inexplicable variations. The Pasteur vaccine consists of an attenuated bouillon culture of the *E. rhusiopathiæ*. The material is sent out in two packages, labeled Vaccine I and Vaccine II. The contents are injected fifteen days apart. Immunity is established in two to three weeks after the second injec-

tion. The injected animals sometimes show the characteristic urticaria of the disease. The use of this method has led to varied results in different countries. Voges and Schütz have modified the Pasteur vaccine method by doing away with the Vaccine II, as they found the blood still contained bacilli at the time of the second injection, and concluded the latter, therefore, useless. It seems that a satisfactory immunization of the hog against the disease cannot be accomplished by injections of the killed organisms.

Passive Immunization.—Emmerlich and Mastbaum, in 1891, described a method of preparing an immune serum which would protect animals against the disease. Their method was impractical in some respects, and was superseded by the method of Lorenz, and this by those of Leclainche, Voges and Schütz, and Lange. The antiserum is prepared by the intravenous injection of virulent bouillon cultures into the horse. Usually 100 c.c. constitutes the initial injection, and is followed at intervals by larger amounts—up to 500 c.c. The injection produces a rise in temperature, and other reactions that disappear in twenty-four to forty-eight hours. The immune blood is drawn, and the serum used for passive immunization of swine. It is prepared on a large scale in several institutes in Europe, and is used extensively. Cattle and even buffalo are sometimes used instead of the horse in the preparation of the serum. Prettner claims that the use of cattle immune serum confers a more lasting immunity than that of the horse. Schreuber and Schubert studied the question of multiplicity of amboceptors, and came to the conclusion that a mixture of immune sera from horses and cattle would give a greater variety of amboceptors specific for the organism. A mixture of this kind is termed "double serum" (*German*, Rotlauf Doppelserum). The double serum has not proved in practice to be of any greater value than the serum from the horse alone. The immune serum is usually standardized by the use of the mouse, commonly by the method of Lorenz. A serum suitable for use should immunize a mouse in doses of 0.01 gm. per 10 gm. of weight, against injection with 0.01 gm. of a virulent culture. Lorenz used mice weighing uniformly 15 gm. as a standard, and such a serum is said to have a titer of 0.015 gm. (mouse). Marx has modified the technic of Lorenz somewhat,

but the principle is the same. Leclainche has advised the use of the pigeon, rather than the mouse, as a test-animal. The serum may be used curatively or prophylactically. Amounts up to 30 c.c. are used in curing the disease. In cases not too far advanced it arrests the disease, and has been shown to reduce the mortality materially. The injection of the serum prophylactically results in temporary immunity only, hence it is customary to establish an active immunity by injection of the specific organism, the culture and the serum being mixed together or injected separately at the same time. This method of immunization has proved of such value that it is extensively used in Europe. The active immunity developed as a result of the combined method lasts for periods of six months to a year or even longer.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Smears from the spleen, sometimes from the blood, will show the characteristic slender, Gram-positive bacillus. Isolation in gelatin plates gives a characteristic type of colony. The stab culture in gelatin is also diagnostic.

Transmission.—The specific organism may be demonstrated in the feces of an infected individual. It may gain entrance directly through the skin, but probably, in most instances, the infection atrium is the alimentary tract. Typical virulent bacilli and non-virulent forms have been repeatedly isolated from healthy animals. It is evident that the interrelationships of this organism and the body are quite complex.

Erysipelothrix muriseptica

Synonym.—*Bacillus murisepticus.*

Disease Produced.—Mouse septicemia.

Koch, in 1878, called attention to the fact that the injection of putrid meat infusion into a mouse resulted in a septicemia due to a non-motile, minute rod. It is of importance chiefly because of its resemblance to the *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiæ*. It has been isolated from a variety of sources in nature, and has been known to cause epidemics in mice kept for experimental purposes. There are no marked cultural characters which may be used to differentiate the two organisms, and morphologically they are likewise very similar. It is claimed by some that the *E. muriseptica* is somewhat more slender than the *E. rhusiopathiæ*. It has been found possible to immunize the rabbit against the latter by injec-

tions of the former. However, it has not been found possible to produce typical swine erysipelas by the injection of *E. murisep-*
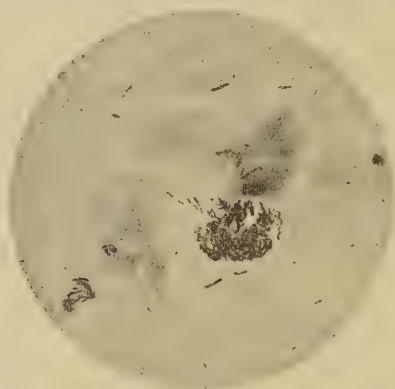
Fig. 142.—*Erysipelothrix muriseptica*, stained mount (Günther).
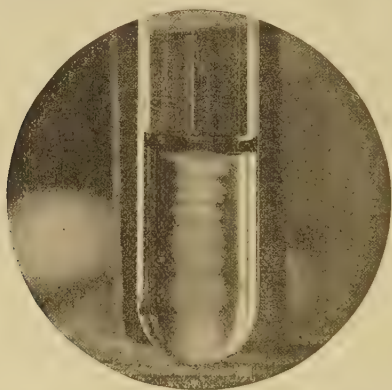
Fig. 143.—*Erysipelothrix muriseptica*, stab culture in gelatin (Günther).

tica. It is undoubtedly true that the two organisms are closely related. That they are varieties of one species, differing in virulence, is not improbable.

CHAPTER XXXIII

HEMOPHILIC, OR INFLUENZA GROUP. THE GENUS HEMOPHILUS

THE organisms belonging to this group resemble each other in being very small bacilli, aërobic, Gram-negative (in some cases decolorizing with some difficulty), non-motile, without spores, and capable of being cultivated only on media containing hemoglobin or serum (obligate paratrophic forms).

Organisms of this group have been isolated from several diseases of man and animals, and several types have been found in the normal mouth and throat and in body secretions. Methods of differentiation of the several species described are not entirely satisfactory.

The disease-producing organisms which attack animals or man and which require hemoglobin, serum, egg albumin or blood for their best growth are *Hemophilus influenzæ*, for many years assumed to be the cause of influenza in man; *Hem. pyogenes*, a common cause of suppuration in swine, cattle, and occasionally other animals; *Hem. pertussis*, of pertussis or whooping-cough in man, and the Koch-Weeks bacillus of human conjunctivitis. The nonpathogenic forms are generally included under the head of pseudo-influenza bacilli. One of these is the *Hem. hæmoglobinophilis canis* of Friedberger,[1] isolated from the preputial secretion of the dog.

Hemophilus pyogenes (Glage)

Synonyms.—*Bacillus pyogenes suis*, Grips; *B. pyogenes bovis*, Künnemann. *Bacillus pyogenes*.

Disease Produced.—Polyarthritis, pyobacillosis in swine and cattle, rarely in sheep, goats, and other animals.

Historical.—This organism was first described by Poels in 1897. Grips,[2] in 1898, named an organism which he isolated from

---

[1] Cent. f. Bakt. l. Abt. Orig., 33, 1903, p. 401.
[2] Zeitschr. f. Fleisch. u. Milch hygiene, 1898. 8, p. 166.

swine *Bacillus pyogenes suis.* Künnemann,[1] in 1903, described a similar organism from cattle under the name *B. pyogenes bovis.* Ward[2] (1917) has found the organism frequently in swine and cattle. Glage,[3] in 1903, combined the two under the single specific name *B. pyogenes.* Dunkel concluded that this organism is identical with that which causes pseudotuberculosis of sheep (*q. v.*), but Glage and Priewe have shown them to be quite distinct, and to be related to the influenza bacillus and members of the group of hemophilic organisms.

Brown and Orantt[4] state that the *Hem. pyogenes* is hemolytic but not hemoglobinophilic, though its growth is greatly favored by some higher protein material and regard the organism as belonging to the *Corynebacteria* rather than to the influenza group.

Morphology and Staining.—*Hemophilus pyogenes* is a relatively minute and slender rod, 0.2 to 3 μ in length and 0.2 to 0.3 μ in thickness. Microscopically it resembles the organisms of swine erysipelas and influenza, but is somewhat shorter and thicker than the former. The cells are sometimes bent, club-shaped, and tend to be somewhat polymorphic. Capsules are not produced. Spores are absent. The organism is non-motile.

The cells are not as readily stained as those of many bacteria, though not acid fast. Carbol-fuchsin is a satisfactory stain. The organism is generally recorded as Gram-negative, but the cells decolorize so slowly that several authors regard it as Grampositive.

Cultural Characters.—The *Hemophilus pyogenes* resembles the group in refusing to grow satisfactorily except on media containing serum hemoglobin, or in milk. Sometimes initial inoculations upon agar have been successful because enough of the body proteins have been carried over.

The organism can be grown on serum agar, blood agar, or solidified serum. In the latter medium at 37° colonies develop in from twenty-four to forty-eight hours. They are small, each in a small area of liquefied serum. The water of condensation remains unclouded, but develops a light sediment. Liquefaction

[1] Archiv. f. wiss. u. prakt. Tierheilk, 1903, 29, p. 128.
[2] J. Bact., 1917, *b*, 11, 619.
[3] Zeitschr. f. Fleisch. u. Milch hygiene, 1903, p. 166.
[4] J. Exp. Med., Vol. xxxii, No. 2, p. 219.

of the serum continues until it is relatively complete.   No putre-
factive odor develops.   Growth on blood agar is good and the
blood is hemolyzed with small zones of hemolysis about very
minute deep colonies.

On serum agar small colonies with smooth edges are produced.

Serum liquid media are not clouded, but a gray sediment col-
lects.   In milk incipient coagulation appears in forty-eight hours,
later extending gradually from the bottom toward the top.   A
clear whey gradually separates, and in this the curd is suspended,
later digesting in an acid medium.   Casein appears to be essential
to growth in milk, as the organism does not develop in whey.

Potato, agar, gelatin, broth, etc., are not suited unless they
contain serum.

Physiology.—*Hemophilus pyogenes* grows best at blood-heat,
the minimum being about 24° and the maximum 40°.   The organ-
ism retains its vitality in culutre-media for many weeks, but is
easily killed by desiccation.   It is sensitive to the action of
antiseptics, and is easily destroyed by disinfectants.

The organism grows either in the presence or absence of free
oxygen, but the optimum condition is evidently a partial pres-
sure of oxygen somewhat less than atmospheric.

In fermented bouillon plus 10 per cent. horse serum plus 1
per cent. of sugar, acid is produced from dextrose, saccharose-
lactose and xylose.   Indol is not formed.   Nitrates, methylene-
blue, and litmus are not reduced.

Proteolytic and probably lab-ferments are produced.

Pathogenesis.—The organism whether inoculated in the
laboratory or found in practice is a typical pyogene causing chronic
abscesses in various body organs, and occasionally a purulent
catarrh.   The pus developed in abscesses is usually creamy in
consistency and greenish in color.   Very frequently the organism
is accompanied by other bacteria in mixed infections.   Old ab-
scess contents become caseous and dry.   The pus in recent ab-
scesses contains the organisms in great numbers.

Rabbits are the most susceptible of laboratory animals to inoc-
ulation.   Local abscesses result from subcutaneous injections.
Intravenous injection is followed by pyemia, usually with locali-
zation in the joints.   Intraperitoneal injection causes a purulent
peritonitis, resulting in death in one to two weeks.   Guinea-pigs

are somewhat more refractory, but may be infected in the same manner.

The organism is apparently non-pathogenic for rats. It produces disease in the animals with divided hoofs, but not in the solipeds.

Infection in swine is not infrequent, occurring in almost any part of the body and often taking the form of arthritis. Abscesses are most frequent in the neck, the thigh, and the mammary glands. Peritonitis, pleuritis, and pulmonary abscesses may occur, occasionally a purulent pneumonia. In the resultant pyemia the abdominal organs, the lymph-glands, and the joints may develop abscesses. In infection by *Hemophilus pyogenes*, unlike tuberculosis, the lesions in lymph-nodes are relatively infrequent. Glage has contended that this organism may be the primary cause of swine plague, and has called attention to the resemblance between this disease and its causal organism to the disease influenza and its causal organism in man. Ostertag and others do not accept this interpretation, but regard the organism as a secondary invader.

In cattle Künnemann found 38 infections with *Hemophilus pyogenes* out of 56 suppurative inflammations, but only 15 times in pure culture. It has been found in peritonitis, pyemia, muscular abscesses, in wounds, pyelonephritis, mastitis, and polyarthritis following navel infection. The organism is far more pathogenic for young animals than for old.

Chronic catarrhal mastitis and bronchopneumonia in cattle may also be caused by this organism. Concerning the former Glage states: "There develops either a purulent catarrhal mastitis, or abscesses varying from a walnut to an apple in size develop in the udder tissue, and are firmly encapsulated. The milk is at first watery and slimy, then purulent or bloody, viscous, greenish or gray, and often malodorous. Microscopically enormous numbers of small bacilli may be demonstrated. Ostertag and Weichel found this organism in 90 per cent. in pure culture, and mixed with colon bacilli and streptococci in the remaining 10 per cent."

Whether or not this organism is the primary cause of certain types of bronchopneumonia in calves is unsettled, but it is undoubtedly of importance, at least as a secondary invader.

According to Olt, *Hemophilus pyogenes* may infect sheep and goats, with production of abscesses, pleuritis, pneumonia, pyemia, and mastitis. The organism should not be confused here with the more common pyogenic bacillus *Coryn. pseudotuberculosis.*

Immunity.—Toxins apparently have not been demonstrated.

Antisera containing agglutinins and bactericidal substances specific for this organism can be secured by the immunization of rabbits, calves, or dogs. The latter are preferable as abscesses do not develop in this animal as a result of the injection of the organisms. An antiserum for cure has been experimentally prepared, but has not come into use. Bacterins have been used by Ostertag and Weichel on goats, with some measure of success. However, in general feeding and subcutaneous injection of killed or living bacilli do not give rise to any considerable amount of immunity. Practical methods of immunization have not been worked out.

Transmission.—Infection in many cases is traumatic. It is probable that the disease may be transmitted to calves or swine by milk from infected udders.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—No accurate means of diagnosing infection with *Hemophilus pyogenes* has been developed other than isolation and recognition of the organism. The isolation of a small organism, which grows only upon media containing serum or, preferably, blood, from a characteristic lesion would usually be sufficient. Attention should also be called to its low degree of pathogenicity for laboratory animals, and the presence of the organism in great numbers in stained mounts of the characteristic pus.

Hemophilus influenzæ

Synonym.—*Bacillus of Pfeiffer; Bacillus influenzæ.*

Disease Produced.—Influenza in man (probably as a secondary invader).

The organism usually associated with influenza in man is of interest as the first bacterium of the hemophile group cultivated. The bacillus is very minute, 0.2 to 0.3 by 0.5 μ. It does not stain readily, is Gram-negative, and occasionally shows some tendency to bipolar staining. It grows only upon media con-

taining hemoglobin and only at blood-heat.   Studies of influenza during the epidemic of 1917–1918 seem to indicate that this organism is not the primary cause of the disease.

Hemophilus pertussis

Synonyms.—Keuchhusten bacillus, microbe de coqueluche. *Bacillus pertussis.*

Disease Produced.—Whooping-cough in man.

The organism culturally and morphologically resembles the influenza bacillus, though somewhat larger and plumper, and frequently showing a tendency toward bipolar staining.   It may be cultivated upon blood agar.   The disease is primarily an infection of man only.

CHAPTER XXXIV

ACID-FAST GROUP. THE GENUS MYCOBACTERIUM

THE *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *M. lepræ*, *M. paratuberculosis*, and certain common non-pathogenic bacteria isolated from hay, dung, milk, butter, and other sources, have common morphologic and staining characters which associate them as the acid-fast group. The crucial test for these forms is their ability to retain stains when treated with strong acids. They do not stain readily with the common anilin dyes, but when once stained they are "acid fast." Hot carbol-fuchsin is commonly used in determining this character.

The members of the acid-fast group of bacteria are all slender, non-motile rods, without capsules or spores, Gram-positive, and acid fast. Slight variations in morphology and cultural characters and considerable differences in pathogenesis serve to differentiate the various species. All the species may occasionally produce branched cells and threads, and it has been concluded by some investigators that they belong rather with the fungi, or at least with the higher bacteria than with the lower bacteria.

Care should be used not to confuse the term pseudotuberculosis, and particularly the bacteria associated with that disease, with the true tubercle bacilli and related forms. As has before been stated, the term pseudotuberculosis is purely pathologic, and refers to the type of lesions produced in the body, and not to any resemblance of the organisms causing the disease to those of tuberculosis. The pseudotuberculosis bacilli are more closely related to the diphtheria group, and have already been discussed.

Mycobacterium tuberculosis

Synonyms.—*Bacterium tuberculosis; Bacillus tuberculosis.*
Disease Produced.—Tuberculosis in mammals and birds.
The disease in its various forms in man and animals has been known since ancient times. Villeman, in 1865, showed that the

disease could be transferred from one animal to another by injection of the crushed nodules. He did not succeed in discovering the specific organism, however. In 1884 Dr. Robert Koch presented the results of his studies of the disease and described the organism which he had proved to be its etiologic factor. This work will always stand as a model of scientific research in bacteriology carried out under the most difficult circumstances. Staining methods and culture-media were both devised before the organism could be seen or grown. Koch succeeded in demonstrating its presence in the characteristic lesions, in growing it upon artificial media, and in reproducing the disease in animals by the inoculation of pure cultures. It was assumed in the beginning that tuberculosis in all animals was caused by the same organism, but in 1896 Theobald Smith called attention to the fact that certain differences in cultural, morphologic, and pathogenic characters could be distinguished in the organisms isolated from human and bovine tuberculosis. Koch, in 1901, declared the two organisms to be distinct, and that the probability of human infection with bovine tuberculosis was remote indeed. Since that time the subject has been studied with varied results by many investigators. Probably more has been written on this one disease than any ten or more other diseases. Journals devoted exclusively to tuberculosis are issued. Many points even yet are not fully understood, but the subject is upon a moderately sound basis at present. It seems best to differentiate three varieties of the tubercle bacillus—the human, the bovine, and the avian. A fourth type including forms isolated from cold-blooded animals may also be added. These possess many points in common, and it is by no means certain that they cannot be transformed the one into the other, but they may, in general, be readily differentiated by specific morphologic and physiologic characters. They will be discussed together.

Distribution.—Tuberculosis in man is known throughout the civilized world. In the United States over 110,000 deaths occur annually from this disease. It usually leads all other diseases in total number of deaths produced. The disease in cattle is nearly as widely distributed. It is found throughout Europe and America. Isolated localities free from the disease, however, are known.

In the United States it is rarely encountered on the western ranges, but is relatively common in dairy and beef herds in other parts of the country. Whenever swine are allowed to follow tuberculous cattle they commonly become infected. The same is also true when they are fed upon unpasteurized milk from tuberculous animals. Tuberculosis occurs rarely in the horse. Sheep have been reported as tuberculous, but the disease is certainly rare; it is probably frequently confused with pseudotuberculosis or caseous lymphadenitis in this animal. Tuberculosis in domestic fowls is known to occur in many European localities, and in the United States has been reported from many states.
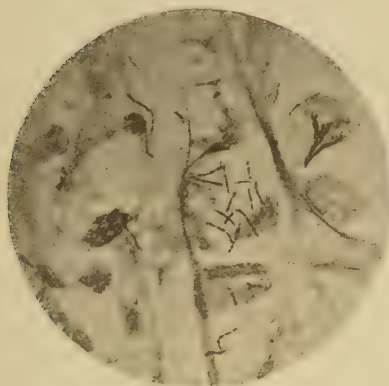
Fig. 144.—*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in human sputum. Note the slender beaded character of the rods (× 1000) (Günther).
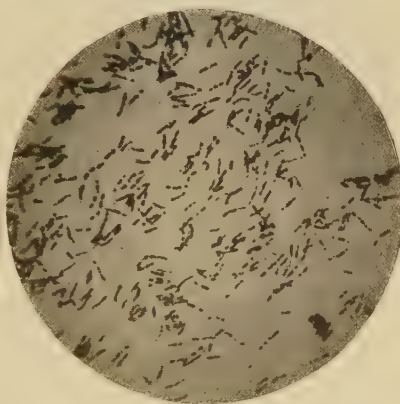
Fig. 145.—*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, human, mount from glycerin agar (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Morphology and Staining.—*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is a slender rod, commonly somewhat bent, with rounded ends. It varies from 0.2 to 0.5 by 1.5 to 3.5 μ, sometimes longer. Frequently the protoplasm takes the stain irregularly and gives a beaded appearance to the cell. No spores or capsules are produced. The organism is non-motile. Branched and elongated forms resembling somewhat the actinomyces are sometimes observed. It is possible that these are involution forms, although many authors claim them to be developmental forms instead. The organism stains with difficulty, but when once stained is acid fast. It is possible that under certain conditions,

in the animal tissues in particular, this acid-fast property may be temporarily lost. In very young cultures the bacteria are sometimes not acid fast. In tissues and cultures containing tubercle bacilli that do not show the acid-fast character Much has demonstrated Gram-positive granules, which are probably a growth stage of the tubercle bacillus. The acid-fast character is apparently due to the presence of a wax-like substance in the bacterial cell. The cells from which this has been removed by ether and benzol are no longer acid fast.
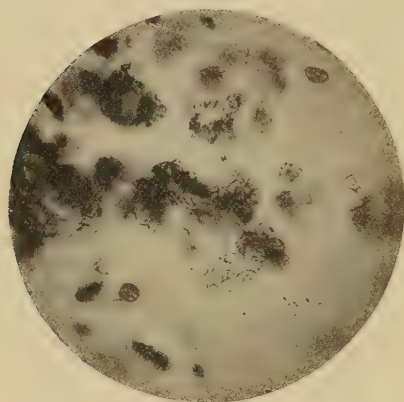
Fig. 146.—*Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* bovine, in a section of the peritoneum (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Certain observers have claimed that there are certain morphologic differences commonly to be observed between bovine and human tubercle bacilli. They have stated that the former are shorter, straighter, and thicker than the latter, and are less apt to show the irregular or granular staining noted above. These characters are, of course, not sufficient to differentiate isolated bacteria of the two types, but cultures can sometimes be identified by an experienced observer. Whether or not one type may be transformed into the other type by animal inoculation or by cultural methods is questionable. Some investigators claim to have isolated typical human bacilli from animals that have been inoculated with bovine bacilli; others hold that there is no evidence of the transformation of the one type to the other. However this may ultimately be decided, it is certain that each type retains its characters with a considerable degree of constancy. The existence of two well-marked varieties is unquestioned. The bacillus of avian tuberculosis resembles the bovine type closely in its morphology and staining reactions.

Isolation.—The isolation of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from lesions is attended with considerable difficulty. This is even

more pronounced when an attempt is made to secure the organism from the sputum or the feces where it exists in mixed culture.

It may be isolated from infected organs by securing bits of the tissue and rubbing over the surface of inspissated blood-serum or other suitable medium. The method worked out by Theobald Smith has given excellent results in the hands of numerous investigators. A dog is bled, using all aseptic precautions, from the femoral artery into a sterile vessel and the blood allowed to clot. The serum is removed by sterile pipettes to sterile test-tubes. These are slanted and heated to a temperature of 75° to 76° for about three hours, or until the serum is coagulated. The heating must be done in a saturated atmosphere and the medium stored so that there is no loss by evaporation. Bits of infected tissue are placed upon the surface and kept in a thermostat for several weeks. If no growth appears, the tissue is moved about and incubated again. A constant temperature of 37° and a saturated atmosphere must be maintained.

A procedure somewhat simpler than the preceding has been described by Dorset and is found to give good results. The shell of fresh eggs is carefully broken, and the white and yolk dropped into a sterile flask, the yolk broken with a sterile rod or wire, and the contents of the flask shaken until the two are thoroughly mixed. Foaming is to be avoided. The mixture is placed in tubes, slanted, and heated at a temperature of about 70° for from four to five hours on two days. This coagulates and sterilizes the medium. The tubes should be stored where they will not lose water by evaporation. Several drops of distilled sterile water should be added to a tube just before inoculation. The isolation upon this medium is carried out as outlined above. A growth may generally be observed within ten days after inoculation with fresh tissue.

Isolations from sputum or feces, milk, or other substances in which the organisms occur mixed with other forms, is attended with some difficulty. It is usually accomplished by injecting the material or the sediment yielded by centrifugation directly into a guinea-pig. The bacilli may later be isolated in pure culture from the nodules produced. Within recent years the use of "antiformin" and similar substances has considerably simplified this procedure.

Antiformin is the trade-name given a disinfectant mixture having the following composition:

Solution I.   Sodium carbonate......................12 gm.
                 Chlorinated lime........................ 8 gm.
                 Distilled water.........................80 gm.
Solution II. Sodium hydroxid........................15 gm.
                 Distilled water........................85 gm.

Equal quantities of the two solutions are mixed for use. The sputum or other material containing the tubercle organisms is placed in a centrifuge tube, and antiformin to about 20 per cent. of its bulk added. The tube is then corked, thoroughly shaken, and allowed to remain in a dark place for twenty-four hours. It is then centrifuged, the clear, supernatant liquid pipetted off, the tube filled with sterile physiologic salt solution, centrifuged, washed a second time, and the sediment smeared over the surface of serum slants. The antiformin destroys all other non-acid-fast bacteria present and dissolves the mucus and most of the cell elements, but when properly used seems to have little effect upon the tubercle bacilli, as they retain their vitality unimpaired. This is probably because of their chemical composition and waxy covering.

Cultural Characters.—*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* does not grow readily when first isolated upon culture-media, and will grow only upon certain substances. After a few transfers it seems to become habituated to growth under these conditions and will develop through a much greater range of temperature and on other media. Development occurs best on media containing blood-serum, egg, or similar proteins, or to which glycerin has been added.

The colonies upon blood-serum or glycerin agar appear in the course of ten days or two weeks as tiny grains barely visible to the naked eye. They gradually enlarge, and in subcultures may become confluent and cover the surface of the medium with a dry, rather mealy, wrinkled growth; the colonies direct from lesions do not coalesce usually. The growth is white and lusterless, or rarely in old cultures cream or brown. In glycerin bouillon the growth generally occurs as a more or less continuous, heavy, wrinkled, white pellicle that breaks into pieces and sinks to the bottom when the medium is shaken. Similar growths occur upon other media which contain glycerin. In no other case is the growth so rapid.

Cultural characters which may be used in the certain differentiation of the human, bovine, and avian tubercle bacilli are usually quite marked. The organisms isolated from the human and from the bird adapt themselves much more readily to artificial media and grow more luxuriantly than does the bovine type. The former produce upon glycerin agar a relatively heavy wrinkled growth, the latter a much more delicate growth, frequently showing discrete colonies only.

Physiology.—The tubercle bacillus is aërobic. Its optimum growth temperature is about 37.5° for the human and the bovine types and somewhat higher for the avian. The growth temperature range is relatively narrow, no growth usually being secured below 30° or above 42°. The thermal death-point is 60° for twenty minutes. This is, therefore, the minimum time and temperature for the efficient pasteurization of milk. Dry heat even at 100° does not kill the organism certainly within an hour. Sunlight destroys the organism quickly, but it is moderately resistant to desiccation. When dried in sputum cells have been known to live for at least two months. Most of the physiologic characters, such as acid, gas, pigment, and indol production, are negative.

Theobald Smith has called attention to what appears to be a very constant differential character between human and bovine tubercle bacilli. He found that in glycerin bouillon (2 per cent.),

Fig.   147.—*Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* glycerin agar slant (Curtis).

acid to phenolphthalein the human bacillus causes a permanent acid reaction, while with the bacillus of bovine origin the acidity

diminishes and the reaction becomes alkaline if the growth environment of the culture is suitable. The tuberculin prepared from the human bacillus is acid, and from the bovine bacillus alkaline. This difference has been noted by other investigators since its first description, and seems to be one of the best methods of differential diagnosis.

Pathogenesis.—Tuberculosis is characteristically a chronic disease. Even in experimental animals months are often required for it to run its course. As stated by Moore, "It does not destroy life by acute toxemia, but by a chronic and long-continued systemic poisoning and by the morbid changes brought about through the localization of these lesions in the organs necessary to life."

Experimental Evidence of Pathogenesis.—The laboratory animals are generally susceptible to infection with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.* The constant presence of the organism in the lesions of the disease and its ability to reproduce the disease are sufficient evidence that it is the true etiologic factor.

Important differences in pathogenesis are to be noted among the three varieties. The bovine bacillus is most pathogenic for laboratory animals, the human next, and the avian least (except for birds). Guinea-pigs inoculated subcutaneously with bovine bacilli generally succumb in less than fifty days; those inoculated with human bacilli generally live more than fifty days. Intraperitoneal injection of the bovine type is fatal in seven to eighteen days, of the human type in from ten to thirty-eight days. The difference upon intravenous injection of the rabbit is even more marked—with bovine bacilli death occurs within three weeks, with human bacilli the animals usually live for several months and may even recover. The avian type ordinarily does not produce fatal infection in guinea-pigs, although rabbits succumb and fowls and pigeons contract the disease readily. Calves inoculated with bovine tubercle bacilli usually succumb promptly to generalized tuberculosis, while inoculation with human strains lead usually to local lesions which heal eventually.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—Almost any part of the body may be affected with tuberculosis. The disease, wherever found, generally involves the lymphatics. It is characterized by the development of nodules having an essentially similar

structure in all tissues.   The presence of the tubercle bacilli in a tissue causes a proliferation of the fixed connective-tissue cells to form the beginning of a *miliary tubercle*.   Lymphocytes are generally attracted and are present in the surrounding tissues in considerable numbers.   A more or less definite layer of "epithelioid" cells forms the boundary of the tubercle.   Typical giant-cells with peripheral nuclei are found near the center.   Coagulation-

Figs. 148 and 149.—Tubercular hypertrophy of the intestinal wall in the bovine (Chaussé).

necrosis proceeds and the interior caseates.   Encapsulation with fibrous tissue may occur, and the whole may eventually become calcified.   These calcareous grains persist in healed tuberculous areas.   Tubercles frequently are formed in masses.   In the cow tubercular lymph-glands sometimes may equal or exceed the size of an orange.

The arrangement of the nodules frequently shows clearly the

path of the spread of the bacilli through lymphatic metastases. Direct growth through tissues with invasion of new areas probably rarely occurs. The organisms are not commonly found in the blood-stream, although they may sometimes be carried to other parts of the body by this means. Infection of the bones, joints, and meninges probably occurs in this manner.

The organs most commonly the seat of lesions vary with the species of animal and the mode of infection. In the *human*, pulmonary infection (consumption) is most common, although intestinal tuberculosis, infection of the lymphatics of the neck (scrofula), of the bones and joints (tubercular osteitis and arthritis), of the meninges, and of the liver, spleen, kidneys, and other organs of the body, and the serous membranes lining the cavities are not uncommon. Lupus or tuberculosis of the skin is of frequent occurrence in certain European countries. *Cattle* generally show nodules in the mesentery and in the peritoneum (Perlsucht or pearl disease). The lungs and the accompanying lymph-glands and the intestines commonly show lesions. In a certain small percentage of tuberculous cows, variously estimated from a fraction of 1 to 5 per cent., tuberculous lesions may be found in the udder. Any and all of the organs of the body may be infected. *Swine* are most commonly infected in the lymph-glands of the neck (swine scrofula), and in the abdominal organs and the lungs. *Avian* tuberculosis most frequently attacks the abdominal organs, particularly the liver and spleen, more rarely the lungs.

Immunity.—No true toxin has been demonstrated for the tubercle bacillus. Endotoxins are produced. These are liberated from the cell with difficulty because of its composition and slow dissolution. Specific agglutinins and precipitins have been demonstrated in the blood of infected individuals and in immune serum. Opsonins, both normal and immune, have been shown to occur. The development of bacteriolysins has not been satisfactorily demonstrated.

Methods of active immunization are all dependent upon the use of killed or attenuated bacteria or their products. The name *tuberculin* is given to any suspension of dead tubercle bacilli or a solution of their products. As will be noted later, tuberculin is not only of therapeutic significance but of great diagnostic value.

Many types have been prepared by various workers. Some of the more important will be described before a discussion of their use in immunization and in diagnosis is undertaken.

Koch's Old Tuberculin (*Alt Tuberculin*).—Flat-bottomed flasks containing 5 per cent. glycerin-broth to a depth of 2 to 3 cm. are inoculated with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. For veterinary practice tuberculin may be prepared from either the bovine or human type. The latter grows far more rapidly on artificial media and for this reason is generally if not universally used. The inoculating material is carefully placed on the glass
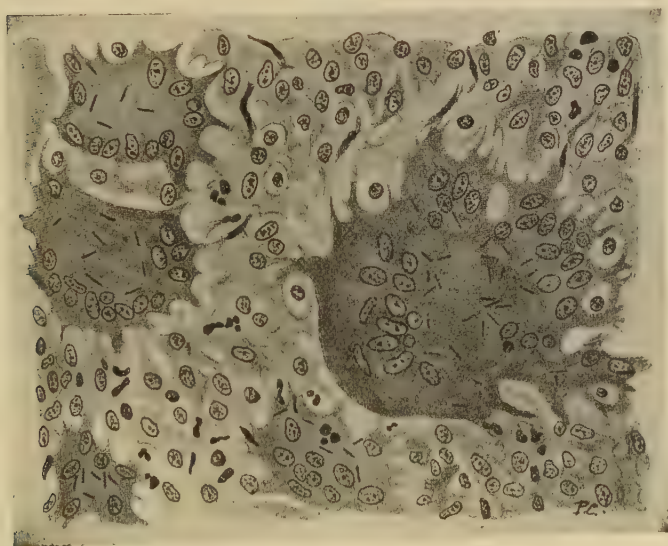
Fig. 150.—Section of a tubercular intestinal wall showing the organisms and giant-cells (Chaussé).

at the surface of the liquid in order that it may spread out at once as a film over the surface. Unless the organism is at the surface little or no growth will occur. In the course of four weeks at blood-heat the surface of the broth is covered with a heavy, wrinkled pellicle. By the end of eight weeks it is ready for the preparation of the tuberculin. The contents of several flasks are then united and placed in a porcelain evaporating dish on a water-bath. The material is concentrated to about one-tenth of its original bulk, when the glycerin content becomes about 50 per cent. and is filtered

through sterile paper or through porcelain filters. It is a brown viscous liquid which contains, in addition to the glycerin, salt, albumose, and the various specific growth products and extractives of the tubercle bacillus. This constitutes the tuberculin commonly used.

Tuberculin of Denys.—This investigator believed that the efficiency of the tuberculin was impaired by the heat used in con-

Fig. 151.—Tuberculin flask showing the growth of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (McFarland).

centration. He filtered unheated broth cultures through porcelain and utilized the filtrate.

The *tuberculol* of Landmann, the *tuberculocidin* or *antiphthisin* of Hirschfelder are all tuberculins prepared by various modifica-

tions of the original Koch method, such as repeated extraction of bacilli at different temperatures, treatment with H_2O_2, etc.

Several tuberculins for veterinary use have been prepared by German firms. *Bovotuberkulol* and *phymatin* are among these. The former is used in the same manner as the old tuberculin and the latter for the ophthalmic test. Klimmer and Wolff-Eisner give a list of 17 such products that have been proposed or used in diagnosis.

New Tuberculin, or Bacillus Emulsion of Koch.—The cultures are prepared, dried, and ground as for the manufacture of T. R. They are then suspended in glycerinated physiologic salt solution. Some preservative, as phenol, is added.

This by no means completes the list of preparations of the tubercle bacillus. Most of them are of laboratory significance only, the ones of any considerable practical importance being the old tuberculin and the purified product.

Tuberculins have been standardized in various ways. One method is to inoculate subcutaneously a series of guinea-pigs weighing 350–400 gms. with 0.5 mg. of tubercle bacilli. Such infection is usually fatal, if allowed to run its course, in about six weeks. Three weeks after inoculation, if the animals are decreasing in weight, an amount of tuberculin varying from 0.05 to 0.3 c.c. is injected, and the strength of the tuberculin determined by the amount necessary to kill such a guinea-pig within twenty-four hours.

The use of tuberculin as a prophylactic or cure has not proved successful with the lower animals, nor has it in man when used in large doses. Within recent years it has come into common use in the treatment of human tuberculosis, minute injections being given and care taken that no febrile reaction shall follow. Determinations of the opsonic index from time to time have been used with success in the determination of the proper spacing of the injections. This method is intended to stimulate opsonin production and thus aid the body in ridding itself of the bacilli.

Many methods of immunization against tuberculosis by means of injections of virulent or attenuated cultures of tubercle bacilli have been proposed and tested. Some of these are worthy of mention.

Von Behring developed a method of immunization by the use of

bovovaccine. This consists of dried human tubercle bacilli, mixed with water at the time of vaccination. Calves from two to twelve weeks old are injected intravenously with 4 mg. of bovovaccine, followed three months later by 20 mg. There is evidence that this causes the development of a considerable degree of immunity against infection with bovine tuberculosis. Although it has been tested out on a relatively large scale, the immunity has been found to be so transitory that the method has not proved of much practical use. A somewhat similar vaccine, termed *Tauruman*, has been used by Koch and Schütz. Heyman enclosed human tubercle bacilli in a *parchment sack* surrounded by a gelatin capsule. By means of a trochar the sack was placed in the subcutaneous connective tissue, the theory being that the products of growth of the organism enclosed would diffuse out. Klimmer has advocated the use of a non-virulent organism, secured from salamanders that had been injected with human tubercle bacilli. The preparation is termed *antiphymatol.* It is probable that this organism may be of the type infecting cold-blooded animals. Klimmer has claimed his antiphymatol to be quite successful as a vaccine when combined with suitable hygienic measures. The vaccine of Friedmann is somewhat similar, the organism being derived in this case from the turtle; it has proved to be of no value as a curative agent in man.

Antisera have been prepared by repeated injections of various animals with tuberculin T. R. and other products of the tubercle bacillus. None of them has proved successful in conferring passive immunity on other individuals.

In summary it may be stated that up to the present time no practicable method of immunization against tuberculosis in cattle has been developed, although in man the use of carefully regulated injections of tuberculin is promising.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Tuberculosis may be diagnosed bacteriologically by staining methods, animal inoculation, agglutination, and the tuberculin reaction.

Diagnosis by Staining Methods.—Tubercle bacilli may be readily recognized by their acid-fast character when examined microscopically. The presence of the characteristic acid-fast bacteria in the tissues or sputum is generally sufficient to establish diagnosis. This is not the case, however, with feces, milk, or

other substances which may become contaminated with non-patho-
genic acid-fast forms common in dust, in soil, etc. Resort must
then be had to animal inoculation followed by isolation of the
characteristic bacillus, or to isolation by the use of antiformin.
The discovery of the bacilli in milk, sputum, and other body secre-
tions may frequently be greatly facilitated by centrifugation and
by the preparation of mounts from the sediment. Antiformin
mixed with the material to be examined greatly aids in its sedimen-
tation without interfering in any way with its staining properties,
providing care is used in the washing as described under "isolation,"
or, better, by the addition of an equal quantity of untreated
sputum before making the smear.

Diagnosis by Animal Inoculation.—This is the most delicate
method of determining the presence of tubercle bacilli. Intra-
peritoneal injections of the suspected material into a guinea-pig
will result in the development of the disease within a few weeks.
Non-pathogenic acid-fast bacteria may give some of the patho-
logic appearances of true tuberculosis, so that it is well to make
certain of the diagnosis by isolation and cultivation of the organ-
ism from the inoculated animal. An injection of tuberculin may
be used to shorten the period of time necessary for diagnosis in the
inoculated guinea-pig.

Diagnosis by the Agglutination Test.—Although specific agglu-
tinins for the tubercle bacillus may be demonstrated in the blood
of those having the disease, the diagnosis by this method has not
proved practicable. Great care is necessary to secure a homo-
geneous suspension of the bacteria, and the agglutinins are rarely
present in quantity.

Diagnosis by the Tuberculin Tests.—Many methods of using
tuberculin in diagnosis have been studied. The following are
those which appear to be of the greatest importance.

Subcutaneous injection of tuberculin into an infected animal
causes a characteristic reaction.

The test of cattle is made by injecting a standard dose of
tuberculin. This as distributed by the Bureau of Animal Indus-
try consists of old concentrated tuberculin so diluted that 4 mils.
contain 0.5 gm. of old tuberculin. The normal temperature of
the animal should be ascertained before injection. This is most
accurately determined by taking the temperature every two

hours on the day preceding the test, but in practice frequently but one or two preliminary determinations are made. After six or eight hours the temperature is again to be taken every two hours for the remainder of the twenty-four hours after injection. Care must be exercised that the animals are kept under normal conditions during the test, and that they remain quiet. Animals in heat or advanced in pregnancy or suffering from diseases should not be tested. A positive test should show an increase of at least 1.5° above the previous maximum recorded temperature. The temperature usually begins to rise in about eight hours, and reaches its maximum in from ten to eighteen hours after injection, then gradually subsides. The rise in temperature is usually accompanied by a quickened pulse, and in milk cows a diminution in the flow of milk. At the Eighth International Veterinary Congress the following rules were adopted for the thermic tuberculin test:

1. No animal should be subjected to the tuberculin test whose body temperature at the time of the test is above 39.5° C.

2. In such animals a rise to a temperature of 40° C. or above is to be regarded as a positive reaction.

3. Temperatures of 39.5° to 40° C. are to be regarded as questionable.

There are many theories of the mechanism of the tuberculin reaction, but it is now believed to be explained best on the basis of anaphylaxis. The fact that the amount of tuberculin used in the test is not appreciably poisonous to a healthy animal indicates that the infected animal has become sensitized against the bacterial constituents, probably proteins. The presence of a specific allergin has not been satisfactorily demonstrated, but something of that nature is probably present and renders the tissues sensitive, principally about the lesions. That this sensitiveness extends to other tissues also is shown by the ophthalmic and other reactions to be described presently. It is a well-known fact that one injection of tuberculin will prevent a reaction to a second injection made shortly after. This fact is made use of by dishonest cattlemen in vitiating the tuberculin test. The probable explanation of this fact is that the body is in a condition of anti-anaphylaxis, that the allergin has been exhausted by the preceding dose, and there has been insufficient time for the accumulation of a new

supply. There is no evidence that the use of tuberculin as ordinarily practised ever results in the permanent sensitization of the animal. This is an important point, as the test can be used repeatedly in a herd of cattle, and the results may be relied upon. Animals in advanced stages of the disease frequently fail to react. In such cases it is probable that the body is in a state of immunity to the proteins of the tubercle bacillus. As was stated in the discussion of anaphylaxis, the mechanism of this immunity is not well understood. This immunity to injections of tuberculin must not be confused with immunity to the disease, for it seems that these rest upon quite different factors. The diagnosis of tuberculosis in the human is generally accomplished by other means than injection, on account of the severity of the reactions. In cattle it may be relied upon quite implicitly if the test is carried out properly. Failures in cattle are sometimes due to the extensive lesions, to the fact that the lesions are comparatively insignificant, calcified or encapsulated, or to previous injections of tuberculin, or to the use of antipyretics.

Von Pirquet has described a *cutaneous tuberculin reaction* that is of diagnostic value in man, particularly in young children. The inner side of the forearm is washed with ether. One drop of old tuberculin is applied, and another at a distance of about 10 cm. The skin is slightly scarified and the drops rubbed with a bit of cotton. A positive diagnosis is evidenced by the development of a papule resembling that of vaccinia. The reaction is quite local, showing that the tissues of the body distant from the tuberculous lesions have been sensitized. The method has been extensively tested and has been found quite accurate. Von Pirquet secured positive reactions in 87 per cent. of the clinically tubercular, and in 20 per cent. of clinically tubercular free. The reaction was found to be far more accurate during the first year of life than later. Lignières modified this method by shaving the skin and avoiding scarification. Six drops of undiluted old tuberculin are applied and rubbed with a bit of absorbent cotton. The reaction is similar to the preceding. It has been termed the *antituberculin* reaction.

The *intradermal test* is extensively used in the United States in the diagnosis of the disease in cattle. The technic is as follows:

Intradermal Tuberculin Test.—One-tenth to two-tenths mils of

26

50 per cent. tuberculin is injected into the tissue of the cutis with a short hypodermic needle. In cattle the point of injection that has proved most satisfactory is the caudal fold, stretching from the base of the tail to the anus. Care is used that the needle does not pass through the skin into the subcutaneous tissue. In swine the test is satisfactorily applied by injecting the tuberculin into the skin at the base of the ear near the median border on the dorsal surface.

The reaction in cattle consists of an edematous, circumscribed swelling, reaching the size of a hulled walnut in twenty-four hours or more. This swelling does not subside for forty-eight to seventy-two hours after injection. In swine a positive reaction is indicated by a flat swelling with a reddened center appearing in about twenty-four hours.

The test is coming into favor in this country, particularly where large numbers of animals are to be tested. The advantages over the thermal reaction are the ease of application, the fact that temperatures need not be taken and that observations can be made once or twice after inoculation without requiring the operator's presence in the meantime. Thus there is a great saving of time.

The *ophthalmo-reaction* of Calmette and the *conjunctival reaction* of Wolff-Eisner have likewise found extensive use in recent years. A tuberculin specially prepared free from glycerin and other irritants is dropped into the conjunctival sac. Klimmer states that to secure this test satisfactorily in cattle a concentrated (50 to 100 per cent.) tuberculin must be used, as cattle are relatively less sensitive to tuberculin than man. Wolff-Eisner claims that repeated instillation of the tuberculin into the same eye does not produce habituation, also that this reaction may be given when the thermic test fails in advanced cases of the disease. A positive reaction consists in the appearance of a pronounced conjunctivitis, which shows itself in six to ten hours and disappears in two or three days. This reaction has not found as extensive use as the subcutaneous injection.

Transmission and Prophylaxis.—*Channels Through Which the Organisms Leave the Body.*—These are determined largely in both man and animals by the localization of the lesions. The organism is to be found in the sputum in man and animals affected by pulmonary tuberculosis. The infectious droplets thrown out in

coughing and the contamination of drinking-vessels are common sources of infection. Material coughed up from the lungs by cattle is commonly swallowed, and both pulmonary and intestinal tuberculosis in these animals results in large numbers of organisms being thrown off with the feces. This is probably the most important channel of exit in the cow. Tuberculosis in swine following cattle is undoubtedly due to the ingestion of bacteria voided in this manner. Contamination of milk with tubercle bacilli is almost inevitable when they are constantly present in the feces. Milk is also found to contain tubercle bacilli when lesions are present in the udder. Whether or not they may be present when the udder is not tuberculous is a mooted question, but as the bacilli can rarely if ever be demonstrated in the blood, it is not probable that they can enter the milk direct when the udder lesions are absent. The urine may occasionally contain the bacteria.

It should be emphasized that tuberculosis may exist either as a *closed* or an *open* type. In the former the organisms infect organs having no direct communication with the exterior of the body, such organisms are not therefore in a position to be eliminated with body excretions. In open tuberculosis, however, the organisms constantly or intermittently escape from the body.

The disease is probably never inherited, the offspring being infected only when the disease infects the uterus and the placenta. This fact is of importance, for upon it the Danish veterinarian, Bang, has outlined a practicable method of building up herds free from tuberculosis. The calves are separated from their tuberculous mothers soon after birth and are fed only upon pasteurized milk. Those animals known to be tuberculous are separated from the others and a quarantine strict enough to prevent the transfer of the disease from infected to non-infected animals is established.

Infection Atria in Tuberculosis.—The portals of entry of *Bacillus tuberculosis* have been investigated at length in recent years, but there are still discrepancies in the results of investigators that are unexplained. One group of tuberculous infections, particularly the pulmonary type in man, is probably due to inhalation of the organisms. This was at one time universally conceded, but the work of Calmette and others has shown that primary pulmonary tuberculosis may result from ingestion of the organisms.

Certain investigators believe this to be far more common than in-
fection by inhalation. It has been shown that the tubercle bacilli
may be demonstrated in the thoracic duct of a dog fed upon the
organisms within a few hours after their ingestion, and without
any apparent lesion of the intestinal wall. The alimentary tract
is undoubtedly the infection atrium in most cases of intestinal
tuberculosis and of infection of the other abdominal organs, the
mesentery and the peritoneum. The tonsils are believed with
good reason to permit the infection of the neighboring lymph-
glands and the consequent production of scrofula. Cutaneous
lesions following abrasions or cuts of the skin have been observed,
particularly in butchers, and in a few instances in veterinarians.

Intertransmissibility of Human, Bovine, and Avian Tuberculosis.
—Human tubercle bacilli do not readily infect cattle. When
injected, they may cause local, but rarely general, infection. The
fact that the human and bovine types of bacilli may be differen-
tiated has already been emphasized. Both types of bacilli produce
fatal infection in the monkey. Instances of probable cutaneous
infections of man from cattle are on record.

Park and Krumweide have outlined the factors which must
be taken into consideration for differentiation of the bovine and
human type of tubercle bacilli. In their own isolations of the
tubercle bacilli from the human they have used the following
criteria: "All cultures showing maximum luxuriance on glycerin
egg in primary cultures are certainly human. All cultures not
showing maximum luxuriance should then be transferred to
glycerin egg, potato, and glycerin egg with bouillon added. Cul-
tures which have failed on glycerin egg should also be transferred
on plain egg, as glycerin egg may again fail. All cultures showing
maximum luxuriance are quite certainly human." The forms
which show a very sparse growth are as quite certainly bovine.
Intermediate forms are tested upon rabbits, and, if necessary, upon
calves.

Swine readily contract bovine tuberculosis. They have also
been known to become infected with avian tuberculosis through
the consumption of birds dead from the disease.

Birds contract the disease from each other by ingestion of
excreted bacteria. Whether or not the disease may start from

ingestion of bovine or human tubercle bacilli is not certainly known.

It is evident that while each of the types of tubercle bacilli is generally associated with a specific host, on the other hand, each may, under appropriate conditions of infection and susceptibility, produce infection in other hosts.

The following table, adapted from a paper by Park and Krumweide, summarizes 1511 cases of human tuberculosis reported in which the bovine or human character of the organism was determined. The age groupings are particularly interesting:

Diagnosis.	Adults, sixteen years and over.		Children, five to sixteen years.		Children under five years.	
	Human.	Bovine.	Human.	Bovine.	Human.	Bovine.
Pulmonary tuberculosis..	778	3	14	..	35	1
Axillary or inguinal tubercular adenitis.........	3	..	4	..	2	
Cervical tubercular adenitis.................	36	1	36	22	15	24
Abdominal tuberculosis..	16	4	8	9	10	14
Generalized tuberculosis of alimentary origin....	6	1	3	4	17	15
Generalized tuberculosis..	29	..	5	1	74	7
Generalized tuberculosis and meningitis of alimentary origin........	...	..	1	..	5	10
Generalized tuberculosis and meningitis........	5	..	10	..	76	1
Meningitis..............	1	..	3	...	28	4
Tuberculosis of bones and joints...............	32	1	41	3	27	
Other types.............	34	5	6	7	3	
Totals.............	940	15	131	46	292	76

There seems to be no reasonable doubt but that the bovine tubercle bacillus may infect the human. The above table shows it to be common enough in children under sixteen years to justify all reasonable precautions against the ingestion of infected meat and milk. The danger to the adult would appear to be almost negligible. It is estimated that less than 10 per cent. of fatal cases of tuberculosis in children are due to the bovine tubercle bacillus,

but the incidence of the disease among children is much higher. The large proportion of bovine infections in scrofula and tuberculosis of alimentary origin should be especially emphasized.

Mycobacterium paratuberculosis

Synonyms.—Bacillus of Johnes' disease; *Bacillus paratuberculosis*.

Disease Produced.—Chronic enteritis or paratubercular dysentery of cattle.

Johnes and Frothingham, in 1895, described an acid-fast organism as the probable cause of chronic dysentery in cattle. They believed the organism to be identical with the avian tubercle bacillus, but this has been rendered improbable by subsequent investigations.

Distribution.—The disease has been noted in various parts of Europe and in the United States.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism closely resembles the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* morphologically. It is a slender rod, usually 1 to 2 μ in length, rarely longer. It is non-motile. Neither spores nor capsules have been observed. It does not stain readily with the aqueous anilin dyes unless mordanted. When once stained it is both acid fast and alcohol fast. The same staining technic may be used as with the tubercle bacillus.

Isolation and Culture.—Twort and Ingram, Meyer, and others have succeeded in growing *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis* on both solid and liquid media that contain extracts from other acid-fast bacteria, such as *M. tuberculosis* and *M. phlei*. Meyer found a medium of equal parts of broth and tuberculin and 1 per cent. serum with 2 per cent. agar the most suitable for purposes of isolation.

Antiformin may be used if necessary to destroy other organisms not acid fast in making the original isolation. Growth is slow, best at 37°. The organism tends to grow as dry, discrete colonies.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The disease has not been transmitted to any of the laboratory experimental animals. Intravenous injection into calves produces the typical disease after an incubation period of four to eight months.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The disease is characterized by progressive emaciation and persistent chronic diarrhea, with commonly fatal termination. The lesions are

confined to the intestines, small intestines primarily, and the colon secondarily. The mucosa shows thickening and wrinkling, but there is little evidence of congestion. The lesions are not sharply limited; there is no necrosis, although some of the villi may be denuded of epithelium. Giant-cells may rarely be demonstrated, but tubercle formation does not occur.

Immunity.—Nothing is known relative to immunity to this disease.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The presence of acid-fast organisms in large numbers in the thickened mucosa in the absence of nodule formation is diagnostic on postmortem. The animal does not react to the injection of the standard tuberculin unless it is infected with tuberculosis. Bang and others have come to the conclusion that tuberculin prepared from avian tubercle bacilli can be used in a thermic test for this disease. Horne has also reported successful ophthalmic and cutaneous diagnosis with avian tuberculin. Meyer concluded that avian tuberculin was of little diagnostic value, but that a *paratuberculin* prepared from *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis* yielded better results.

Transmission.—The disease is doubtless transmitted by ingestion.

Mycobacterium lepræ

Synonyms.—*Bacterium lepræ; Bacillus lepræ.*

Disease Produced.—Leprosy in man.

Hansen, in 1872, discovered the bacillus of leprosy in the lesions of the disease. It was studied more at length by Neisser and Hansen, who published their report in 1880.

Distribution.—Leprosy is common in Asia, northern Europe, in certain Pacific Islands, and is found occasionally in various parts of the United States. A similar, though probably not identical, disease has been noted by Wherry and others in rats.

Morphology and Staining.—*Mycobacterium lepræ* resembles the *B. tuberculosis.* It is a slender rod, frequently as much as 6 μ in length. The rods are usually straight, non-motile, do not produce spores or capsules. They stain somewhat more readily than the *M. tuberculosis*, but are distinctly acid fast.

Isolation and Culture.—Several investigators claim to have

cultivated the leprosy bacillus, but the results in every case need confirmation.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Lower animals, with the possible exception of the monkey, cannot be successfully infected with the *Bacillus lepræ*. Arning succeeded in infecting a criminal in the Hawaiian Islands by subcutaneous implantation of leprous tissue. The belief in the pathogenicity of this organism rests principally upon its presence in great numbers in the leprous tissues.
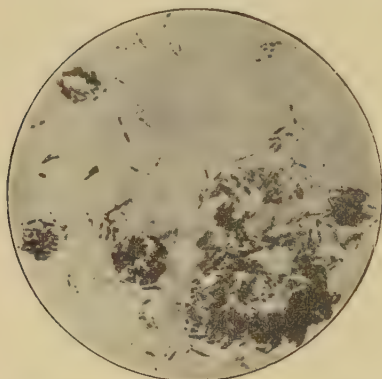
Fig. 152.—*Mycobacterium lepræ* (Kolle and Wassermann).

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The organisms may proliferate in the nerves, causing anesthetic leprosy; or in the subcutaneous tissues, producing nodules resembling superficially those of tuberculosis. The disease progresses slowly, the infected individual surviving for years or even several decades.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The disease may be diagnosed bacteriologically by scraping a nodule and preparing a smear from the serum so obtained. The characteristic acid-fast organism may be demonstrated. In the hands of some investigators the complement binding reaction (using extracts from leprous organs as the antigen) has proved of diagnostic value.

Non-pathogenic Acid-fast Bacteria

Many species of non-pathogenic acid-fast bacteria have been described, and from a variety of sources. Some are normal inhabitants of the skin, others occur in dung and in soil. The presence of these organisms upon the body, in milk, etc., frequently renders a differential diagnosis necessary between them and the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. A few of the more important types will be briefly described.

Mycobacterium smegmatis.—This organism has been repeatedly observed in the smegma from the genitals of man and

animals and from the skin of the axillæ. Morphologically it resembles the tubercle bacillus. Its isolation is accomplished with considerable difficulty and only upon media containing blood-serum. The *M. smegmatis* is non-pathogenic. It is of importance principally because of the possibility of confusion with *M. tuberculosis* when it occurs in the urine. Although the smegma bacillus is acid fast, it may be decolorized by alcohol.

Dung Bacillus, Grass Bacillus of Moeller, Butter Bacillus, etc. —Acid-fast bacteria not unlike the tubercle bacillus in morphology have been isolated from a great variety of sources. They may in general be easily differentiated from the tubercle

Fig. 153.—*Mycobacterium smegmatis*, in a stained smear of preputial smegma (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

bacillus, as they do not produce a generalized tuberculosis when inoculated into experimental animals. However, nodules resembling those of tuberculosis are found as a result of the injection of some species. The organisms when isolated upon culture-media, however, are found to develop luxuriantly even at room-temperatures. It is interesting to note that isolation of such bacteria from soil has been accomplished by the use of antiformin. The differential diagnosis of these forms from *M. tuberculosis* must always be accomplished by both animal inoculation and isolation upon culture-media. In making a diagnosis of tuberculosis from stained mounts the possible presence of these forms must be constantly borne in mind.

VIBRIO GROUP

ONE organism, pathogenic for animals, described by Smith as associated with abortion in cows, one from fowls, the *Vibrio metchnikovi*, one pathogenic for man, *Vibrio choleræ*, and numerous non-pathogenic forms isolated from various sources have been described as belonging to this group.

The organisms of this group are more or less bent rods, usually only a segment of a spiral, rarely showing one or more complete turns. All are motile, aërobic, Gram-negative, and without spores.

Vibrio, metchnikovi

Synonyms.—*Spirillum metchnikovi; Microspira metchnikovi.*

Disease Produced.—Septicemia of fowls.

Gamaléia, in 1888, described this organism from an epizoötic of fowl septicemia which occurred in Russia. What appears to be the same organism was later (1894) isolated by Pfuhl from water.

Distribution.—This organism does not seem to have been isolated from such a disease by any investigator since the original work of Gamaléia. This latter, however, was sufficient to establish its etiologic relation to the disease. It is possible that the disease is more widely spread than the literature would indicate, inasmuch as poultry diseases are in need of careful investigation.
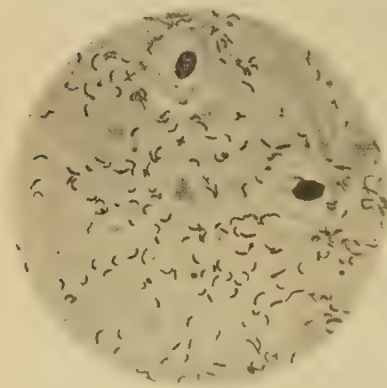
Fig. 154.—*Vibrio metchnikovi* (Günther).

Morphology and Staining.—It is a curved rod, with rounded ends, or sometimes a spiral filament. It is actively motile by a single terminal flagellum, and is about 0.5 by 2 μ. Neither capsules nor spores are produced. It stains readily, but is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may be isolated from the intestinal contents of adult fowls and from the blood of younger fowls by plate cultures in nutrient gelatin. Upon these plates small white, punctiform colonies are developed in the course of twelve to sixteen hours; these enlarge rapidly, cause liquefaction of the gelatin, and are soon to be found in saucer-shaped depressions in the medium. Growth in a stab culture in gelatin is likewise rapid, and the gelatin is quickly liquefied in the form of a funnel. Upon agar slants a yellowish layer is developed. Bouillon is clouded, and a delicate pellicle may form. Milk is coagulated with acid reaction and without solution of the casein.
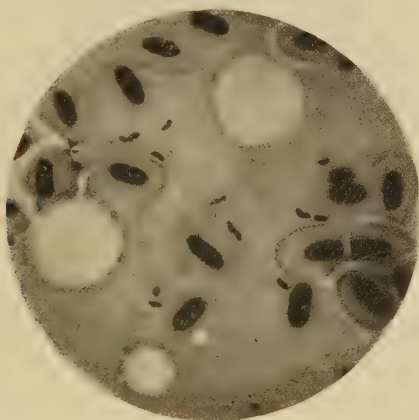
Fig. 155.—*Vibrio metchnikovi* in the blood of a pigeon ($\times$ 1000) (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Physiology.—The organism is aërobic. It develops almost as rapidly at room-temperature as at blood-heat. The thermal death-point is 50° for five minutes. It is sensitive to the presence of acids in culture-media, and soon dies in consequence of their production in milk. It produces acid from dextrose and lactose, but no gas. Indol is formed. Gelatinase is developed, but no enzyme which will digest casein.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Subcutaneous inoculations into the chicken, pigeon, and guinea-pig are quickly fatal; rabbits and mice succumb only to large doses. The disease appears as a septicemia. According to Gamaléia, it may be communicated to chickens by feeding pure cultures.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—Chickens affected show many of the same symptoms as those infected with chicken-cholera, except that the temperature is little, if at all, elevated. Diarrhea is constantly present. There is a marked hyperemia of the alimentary canal, and a blood-tinged, grayish-yellow liquid is found in the small intestine.

Immunity.—No true toxin has been demonstrated. Agglutinins are present in immune serum. Immunity may be established in animals by repeated injections of killed cultures.

Fig. 156.—*Vibrio metchnikovi*, gelatin stab (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—This may be made on the basis of microscopic findings and isolation in pure culture.

Transmission.—The disease is probably transmitted by the ingestion of food soiled by droppings from infected fowls.

Vibrio choleræ

Synonyms.—*Spirillum choleræ asiaticæ; Microspira comma: Vibrio choleræ asiaticæ.*

Disease Produced.—Asiatic cholera in man.

Koch, in 1883, discovered the specific cause of Asiatic cholera in the rice-water stools of cholera patients.

Distribution.—The disease is endemic in India and possibly parts of China. It has swept in epidemics over Europe several times within the last century.

Morphology and Staining.—The cholera spirillum is a short, slightly curved rod, whence the common designation of "comma bacillus." Longer filaments and involution forms are frequently observed. It is motile by means of a single polar flagellum. Spores and capsules are not produced. It stains readily with the common anilin dyes and is Gram-negative.

Isolation and Culture.—It may be readily isolated from the stools of cholera patients by plating upon nutrient gelatin. The cultural characters are very similar to those of *Vibrio metchnikovi*.

Physiology.—It is an aërobic organism. Growth occurs readily at room-temperatures, although the optimum is blood-heat. The

Fig. 157.—*Vibrio choleræ* (Kühne-mann).
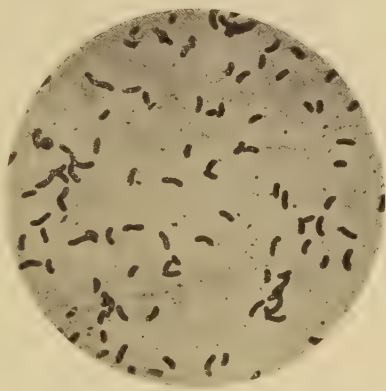
Fig. 158.—*Vibrio choleræ*, showing flagella (Günther).

thermal death-point is 60°. Desiccation, disinfectants, and sunlight quickly destroy it. Blood-serum and gelatin are liquefied. Milk is not coagulated. Nitrates are reduced to nitrites. Indol is produced. The organism requires a neutral or slightly alkaline medium for its development.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Asiatic cholera, in the form found in man, usually cannot be transmitted to laboratory animals. The etiologic relation of *Vibrio choleræ* to the disease, however, has been established by accidental and intentional infection of several laboratory workers. Intraperitoneal injection of the guinea-pig results fatally. Ingestion of the organisms by young

rabbits may result in the development of the symptoms and lesions of typical cholera as they are observed in man.

Character of Disease and Lesions in Man.—Asiatic cholera is characterized by a severe diarrhea. The intestinal epithelium is desquamated, and gives rise to the appearance known as "rice-water" stools. The intestinal tract shows congestion and sometimes extensive, even diphtheritic, necrosis. The loss of water from the blood results in a considerable, frequently fatal, diminution in blood-pressure.

Immunity.—True toxins have been demonstrated for the cholera spirillum. They are produced under peculiar cultural conditions. Antitoxin has also been produced. Agglutinins and precipitins are found in immune blood, and frequently in the blood of patients. Bacteriolysins may be readily demonstrated; in fact, it is with this organism that the classic demonstration of Pfeiffer's phenomenon was carried out.

Active immunization against Asiatic cholera has been extensively practised. The vaccine consists either of cultures killed at 58° or of cultures attenuated by growth at 39°.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—This may be accomplished by an examination of a stained mount from the rice-water discharges, by isolation of the organism, or by the agglutination test.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted through impure water and food, particularly vegetables, contaminated with the excretions of cholera patients.

Vibrio fetus

Synonym.—*Spirillum fetus.*

Disease Produced.—Abortion of cattle.

Smith in 1919 in a study of the fetus, the fetal membranes and swabs from the uterus in 109 cases of abortion in cows, found 62 (57 per cent.) associated with *Bacterium abortus*, 26 (23.8 per cent.) with spirilla, 2 (1.8 per cent.) with *Hemophilus pyogenes* and 19 (17.4 per cent.) sterile or without *Bacterium abortus*. He found *Bacterium abortus* associated with first pregnancies in 42 cases, with the second in 14, with the third in 5, and with the fourth in 1. Spirilla were found in first pregnancies in 6, second in 9, third in 5 and fourth in 3.

Morphology and Stains.—*Vibrio fetus* varies more or less in length. Short forms consisting of 1 or $1\frac{1}{2}$ or more turns of about 2 μ are found in young cultures and long ones of 2 to 4 windings in old. The transverse diameter is probably not over 0.2 to 0.3 μ. Alkaline methylene blue gives satisfactory results when the staining is prolonged over night. Giemsa is less satisfactory. In fixed material, eosin-methylene blue is used with good results. With Löffler's stain, a flagellum is found attached to one or both poles. The organism is Gram-negative. Granules in organisms stained 24 to 48 hours are not uncommon.

Isolation and Culture.—The organisms may be obtained from the placenta of aborting cows and from the stomach, meconium and lungs of the fetus.

If bits of tissue or particles of meconium or drop of stomach contents are added to slanted agar and the tube is hermetically sealed there will be seen after 3 or 4 days along the lateral margin of the slanted surface, between agar and glass, a narrow grayish line extending up from the water of condensation several centimeters. After some days a thin, barely visible film of growth will extend from this line inward between agar and glass. The most suitable medium consists of ordinary agar slants to whose water of condensation a few drops of defibrinated horse blood are added. After several passages satisfactory growth occurs on plain agar. Growth is less vigorous than on blood agar. Growth on the slope surface is not so common as between glass and medium or in the condensation water. The latter becomes covered with a thick translucent mucus which owing to its viscidity is difficult to transfer. After strains become adapted to plain slanted agar, multiplication will occur in liquid media. Plain bouillon to which a few drops of defibrinated blood are added becomes clouded and a slight viscid sediment is formed. No recognizable multiplication occurs in milk.

Physiology.—Dextrose, lactose and saccharose broth in fermentation tubes yield growth with uniform clouding, but neither acid nor gas is produced. Solidified blood serum is not liquefied.

Pathogenesis.—The effect of the organism upon small laboratory animals is apparently not harmful. Rats, mice, rabbits and guinea-pigs are refractory.

Immunity.—Agglutinins are produced by repeated injections of rabbits with small doses of the organism. An agglutinating titer of 1 : 2560 has been obtained.

Non-pathogenic Spirilla

Many species of spirilla closely resembling the preceding in morphology and cultural characters, but lacking in pathogenicity, have been isolated from a variety of sources. Such are the *Vibrio proteus* or Spirillum of Finkler and Prior, isolated from the stools in a case of cholera nostras, *Spirillum tyrogenum*, or Deneke's spirillum from cheese, *Spirillum phosphorescens*, isolated from water, and many others.

CHAPTER XXXVI

SPIROCHETE GROUP

THERE is probably more confusion relative to the classification of the members of this group of organisms than in any other group of bacteria or protozoa. In the first place, there is by no means an agreement among investigators as to whether these organisms should be included under the heading of bacteria or of protozoa. There seems to be more evidence in recent literature of protozoan rather than of bacterial relationships. Second, it is evident that the group is not homogeneous, and efforts have been made to separate the group into several genera. In not a single case have we a full and satisfactory knowledge of the life-history, particularly in those forms which are transmitted from one animal to another by parasites. Until this is worked out it will be impossible to make a separation of the different types into genera on the basis of true relationships. In the discussion of the group the genus name of *Spirochæta* is retained, the first of the synonyms given being the one which has been suggested by Blanchard in his revision of the group on the basis of protozoan relationships.

Fig. 159.—*Spirochæta pinnæ: A, B*, Cells showing the undulating membrane; *C*, a coiled organism (adapted from Gonder).

The argument advanced for protozoan relationships may be summarized as follows. According to several observers, multiplication, frequently, though not invariably, takes place by longitudinal rather than transverse division of the cell. Morphologically, it is believed that these organisms differ from the true bacteria by being in all cases flexible, and swimming with a sinuous motion. In several species undulating membranes similar to those of the protozoa have been demonstrated. Chromidia-like bodies, resembling the scattered nuclei in some protozoa, have been identified.

According to Prowazek, plasmolysis does not take place with salt solutions several times as concentrated as those required for plasmolysis of bacterial cells. Certain spirochetes have been observed to enter red blood-cells and there assume a coiled condition. A multiplication of the organisms has been observed in the eggs of a tick which transmitted a spirochete disease, as have also certain forms which have been interpreted as stages in a more complex life-history. Leishman has found that certain spiro-
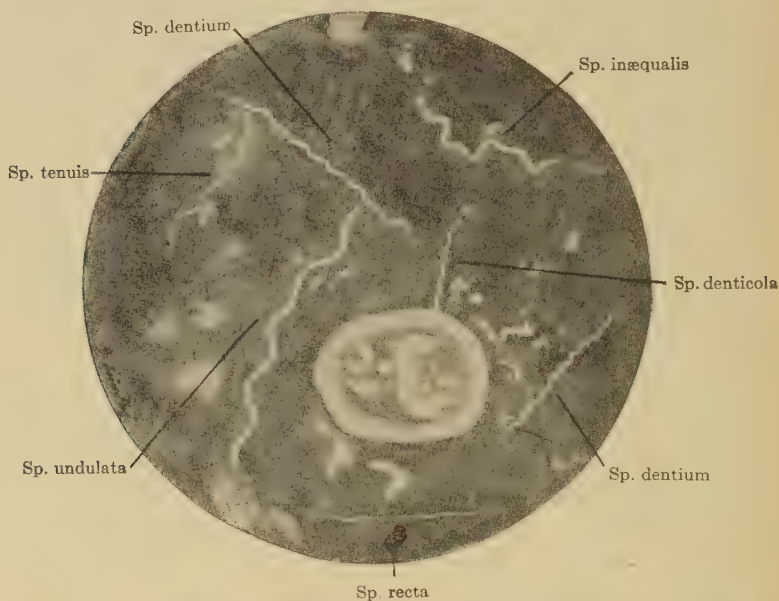
Fig. 160.—Spirochætæ of different species. From a smear from a tonsillar lacuna stained by Burril's India-ink method (Gerber).

chetes, when ingested by the tick, lose their motility and change morphologically, with resultant liberation of small bodies which stain like chromatin. These are of various shapes—rods, cocci, or spirals. They enter the lining cells of the malpighian tubules; they are found in the oviduct, the ovary, and the immature eggs, and in all stages of development of the young tick. Inoculation of material containing these bodies, but not true spirochetes, resulted in the development of tick-fever. The details of this life-history are in present need of elucidation. It has been claimed by Mar-

choix that the virulence of the spirochete of fowl septicemia can be preserved only by passing through the body of the tick which transmits the disease. Continual transfer of the organism from one fowl to another, without the intermediation of the tick, causes a gradual decrease in virulence. This would seem to indicate that a part of the life cycle of this organism must be passed in the body of the intermediate host or tick. None of this group of organisms may be cultivated upon the common laboratory media, and they can be induced to multiply *in vitro* only under very special conditions. All these facts would seem to make out a strong case for those who believe in the protozoan relationships.

There are, on the other hand, investigators who believe quite as firmly that these organisms are bacteria. Novy and Knapp studied with great care a spirochete of relapsing fever. They concluded that division was always transverse, and that the longitudinal divisions reported by others were accidental associations or intertwining of two organisms. Their results with the use of plasmolyzing agents received an interpretation quite the reverse of other investigators. Experiments in immunization, the resistance to heat, stability of form, and staining qualities of the flagellum all associated the organism with the bacteria. Borrel, Fränkel, and others claim to have demonstrated the presence of numerous peritrichic flagella on certain forms, a condition which is different from any known protozoan. As before stated, there is so much discordance in the published work of the various investigators that definite conclusions cannot be reached. It has been suggested that these organisms form a group intermediate between the bacteria and the protozoa. This is not as probable as has been sometimes urged. and such a disposition is simply a confession of our lack of definite knowledge. It is by no means improbable that some species of this group will be found to belong to the bacteria and others to the protozoa, and that supposed homologies are only superficial resemblances.

Another line of evidence tending to relate the spirochetes to the bacteria has been the successful isolation and cultivation of certain free living forms from water. Wolbach and Burger passed pond water through a Berkefeld V filter, and added the filtrate to a neutral 1 per cent. solution of glucose in hay infusion. In forty-

eight hours there developed a clouding due to the presence of a spirochete which was successfully grown in colony form on glucose hay infusion agar, the colonies resembling those of bacteria. The organism was named *Spirochæta elusa*. Another species, *Sp. biflexa* was also isolated in a similar manner.

Cultivation of Spirochetes.—Many attempts at cultivation of pathogenic spirochetes in blood-serum and other media were made without much success. The organisms might multiply for a time, but it proved impossible to get growth from continued transfers. Noguchi at last devised a method for securing pure cultures and continued growth. The method was first worked out for *Spirochæta pallida*, but has since been used for many other forms. A bit of fresh kidney tissue from a rabbit is dropped into a test-tube, care being used in the removal from the animal to prevent all contamination. A mixture of sterile ascitic fluid, 1 part, and slightly alkaline agar, 2 parts, is added. The material from which the isolation is to be secured is triturated, and a deep stab-culture into the agar is made and the culture covered with paraffin oil. In many cases it is impossible in this first culture to free the spirochetes from other organisms.

These contaminating bacteria grow along the line of the stab, as does also the spirochete. The fresh tissue absorbs the free oxygen of the medium and insures the anaërobic conditions so necessary for growth of these organisms. Usually the spirochetes will grow out into the medium as a hazy zone. By careful inoculation of fresh tubes from this hazy growth, it is generally possible by a few transfers to secure a pure culture. The essentials for development seem to be (1) a suitable ascitic fluid or, with some species, some other protein; (2) a weekly alkaline agar; (3) fresh tissue; and (4) anaërobic conditions.

For the cultivation of certain blood spirochetes, which can be secured directly from the blood, liquid ascitic fluid and animal tissue covered with paraffin but without agar is a suitable medium.

Classification of Spirochetes.—Certain species have been removed from the genus *Spirochæta* and new genera created for them by certain authors. These names are so common in literature that their meaning should be known. It may here be again

emphasized that the name *Spirochæta*, as used in the discussion of the various species below, includes all of these genera.

Spirochæta (in Narrow Sense).—Organism with an exceedingly slender, spiral, flattened body, with a narrow, undulating membrane that surrounds the entire body in a spiral. No flagella and no spores are produced. Reproduction probably occurs by longitudinal division.

Spiroschaudinnia.—Blood parasites. Minute wavy or spiral threads, with undulating membrane and no flagella. Free motile stage alternates with a stage in which the organism is coiled up in one of the host-cells. Developmental stages have been demonstrated in the intermediate host. The life-history is imperfectly known.

Treponema.—Spiral body, not flattened, tapering at the ends. Flagellum at each pole. No undulating membrane. Multiplication by longitudinal division. Does not stain with common aqueous anilin dyes: special staining methods are required.

The following organisms described as belonging to this group are of sufficient economic importance to warrant their consideration here: *Spirochæta obermeieri, Sp. duttoni, Sp. pallida, Sp. pertenuis*, in man; *Sp. anserina* (*Sp. gallinarum*), in geese and other fowls; *Sp. theileri*, in cattle; *Sp. ovina*, in sheep, and *Sp. hyos*, in swine.

All the members of this group may be characterized as slender, spiral threads, motile by sinuous movements, cultivable only by special means and in some cases difficult to stain, requiring special technic.

Spirochæta obermeieri

Synonyms.—*Spiroschaudinnia recurrentis; Spirillum obermeieri; Sp. recurrentis.*

Diseases Produced.—Relapsing fever, recurrent fever, spirillosis in man.

Obermeier, in 1873, published his discovery of a large spiral organism in the blood of patients suffering from relapsing fever. Since that time it has been repeatedly observed, and several similar species have been described infecting man, differing principally in their pathogenicity for small animals, and the fact that immunity to one does not immunize against the other.

Distribution.—The disease is known from Europe, and occurs in isolated cases in many parts of the world.

Morphology and Staining.—*Spirochæta obermeieri* is a very slender, tapering spiral. It is about 0.4 μ in diameter, and varies greatly in length. It is always many times as long as broad. There are from two to ten spirals or turns in the organism, as commonly observed. It is motile, with a very rapid, screw-like motion and a waving motion of the entire organism. The organism may be observed in the living condition. It is best stained by the Romanowsky method or some modification of it.
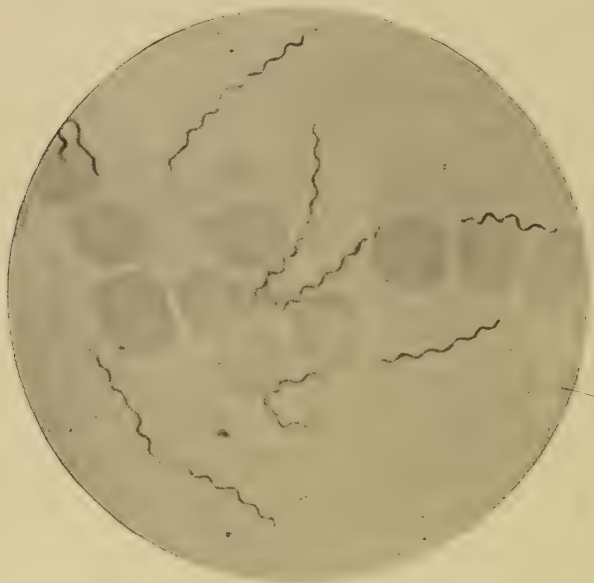
Fig. 161.—*Spirochæta obermeieri* from the blood of a rat (Novy and Knapp, in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

Isolation and Culture.—Noguchi succeeded in cultivating this organism in ascitic fluid in which sterile rabbit kidney was immersed, the whole covered with paraffin oil and incubated at 37°. Hata claims to have secured a similar result by mixing half-coagulated horse serum with double the volume of physiologic salt solution, using this as a substitute for ascitic fluid. Furthermore, he found that the reddish yellow coagulum which forms in such serum may be used in place of the kidney tissue.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The organism is pathogenic for man, monkeys, mice, and rats. The most practicable method of maintaining a culture is by repeated transfers of the organism from one animal to another.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The disease in man is characterized by pains in the head and back and by high fever. This is followed by a complete apparent recovery. A second attack, or relapse, occurs usually in about a week, then a third, and even more. The relapses tend to decrease in intensity. The spirochetes are to be found in large numbers during the relapses, though usually in diminished numbers.

Immunity.—No specific toxin has been demonstrated. An attack of the disease confers an active immunity. Repeated injections of blood containing spirochetes result, in the rat, in the development of a hyperimmunity. Immune and hyperimmune blood may be used in conferring a passive immunity. The agencies responsible for the development of immunity are not well understood.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be found in fresh preparation or in stained mounts of the blood during a paroxysm.

Transmission.—The disease is supposed to be transmitted by the bite of an infected bed-bug (*Acanthia lectularia*), possibly by the clothing louse (*Pediculus vestimenti*). Toyoda found that the organisms could penetrate the intestinal wall of the louse and multiply in the body cavity.

Spirochæta duttoni

Synonyms.—*Spiroschaudinnia duttoni; Spirillum duttoni.*

Disease Produced.—West African tick fever in man.

Ross and Milne, and Dutton and Todd, working independently in 1904, demonstrated the presence of this spirochete in the blood of individuals infected with this disease. Morphologically it resembles the preceding closely, but is usually longer and more loosely coiled. It has been claimed to possess diffuse flagella. The disease is transmitted by the bite of a tick (*Ornithodoros moubata*).

Noguchi has succeeded in cultivating this organism by the

same methods used for *Spirillum recurrentis*. There is no visible alteration in the culture-medium except a faint opalescence.

Life Cycle.—The work of Leishman, Todd, and others indicates that the spirochetes, when taken into the body of the tick, undergo a kind of nuclear fragmentation into chromatin granules, which find their way through the wall of the digestive tract into the various organs, principally to the malpighian tubules and the ovaries. These same granules may be demonstrated in the eggs
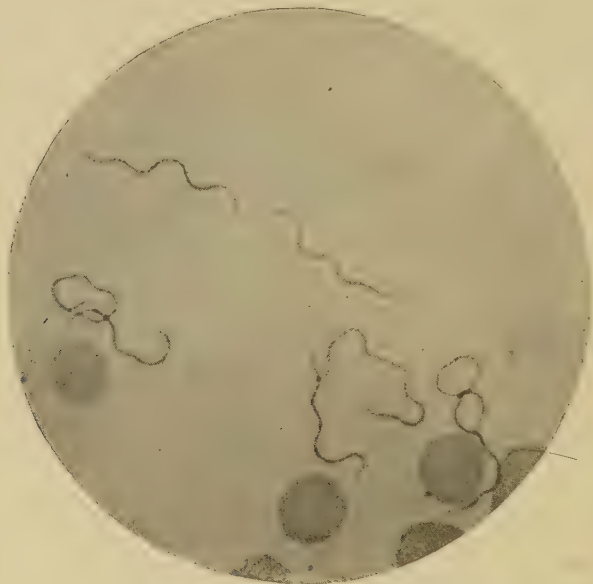
Fig. 162.—*Spirochæta duttoni* from the blood of a rat (Novy and Knapp, in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

of infected females, and the nymphs are able to transmit the disease. Leishman believes that holding the tick at a temperature of 34°, or even blood-heat, causes these granules to develop into small spirochetes. They are exuded from the body through the coxal glands and the fluid secretion of the malpighian tubules, and gain entrance to the wound caused by the tick bite after the tick has loosed its hold, and not through the salivary glands. It is possible that a cycle of changes of this type may account for the relapses that occur in the disease.

Immunity.—Leishman succeeded in establishing an active immunity in a monkey that recovered from the disease by causing infected ticks to feed upon it at intervals.

Spirochæta kochi

This organism, causing East African tick fever, has been found to be distinct from that causing the West Coast fever. To the former type the name *Spirochæta kochi* has been given. Other related types of organisms causing relapsing fever have been described; that described by Novy and Knapp has been called *Spirochæta novyi*. It is probable that a disease found in India is caused by still another organism.

Spirochæta anserina (or gallinarum)

Synonyms.—*Spirillum anserina; Spirochæta gallinarum; Sp. Marchouxi; Sp. nicollei; Sp. granulosa.*

Disease Produced.—Spirochetosis, spirillosis, or septicemia in geese and domestic fowls.

Sacharoff, in 1890, described the *Spirochæta anserina* as the cause of an acute septicemia in geese, and the same organism was studied by Gabritschewsky in 1898. Marchoux and Salimbeni, in 1903, reported a septicemia or spirochetosis of domestic fowls in Brazil. Since that time similar organisms have been reported from many places. There is considerable difference of opinion as to the identity of the spirochetes isolated from the goose and the domestic fowl, and from the latter in various parts of the world. The peculiarities in virulence are such that the problem can be solved only with considerable difficulty. The organisms are morphologically identical. They are at least closely related, and are, therefore, grouped together. The name *Sp. anserina* was the one first used, and, therefore, has priority. The name *Sp. gallinarum*, however, is more commonly met with in literature.

Distribution.—The disease has been reported from Russia and the Caucasus, Hungary, northern, central, and southern Africa, southern Asia, and South America. It probably is wide-spread.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism of fowl spirillosis is a tenuous spiral 10 to 20 μ in length, with an average of one spiral per micron in length. It is actively motile. No flagella have

been demonstrated. According to Balfour, the organism undergoes changes in the body of the intermediary host, the tick (*Argas persicus*) corresponding closely to those described above for *Sp. duttoni* in the tick (*Ornithodorus moubata*). The organism produces the same characteristic chromatin granules. Chicks inoculated with material showing these granules, but no spirochetes, are found to develop typical spirochetosis.

The organism may be easily demonstrated when living and motile. Carbol-fuchsin, Leishman, and Giemsa's stains may be used in the preparation of mounts.
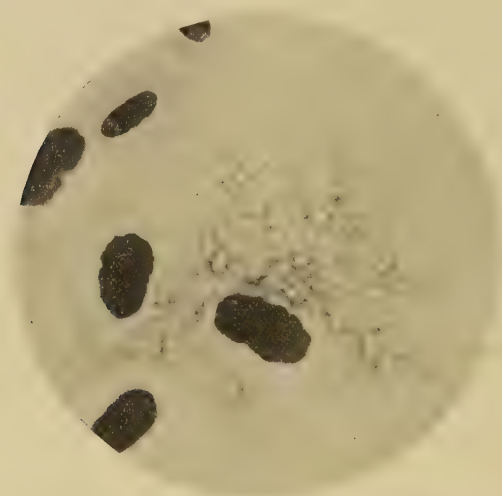
Fig. 163.—*Spirochæta anserina* (*gallinarum*). An agglutinated group from the blood of a fowl (Novy and Knapp, in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

Isolation and Culture.—Noguchi has cultivated this organism by his ascitic fluid-tissue method.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Many birds may be infected by inoculation, among them the goose, duck, fowl, guineafowl, turtle-dove, sparrow, and other birds; usually not the pigeon, although there is disagreement on this point. The rabbit, white mouse, guinea-pig, monkey, horse, and man are not susceptible. Each of the various types described have usually showed the greatest virulence for the species of bird from which it was originally

described, and many variations in virulence have been observed. It is believed that transfer through the intermediary host is necessary for the retention of virulence.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The disease is characterized as a true septicemia; Levaditi has shown that the organisms also invade the intercellular spaces in various organs. The disease runs an acute course, marked by fever. Young fowls may show relapses, but the adults rarely. In this respect the disease differs from that caused by *Spirochæta obermeieri* in man. The organisms are present in the blood in great numbers during the crisis. They rapidly disappear during convalescence. The mortality varies from 80 per cent. or more in some outbreaks to a small percentage in others.

Immunity.—It is probable that agglutinins are formed, but the difficulty of getting suspensions of the spirochete is so great that the question has not been adequately tested. Immunity is developed by an attack of the disease followed by recovery, but to what agencies this is due is not certainly known. Marchoux and Salimbeni heated blood from infected fowls for five minutes at 55°, and succeeded in establishing immunity by its injection.

Transmission.—The disease is commonly transmitted from one fowl to another by the ticks *Argas persicus*, *A. miniatus*, and possibly *A. reflexus*. The louse is believed also, by Balfour, to be an intermediary host. The latter author found that spirochetes could be demonstrated in the salivary glands of the tick in fourteen days after injection. The necessity for a definite incubation period has not been shown.

Spirochæta theileri

Synonyms.—*Spirillum theileri; Sp. ovina; Spirochæta ovis; Sp. equi.*

Disease Produced.—Spirillosis in cattle, sheep, and horses.

Theiler, in 1902, discovered a spirochete in the blood of cattle in South Africa. It has been found since that time in Cameroon, East Africa, and Annam. The organism is 0.25 to 0.4 μ by 10 to 30 μ. It resembles the preceding morphologically. The disease is a benign infection, and the organisms soon disappear. It is transmitted by the bite of a tick (*Rhipicephalus decoloratus*).

Theiler, in 1904, reported the occurrence of a spirochete similar to *Spirochæta theileri* in the blood of sheep in the Transvaal. It was later found in northern Africa. Novy and Knapp have proposed the name *Spirillum (Spirochæta) ovis* for this form. The same investigator described a spirochete associated with a disease of the horse in South Africa, and later it was reported from the west coast. Novy and Knapp term this *Spirochæta equi*. Todd and others, by cross inoculations, have demonstrated that these organisms from the horse, sheep, and ox all belong to the same species.

Spirochæta pallida

Synonyms.—*Spirillum pallidum; Treponema pallidum.*

Disease Produced.—Syphilis in man.

Schaudinn and Hoffmann, in 1905, described the organism which is now generally accepted as the cause of syphilis. Prior to that date many organisms had been described as possible causes, but all are now known either to be secondary invaders or commensals.

Distribution.—The disease is widely distributed among all civilized peoples.

Morphology and Staining.—The *Spirochæta pallida* is a slender organism, less than 0.5 μ in diameter and 4 to 20 μ in length. The spirals are quite regular, and vary in number from three to forty. A flagellum has been detected at each pole. The organism is actively motile. Multiplication is probably by transverse division, although longitudinal division is said to occur. The organism is so slender, and stains with such difficulty, that there are many unsettled points relative to its morphology. Whether or not it may pass through a cycle of changes that would mark it as certainly protozoan is not definitely known.

The common anilin dyes used in bacteriologic work fail to demonstrate this organism in tissues or in smears. The India-ink method of demonstrating spirochetes may be used as a simple procedure for showing the organisms in smears. This consists in allowing a thin film of India ink to dry upon the smear. The organisms do not take up the ink, and may be recognized as transparent spirals in the black field. They may also be stained by Giemsa's eosin and azur stains. The stain must be freshly

prepared. Very satisfactory results are achieved by impregnation with silver, particularly for the demonstration of the organism in tissues.

Isolation and Culture.—Noguchi succeeded in securing pure cultures by his ascitic fluid-agar-tissue method.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The organism may always be found in the primary and secondary lesions of syphilis, and has been repeatedly demonstrated in the tertiary as well, although it is much more difficult to find in the latter stage. It
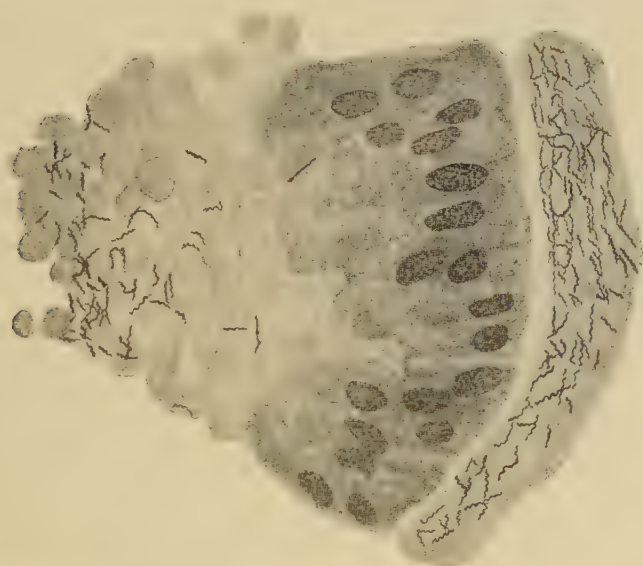
Fig. 164.—*Spirochœta pallida* in the lumen of a bronchus in congenital syphilis (Hedrén).

may be found in the internal organs of a syphilitic fetus. An infection has been produced in the cornea and the iris of the rabbit, and the organism shown to be present. The primary and secondary lesions of the disease have been produced in the monkey, particularly in the anthropoid apes, and the spirochetes found in each of the stages. The evidence is very strong, therefore, that *Spirochœta pallida* is the cause of syphilis. Until the organisms can be injected in pure cultures and produce the disease this evidence cannot, however, become indisputable.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—In man the primary lesion in the form of a chancre appears in about three weeks after infection, usually on or near the external genitalia. It is followed by invasion of the neighboring lymphatics and by progressive enlargement of the lymph-nodes as the disease progresses. Usually about six weeks elapse between the appearance of the primary and secondary lesions. These latter are probably dependent upon an invasion of the blood, and consist of localized skin eruptions, falling of the hair (alopecia), and the symptoms of generalized infection, such as fever. This may last for several years and an immunity be established, which, however, may not be complete enough to prevent gradual sclerosis of blood-vessel walls and degenerations in the parenchymatous organs, and even the appearance of tertiary lesions.

Immunity.—No practicable method of either active or passive immunization against the disease has been developed by the use of the organism or its products.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—This may be accomplished by direct examination, stained mounts, the Wassermann test, or by chemical recognition of certain changes in the character and composition of the blood-serum. The organisms may be observed in the fluid expressed from fresh tissues by use of dark-field illumination. Smears may be prepared and stained with Giemsa's stain, or tissue sections may be used.

The Wassermann test for syphilis has already been described in the discussion of fixation of complement in the section on Immunity. As an antigen, extracts from the organs of a fetus are used, for in these organs the spirochetes are found in the greatest numbers. The blood-serum of the suspected patient is tested for its possible content of specific amboceptor with fresh guinea-pig serum for complement, sheep red blood-cells, and the serum from a rabbit possessing hemolytic amboceptor for these erythrocytes. The test requires considerable care and must be checked at every step. It has been found in practice to give quite reliable data. The test has been modified in many ways since first proposed.

Noguchi has prepared an antigen from pure cultures of *Spirochæta pallida*. He has found that he could obtain positive tests

only in isolated cases of long-standing syphilis which had been treated, and that the positive reactions obtained in active cases were not due to antibodies that combine specifically with such antigen. Craig and Nichols have shown that serum from untreated cases of syphilis give positive reaction against syphilitic liver extract, but negative against the pallida antigen. This material, which Noguchi terms *luetin*, has also been used in a dermal test for syphilis.

Various substances, such as 1 per cent. solutions of lecithin, sodium oleate, sodium glycocholate, and taurin have been found to give more or less characteristic precipitates with the blood of syphilitics.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted usually through sexual congress, rarely through infective drinking-vessels, closets, and by direct inoculation, as sometimes happens in surgical work. The disease may be present at birth; the organism may possibly enter through the ovum or the sperm, or pass from the circulation of the mother to that of the fetus.

Spirochæta pertenuis

.**Synonym.**—*Treponema pertenue.*

Disease Produced.—Yaws in man.

Castellani, in 1905, reported the occurrence of spirochetes in a tropical disease known as yaws. The organism resembles that of syphilis, but is probably distinct, as shown by inoculation experiments and study of specific antigens and antibodies in comparison with those of syphilis.

OTHER SPIROCHETES

Dodd, in 1906, found a spirochete in a disease of the pig in South Africa. It was associated principally with dark, hemorrhagic lesions of the skin.

Spirochetes may be found in considerable numbers in the mouth, and, under certain conditions, in the intestinal tract, upon the skin, and about the genitalia. They are, for the most part, believed to be harmless commensals.

CHAPTER XXXVII

ACTINOMYCES GROUP

The members of this group are often called *Trichomycetes* or thread fungi. In many of their morphologic characters they resemble bacteria. Frequently they occur as short rods that cannot be differentiated by examination from true bacilli. Usually, however, they occur in threads, which in some genera may be branched. These threads may show more or less differentiation into parts, and certain portions may develop into conidia or spores. These organisms show a more complex life-history, therefore, than do the true bacteria. On the other hand, they can scarcely be grouped with the true molds, as they are much simpler in structure. They may be considered as a group, therefore, related closely to both bacteria and molds and partaking of the nature of each.

These organisms show such diversity of morphology in the animal body and in culture-media that a satisfactory classification into species and genera is a difficult problem. Many generic names have been proposed. They will all here be regarded as belonging to the genus *Actinomyces*.

Several organisms are included in this genus, as here discussed, that may be shown to belong to the bacilli and not to the trichomycetes.

Many species of organisms of this group are known from the descriptions of a single author only. It is difficult to determine from these descriptions how many are valid species and how many merely synonyms. The facts seem to be that Actinomyces are widely distributed in nature. They may be isolated in abundance from most soils, and may be found to develop upon almost any plate of medium exposed to the air. Only under exceptional conditions are they pathogenic, but it is probable that the species usually described as such are normally saprophytes that can upon occasion proliferate in the tissues of the body and produce disease. The fact that cattle become infected through the gums or tongue, where the awns of certain grasses penetrate, that the barley testers, who bite the barley grain to determine its brewing

quality, are most frequently infected among men in temperate climates, that injuries to the feet of natives of certain tropical countries (where no adequate protection is worn on the feet) are frequently followed by local infections, and that Actinomyces have
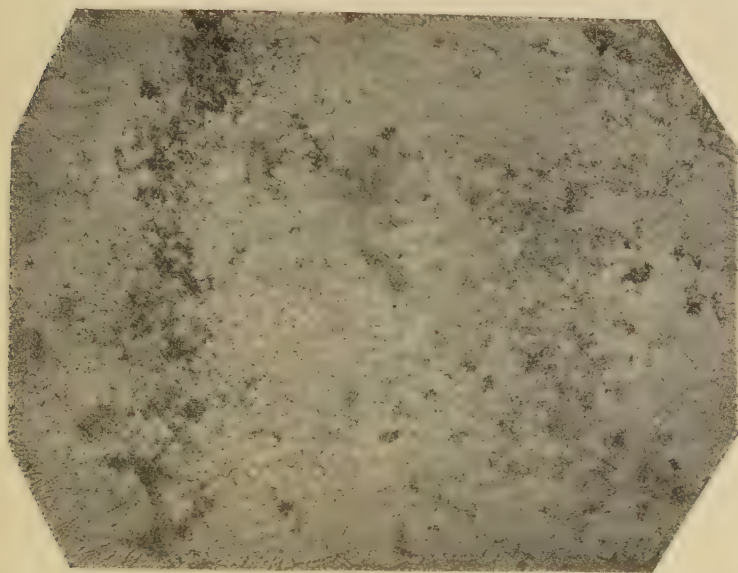
Fig. 165.—*Actinomyces calicolor*, a non-pathogenic trichomycete from the soil. A ring colony on a semisolid medium showing filaments and aërial hyphæ (Müller).

been found causing infections in practically all domestic animals by one investigator or another is evidence of the wide distribution of the members of the genus. The species to be described are *Actinomyces bovis* and *A. nocardia* in cattle, *A. capræ* in goats, *A. maduræ*, and *A. eppingeri* in man.

The group, as a whole, may be characterized as consisting of slender, branching organisms, which may develop into colonies made up not only of threads but rods, cocci, and other cell forms. Frequently, in animal tissues, and sometimes upon artificial media, the ends of the threads may be clubbed. When grown upon the surface of artificial media some forms develop aërial hyphæ, which segment into chains of conidia. All species retain the Gram

28

stain to a greater or less degree. Some are aërobic, others facultative, and still others obligate anaërobes. Pigments are produced by some species.

Actinomyces bovis

Synonyms.—*Streptothrix bovis; Cladothrix actinomyces; Streptothrix actinomyces; Discomyces bovis.*
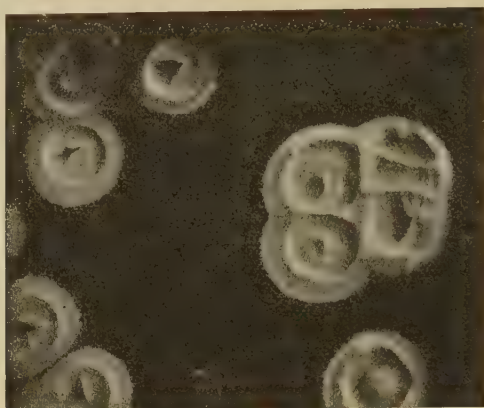
Fig. 166.—*Actinomyces cœlicolor.* Colony on agar. This colony structure is quite typical of many species (Müller).

Disease Produced.—Lumpy jaw and wooden tongue (actinomycosis) in cattle, and probably related infections in other animals and man.

Harz, in 1878, gave the name Actinomyces to the ray-fungus, which Bollinger, in the preceding year, had found present in the characteristic tumor-like growths in cattle.

Distribution.—The infection is known from Europe and North and South America.

Morphology and Staining.—In the infected tissues the organism forms minute yellowish granules, sometimes large enough to be readily observed by the unaided eye. These granules are made up of compact masses of the organisms. Branched filaments, with a more or less radial arrangement, are to be observed occupying the central portion, commonly mixed with coccus-like degeneration products. The margin of the granule or rosette, when examined in cross-section, is found to consist of club-like enlargements of the threads, showing a marked refractivity to light. The filaments

are slender, usually about 0.5 μ in diameter. It is believed that
the formation of the clubbed ends is correlated in some way with
the resistance of tissue to invasion. They have been variously
regarded as degeneration products, involution forms, and as indi-
cating a thickening of the sheath to protect the organism against
antibodies produced by the tissues. Young colonies on artificial
media consist of interlacing, branched threads, which tend to form
compact masses. These commonly break up into bacillus-like
segments, in a manner not unlike the formation of certain spores
among higher fungi, by segmentation of the hyphal threads.
Whether or not these correspond to the oïdial type of spore pro-
duced in the higher fungi, or represent spores at all, is not known.
The clubbed type rarely develops in artificial media. The organism
stains readily with the common anilin dyes and is Gram-positive.
It is not acid fast.

Isolation and Culture.—
The organism is not easily iso-
lated in pure cultures, par-
ticularly when it occurs in
mixed cultures with pyogenic
cocci in the lesions. Wright
has described a technic which
he found quite uniformly suc-
cessful. Pus or tissues con-
taining the organism in fila-
mentous rosettes is preferable
to that containing only the
clubbed type, as in the latter
degeneration has gone so far
that frequently no growth will
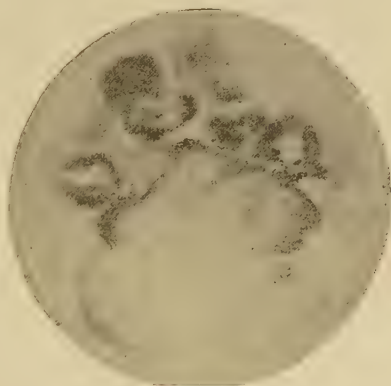
Fig. 167.—*Actinomyces bovis,* tissue
section showing the radial arrangement
and the clubbing of threads (Günther).

occur. The granules are washed in sterile water, crushed be-
tween sterile slides, and inoculated in varying amounts into
tubes of melted 1 per cent. dextrose agar, and incubated at 37°.
In his experience the colonies developed characteristically from
5 to 12 mm. below the surface, but others have found them to
form quite as well upon the surface of the medium. Isolated
colonies may then be transferred to other media. In bouillon
the organism forms distinct, solid, spherical, or mulberry-like

masses at the bottom of the tube. Growth is secured with difficulty upon the surface of the medium, according to Wright, but other investigators have not experienced the same difficulty. It forms on agar and glycerin agar colonies, which at first resemble tiny drops of amber; these enlarge, and either remain discrete or coalesce to form a distinctly wrinkled, "lichen-like" membrane, which frequently has a dusty appearance. Gelatin is slowly liquefied.

Physiology.—The organism may be regarded as a facultative aërobe, as growth appears to take place best under anaërobic conditions. The optimum growth temperature is 37°. The organism is resistant to desiccation and will live for a long period, probably months, in a dried condition. Gelatin is liquefied. There is no gas- or acid-production. A brown to black pigment may be produced.
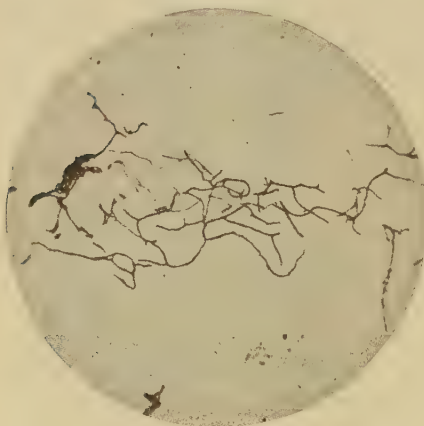
Fig. 168.—*Actinomyces bovis* (*Streptothrix actinomyces*), stained mount from culture-medium (Musgrave, Clegg, and Polk, in "Philippine Journal of Science").

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—In the great majority of cases experimental inoculation is without result. Many animals have been used— cattle, sheep, swine, dogs, cats, rabbits, and guinea-pigs. In relatively a few cases significant lesions have been developed. Musgrave, Clegg, and Polk have produced extensive suppurative lesions by intraperitoneal inoculation of the monkey, the infection terminating fatally in about three weeks. The common lack of pathogenesis may be due to differences in resistance, to a diminution of virulence due to cultivation, or to the manner of inoculation. In cattle it may gain entrance with a grass awn, and this may protect it from the destructive agencies of the tissues until its pathogenicity is well established.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—A swelling or

tumor-like mass develops in cattle at the site of infection. This softens and ultimately discharges thick, yellowish pus. The discharge after the lesion has opened may become intermittent in character. When the tongue is the primary seat of infection it becomes swollen, indurated, and protrudes from the mouth in some cases. The bones of the jaw are often attacked. The infection is chronic. Animals rarely die from immediate effects. In a few instances metastatic infection of other parts of the body than the head and neck have been reported.

In man the disease usually attacks the softer tissues, progresses more rapidly than in cattle, and is apt to terminate fatally from metastatic infection. Whether or not the organism isolated from human actinomycosis is the same as that found in cattle is uncertain. The same may be said of the forms that have been isolated from similar infections in other animals, among them the horse, dog, and pig.

Immunity.—No method of immunization against the disease has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—A microscopic examination of the unstained pus will usually reveal the characteristic granules, with the radial arrangement of clubs or of tangled bits of branched threads. A film stained by Gram's method will bring the latter out clearly when present in small numbers only.

Transmission.—It is believed that the organism commonly enters the body through a trauma, through carious teeth, or by being carried into the tongue or the gum with the sharp awns of certain grasses and grains. So far as known the disease is wholly non-contagious.

Actinomyces nocardii

Synonyms.—*Streptothrix nocardii; Actinomyces farcinica; Streptothrix farcinica; Nocardia farcinica.*

Disease Produced.—Bovine farcy. Farcin du bœuf.

Nocard, in 1888, first described an Actinomyces or Streptothrix from the lesions of cattle in Guadeloupe suffering from a disease termed bovine farcy. The disease itself has not been adequately studied, although the organism has been investigated by several workers. There is no record of its occurrence in the United States.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism is slender, much branched, and interwoven. In culture-media short, plump filaments with branches may occur, and in old cultures many ovoid cells are found. The organism is Gram-positive, and many portions, particularly in old cultures, are acid fast and also alcohol fast.

Isolation and Culture.—It may be isolated in pure culture from lesions directly upon artificial media. The colonies upon agar
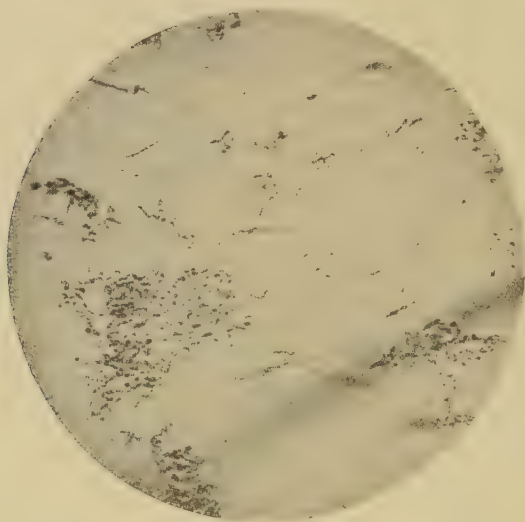
Fig. 169.—*Actinomyces nocardia*, stained mount from culture (Musgrave, Clegg, and Polk, in "Philippine Journal of Science").

are small, white, irregular, raised, and opaque. Upon glycerin agar they are at first delicate, but soon coalesce and present a moist, meal-like growth. Bouillon is never clouded, but a grayish, flocculent mass forms at the bottom. Milk is unchanged.

Physiology.—The organism is a facultative aërobe. It develops best at 37°. It is resistant to desiccation and maintains its virulence when cultivated.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Guinea-pigs are easily infected by intraperitoneal injections. The organism produces numerous nodules resembling tubercles upon the peritoneum and the abdominal organs, particularly the liver, spleen, and

kidneys. Intravenous injection gives rise to a condition resembling generalized miliary tuberculosis. Intraperitoneal injection of the monkey gives rise to similar lesions. Cattle and sheep develop, at the point of a subcutaneous inoculation, an abscess which dis-
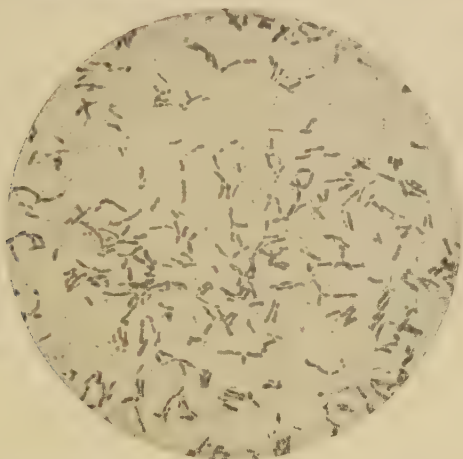
Fig. 170.—*Actinomyces capræ*, stained mount from culture (Musgrave, Clegg, and Polk, in "Philippine Journal of Science").

charges, ulcerates, and may disappear, to reappear after an interval.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The disease in cattle is characterized by an enlargement of the superficial lymph-nodes, which ulcerate and have much the appearance of farcy in the horse. The internal organs may be affected, with a resultant pseudo-tuberculosis.

Immunity.—Methods of immunization have not been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be recognized in preparations from the lesions, but, for differentiation from other Actinomyces or Streptothrices, culture and animal inoculation are necessary.

Transmission.—The disease is probably transmitted by wound infection, but this is not certainly known.

Actinomyces capræ

Synonyms.—*Streptothrix capræ* and possibly *S. canis*.

Disease Produced.—Actinomycosis (streptothricosis) in goats, possibly in the dog.

Silberschmidt, in 1899, publishes a description of an organism belonging to this group, which he isolated from a goat affected with a disease which closely simulated tuberculosis. It has been studied by several other investigators, who are in agreement that it should be regarded as a distinct species.

Morphology and Staining.—Morphologically, it resembles the true bacteria more than other members of this group. The filaments are comparatively short and show little tendency to form tangled masses, but separate easily. Both in culture and in the lesions rod forms and cocci are predominant. It stains with the anilin dyes rather irregularly, and is alcohol and acid fast.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism grows rather readily upon most of the laboratory media, so that isolation is not a matter of difficulty. Upon agar the growth appears in two to three days as small, brownish colonies. It is somewhat more luxuriant upon glycerin and maltose agar, the colonies coalescing to give the growth a moist, mealy appearance. The colonies are light brown in color. Growth upon potato is similar. In bouillon the colonies develop upon the surface as fine dry disks, and form a pellicle, which finally settles as a sediment, the broth remaining clear.

Physiology.—The organism is a facultative aërobe.

Pathogenesis.—The organism produces tubercle-like lesions in the rabbit, guinea-pig, and monkey upon inoculation. It is not of any considerable economic importance.

Actinomyces necrophorus

Synonyms.—*Bacillus diphtheriæ vitulorum; B. filiformis; Streptothrix cuniculi; Actinomyces cuniculi; B. necroseos; Streptothrix necrophora; Bacillus necrophorus.*

Diseases Produced.—A large number of diphtheritic and necrotic pathologic conditions in animals, necrobacillosis.

Löffler, in 1894, described this organism from calf diphtheria. Later Schütz found it associated with the intestinal ulcerations of hog-cholera. It is now known to produce spontaneous disease in birds and in both domestic and wild animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, antelope, reindeer, horse, deer, roe, swine, kangaroo, guinea-pig, dog, monkey, and fowl.

Distribution.—Bang succeeded in demonstrating the presence of this organism in the feces of normal hogs, but not in the intestinal contents of the cow. It is probably rather widely distributed in some localities. The infection has been described from various sections of Europe and America.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism is a long, slender rod, usually bent more or less, although short rods and filaments may be observed. It is about 0.7 to 1.5 μ in diameter, and is generally thicker in cultures than in tissues. The filaments vary between 2 and 100 μ. In the tissues and colonies the filaments are matted together, but definite branching has not been satisfactorily demonstrated. The stained rods are usually beaded, giving rise to a very characteristic appearance. Involution forms, as long clubs, frequently occur. The organism is non-motile and does not produce spores or capsules. It stains readily with the common anilin dyes, but is Gram-negative.

Jensen has developed the following method of staining the organism in tissues: The piece of tissue is fixed in Müller's fluid, washed, and hardened in alcohol. The sections are stained some minutes in toluidin-safranin, dehydrated with a concentrated alcoholic solution of safranin, and decolorized in a concentrated solution of fluorescin in clove oil, then in clove oil, alcohol, counterstained in aqueous methyl-green, dehydrated by alcohol, xylol, and mounted in balsam. The necrosis bacilli are stained red, the tissue, green. None of the other bacilli studied by Jensen give this reaction.

The peculiarities of staining, and the possession of easily stained granules, or of a vacuolate protoplasm, have caused some authors to group this germ with the diphtheria bacillus, but these appearances are even more characteristic of certain of the Actinomyces, particularly those isolated from soil.

Isolation and Culture.—*Actinomyces necrophorus* is most easily isolated in pure culture by inoculating diseased tissue into rabbits or white mice. The pure culture may then be secured from the infected organs. The cultural characters are all modified by the fact that the organism is a strict anaërobe.

Colonies may develop upon the surface of serum agar plates if the oxygen is removed by the alkaline pyrogallate method, but not, according to Mohler and Morse, in an atmosphere of hydrogen or in a vacuum. They appear in forty-eight hours as minute,

dirty white, round, opaque colonies, with gas bubbles developing below the surface. In seventy-two hours the colony appears wooly, and the central portion, upon microscopic examination, is shown to be a felted mass of threads with a border of long, wavy filaments. The addition of serum to media increases materially the luxuriance of the growth. Bouillon becomes turbid, and then gradually clears, with subsidence of the organism. Gelatin is not liquefied.

Physiology.—*Actinomyces necrophorus* is an obligate anaërobe. Its temperature growth limits are between 30° and 40°, with an optimum at about 35°. The organism is readily destroyed by

Fig. 170a.—*Actinomyces necrophorus* (Mohler, Bureau of Animal Industry, Circular No. 160).

disinfectants. No pigment is produced. A very characteristic odor, "between the odor of cheese and of glue," may be noted in both cultures and lesions. No enzymes capable of liquefying gelatin or blood-serum are produced. Gas is formed in bouillon. Milk is not coagulated nor are acids formed. Indol is produced.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Rabbits may be readily infected with the *Actinomyces necrophorus*. A subcutaneous injection of a small amount of necrosed tissue results in the death of the rabbit in about a week. The inoculated area is necrotic to some depth, and to a distance along the surface of $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch from the point of injection. The necrosis is complete and

the tissues wholly disintegrated. In some cases gas bubbles may be observed. The inoculation of pure cultures results in death more slowly; frequently two weeks are required. The animal dies suddenly after a series of convulsions. Mice are readily infected. Guinea-pigs are much more refractory, but occasionally die as a result of inoculation. There seems to be abundant experimental evidence to connect the *Actinomyces necrophorus* with many types of necrosis in animals. There is no evidence that the organism enters the normal healthy unbroken skin. It is usually a secondary invader.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—Mohler and Washburn have given an excellent résumé of the conditions under which this organism has been found. In many of these conditions it has not been satisfactorily established that this organism is the sole cause, for pyogenic cocci and other organisms may produce the same changes. More work is needed upon these infections. The possible presence of this organism in necrotic infections of all kinds must be borne in mind. The organism has been reported from the following infections, and probably in most cases is responsible for the accompanying necrosis: necrotic dermatitis, necrotic scratches in the horse, necrotic pox in horses, cattle, goats, and hogs, several types of necrosis in rabbits, necrosis of the hoof in the horse, necrosis of the mouth and esophagus, ulcerative and necrotic vulvitis, vaginitis, and metritis, foot-rot of cattle, lip and leg ulceration of sheep, necrotic omphalophlebitis, and joint ill in young animals, necrosis in the alimentary tract and other viscera in many animals, and possibly even avian diphtheria. It is sometimes of considerable economic significance, particularly in the so-called lip and leg ulceration of sheep. Some of the affections, particularly this latter, are known to be contagious. Much work still remains to be done, however, on the different infections and possible variations in virulence.

The lesions produced in all tissues have many common characters. They are essentially coagulation necroses with caseation. Metastatic infection is very apt to occur. The local lesion is described by Mohler and Morse as a "sharply circumscribed patch of yellowish or dull brown, sometimes greenish-white, homogeneous, structureless, dry, crumbly tissue débris of soft, cheesy consistence,

resembling compressed yeast, and manifesting a characteristic stench. The line of demarcation between the living tissue and the dead mass is a narrow hyperemic zone." A false membrane is formed over the surface as a "result of coagulation necrosis of the inflammatory exudate and entanglement in its meshes of the hyaline degenerated tissue-cells and leukocytes."

Immunity.—It has been suggested that the organism produces a true toxin because of its intense local destruction of tissue, and because of the death of laboratory animals with many of the symptoms of a toxemia. No toxin has been isolated, however, in spite
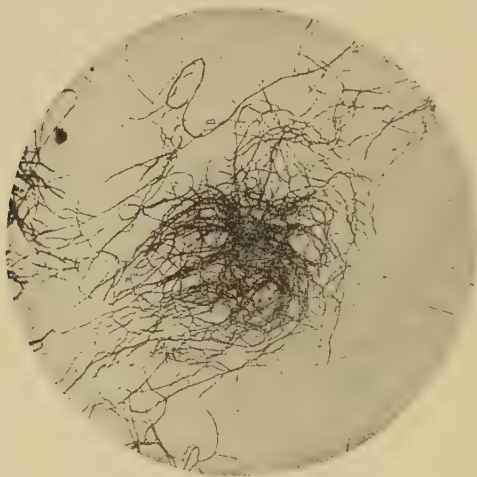
Fig. 171.—*Actinomyces maduræ*, stained mount from culture (Musgrave, Clegg, and Polk, in "Philippine Journal of Science").

of many attempts. Probably an endotoxin is produced. It is stated that intravenous injections of the organism into the goat confer an immunity. No practicable method of immunization has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be observed in mounts prepared from the tissue just surrounding the necrosed area. Its appearance is characteristic enough to differentiate it from other forms that may be present. Animal inoculations, preferably into the rabbit, are generally necessary to secure pure cultures.

Transmission.—It is improbable that the organism ever gains entrance through the unbroken skin or mucous membrane.

Scratches, wounds, abrasions, or injuries of other types supply an infection atrium. The disease, however, must be regarded as mildly contagious.

Actinomyces maduræ

Synonym.—*Streptothrix maduræ.*

Disease Produced.—Madura-foot, mycetoma, streptothricosis in man.

Vincent, in 1894, cultivated an Actinomyces from cases of mycetoma or madura-foot in man. This disease occurs in certain tropical countries, as southern Asia and the Philippines. It is undoubtedly a different species from those already described. It is not known to affect animals in nature, but will infect the monkey upon intraperitoneal inoculation.

ACTINOMYCES OF OTHER INFECTIONS

Probably about thirty or more other species have been described belonging to this genus. In most cases they have been reported but once or have been incompletely described. As has before been emphasized, careful work is still needed in order to determine the true number of valid species and their relationship to disease.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

BLASTOMYCETES

THE genus name *Blastomyces* is used to designate a group of pathogenic fungi having many points in common with the members of the genera Saccharomyces and possibly Torula. It is not certainly known that the forms thus classified are closely related among themselves, for it is a well-known fact that many of the Hyphomycetes, when grown in certain culture-media, will assume a form indistinguishable from the yeasts. It is possible, therefore, that some of the forms described as members of the genus Blasto-myces may be only growth stages of higher forms. Here, again, as has been emphasized in other groups, there is need still for careful morphologic and cultural studies of the various species that have been described, for some of them are very imperfectly known.

An understanding of the morphology of the Blasto-myces can best be obtained by a preliminary discussion of the Saccharomyces or true yeasts. The one character which sepa-rates this genus from the Hyphomycetes is the difference in the vegetative method of reproduction. This is accomplished by budding. The mother-cell is usually oval or round, and, at various points on its surface, produces small buds, which enlarge and soon separate as independent cells. Occasionally these cells may remain together and become considerably elongated. By continued budding from the tip, a chain of cells is formed simu-lating a mycelial thread of one of the Hyphomycetes. The
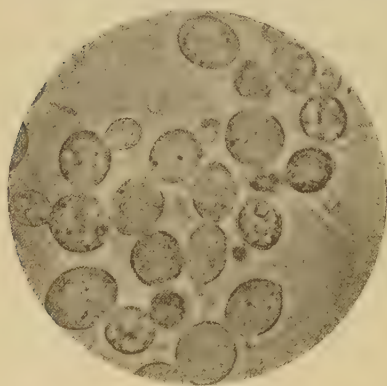
Fig. 172.—Brewer's yeast, *Saccharo-myces cerevisiæ* (Günther).

446

cell differs from that of a bacterium by the presence of a definite nucleus, which may be demonstrated by careful staining technic.

Spores are produced by some yeasts when the cells are brought under the right conditions of moisture, oxygen pressure, and temperature. Generally, two, four, or six are produced within a single cell. This type of spore formation relates such forms definitely to the higher fungi, known as Ascomycetes or sac fungi. In these fungi the spores are borne in a sac or *ascus*, and the cell of the yeast, with its contained spores, is supposed to represent a simple type of ascus. Resting cells, consisting of heavily walled or encapsulated cells filled with protein, glycogen, or oil-granules, are formed by many yeasts. These granules may resemble spores and have doubtless many times been mistaken for them. When brought under favorable conditions the cell, as a whole, begins again to produce buds, showing conclusively that the granules cannot be regarded as spores.

Among the true yeasts those which are not known to produce spores are sometimes placed in the form genus Torula. It is not customary to make this distinction among the pathogenic yeasts or Blastomyces, although it has been attempted by some authors. As here used, the term Blastomyces includes all those pathogenic forms which reproduce regularly by budding, and may or may not produce ascospores.

The organisms belonging to this group are *Blastomyces farciminosus*, *B. dermatitidis*, and *B. coccidioides*.

Blastomyces farciminosus

Synonyms.—*Cryptococcus farciminosus; Leishmania farciminosa.*

Disease Produced.—Blastomycetic epizoötic lymphangitis or pseudofarcy in the horse.

Rivolta, in 1873, first described the organism associated with this disease. Tokoshige, in 1897, cultivated the organism and determined its classification. It has been studied since that time by several investigators. Galli-Valerio contends that this organism is a protozoan and not a Blastomyces. There is a clinically

similar disease, since described in Europe and the United States as due to a member of the mold genus Sporotrichum. The organism described by Tokoshige should be reinvestigated. It is possible that it may prove to be a Sporotrichum also.

Distribution.—The disease is known from Italy, Egypt, Tunis, England, France, northern Europe, Japan, India, the Philippines, and possibly the United States (North Dakota, Iowa).

Morphology and Staining.—The organism as it occurs in tissues does not show budding forms ordinarily, but reproduces by a series of sporulations. In mounts prepared from the tissues it has a double refractive contour, which makes it stand out distinctly from the remainder, even when unstained. It is usually spherical or ovoid, 3 to 4 μ in diameter. The cell contents may be homogeneous or granular. In culture-media the organism consists

Fig. 173.—*Blastomyces far-ciminosus*, cells from culture-media (adapted from Tokoshige).

of hyphal and spherical forms. Cells with buds may be found, identifying the organism definitely with the Blastomycetes. Cells containing granules, and resembling closely the resting cells of the yeasts, are common. It has not been conclusively shown that true sporulation takes place in culture-media. The organism stains readily with aqueous anilin dyes and is Gram-positive. The latter method of staining is useful in demonstrating the organism in pus or tissues. The alcohol must not remain too long in contact with the organism or it will lose color.

Isolation and Culture.—The *Blastomyces farciminosus* is isolated upon culture-media with considerable difficulty. Several investigators, particularly those holding to the protozoan nature of the organism, deny that it has been accomplished. In view of the success which has attended the cultivation of an essentially similar organism in man, there seems no good reason to deny that Tokoshige and others have succeeded in securing it in pure cultures. A slightly acid medium is said to be more favorable than one which is alkaline. Growth is very slow in any event.

Bouillon finally shows a white, flocculent deposit.   Upon

the surface of agar, gray-white granular colonies make their appearance in the course of a month, and finally attain to a diameter of 1 to 4 mm. The colony is wrinkled, and can be removed only with difficulty. Growth upon gelatin is essentially similar. Potato seems somewhat more favorable, and growth occurs more rapidly, but is of the same character as on agar.

Physiology.—The organism is aërobic. Growth occurs at room-temperature as well as at 37°. It does not liquefy gelatin. Sugars are not fermented with production of either acid or gas.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Guinea-pigs and rabbits are not easily infected with pure cultures. Typical lesions have been produced in the horse by Tokoshige. They are readily produced by the injection of pus from natural infections.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The disease in the horse shows a marked superficial resemblance to farcy. The infection progresses through the subcutaneous lymphatics and forms distinct nodules. These may suppurate. Metastatic infection of the internal organs occasionally occurs.

Immunity.—No practicable method of immunization has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be readily observed in a mount of the pus from a lesion stained by Gram's method.

Transmission.—It is supposed that infection is traumatic, that the organism gains entrance through cutaneous lesions. The disease not highly contagious.

Blastomyces dermatitidis

Synonyms.—*Saccharomyces dermatitidis; Oïdium dermatitidis.*
Disease.—Blastomycetic dermatitis in man.

Busse, in 1894, first described an organism of this group as the cause of a fatal infection in man. Gilchrist, in 1896, found a similar organism as the cause of a dermatitis in man. Since that time the organism has been repeatedly isolated and studied.

Distribution.—Blastomycetic dermatitis has been reported from the United States, the Philippines, and Europe.

Morphology and Staining.—It is probable that several distinct

29

species have been grouped together; that is, not all cases have shown morphologically identical organisms to be present. They have not as yet been sufficiently studied to justify their separation as distinct species, but will be treated rather as one polymorphic form. Careful morphologic and cultural studies are still needed.

In the tissues the organisms appear almost invariably as budding forms. The cells are spherical or ovoid, from 10 to 17 μ in diameter. They are distinctly double contoured. Several investigators have observed what they believe to be sporulating forms. The cells are frequently granular or vacuolate, resembling
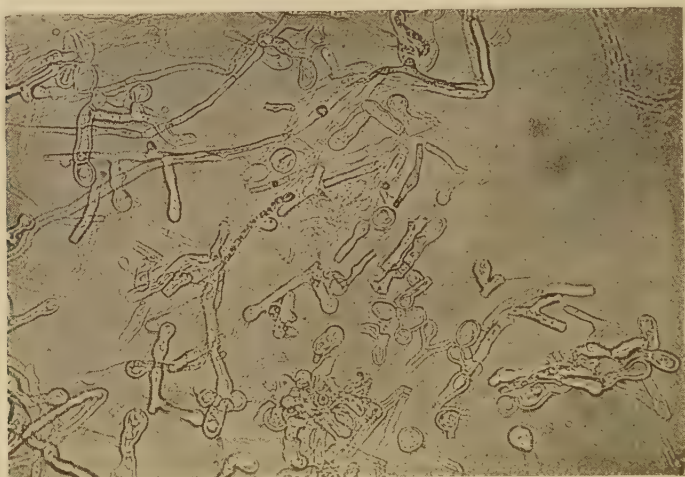
Fig. 174.—*Blastomyces dermatitidis.* Budding forms and mycelial growth from glucose agar (Irons and Graham, in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

typical yeast cells in this respect. Upon culture-media numerous hyphal threads and budding cells are produced.

The organisms do not stain very readily with the aqueous anilin dyes.

Isolation and Culture.—Isolation of the organism is usually attended with considerable difficulty. Blood-serum slants are usually employed and inoculated with material from the lesion. Repeated trials are sometimes necessary before a growth is secured. After once accustomed to growth on artificial media, no difficulty is found in getting the organism to develop upon most of the common culture-media.

Small white colonies showing a mold-like surface, due to the formation of numerous aërial hyphæ, develop upon the surface of agar. The addition of dextrose to the medium somewhat increases the luxuriance of the growth. In bouillon a fluffy, mold-like colony or a granular sediment develops without any evidence of the diffuse clouding generally found in yeast cultures. Gelatin is not liquefied. Milk may or may not show coagulation and slight digestion of the casein. Potato is a favorable medium.

Fig. 175.—*Blastomyces dermatitidis* (Hamburger, in "Journal of Infectious Diseases").

Physiology.—Growth occurs at room-temperatures, but somewhat more luxuriantly at 37°. The organism is aërobic and facultative anaërobic. Gas and acids are not produced in carbohydrate media.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Guinea-pigs and rabbits may be infected, with production of either a local abscess or generalized blastomycosis. The lesions resemble in their essential characters those found in the human body.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—In man a papule generally appears upon one of the extremities, the face, or more rarely,

elsewhere. A viscid pus is exuded, and there is commonly considerable enlargement. Healing with an abundant formation of cicatricial tissue gradually occurs. Usually the lymphatics are not involved, the disease differing in this respect from the lymphangitis of the horse. The course of the disease is usually chronic, and it may persist for years, new ulcers appearing successively on various parts of the body. Generalization has been reported in a considerable number of cases. The skin lesions have sometimes been confused with those of syphilis and tuberculosis. Primary infection of the lungs has been shown in several cases.

Immunity.—No method of establishing immunity has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—This may be accomplished by direct microscopic examination of the pus. Phalen and Nichols state that the organism may be most easily demonstrated by treating unstained sections with potassium hydrate and mounting in glycerin.

Transmission.—It is supposed that infection sometimes occurs through wounds, but several instances have come to light in which the infection was primarily pulmonary and the skin lesions secondary.

Blastomyces coccidioides

Synonym.—*Oïdium coccidioides.*

Disease Produced.—Blastomycosis, so-called coccidioidal granuloma in man.

Posades and Wernecke, in 1892, first reported a case of so-called coccidioidal granuloma from Argentina. In the United States the disease has been recorded principally from California, particularly in the San Joaquin Valley.

Morphology.—This form is of particular interest, because the budding or true blastomyces form very rarely occurs in the tissues and multiplication is almost wholly through sporulation. The organism in the tissues is spherical and doubly contoured. It may reach a diameter of 30 μ or even more. Budding forms have been recorded from pus. In artificial media the organism resembles a mold, but budding forms may be observed. The method of reproduction in tissues, by the formation of spores within the mother-cell and their liberation by a rupture of the cell membrane,

has led some investigators to believe that the organism is really a protozoan. However, sporulation of this general type occurs in the yeasts. The question seems to be definitely settled in favor of the plant hypothesis by the culture forms on artificial media.

Pathogenesis.—Whether this organism should be separated from the preceding is uncertain. Frequently no cutaneous lesions are produced; the infection is systemic and probably always fatal. Meningeal involvement is common.

CHAPTER XXXIX

MOLD OR HYPHOMYCETE GROUP

The term *Hyphomycete*, as usually interpreted, is one of convenience only, for within this group are included members of the four great divisions of fungi generally recognized by botanists. The members of the group are many times not closely related. They all resemble each other in having a plant body or *mycelium*, which consists of threads or *hyphæ* made up, in the majority of forms, of chains of cells. Reproduction is not generally by budding, although this may sometimes occur. The hyphæ themselves break up into spores, or spores are borne at the tips of hyphæ that have been differentiated for the purpose. The hyphæ may unite to form a more or less solid mass, sometimes tissue-like in appearance. This mass may remain viable when dried for a considerable time, and may function in much the same manner as a resistant spore in tiding the organism over unfavorable conditions. Such a structure is called a *sclerotium*. The names given to these various types of structures have already been discussed under the heading of Morphology in Section I.

The Hyphomycetes, for the most part, belong to the division of fungi termed *Fungi imperfecti* by the botanist. The name is derived from the fact that these fungi are not known to produce perfect or *sexual* spores. Hundreds of genera and thousands of species have been described as belonging to this group. Many of these are doubtless simply developmental stages of forms that are known under other names. The life-history of some fungi has been found to be so complex, and consists of so many stages, that five or six names have been applied and the different stages put in different groups of fungi, until it was found that all were the same polymorphic species. Unfortunately, careful morphological study has not been made of the pathogenic members of this group, and there is the greatest confusion in the nomenclature. The pathologists and bacteriologists who have de-

scribed the organisms have rarely paid any attention to their botanical relationships, and the organisms themselves, for the most part, have been ignored by the botanist in his classification.

As before stated, the possession of a more or less definite mycelium, a more or less "mold-like" growth, and the general production of spores are all that is needed to include an organism in the group. Many of the organisms of the group are very common in nature and are pathogenic only under exceptional conditions, while others have so adapted themselves to a parasitic existence that they may be regarded as obligate parasites. Many, too, have been noted once or twice only in certain pathologic conditions, and it is by no means certain that they were more than accidental parasites.

The genera of molds containing species of known pathogenicity are—

Aspergillus.
Penicillium.
Fusarium.
Sporotrichum.
Microsporon and Trichophyton.
Achorion.
Oïdium or Oöspora.

THE GENUS ASPERGILLUS

The Aspergilli are widely distributed in nature. They are abundant in the soil and on decaying materials of all kinds. Their spores are common in the air, and cultures may readily be secured in most localities by simple plate exposure. They are not, however, present in such numbers as the genus next to be described, Penicillium. Several hundred species have been described, and by some authors the genus is subdivided into two genera, *Aspergillus* and *Sterigmatocystis.*

Aspergillus is placed by the botanists among the Ascomycetes or sac fungi, because at one stage in the life-history sexual reproduction occurs, resulting in the formation of sacs filled with spores. This phase of the life-history has been worked out in but few species; however, it is probable that it occurs in all when grown under the right conditions.

The mycelium of Aspergillus is colorless and hyaline, much-branched, penetrating for a short distance into the substratum or medium, and usually sending up aërial hyphæ, which give the colony a floccose or downy appearance. The hyphæ are septate, that is, cross walls are formed and the cells are divided from each other by them. Asexual reproduction takes place by the formation of enlarged, erect, spore-bearing hyphæ, called *conidiophores*. These conidiophores are inflated at the tip and become covered
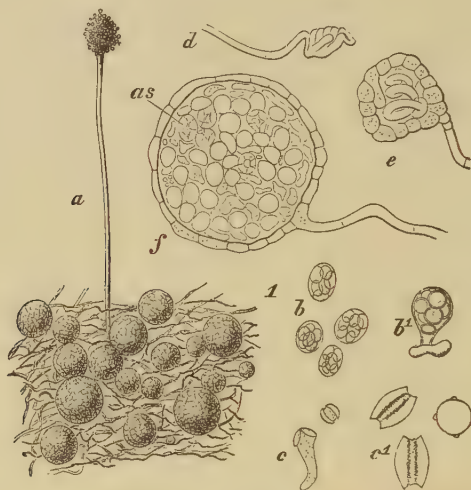
Fig. 176.—Morphology of the *Aspergillus glaucus: a*, Mycelia and perithecia on the surface of the medium, with a single conidiophore; *d*, a very young perithecium; *e*, cross-section through a perithecium, somewhat older; *f*, cross-section through a mature perithecium, showing the asci and the ascospores (*as*); *bb¹*, isolated asci; *cc¹*, ascospores ripe and germinating (*c b¹ d e f* after deBary, *a b c¹* after Wehmer).

with papillæ, which develop into short stalks, called *sterigmata* (singular, *sterigma*). The sterigmata may branch once or many times, giving rise to bunches of secondary sterigmata, or they may remain unbranched. The species with branched sterigmata are frequently grouped together into a genus *Sterigmatocystis*. From the tips of these sterigmata spores or conidia are abjointed and hang together to form long chains. The spore mass at the tip of the conidiophore is termed a *head*. The spores are usually colored green, brown, yellow, or black, or in a few species they are colorless.

They are spherical or oval in shape. Their surfaces are not easily wetted; they are easily detached, and are readily carried about by currents of air. This explains the readiness with which birds and some animals become infected in the respiratory tract when fed on moldy grain or fodder. When the spores come under favorable growth conditions they germinate and reproduce the mold.

If growth conditions are right, careful observation will enable one to discover the sexual stages in the reproduction. Two filaments, somewhat differentiated, begin to twist together until they form a typical cork-screw. The cell contents fuse and fertilization is effected. A tangled mass of threads arises about this cell, forming a compact layer or covering termed the *perithecium*. The enclosed cell grows rapidly, and produces a considerable number of enlarged cells, each of which eventually is found to contain spores, usually eight in number. These cells or sacs are called *asci* (singular *ascus*), and the spores are termed *ascospores*. These, like the conidia, when brought under favorable growth conditions, reproduce the mold. An Aspergillus may continue to multiply indefinitely without the sexual stage developing; it is not improbable that some species have altogether lost the power of reproducing other than by means of the conidia.

Several species of Aspergilli have been described as pathogenic. Doubtless these are normally saprophytes, and only produce disease under exceptional conditions.

Aspergillus fumigatus

Diseases Produced.—Aspergillosis of birds; pneumomycosis in man and many animals.

The occasional presence of Aspergillus in lung infections has been known since early in the nineteenth century. Probably Mayer and Emmet, in 1815, were the first to note its presence in the lungs of a bird, in this instance a jay. Since that time the organism has been reported many times. In most cases no careful species determination was made, but the probabilities are greatly in favor of *Aspergillus fumigatus* being the species responsible. Aspergillosis has been reported from the stork, raven, flamingo, eider-duck, parrot, pigeon, chicken, hawk, bullfinch, plover,

pheasant, bustard, duck, goose, ostrich, swan, and turkey among birds, from the horse, dog, and cow among animals, and from man. It has been reported from Europe and the United States.

Morphology.—In culture-medium it forms greenish or bluish gray or later brownish masses. The conidiophores are abundant, but short. The enlarged tip of the conidiophores is hemispheric, and 8 to 20 μ in diameter, bluish-green, and later brown. The
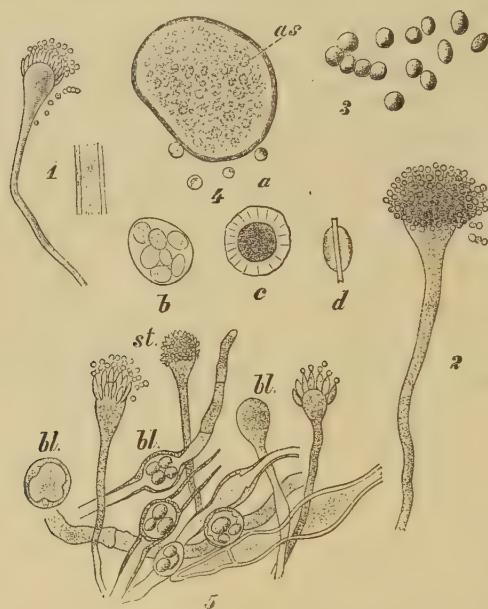
Fig. 177.—*Aspergillus fumigatus:* 1, Optical section through a conidiophore; 2, conidiophore and conidia; 3, conidia; 4, *a*, perithecium; *b*, an isolated ascus; *c*, *d*, ascospores, front and lateral view; 5, swollen hyphæ, *bl*, and conidiophores (4, *a–d*, after Grijns, remaining after Wehmer).

perithecia with ascophores have been observed in culture-media. In the lung tissues the branching mycelium may be observed on microscopic examination, and the sporophores may be seen projecting into the air-sacs, where the conidia are produced. These spores are never formed except in the presence of oxygen.

Isolation and Culture.—The *Aspergillus fumigatus* may be readily isolated from the lesions upon almost any of the commonly used artificial media, particularly when spores are produced. For

the best development the medium should be slightly acid. It develops readily upon potato and bread. Colonies become visible in a day, usually as tiny, white, cottony growths, which, within a few days, turn green, due to the formation of the spores of that color.

Physiology.—The *Aspergillus fumigatus* is an aërobe. The optimum growth temperature is from 35° to 40°. According to Mohler and Buckley, growth occurs, but spores do not form below 20°. The spores are resistant to high temperatures. They

Fig. 178.—*Aspergillus fumigatus* from a culture on agar (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

have been found to survive an exposure of seven hours at 65°. Twelve hours' contact with a 5 per cent. solution of phenol is not sufficient certainly to destroy them. They can withstand desiccation indefinitely.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The organism produces death within a few hours or days when injected intravenously or intrathoracically into the chicken. The pigeon is particularly susceptible to injections. Rabbits and guinea-pigs likewise succumb, usually from a generalized infection. There is sufficient experimental evidence to justify the conclusion that *Aspergillus fumigatus* may produce a primary and fatal infection in many animals.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—By far the greatest number of cases of aspergillosis have been reported from birds. The lesions are generally located in the lungs, air-sacs, and hollow bones, where the spores may readily lodge. In man and animals, particularly the horse, the usual picture is an infection of the lungs and air-passages, but occasionally of the mucous membranes of other parts of the body. Metastatic infection of other organs is not infrequent. The organism causes the development of nodules not unlike those of tuberculosis. In the lungs the tubes are frequently occluded by the green fructifications of the fungus. There is more or less necrosis of tissue immediately surrounding the organisms.

Immunity.—Several investigators claim to have produced toxic substances, if not true toxins, by the growth of the organisms in artificial media. These claims have not been sufficiently substantiated, although there is considerable *a priori* evidence, from the character of the lesions and symptoms, that powerful toxic substances of some kind are produced. No method of successful immunization has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—A diagnosis may usually be made by the character of the lesions and the appearance of the green spores. A microscopic examination of the scrapings of the infected mucous membranes should reveal the spores and characteristic conidiophores without difficulty.

Transmission.—The organism doubtless grows on decaying organic matter outside the body. The feeding of moldy grain or fodder may give ample opportunity for infection by inhalation. The preponderance of pulmonary primary infections shows that inhalation probably is the common method of infection.

Aspergillus flavus

This organism has been described by various investigators, who believed it to be, in part at least, responsible for blind staggers or meningo-encephalitis in horses. It occurs in great quantities on moldy corn and other grains. Although the complete data have not been presented, the work of Haslam indicates that it is of some pathogenic significance.

Morphology.—The sterile hyphæ are cobwebby and white.

The conidiophores are erect. Conidia are 5 to 7 μ in diameter,

Fig. 179.—*Aspergillus flavus:* 1, 2, 3, 4, Various stages in the development of conidiophores; 5, section and surface of a hypha, showing the numerous colorless granules with which it is covered; 6, natural size of the fungus; 7, conidia (Wehmer).

globose. Spore masses are yellow and yellowish green. Sclerotia are small and dark.

Aspergillus niger

This organism occurs under conditions similar to the preceding, and is believed also to be pathogenic to horses and other animals that consume grain infected with it.

Morphology.—The mycelium is at first white, then darker, abundant, and penetrates the medium to a considerable distance. The conidiophores are long and the spores borne up at some distance from the surface of the substratum. The sterigmata are branched. The conidia are 3.5 to 4.5 μ in diameter, roughened. The spore masses ultimately become black, and may be readily differentiated in this manner from the two preceding. This

Fig. 180.—*Aspergillus niger:* 1, 2, 3, 4, Stages in the development of the conidiophores; 5, conidia; 6, detail, showing the branched sterigmata; 7, 8, sclerotia; 9, natural size of the fungus (Wehmer).

organism has also been found in the ear and in lesions in the lungs.

Other Species of Aspergilli

Several other species of Aspergilli have been reported as pathogenic. Among them are *Aspergillus nigrescens, A. subfuscus,* and *A. glaucus.* These produce nodular mycotic foci in the internal organs of laboratory animals into which they have been injected. They do not commonly produce infection under natural conditions.

THE GENUS PENICILLIUM

Penicillium is closely related to Aspergillus, the principal difference being the manner in which the asexual spores or conidia are borne. The conidiophores are erect and much branched at the tip, the branches arising in whorls and are not enlarged at the apex. From the end of each ultimate branch a chain of spores is abjointed,

giving to the organism under the microscope the appearance of being covered with little brooms. The sexual stage is essentially similar to that of Aspergillus. Penicillia are even more common than the Aspergilli. They occur as blue or green molds upon fruit, and upon a great variety of decaying materials. Of the hundreds of species of Penicillium that have been described, the majority are green or bluish-green in color, but white, gray, yellow, orange, and brown forms are known.

Fig. 181.—*Penicillium glaucum: a, a¹,* Tips of conidiophores showing the characteristic method of branching and the chains of spores; *b,* perithecium; *c,* asci; *d,* ascospores (Brefeld).

None of the species of Penicillium are known to be harmful, but their constant presence in moldy silage and grain which has poisoned animals makes it necessary to consider them in any discussion of forage poisoning.

The Genus Fusarium

The members of this genus are nearly all saprophytes or plant parasites. Fusarium is included among the Fungi imperfecti, as a sexual or perfect stage is unknown in the life-history of most

of the species.   Webber has found an ascus stage in one species, and concludes that the genus Necomospora of the Ascomycetes is the perfect form; in other species it is the genus Gibberetta.

Fusarium is characterized by its loose, spreading, cottony mycelium with numerous cross walls, i. e., septate.   The conidiophores are not markedly different from the sterile hyphæ, and are usually branched.   The conidia are borne at the tips of these branches.   They are long, slender, sickle or crescent shaped usually, and divided into several or many cells by cross walls or septa.

Several species of Fusarium are found commonly on grains and moldy corn.   This fungus has been believed by some investigators to be of significance in forage poisoning.   It is one of the several forms which must be considered in a determination of the poisonous properties of forage.

One species, the *Fusarium equinum*, is believed to produce dermatitis in the horse.

Fusarium equinum

Disease Produced.—Itch disease, associated with sarcoptic dermatitis.

Nörgaard, in 1901, noted the presence of a Fusarium in a dermatitis of horses in the State of Oregon, and proposed the name *Fusarium equinum* for the fungus.   Melvin and Mohler later studied the disease in greater detail.   The disease has been reported only from this one locality, but in this instance affected several thousand horses on the Umatilla Indian reservation.

Morphology.—The mycelium upon culture-media is septate and branched.   Three forms of spores are produced.   The microconidia are small and oval, one or two celled.   The macroconidia are large, sickle shaped, three to five septate, and pointed at the ends.   They are 25 to 55 μ long by 2.5 to 4.5 μ wide.   Chlamydospores are formed in the mycelial threads by a cell rounding up to a diameter of 8 to 15 μ and becoming densely granular.   The spores may be recognized in the hair-follicles of the diseased animals.

Isolation and Culture.—No difficulty was experienced in securing a growth of the organism on artificial media.   The more

favorable media are potato and bread, but good growth will take place on glucose or plain agar. The growth is white and cottony, and the spores are produced in abundance.

Pathogenesis.—Inoculation experiments were unsuccessful, so that the evidence of pathogenesis rests entirely upon the constant occurrence of the organism in the disease in question. Itch-mites (*Sarcoptes equi*) were found, but the investigators believe their numbers insufficient to account for the disease. It is entirely
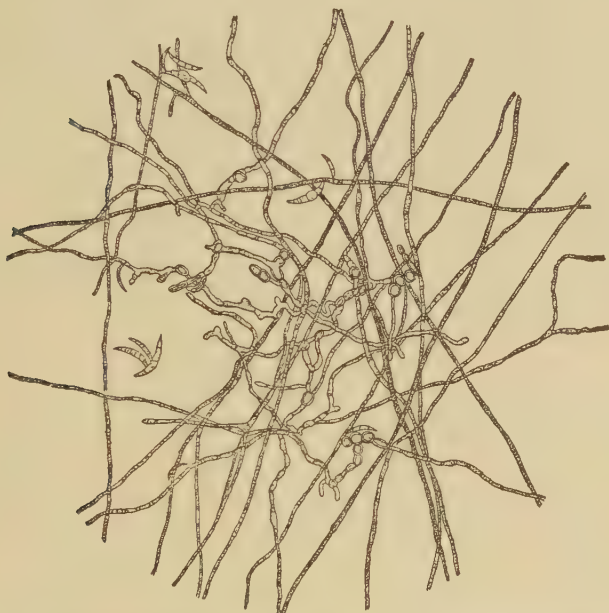
Fig. 182.—*Fusarium equinum*, mycelium and conidia (Melvin and Mohler, Bureau of Animal Industry).

possible that the organism is a secondary invader, or produces the disease in a kind of symbiotic relationship with the Sarcoptes. The fungus seems to enter the hair-follicles, penetrates between the epidermal cells, and involves the surrounding skin, causing an intense itching. The body becomes covered with a crust or scurf, at first gray and afterward darker. The presence of the organism in the hair-follicles causes the hairs to fall out, resulting in an almost complete alopecia.

30

The Genus Sporotrichum

Authorities differ greatly in the delimitation of this genus. According to botanists, the genera Microsporon and Trichophyton are synonyms of Sporotrichum. Pathologists and bacteriologists in general, however, make a distinction between them. The classification of the latter will be adopted here and the term Sporotrichum used in the narrow sense.

Sporotrichum is distinguished by the production of definite hyphæ, which are usually creeping and irregularly branched. Definite conidiophores are not developed, or consist only of small side branches. The conidia are borne either on the sides or ends of the hyphæ, singly or in clusters. They are usually very numerous, ovoid or spherical in shape, and hyaline or rarely lightly colored. The molds belonging to this group are in need of careful study and revision, as there is great uncertainty concerning many of the species.

One, or possibly two, species of Sporotrichum have been shown recently to be of considerable pathogenic significance.

Sporotrichum beurmanni

Synonym.—Possibly *Sporotrichum schenkii*.

Disease Produced.—Sporotrichosis in man and animals, one type of epizoötic lymphangitis in horses.

Schenk, in 1898, and Hektoen and Perkins, in 1900, described a species of Sporotrichum causing multiple abscesses in man. de Beurmann, in 1903, described similar forms from France. The disease has been reported in man and rats from Brazil, from man in California, Argentina, Germany, and in the horse in the United States and Madagascar. This disease is probably quite widespread, but has not been recognized, or has been confused with others, until recently. It is to be differentiated sharply from the true epizoötic lymphangitis of the horse. An excellent discussion of the organism in its relation to disease in the horse was contributed by Page, Frothingham, and Paige in 1910.

Morphology.—The examination of the material from culture is most easily made in a hanging drop. The hyphæ are slender and septate. Spores or conidia are borne at the tips of side branches; usually a number are formed successively and are found then

in clusters. The conidia are small, oval or spherical. They frequently bud to some extent, and resemble somewhat the cells of Blastomyces. The hyphæ stain easily with the common anilin dyes and are Gram-positive. In using the latter stain the alcohol must not remain too long in contact, otherwise the stain will be removed. Whether or not the organism ever develops a perfect or sexual stage is not known, but it does not seem probable.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may readily be isolated from pus from the lesions. Potato is the most favorable medium.

Fig. 183.—*Sporotrichum beurmanni*, from culture showing the mycelium and spores (Page, Frothingham, and Paige, in "Journal of Medical Research").

Original isolations show at the end of a week, transplants at the end of two or three days, as white, filamentous colonies. These enlarge, become darker at the center, and finally turn dark brown or black, frequently surrounded by a rim of white. The colony becomes wrinkled. Upon gelatin the growth remains white. Liquefaction begins in from three to ten days or even later. The addition of dextrose causes the center of the colonies to darken. In agar, and particularly in neutralized glycerin agar, growth is good, and the colonies remain white. Blood-serum is not liquefied. In litmus milk growth occurs with little change in the

medium, or coagulation without acid production may take place after the lapse of several weeks. In liquid media growth occurs in the form of more or less separated colonies, usually accompanied by a surface pellicle.

Physiology.—The organism is an obligate aërobe. Growth occurs best at 25° to 28°, but is not prevented at 37°. The spores resist desiccation for considerable periods. Acid is produced from dextrose, but not from lactose, maltose, saccharose, mannite, dulcit, adonit, inulin, or raffinose. Gas is not produced from any sugar. No indol is formed. Gelatin is slowly liquefied. The organism is destroyed at a temperature of 60° for five minutes.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—There is an abundance of evidence that *Sporotrichum beurmanni* is pathogenic for man and animals. Accidental laboratory infections have taken place in man. Inoculation of pure cultures into mice and white rats gives rise to abscesses at the point of inoculation, and the infection gradually extends. Guinea-pigs and rabbits are infected with greater difficulty. An infection somewhat resembling farcy develops upon inoculation into the horse.

Fig. 184.—*Sporotrichum beurmanni*, culture and colonies on potato (Page, Frothingham, and Paige, in "Journal of Medical Research").

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The infection is usually benign in character in the horse. There is no fever reaction during the course of the disease. Nodules develop which are generally spherical and sharply delineated. These nodules scarcely rupture, but pus accumulates at the center, the skin above is thinned and softened, serum exudes from the surface, the hair is loosened, and a crust holding the hairs together is formed. The ulcers are crateriform, and usually contain a little creamy pus.

Healing is accomplished by granulation. Sections of nodules from laboratory animals reveal the organism in the tissues.

Immunity.—No toxins have been demonstrated for this organism. Widal has shown the presence of agglutinins for the spores in the blood of infected individuals. No method of immunization, based upon the organism or its products, has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis. — This may be accomplished by animal inoculation, thus securing the organism in pure culture. Widal claims that the agglutination of spores will take place in dilutions as high as 1:800, but the same reaction takes place in lower dilutions with the blood-serum of individuals having actinomycosis. Bloch found that a bouillon filtrate from an old culture would in man give the von Pirquet cutaneous reaction, as

Fig. 185.—*Sporotrichum beurmanni*, in a section of a mesenteric abscess of a rat (adapted from Fielitz).

was described in the chapter of *Bacillus tuberculosis*. Gougerot recommends for the skin reaction the use of *sporotrichosin*, a sterile suspension of killed *Sporotrichum beurmanni* in salt solution.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted by intimate contact usually. It has been found to be transferred from animals to man. Probably the organism usually gains entrance through abrasions of the skin.

The Genera Trichophyton, Microsporum, Achorion, and Oidium

The organisms belonging to the two genera, Trichophyton and Microsporon, are frequently included together under the single genus Sporotrichum. The two names, Trichophyton and Microsporon, are also used very loosely and interchangeably. A careful study of the relationships of the various forms is needed.

No very clear differentiation of this group from the preceding can be given.

Organisms belonging to these genera are the cause of many skin and hair infections in man and animals.

The Genus Trichophyton

The species belonging to this genus and the two following genera have been studied most carefully by Sabouraud, and his classification has been extensively used.

The various species described are all the causes of diseases in man and animals, known as herpes tonsurans and ringworms.

All invade the hair, compactly filling its interior with a mass of parallel hyphæ extending longitudinally. The hair may be examined directly under the microscope by first immersing it for a few seconds in a warm solution of 30 grams of caustic potash in 70 c.c. of water. The filaments are composed entirely of quadrangular cells 4 to 5 μ in length and about the same width. These chains are quite regular in their arrangement, and are straight.

Fig. 186.—*Trichophyton tonsurans* from agar plate culture (Günther).

When branching occurs it is by dichotomy, but is not abundant.

These organisms may be cultivated readily on special maltose (or other sugar) agar.

Isolation and Culture.— Pure cultures are secured with difficulty, as the skin and hair are generally filled with bacteria which overgrow the mold. Kral has suggested pulverizing hairs with fine sand or silicon powder and pouring gelatin plates of various dilutions. Kitt has taken advantage of the resistance of the organism to destruction by alkalies by washing the hairs and scales from an infected area with a solution of KOH, which removes most of the bacteria without materially injuring the mold spores. Potato is a favorable medium for growth. A rather velvety, wrinkled, relatively heavy membrane forms which may be white or colored. Gelatin is slowly liquefied.

Sabouraud states that there is great variation in the appearance of cultures in different media. A microscopic examination of a mount from culture-media shows the development of a dense

mass of branched hyphæ definitely septate, slender, and hyaline. The spores are borne laterally on the branches of the hyphæ, usually sessile, one celled, and ovoid or spherical in shape. Some species also develop chlamydospores in the mycelium.

The species of *Trichophyton* are divided into two principal groups, *Endothrix* and *Ectothrix*. In the former the chains of cells in the diseased hair are entirely within the hair, in the latter they are both within and without, forming a coating over the hair surface.

Types of Endothrix.—The *Endothrix* group of species according to Sabouraud contains about fifteen species, all parasites on man. The best known of these are *Trichophyton tonsurans* (the *Tr. crateriforme* of Sabouraud), *Tr. sulfurerum*, and *Tr. cerebriforme*. Among 500 cases of dermatomycoses observed by Sabouraud the first named produced 115, the second 52, the third 39, the fourth 13 of the infections. The other species were rare. Ninety-five per cent. of all trichophytoses in man were found to be due to the first three species listed.

Types of Ectothrix.—The species of *Ectothrix* are divided into two groups termed *Microïdes* and *Megaspores*. The spore-like cells which make up the mycelial threads as they affect the hair are small, 3 to 4 μ in diameter in the former, and large, 8 μ, in the latter.

Species of Ectothrix microïdes.—Eight species of *Microïdes* are recognized by Sabouraud. They are placed in two subgroups, the type *gypseum* with six species, and the type *niveum* with two species. The former all produce *chalky* colonies on media, the latter *downy* colonies. The first group contains species which attack man primarily, though readily transferred to laboratory animals, as the guinea-pig. One species, *Trichophyton granulosum*, attacks the horse. The two species of the niveum type are *Tr. felineum* (or *Tr. radians*) and *Tr. denticulatum*. The former is primarily a parasite of domestic animals transferable to man and will be discussed later, the latter is a human parasite primarily.

Species of Ectothrix megaspores.—Seven species have been described, of which the following are parasitic on animals: *Trichophyton equinum*, *Tr. caninum*, *Tr. verrucosum*, *Tr. discoïdes*. The remainder are known only from man.

Trichophyton granulosum

Synonym.—*Trichophyton gypseum.*

This species was described by Sabouraud in 1908 as the cause of a dermatomycosis of the horse.

Morphology.—Typical of the *Microïdes* group. Spores on hairs 3 to 4 μ in diameter.

Culture.—On maltose agar a powdery yellowish colony is developed, with relatively large granules on its surface. The center is usually irregularly umbilicate.

Pathogenesis.—The disease in the horse is characterized by a development of small areas on which the hair is roughened. The hair over these areas is stuck together in small pencils. The hair falls with a scaly crust. The areas from which the hair falls remain naked and dry for some time; finally hair grows again slowly. The plaques are numerous and small. The disease is quite persistent.

Inoculation on horses and guinea-pigs is successful. The disease is apparently occasionally transmitted to man.

Trichophyton felineum

Synonyms.—*Trichophyton niveum; Tr. radians.*

Disease Produced.—Ringworm of cat, perhaps also in horses, cattle, sheep, and swine.

Morphology.—Typical of group. The base of a parasitized hair shows large spores, 7 to 9 μ in diameter, forming a collar adherent to the hair and to edge of hair-follicle.

Culture.—On maltose agar a powdery white colony is formed, umbilicate and irregularly wrinkled on the interior and with a large number of slender rays about the margin.

Pathogenesis.—According to Brumpt this organism attacks animals, producing a characteristic type of ringworm. It has been found by Sabouraud to produce disease in man as well. By some authors the cat is regarded as the principal host.

Trichophyton equinum

This organism was first isolated by Matruchot and Dassonville, in 1898, from a dermatomycosis of the horse. It was later studied by Sabouraud and by Gedoelst. The former regards it as the commonest type of *Trichophyton* attacking the horse.

Morphology.—In the crust observed on the lesions of the horse the filaments are not abundant, generally rather straight or undulating. In the hairs the morphology is typical of the group, the large spores surround the hair base.

Culture.—On maltose agar a white colony is formed, but it is not powdery, but velvety in texture. On potato the growth is moist and of the color of yellow ochre.

Pathogenesis.—The disease in the horse manifests itself in small areas more or less numerous on the rump, shoulder, and back. The largest patches are not more than $1\frac{1}{2}$ cm. in diameter. Man may also be infected, as may also the guinea-pig.

Trichophyton caninum

Matruchot and Dassonville, in 1902, described a folliculitis in the dog caused by this organism. The hair dropped from the infected areas. The organism is termed a true ectothrix large-spored Trichophyton.

THE GENUS MICROSPORUM

The species of this genus all produce dermatomycoses in man or animals. In all types the hair appears frosted, encased for several millimeters with a delicate white sheath. Under the microscope this is found to be made up of small spores, 2 to 4 μ in diameter, not disposed in chains, but arranged as a mosaic over the surface. In culture-media the hyphæ frequently show racquet-shaped cells arranged in rows, which eventually develop into intercalary chlamydospores. The spores are borne much as in *Trichophyton*, usually they are somewhat more elongate. Many colonies show a peculiar multicellular, fusiform, relatively large spore, the septæ of which are all parallel and transverse. These are also sometimes found in species of *Trichophyton*. Peculiar hyphæ with outgrowths resembling a comb, the so-called pectinate hyphæ, are also formed.

The various species may be cultivated in the same manner as *Trichophyton*.

Four species are known which produce disease primarily in man. They are relatively slow growers upon laboratory media and are inoculable upon animals with difficulty or not at all. Seven

species primarily pathogenic for animals have been described. These grow readily upon laboratory media and often infect man. These species are:

Microsporum lanosum

Synonyms.—*Microsporum caninum; M. canis.*

Disease Produced.—A dermatomycosis of the dog, also occasionally attacking the horse and children.

The disease was first studied and the organism recognized by Bodin and Almy, in 1897. It is one of the common skin diseases of the dog.

Morphology.—Relatively few of the hairs of the diseased area from the dog are found to be infected with the fungus. It may readily be found in the scales from the infected skin. The polyhedric superficial spores on the hairs are of the characteristic type.

Culture.—Growth occurs readily on maltose and other sugar media. The colony on maltose agar shows a central area which is glabrous and powdery, surrounding this a ring or annulus of velvety appearance. The central portion may be umbilicate.

Pathogenesis.—Sabouraud described four distinct phases of the infection in the dog. The areas infected show first a roughening of the coat, followed by a loss of hair, leaving a smooth skin. Usually there then appears a pustular folliculitis, followed finally by healing and recovery.

Infection of man occurs readily, particularly in children, producing a ringworm of the scalp.

The disease in man shows some clinical differences from that caused by the far more common *Microsporum adouini.*

Inoculations upon animals is successful; particularly susceptible are dogs and guinea-pigs.

Microsporum felineum

This species was first recognized by Fox and Blaxall, in England, in 1896, as causing a disease of the cat. Transmission to man was noted by these investigators as well as by Mewborn, of New York, in 1902. Morphologically and culturally the organism is typical of the genus. It has been experimentally transferred to the cat, the dog, and the guinea-pig.

Microsporum equinum

This species was described by Bodin and Delacroix, in 1896. The organism produces disease in the horse and in man, and may be developed in the guinea-pig by inoculation.

THE GENUS ACHORION

This genus differs in minor details from *Microsporum* and *Trichophyton*. When growing inside a hair it seems to destroy the interior so that air enters, and when such hair is mounted for examination the air bubbles are quite characteristic, this frequently alone being sufficient to differentiate this causal organism as belonging to this genus. In the hair the filaments are not so closely massed as those of *Trichophyton* frequently are, and do not show the straight rows of spore-like cells.

Upon culture-media the organism produces numerous heavy walled chlamydospores, both intercalary and apical, on short side branches. The pectinate hyphæ are often formed as in *Microsporum*. Spores both single celled and multilocular (likewise resembling those of *Microsporum*) are also produced. The two genera are evidently closely related, if, in fact, they should be separated at all.

Culture upon media can be accomplished as for the two preceding genera.

One species, *Achorion schönleinii* is the common species attacking man. Three species, *A. quinckeanum* (*A. muris*), *A. gypseum*, and *A. gallinæ* attack animals or birds.

Achorion muris

Synonym.—*Achorion quinckeanum.*

It has been recognized for more than a half-century that favus is a disease which may be transmitted from the mouse to man, producing an infection not unlike that of *Achorion schönleinii*.

Achorion gallinæ

Synonym.—*Lopophyton gallinæ.*

Disease Produced.—Tinea cristæ gallæ. Fowl favus.

The disease was first studied by Gerlach, in 1858. Since that date it has been described by numerous writers.

Morphology.—A microscopic examination of the fungus collar which surrounds the base of feathers from infected areas shows a mass of tangled threads of the mycelium, much resembling chains of spores.

Culture.—The organism may readily be secured in pure culture from the infected feathers. The colonies on maltose-agar are white, usually showing concentric rings and radial foldings. If grown at 30° the colony takes on a rose color.
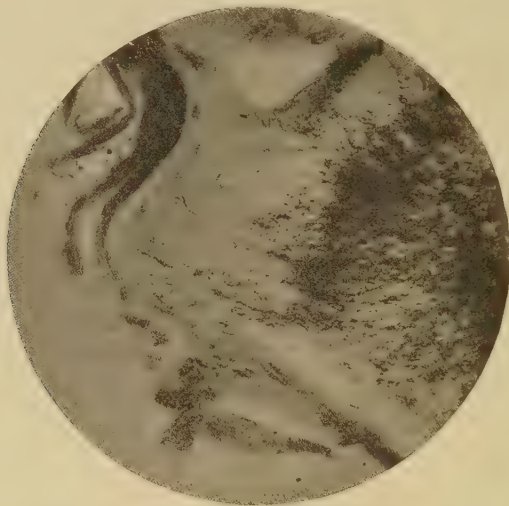
Fig. 187.—*Achorion schönleinii*, section showing the hyphæ (Fränkel and Pfeiffer).

Pathogenesis.—In the fowl the disease may attack the head, the comb, the wattles, or the ear lobes. It usually begins by the development of one or many small white points. It appears as a pellicle adherent to the adjacent epidermis. The spots increase in size and fuse. When the lesion appears on a surface with feathers, a sort of collar or cone forms at the base of each feather, and the plumes fall, each carrying with it its fungus collar. The bird may recover, but the disease is commonly quite persistent.

The disease may be inoculated into man, the rabbit, and the guinea-pig.

Oidium albicans

Synonym.—*Monilia candida.*

Disease Produced.—Thrush in infants; sometimes in the young of animals.

Berg, in 1840, described this organism as the cause of thrush. It has since that time been repeatedly isolated and cultivated. It is known from most civilized countries.

Morphology.—The mycelium of this organism is poorly developed; frequently the whole growth consists of budding yeast-like cells. These may be spherical, elliptical, oval or cylindrical, the shorter cells about 4 μ in diameter by 5 to 6 μ in length. The hyphal threads are much longer. There can be little differentiation in many cases between the conidia and the cells of the hyphæ, but on artificial media the conidia are frequently definitely adjointed from the tip of the conidiophore. Chlamydospores may form in the hyphæ.

Isolation and Culture.—The organism may be isolated without difficulty from the lesions of the disease. A distinctly acid medium should be used. On most nutrient media it develops superficial, spherical, white, waxy to granular colonies. Gelatin is not liquefied, nor is blood-serum.

Pathogenesis.—The organism, when injected intravenously into rabbits, produces a fatal infection not unlike a generalized infection with a *Blastomyces.* Typical thrush has been produced in the mouth of young animals and birds by inoculation. The disease generally occurs in the mouth of sucklings, usually as a benign infection. It is characterized by the formation of white patches on the mucous membrane, varying in size from points to considerable areas. The infection may extend to the pharyngeal or laryngeal mucosæ; rarely metastatic infection of internal organs may occur.

SECTION V

PATHOGENIC PROTOZOA

CHAPTER XL

STRUCTURE, RELATIONSHIPS, AND CLASSIFICATION OF THE PROTOZOA

A protozoan may be defined as a unicellular organism belonging to the animal kingdom. Protozoa exist throughout their life-history as single-celled individuals, or as colonies of single cells; that is, the cells are not united to form tissues or organs, and never constitute a portion only of a multicellular form.

The protozoa show some forms which intergrade with the bacteria. The group is frequently defined as containing spiral forms, such as the Spirochætæ, some investigators believing that these have more bacterial than protozoan characteristics, others taking quite the opposite view. It is difficult, on the other hand, to draw a sharp line of demarcation between the protozoa and the multicellular animals or *metazoa*. Just when a group of cells ceases to be a mere group of independent units, and becomes a tissue which forms the whole or part of a multicellular form, it is difficult to determine.

Although the protozoa are regarded as the simplest and most primitive of living things, nevertheless many are complex in structure and have the cell divided into specialized parts, sometimes termed *organella*, somewhat similar in function to the organs of the higher forms. They frequently undergo many changes in form during their life. Their life-history is, therefore, relatively complex as compared with that of the bacteria.

Structure of the Protozoa.—The body substance of a protozoan may be divided into the ectoplasm, or outer layer, which comes into

contact with the material environment, and the endoplasm, within. Within the endoplasm there is generally a nucleus (in some forms two nuclei, a large and a small), and frequently inclusions of other sorts.

The ectoplasm in some cases cannot be differentiated sharply from the endoplasm. These are the exception, however, and not the rule. The ectoplasm may become variously modified, and, by secretion, form shells or a heavy membrane for protection. Many of the pathogenic protozoa become *encysted* by the formation of a heavy, chitinous wall.

The endoplasm is made up of a very delicate, foam-like or *alveolar* structure, the density of which varies greatly. It may enclose amorphous granules or crystals of different kinds, green granules or chromatophores, vacuoles, etc.

None of the protozoa are certainly known to be entirely destitute of nuclear material. The nucleus may be devoid of a nuclear membrane or distributed; generally a membrane is present. A single *homogeneous* nucleus is present in most forms, with the exception of the infusoria, which have, in general, a large or *macronucleus* and a small or *micronucleus*. At some stages in the life-history many nuclei may be present in a single cell. This is particularly true just before or during spore formation.

The protozoa with few exceptions are motile, at least during certain stages in the life-history. The exceptions are among certain of the parasitic Sporozoa. Special organs of locomotion are frequently found. *Pseudopodia* are changeable processes of the protoplasm which are thrown out by the cell, the cell contents frequently flowing forward into the pseudopodia. Many or few may be present at one time. They may be short and blunt or long and slender. Usually the endoplasm as well as ectoplasm takes part in their formation. The protozoan flagella are derived from the ectoplasm; are usually unchangeable in shape, long, thin, and pointed; in general, longer than the cell itself. One, two, or many may be present. They propel the cell by a series of undulations or spiral or rotary motions. *Cilia*, when present, are found in considerable numbers. They are shorter, generally blunt, and, by striking the water in unison, resemble oars in their motion.

The life-histories of the various protozoa show such complexities that they may better be treated under the separate subdivisions.

Classification of the Protozoa.—Authorities are not in entire accord with reference to the principal subdivisions of the protozoa. The classes here used are those proposed by Doflein in his "Lehrbuch."

KEY TO CLASSES OF PROTOZOA

Subdivision I., Plasmodroma.—Protozoa motile by means of pseudopodia or flagella, with one or more vesicular nuclei, reproduction isogamous or anisogamous, usually with two developmental cycles, in which sexual generations alternate with sexual.

1. Motile by means of flagella.....................**Class I. Mastigophora.**
2. Motile by means of pseudopodia.................**Class II. Rhizopoda.**
3. Variously motile, usually reduced through parasitism. Metagamic multiplication by means of numerous spores............................**Class III. Sporozoa.**

Subdivision II., Ciliophora.—Protozoa with numerous cilia, with one or more principal nuclei and one or more vesiculate accessory nuclei (or occasionally the latter only). Reproduction by means of an isogamous fusion, or by means of interchange of nuclear material without fusion of the cell-bodies. Multiplication only as a result of simple division or by budding.

1. Cilia present throughout the life of the cell. Food taken up by osmosis or through a cytostome....**Class IV. Ciliata.**
2. Cilia present only in the young cell; food taken up through funnel-like organella.................**Class V. Suctoria.**

CHAPTER XLI

PATHOGENIC PROTOZOA OF THE FLAGELLATA

(Exclusive of the Spirochetes)

THE pathogenic forms of the class Flagellata differ from the Rhizopoda in that they do not possess pseudopodia. In most cases the organism has a relatively definite form. The cells are motile by means of one or many flagella.

This class contains many hundreds of species distributed among many genera and families. Most of these are non-parasitic. Many species are commensals in the intestines of man and animals, and have been suspected of producing intestinal disorders.

The genera, Spirochæta, Treponema, and Spiroschaudinnia, perhaps belong with the Flagellata, and show some distinct resemblances to the genus Trypanosoma. Their position among the protozoa, however, is challenged by many bacteriologists. They are, therefore, treated as a separate group in a preceding chapter.

An undulating membrane and terminal flagellum present.. *Trypanosoma.*
Undulating membrane not present................. *Herpetomonas.*

THE GENUS TRYPANOSOMA

The first recorded observations of trypanosomes are those of Valentine, who saw them in the blood of a salmon in 1841. Numerous observers found similar organisms in the blood of other fish, reptiles, and batrachia. Lewis, in 1878, observed the first trypanosome of mammalian blood in the rat. Evans, in 1880, noted them in the blood of animals infected with surra and believed them to be the cause of the disease. Bruce, in 1894, described another form from Africa as the cause of nagana or tsetse-fly disease. Since that time the number of known species has in-

creased rapidly. A small proportion only of those described are known to be pathogenic. Among the pathogenic forms, however, are to be found those that are among the most serious hindrances to the development of a live-stock industry, and even to human habitation in certain countries.

Morphology.—Trypanosomes usually are elongated cells, more or less spindle shaped, rarely almost as broad as long, but always tapering more or less to the ends. Most of the pathogenic forms that have been described are several times as long as broad when observed in the blood. The anterior end of the cell is tipped with a flagellum. Along one side, extending longitudinally on the cell, is a thin membrane. The flagellum extends along this membrane

Fig. 188.—*Trypanosoma equiperdum*, morphology of the trypanosome: 1, A rather thick, short trypanosome—*a*, Blepharoplast; *b*, protoplasm (cytoplasm); *c*, nucleus; *d*, undulating membrane; *e*, flagellum attached to the edge of the membrane; *f*, anterior extension of the flagellum. 2, A longer cell. 3, 4, Trypanosomes in process of longitudinal division (adapted from Gonder and Sieber).

and forms its outer edge. The flagellum finally terminates in the cell-protoplasm near a granule which stains deeply. This granule may be situated in various parts of the cell, but is usually in the posterior portion. Its relative position is one of the characters used in the differentiation of species. It has been called by various names, as micronucleus, kinetonucleus, motor nucleus, centrosome, and blepharoplast. This last name is to be preferred, as it is the one that is most frequently used in the descriptions, and is commonly used for similar structures found in many other flagellated protozoa. The flagellum is, in part, therefore, embedded in the protoplasm, in part is attached to the edge of the undulating membrane, and in part is free at the anterior end. A nucleus, usually

situated near the center or anterior end, may be demonstrated in stained preparations. It is relatively large and granular in structure. The entire body of the trypanosome is mobile, and the organism may vary its shape to some degree. It swims about with the flagellum in front.

Multiplication is accomplished by a preliminary division of the blepharoplast followed by that of the nucleus, and this by a longitudinal splitting of the cell to form two individuals. In cultures the cells may frequently be observed in the form of rosettes or clusters, with the flagellar ends pointing out. These rosettes do not occur in the blood. Transverse division does not occur. No conjugation or fertilization process in trypanosomes has been certainly detected.

Some investigators have believed that trypanosomes in the animal body may have an ultramicroscopic stage in their development. Bruce and Bateman, in a series of careful experiments, have shown that this does not occur.

The existence of a regular cycle of changes in the life of a trypanosome is at present a somewhat mooted question. Some investigators believe that they have established the existence of a relatively complex life cycle. Kleine, Bruce, and others believe that certain species of insects which transfer the disease must be considered true hosts, and that they do not become infective for some days—in the case of *Trypanosoma gambiense* about twenty— after biting an infected individual. Rodenwalt and others have found that certain developmental changes take place in the gut of the insect; others have failed to find them. At present it may be concluded that the occurrence of developmental changes has not been satisfactorily demonstrated, although there is good reason to believe that such may occur. Carimi, Schaudinn, and others have recognized what they believe to be an endoglobular stage in the development of the organism in the body. Battaglio claims to have demonstrated for *Tr. brucei*, *Tr. lewisi*, and *Tr. vespertilionis* a developmental cycle in the blood, which includes sporulation of micro- and macrogametocytes, with formation of micro- and macrogametes. These conclusions have been combated by others. Not all trypanosome infections are transmitted through insects. Certain transformations have been noted with some forms in the

body itself. There is no evidence that an insect can transfer the organism to its progeny; that is, hereditary transmission through insects play no part in the life-history. This is in marked contrast to certain other diseases, such as the piroplasmoses.

Cultivation of Trypanosomes.—Novy and MacNeal, in 1903, gave an account of a method which they had successfully used in the cultivation of trypanosomes in artificial media. Equal parts of defibrinated rabbit blood and melted nutrient agar are mixed and the tubes are slanted and allowed to solidify. The water of condensation is inoculated with a small amount of blood containing trypanosomes. The first culture of trypanosomes frequently develops slowly, but subsequent transfers more quickly. Not all trypanosomes can be cultivated in this manner with equal facility.

Method of Disease Production.—The organisms are found typically in the circulating blood, and to a less degree in the other body-fluids. Anemia and emaciation are frequently associated with the various trypanosome infections. The spleen is quite commonly enlarged.

Examination and Staining Methods.—Usually the examination under a cover-glass of a drop of blood from an infected animal will reveal the organism, particularly if made directly with the low-power objective of the microscope. The active motion of the organisms reveals their presence by movements of the blood-cells, and they may be thus located and then studied under the higher powers. Centrifugation of blood or body-fluids must be resorted to in some instances to concentrate the cells when they are present in small numbers only. Blood-films stained by Wright's method yield very satisfactory results.

The vast number of tropical and subtropical diseases due to trypanosomes makes it impossible to discuss any except the most important of such parasites. Some of these trypanosomes are primarily important as the course of human diseases, secondarily as affecting animals. The most important of this class is the *Trypanosoma gambiense*, the cause of sleeping-sickness of certain African countries. Monkeys, dogs, cats, guinea-pigs, and rabbits are readily susceptible to this trypanosome.

Trypanosoma equiperdum

Synonym.—*Trypanosoma rougeti.*

Disease Produced.—Dourine: maladie du coit in horses (horse syphilis).

Rouget, in 1896, first described this trypanosome. Other investigators have conclusively established its etiologic relationship to the disease. It is of particular interest as the only trypanosome disease of importance in Europe and in North America.

Distribution.—The disease is known from Germany, Austria, France, and southern European countries, northern Africa, western Asia and India, Chile, Java, and several local outbreaks have occurred in North America (Illinois, Nebraska, Wyoming, South Dakota, Iowa, and northwestern Canada).

Morphology (See Fig. 188).—Moore and Bredini, in a study of this trypanosome as it occurs in artificially infected rats, concluded that it passed through certain developmental stages, finally being converted into rounded bodies, with two long delicate flagella. The organism, as it occurs in the lesions and blood of the horse, is a slender cell, usually about 25 to 28 μ in length. There are no particular differentiating characters between this organism and the ones associated with other trypanosomiases of the horse. The blepharoplast is distinct, the membrane considerably folded, the nucleus central, and the free flagellum about $\frac{1}{5}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$ the length of the organism. Protoplasmic granules are never present in the organism directly originating from the horse.

Cultivation.—Thomas and Breinl have succeeded in cultivating the organism in a modified Novy and MacNeal medium in one trial out of nineteen.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The disease may be transmitted experimentally to the horse, the ass, to fowls, and even to ruminants and apes, according to some observers, while according to others the latter animals are quite refractory.

The disease occurs naturally only among the equines.

Character of Disease.—The infected animal becomes emaciated, edematous swellings appear on the genitals, while whitish or chalk-like areas appear in the skin and mucosa of the external genitalia. Purulent foci occasionally develop in the testicular tissue. The dis-

ease usually runs a chronic course. The animal frequently becomes gradually paralyzed. Recovery is infrequent.

Immunity.—Animals that recover from the disease are thereby rendered immune to a second infection. They are not, however, rendered immune to infection with another trypanosome, such as that of surra. It appears that an immunity acquired during pregnancy may be transmitted to the offspring. No practical method of immunization based upon the organism or its products has been developed.

Watson reports the use of serum from chronic cases of dourine in horses in large doses, up to 300 c.c. as protecting against virulent infection. Similar observations upon laboratory animals were made by Rouget, Nocard, Uhlenhuth, Zwick, and Fisher and others. The latter observed that such inoculations protected against the dourine trypanosome only, not against the nagana trypanosome.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—This may occasionally be accomplished by a microscopic examination of the fluids from the lesions and the identification of the characteristic trypanosome in stained mounts. The organisms can rarely be found in the peripheral blood. The blood-tinged fluid secured from the plaques when they first appear is the most favorable material for their identification. They may be found in the blood-stream of artificially infected laboratory animals. In doubtful cases inoculation of blood or the serous fluid from plaques may be made into dogs, and examination of the swellings on such animals be subsequently made with positive findings.

Agglutination Test.—Lange, Zwick, and Winkler and others report the agglutination test as satisfactory in determining virus carriers among stallions. They found that serum of infected animals would agglutinate dourine trypanosomes in homogeneous suspension in dilutions of from 1 : 400 to 1 : 25,000, while that of non-infected animals did not agglutinate in dilution higher than 1 : 50. The chief objection to this as a practical test is that other trypanosomes may be agglutinated, hence the test is of no value as a differentiating one.

Complement-fixation Test.—Watson, of Lethbridge, Canada, makes report of 15,000 cases tested by this method. Concerning the reliability of the test he states that 100 per cent. of dourine-

infected animals, whether in the active or latent stages of the disease, give positive reactions, provided two to three months incubation period has elapsed. In the less resistant animals one month is sufficient. He prepares his antigen by inoculating a number of white rats with *Trypanosoma equiperdum*, collecting blood from them when it is teeming with the trypanosomes, and centrifuging the blood at 1500 revolutions per minute to separate the trypanosomes from the blood-cells. Subsequent washing and centrifuging frees the trypanosomes from serum. Such antigen may be kept indefinitely if frozen solid.

Conglutination Test.—This test has been used by a number of investigators. Wehrbein states that it is satisfactory, but is more sensitive to faulty technic, and consequently more difficult to employ than the complement-fixation test.

Transmission.—The disease is commonly transmitted from one animal to another through coition. Whether or not the organism can enter through the intact mucosa is not certainly known, but appears probable. Blood containing the organism will infect a rabbit if placed in the conjunctival sac. Sieber and Gonder claim to have succeeded in transmitting the disease through the medium of the fly *Stomoxys calcitrans*, but this certainly is not the common method. No developmental stages could be observed in the fly.

Trypanosoma evansi

Synonym.—*Spirochæta evansi.*

Disease Produced.—Surra in horses, mules, cattle, carabou or water buffalo, camels, elephants, dogs, goats, and sheep.

The disease has been known for a long time from southern Asia. The organism was first described from India by Evans in 1880.

Distribution.—The disease is known from India, China, the Philippines, Africa, and Australia.

Morphology.—The organism as it occurs in the blood is actively motile. It is usually between 22 and 30 μ in length, and from 1 to 2 μ in diameter. It tapers to the anterior end, but the posterior is somewhat blunt. The undulating membrane and the free flagellum are well differentiated. This organism can scarcely be separated from *Trypanosoma brucei* on the basis of morphology. Laveran and Mesnil, however, differentiate on the basis of the former being

more slender, possessing a longer flagellum, and greater motility in hanging drop.

Cultivation.—This organism has been cultivated on Novy and MacNeal's medium, but only after repeated trials.

Pathogenesis.—The disease may be readily transmitted to susceptible animals by the injection of blood containing the trypanosome. The disease itself is characterized in the horse as a relapsing fever, with eruptions, either generalized or localized in the skin. Petechial hemorrhages of the mucosæ are frequent. The subcutaneous tissues are infiltrated and edematous. It is almost invariably fatal in horses. Cattle are relatively resistant to the disease, and in these animals recovery usually occurs, but the blood may remain infective for a considerable period. Buffalo frequently succumb. Camels, elephants, and dogs are not infrequently infected.

This disease resembles nagana clinically, and the causal organisms can scarcely be differentiated. Animals immunized against the one disease are susceptible to the other, which would seem to establish specific differences sufficient to separate the organisms as distinct species.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organisms gradually increase in numbers in the blood during the onset of the disease, and have been found as numerous as 350,000 per cubic millimeter. They are frequently not present in the blood between the periods of fever.

Transmission.—Fraser and Symons state that in the Federated Malay States four species of the fly genus Tabanus, particularly *Tabanus fumifer*, are responsible for the spread of the disease. Probably other flies may carry the organism as well. Experiments seem to show that the transference in this case is merely mechanical, and that there is no developmental cycle in the intermediate host. Carnivorous animals may be infected by ingestion if there are lesions in the mucous membranes.

Trypanosoma brucei

Disease Produced.—Nagana or tsetse-fly disease in horses, cattle, camels, buffalo, antelopes, and related wild animals, possibly the elephant.

The fact that this disease follows the bite of the tsetse fly has long been known by African natives, and the early explorers confirmed their belief. Bruce, in 1896, described the trypanosome which causes the disease.

Distribution.—Known only in Africa, particularly in Zululand.

Morphology.—The organism is sluggishly motile. According to Laveran and Mesnil, the organism from rats, mice, and guineapigs is 26 to 27 μ long, including the flagellum, while in horses and mules it is 28 to 33 μ. In breadth it varies between 1.5 and 2.5 μ. The free part of the flagellum is shorter than that of *Trypanosoma evansi*, while the breadth is usually greater. Granules may generally be observed in the protoplasm. Irregular forms occur in the blood after death, and in the lymphatic glands, spleen, bone-
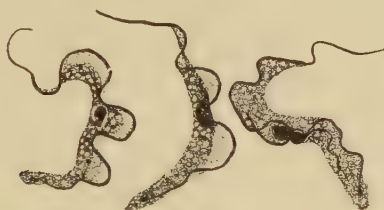
Fig. 189.—*Trypanosoma brucei* (adapted from Gonder and Sieber).

marrow, liver, and lungs during life. Kleine believes, from his experiments with fly transmission, that there must be a developmental stage occurring in the insect.

Isolation and Culture.—Novy and MacNeal succeeded in growing the organism of nagana in the medium already described. Only a few tubes out of a large number were found to show growth.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Inoculation of the mouse, rat, dog, cat, and monkey results in an acute infection; of the rabbit, guinea-pig, equines, and swine, in a subacute infection; and of cattle, goats, and sheep, in a chronic infection.

Character of Disease and Lesions Produced.—The disease is of greatest importance in the equines. The incubation period is from three to twelve days (Theiler). There is a continued or remittent fever and a watery discharge from the eyes and nose. The animal becomes much emaciated before death, which usually

occurs in from two weeks to three months. Edema of the ventral region is common. If the animal dies during a febrile attack the spleen is acutely swollen, otherwise there is generally present a chronic tumor of the organ. Sometimes the spleen is entirely normal. The lymph-glands are generally enlarged.

Immunity.—Rodet and Vallet believe that the organism is rapidly destroyed in the spleen. No practicable method of immunizing against the organism has been developed. It has been found that the injection of human serum into laboratory animals at intervals will greatly prolong their life, but will not cure. There is probably some relationship between immunity of man and the trypanicidal character of his serum. Goats, sheep, and cattle show a considerable percentage of cures and are thereafter immune. Their serum, however, has little immunizing power.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Stained mounts of the blood from infected animals will generally reveal the characteristic parasites. Centrifugation of the blood will frequently result in the collection of the organisms in a layer just at the surface of the corpuscles.

Transmission —The disease is commonly transmitted from one animal to another by the bite of the tsetse fly (*Glossina morsitans*), and, according to Koch, in those regions where this fly is unknown by the closely related fly *G. fusca*. The herbivorous animals native to sections of the country where the disease is prevalent are almost invariably infected, and render infection of other animals easy. Kleine experimentally showed that another species of Glossina (*G. palpalis*) could transmit the disease. He found that the flies did not become infective until eighteen days had elapsed after biting an infected animal. Other experimenters have found that the fly loses its infectiveness within a day or two after feeding upon an infected animal, and have concluded that transmission is wholly a mechanical affair.

Trypanosoma equinum

Synonym.—*Trypanosoma elmassiani.*

Disease Produced.—Mal de caderas of the horse (Spanish *caderas* = rump or hindquarter).

Elmassian, in 1901, announced his discovery of the specific

trypanosome of this disease in Argentina. Voges and Lignières confirmed this discovery in the following year. The disease is so prevalent in some sections that cattle exclusively are used for riding and driving.

Distribution.—Parts of South America, particularly Brazil, Paraguay, and Argentina.

Morphology.—This trypanosome resembles those of surra and nagana, but the blepharoplast is so inconspicuous and stains so faintly that it may be readily overlooked. The cell is usually between 22 and 24 μ in length and 2 to 4 μ in width. Cells about to divide are somewhat larger. The difference in the blepharoplast of this and most other forms renders identification easy even in mixed infections.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Inoculation of the organism causes a fatal infection in the horse; the mule and donkey are somewhat more resistant, as are mice, rats, and other rodents, rabbits, and other laboratory animals. Birds cannot be infected. The pig, sheep, goat, and ox may show transitory symptoms, but are highly refractory.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The disease differs from surra and nagana in the almost complete absence of edema, and is characterized by a paralysis of the hindquarters. There is a progressive emaciation, fever, and the hindquarters become weak; the horse in walking scarcely raises the hoof above the ground. Finally, the animal supports itself by leaning or falls to the ground. There are no lesions upon the genital organs.

Immunity.—No method of practicable immunization against the organism has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may be found in the blood, particularly during the fever paroxysms.

Transmission.—The disease is evidently enzoötic in certain parts of South America in rodents or other animals. One of these, the capybara (*Hydrochœrus capybara*), has been found to be infected, and it is said that stockmen can sometimes foretell an outbreak of the *mal de caderas* by the death of many of these animals in the vicinity. The method of transmission is not certainly known. Flies have been supposed to act as carriers, but definite proof is lacking.

Trypanosoma dimorphon

Disease Produced.—Gambian horse sickness, trypanosomiasis in horses and other equines, cattle, sheep, and goats.

Dutton and Todd, in 1902, reported the discovery of a specific trypanosome in a disease of horses in Senegambia. The same, or very similar trypanosome, has since that time been reported from many African localities in other animals as well.

Distribution.—Various localities in Africa (French Guinea, Zanzibar, Sierra Leone, Mozambique, Zululand).

Morphology.—The organism is characterized by the absence of a free flagellum, the flagellum terminating with the undulating membrane. It is dimorphic, some of the cells being 20 to 25 μ in length, others only about 12 μ. Transitional forms between these extremes may be found. The undulating membrane is not well developed. Protoplasmic granules are very rare or are absent in the cell.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The disease has been experimentally produced by the inoculation of the organism into sheep, cattle, goats, rabbits, horses, and white rats.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The infection is acute in the rat, acute or chronic in the rabbit and dog, and chronic in the ox, sheep, and in equines. It produces a severe anemia, with changes in the red blood-cells. In the horse there is progressive emaciation. A marked edema is rarely produced. Death does not occur usually for months after infection. Recovery sometimes occurs.

Immunity.—No practicable method of immunization by means of the organism or its products has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis. The organism may be found in the blood at certain periods, but repeated examination is sometimes necessary. Inoculation of other animals with the blood will nevertheless show it still to be infective.

Transmission.—Transmission supposedly occurs through the *Glossina palpalis.* Other flies are considered to be occasional carriers.

Trypanosoma congolense

Broden described a disease of horses in the Congo Free State which closely simulated nagana, but the trypanosome resembled rather *Trypanosoma dimorphon.* It is also reported from Rhodesia.

Asses and dromedaries also are infected. Laveran, as a result of inoculation experiments, has concluded that this is a distinct species. It has been reported from several localities in southern Africa. It is fatal for cattle and sheep. The organisms are 10 to 20 μ in length and 1.5 to 2.5 μ wide. The flagellum shows no free portion, hence animal inoculations are necessary to differentiate between this and *Tr. dimorphon*. Transmission is through the *Glossina morsitans*.

Trypanosoma pecaudi

Disease Produced.—Baleri, or trypanosomiasis in horses, cattle, sheep, and goats.

This organism was described by Laveran from the blood of inoculated sheep brought to Paris by Cazalbou.
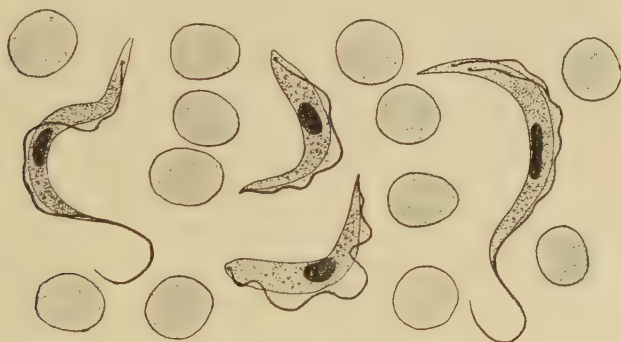
Fig. 190.—*Trypanosoma pecaudi* (Laveran).

Distribution.—The disease is known from the French Sudan.

Morphology.—The organism closely resembles *Trypanosoma dimorphon*. Two forms are described: long slender cells, 25 to 35 μ in length by about 1.5 μ in width, with narrow, undulating membrane and fairly long flagellum, and short broad forms, 14 to 20 μ by 3 to 4 μ, with no free flagellum and a wide, undulating membrane.

Pathogenesis.—*Character of Disease and Lesions.*—In the horse the disease is characterized by repeated attacks of a severe fever, swellings in various parts of the body, injection of the conjunctiva, and a considerable degree of emaciation. Rats, mice, guinea-pigs, and dogs are susceptible to infection.

Transmission.—Buffard claims the *Glossina palpalis* is the agent of its transmission, others that the *G. longipalpis* is the commoner.

Trypanosoma cazalboui

Disease Produced.—Souma or soumaya in cattle, sheep, horses, and mules.

Distribution.—Africa, from the French Sudan, French Congo, Upper Nile.

Morphology.—The organism, including its free flagellum, is about 21 by 1.5 μ. The oval nucleus is centrally located. The undulating membrane is poorly developed and is little folded. The terminal portion of the flagellum is free. There are no marked characters differentiating the organism from *Trypanosoma evansi*

Fig. 191.—*Trypanosoma cazalboui* (Laveran).

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Dogs and small test animals seem to be relatively immune. The infection may be readily transmitted to horses and cattle and the smaller ruminants. Cross-inoculation experiments have shown the disease to be distinct from surra.

Character of Disease.—It generally attacks cattle. The disease leads to a progressive emaciation, weakness of hindparts, the skin is harsh, and there is a staring coat. In many individuals the lower surfaces of the body show marked edema. The temperature is variable. The disease may be acute lasting not over fifty days, while in other cases the course may be prolonged for a year or more.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organisms are present in the blood, usually in small numbers only.

Transmission.—Pecaud concludes that *Glossina palpalis* is responsible for the distant transmission of the organism, and that members of the fly-genera, *Stomoxys* and *Tabanus*, may produce immediate transmission.

Trypanosoma theileri

Disease Produced.—Theiler at first believed this organism to be the cause of galziekte or gall-sickness in bovines, but later investigation has led him to class it as a harmless commensal in the blood of cattle.

This organism was first noted by Theiler and was described at greater length by Laveran. Schnitt in Germany, Peters in South America, and Crowley in America have described very similar organisms in the blood of cattle.

Distribution.—A large part of South Africa, possibly also in India.

Morphology.—The organism associated with this disease is of unusual size, 30 to 70 μ in length and 2 to 5 μ in width. This alone is sufficient to differentiate it from other forms. There is a long, free flagellum. The nucleus is central, but the blepharoplast is a considerable distance from the posterior end. Many protoplasmic granules may usually be seen.

Pathogenesis.—The organism seems to be inoculable only into cattle. It resembles the rat trypanosome in being thus limited to a single host.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organisms are quite common in the blood, but soon disappear.

Transmission.—It has been found to be transmitted by the bite of the fly, *Hypobosca rufipes*.

Trypanosoma gambiense

Synonyms.—*Trypanosoma ugandense; Tr. castellani.*

Disease Produced.—Human trypanosomiasis, or sleeping sickness.

Distribution.—The disease is endemic upon the western coast of Africa and in certain of the central portions.

Morphology.—The organism is 10 to 28 by 1.4 to 2 μ. Forms undergoing division are somewhat larger. The free flagellum may be one-fourth to one-third the length of the body. Rarely no free portion of the flagellum can be demonstrated. The undulating membrane is narrow. The blepharoplast is near the posterior end. Protoplasmic granules that stain like chromatin are commonly observed.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—The disease, with its characteristic clinical symptoms, may be reproduced by the injection of blood containing the organisms into the monkey. Dogs, jackals, cats, guinea-pigs, and rabbits are readily infected. Mice frequently recover and are thereafter immune. Goats and sheep are relatively refractory, but sometimes succumb. It may produce a mild chronic infection in the horse and in cattle.

Character of Disease.—The disease is insidious in its onset. Two distinct stages may be recognized. These were for a long time supposed to be different diseases. In the first stage the organisms appear in the blood; there may or may not be fever. In the second stage pains in the back, tremors, and drowsiness supervene. Finally the patient dies in a comatose condition. In this second stage the organisms are present in numbers in the cerebrospinal fluid. The disease appears to be always fatal, but may run a chronic course, lasting several years.

Immunity.—No practicable method of immunization has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organisms are usually scanty in the blood, and centrifugation is necessary to find them. They may usually be demonstrated in the fluid secured by a lumbar puncture. They may also commonly be demonstrated by puncturing an enlarged lymphatic gland and examining the fluid secured.

Transmission.—One of the tsetse flies, *Glossina palpalis*, has been found to transfer the disease.

Trypanosoma lewisi

Chaussat, in 1850, and Lewis, in 1877, noted the presence of a flagellate in the blood of rats. It is so commonly present in the blood of rats in many parts of the world that it has been frequently used in the laboratory for study and demonstration, although its

pathogenic properties are almost nil. This trypanosome cannot be transmitted to any other genus of mammals so far as known; even the closely related genera of the rodents are refractory. It evidently is a highly specialized commensal. The organism, with its flagellum, measures about 24 to 25 μ in length by 1.5 μ in width. Protoplasmic granules are frequently present.

Trypanosoma hippicum

Disease Produced.—A disease of equines, known as murrina and derrengadera.

The organism was described by Darling, in 1910, as the cause of disease in horses and mules.

Distribution.—Panama, Venezuela, and Central America.

Morphology.—In size the organism resembles *Trypanosoma evansi* and *Tr. brucei*. According to Darling, the length varies from 18 to 28 μ, breadth, $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 μ. The flagellum is usually short and not entirely free, though sometimes free. Nucleus is located posteriorly. Coarse granules are numerous in the protoplasm. The posterior end is blunt, never attenuated as is that of *Tr. lewisi*.

Pathogenesis.—Besides horses and mules, most of the laboratory animals can be infected. In the dog it produces lameness in the posterior extremities. Swine may be infected, but calves are refractory. Cattle never acquire the disease.

Character of Disease.—Progressive emaciation, edema, anemia, febrile paroxysms, and conjunctivitis.

Postmortem Changes.—Slight enlargement of the spleen, petechiated kidneys, hemorrhages on both endocardium and epicardium.

Immunity.—No method of immunization has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The clearness of the blepharoplast characterizes the organism. The parasite is found in the peripheral blood quite generally, but not constantly. As soon as the temperature of an infected animal reaches 101°, blood examination will usually reveal the parasite. During the latter part of the paroxysm it may not be demonstrable. Inoculation of the more susceptible laboratory animals is an aid to diagnosis. Cross inoculation with other trypanosomes has shown the *Trypanosoma hippicum* to be distinct.

32

Transmission.—This probably does not occur through the tabanids, as the disease occurs in localities where these flies are not found. Darling concludes from observations that flies probably act as mechanical carriers by alighting on gall sores and wounds of animals infected, and from these carrying the infectious material to non-infected animals.

The Genus Herpetomonas

This genus includes certain flagellates that have an essentially trypanosome-like structure without an undulating membrane. The cell is elongated in the typical Herpetomonas; the closely related genus Crithridia comprises those forms in which the body is much shortened. The flagellum is anterior, the blepharoplast distinct, as in the trypanosomes, and the nucleus centrally located.

Organisms of this genus have been frequently reported from the gut of mosquitoes and flies. Certain of the trypanosomes sometimes assume shapes that resemble closely the Herpetomonas. The genus assumes pathogenic significance, principally because of the tentative classification of certain protozoa known as the Leishman-Donovan bodies as members of this genus. Three species have been described.

Herpetomonas donovani

Synonyms.—*Leishman-Donovan bodies; Leishmania donovani; Trypanosoma donovani.*

Disease Produced.—Kala-azar, cachexial or Dumdum fever in man.

Leishman, in 1900, observed this parasite in smears from the spleen of a patient that had died of Dumdum fever. His account was published in 1903.

Distribution.—Throughout southern Asia and northern Africa.

Morphology.—The organism as it occurs in the body is commonly intracellular. It is found principally in the spleen, liver, bone-marrow, and lymph-glands. It is oval, spherical, or pear shaped, usually between 2 and 3.5 μ in length and 1.5 to 2 μ in width. Two staining granules occur in the interior, the larger spherical, and the smaller, and more deeply staining granule, somewhat elongated. The organisms multiply by a preliminary division of both of the chromatic granules (nucleus and blepharo-

plast), followed by a constriction of the cell. In cultures typical flagellates are produced. The organism elongates somewhat, and a vacuole appears at one side of the blepharoplast, and from this a single flagellum develops. The body finally assumes an elongated form not unlike a trypanosome without an undulating membrane. This is the *Herpetomonas* stage. This may now divide longitudinally, frequently unequally, splitting off very slender cells. The systematic position of this organism is still somewhat in doubt. It may be that it should be regarded as belonging to a distinct genus, and the name *Leishmania* used instead of *Herpetomonas*.

Pathogenesis.—The disease is characterized by enlargement of the spleen and by fever.

Transmission.—It is believed that the parasite is transferred from the dog to man through some intermediate host.

Leishmania (Herpetomonas ?) infantum

Nicolle has described an organism similar to the preceding from a disease which he calls infantile kala-azar. The organisms re-
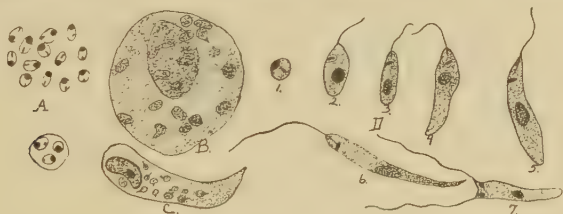
Fig. 192.—*Herpetomonas infantum: A*, Organisms from the spleen of a child; *B*, a mononuclear containing the organisms, and *C*, an endothelial cell from the spleen; *D*, various stages in the development of the Herpetomonas form from the Leishman-Donovan bodies (Nicolle).

semble the preceding, but are believed to constitute a separate species. The disease is primarily one of dogs, which may be transmitted to children.

Leishmania tropica

Synonyms.—*Ovoplasma orientale · Helcosoma tropicum.*

Wright has described a similar organism as the cause of oriental sore or Delhi boil in man. It is probably transmitted likewise by some biting insect. The dog may be infected and show clinical symptoms similar to man.

CHAPTER XLII

PATHOGENIC PROTOZOA OF THE CLASS RHIZOPODA

THE Rhizopoda are protozoa having during adult life movable or changeable processes of protoplasm called pseudopodia. Reproduction is accomplished through simple fission and by spore formation.

Among the hundreds of genera and thousands of species of organisms belonging to this group that have been described there
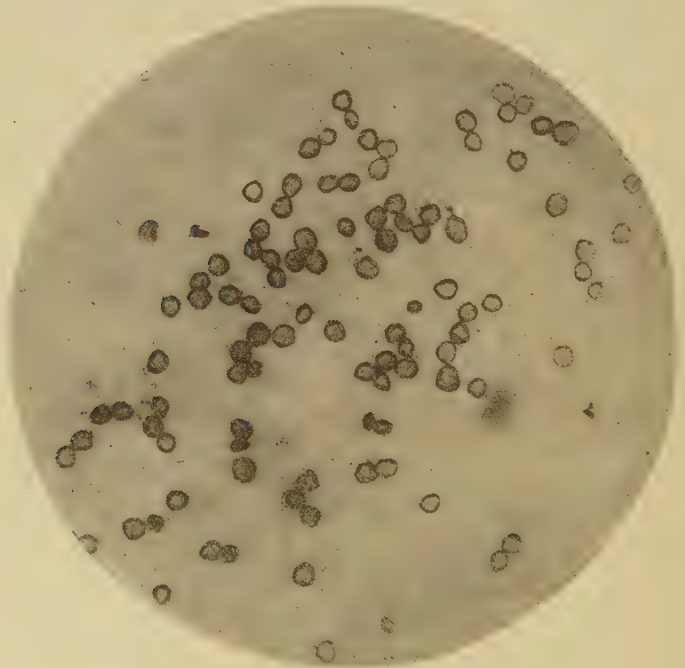
Fig. 193.—Ameba in culture (Schardinger).

is one (possibly two or three) which has been found to be pathogenic. They are certainly known to be pathogenic in man only, but the frequent occurrence of the organisms of this genus is the

intestines of the lower animals, and the possibility of confusing the adult stage with certain developmental stages of the sporozoa renders a discussion of these forms advisable in a veterinary text. The possibility of any of the forms being pathogenic for lower animals has not been sufficiently investigated.

The Genus Entamœba

The normal inhabitant of the intestinal tract of man was first known as *Amœba coli*. Later, Schaudinn renamed it *Entamœba coli*, and gave the name *Entamœba histolytica* to the pathogenic type associated with the amebic dysentery. The genus Entamœba was differentiated from Amœba by the absence of a contractile vacuole and by the formation of multinucleated cysts.

Authorities differ greatly in their estimates of the number of species of amebæ present in the intestines of man. Walker and Sellards state that eighteen forms have been described as separate species. The best classification, and the one most commonly used now, is that of Schaudinn. He recognizes two species at least— one a normal non-pathogenic form, *Entamœba coli*, and one pathogenic for man, *Entamœba histolytica*. More recently Hartmann and others have described a third species, *E. tetragena*, and Koidsumi a fourth, *E. nipponica*, both from cases of dysentery. The possibility of any of the dysenteries of the lower animals being caused by amebæ has not been sufficiently studied. Smith believes that certain diseases of turkeys and other fowls, particularly enterohepatitis, are caused by an ameba termed *Amœba meleagridis*, but others have contended this to be but a developmental stage in the life-history of a Coccidium.

Examination of Living Amebæ.—The amebæ may be examined in the stools in a living condition by placing a portion of the liquid or a bit of the solider material moistened with physiologic salt solution on a slide, and pressing down a cover-glass not too firmly. Craig advises the use of a very weak solution of neutral red to stain the living organisms when they are not present in too great numbers. For the specific determination of the amebæ present an examination of this kind is frequently all that is necessary. The slide must be maintained at about blood-heat in order to detect motility.

Staining Methods.—The organisms stain rather readily with the usual laboratory stains, but these are of little value in the differentiation of the parts of the cell and in separating species. Wright's stain in favorable specimens, if carefully used, gives the best differentiation of the parts of the cell. The organism in tissues is best stained by Heidenhain's iron-hematoxylon or Borrel's stain. The smears should be fixed from fifteen to twenty minutes in alcohol and ether, equal parts, for all stains but Wright's. For the latter no fixation is required.

Methods of Isolation and Cultivation.—Amebæ commonly use bacteria and related organisms as food. A culture of amebæ must provide for the growth of bacteria, but this growth must not be so luxuriant as to overgrow and eliminate the amebæ. The agar medium recommended by Musgrave and Clegg may be used. This contains agar, 20 gm.; NaCl, 0.03 to 0.05 gm.; beef-extract, 0.3 to 0.5 gm.; water, 1000 c.c., made 1 per cent. alkaline to phenolphthalein. Variations in the materials used are sometimes necessary for some specialized saprozoïtes. This medium is melted, poured into a sterile Petri dish, and allowed to solidify. The surface of the medium is streaked with the material containing the amebæ. The bacteria and amebæ will usually both multiply if the plate be kept at a suitable temperature. Two operations are necessary to secure a culture in which it is known that all of the amebæ are of one species and all of the bacteria of one kind. The mixed culture is placed upon the medium in the center of the Petri dish. Concentric circles of the organism with which it is desired to grow the ameba are placed about this. The amebæ, as they crawl through the successive circles, gradually lose the original organisms with which they started and come to feed on the one kind. After one or more transfers a growth of the amebæ may be secured with the one species of organism desired. It is not always possible to secure growth with every species of organism, as the different amebæ have been found to require various species of bacteria.

In order to secure a culture containing a single kind of ameba it is necessary to isolate a single individual. Ordinarily this may be accomplished by examination of the surface of an agar culture until an isolated ameba is found, and this is then transferred to a

fresh plate.   Musgrave and Clegg recommend running the tip of the lens against such an organism and removing it, attached to the lens, and inoculating the new medium by running the lens down in contact with it.

Entamœba coli

Synonym.—*Amœba coli.*

Disease Produced.—The organism is probably non-pathogenic.

The *Entamœba coli* was probably seen and recognized by Lambl in 1860.   Since that time it has been repeatedly noted by many investigators.   Schaudinn, in 1905, first clearly differentiated the organism and traced its life-history.   His work has been confirmed and extended by Craig in the United States.   The organism is present in a large percentage (50 per cent., according to

Fig. 194.—*Entamœba coli: A*, Non-motile form; *B*, cell showing pseudopodia; *D*, *E*, stages in cell division; *F*, *G*, *H*, *I*, *J*, stages in encystment and sporulation (adapted from Craig).

Schaudinn) of healthy individuals.   It is most easily recognized in the feces after the administration of a saline cathartic.

Morphology.—The *Entamœba coli* is a mass of protoplasm not possessing a definite cell wall, but with a nucleus containing usually one or more nucleoli.   One (rarely more) *non-contractile* vacuole is occasionally present.   The organism varies from 8 to 50 μ in diameter, but in the majority of cases is between 10 and 20 μ. When encysted it is usually between 10 and 15 μ.   The organism is approximately spherical when not in motion.   It is sluggishly motile, and usually is not moving when observed in a hanging drop.   In this it is of a dull gray color.   The protoplasm cannot be differentiated into endoplasm and ectoplasm when the organism is at rest.   When in motion the ectoplasm may sometimes be seen.   This fact is of considerable diagnostic value.   The endoplasm is finely granular, and rarely contains more than a single

vacuole. The nucleus is definite, spherical, and contains chromatin granules and one or more nucleoli; it is 5 to 8 μ in diameter. When stained by Wright's method, the ectoplasm and endoplasm may be easily differentiated. The ectoplasm stains blue, the endoplasm violet, and the nucleus red.

Multiplication is commonly accomplished in the intestines by simple division. The nucleus divides and the protoplasm constricts to form two individuals. This process is common in the liquid stools, but when drier and firmer, cystic reproduction is more common. A refractive hyaline cyst forms about the spherical organism and thickens. The protoplasm becomes homogeneous in appearance and clearer than before. The nucleus then undergoes complicated divisions and recombinations, which ultimately result in the formation of eight nuclei. When the wall is ruptured, these nuclei, with bits of the protoplasm, escape and constitute eight young amebæ.

Pathogenesis.—Repeated efforts to produce disease by injection of *Entamœba coli* into the colon of cats and other animals have failed. It must be regarded as a normal inhabitant of the intestines of man. Similar organisms have been found in the intestines of animals.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—*Entamœba coli* may be recognized in the feces by a direct microscopic examination as an ameba showing very slight motility, rounded pseudopodia, little or no observable differentiation between ectoplasm and endoplasm, comparative lack of vacuoles in protoplasm, and by the production of eight daughter-cells from each cyst.

Entamœba histolytica

Synonym.—*Amœba dysenteriæ.*

Disease Produced.—Amebic dysentery in man.

Loesch, in 1875, described *Amœba coli* as the cause of a dysentery in man, and claimed that the rectal injection of feces containing the organisms into dogs produced dysentery. Robert Koch, in 1883, showed the organism to be present in the ulcerations of the intestines. Kartulis firmly established a probable etiologic relationship by his studies in Egypt, published in 1886. Councilman and Lafleur studied the pathology of the disease in

great detail.   Schaudinn gave to the organism its present name of *E. histolytica*, and described its morphology with accuracy.

The disease has been reported from all sections of the world. It seems to be much more prevalent in tropical than in temperate climates, but has been identified repeatedly in the United States.

Morphology.—According to Craig, the morphology of this organism varies so greatly in culture-media that only the forms found in the feces can be regarded as typical.   The organism under these conditions varies in diameter to 50 μ or more, showing it to be larger than *Entamœba coli*.   At rest, the organism is spherical
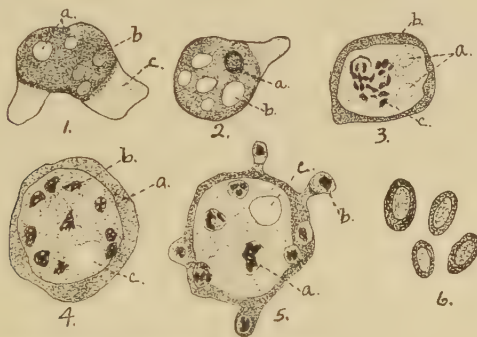
Fig. 195.—*Entamœba histolytica:* 1, Organism in motion—*a*, Vacuoles; *b*, red blood-cells; *c*, pseudopodium composed chiefly of ectoplasm.   2, Organism showing nucleus *a*, and vacuoles, *b*.   3. Preliminary changes upon beginning sporulation—*a*, Vacuoles; *b*, chromatin masses escaping from the nucleus and scattering through the cell.   4, Chromatin masses scattered through the cell, *b; c*, vacuole.   5, Cell budding off spores, the chromatin masses or new nuclei passing through the ectoplasm and escaping as spores.   6, Free spores (adapted from Craig).

or ovoid; when in motion, its shape is extremely variable.   It is usually actively motile, throwing out pseudopodia much more rapidly than *E. coli*.

Color is absent, and the organism appears clear, or there may be a greenish tinge, due to the presence of hemoglobin from the blood in the feces and the blood-corpuscles engulfed.   In the larger cells, rarely in the smaller, the endoplasm and ectoplasm may be quite sharply differentiated.   The latter is hyaline, glass-like, and refractive, much firmer than the comparatively delicate membrane of *Entamœba coli*, and the two are relatively

easily distinguishable by this means. The ectoplasm apparently comprises about one-third of the protoplasm. One or more vacuoles are always present, as many as ten sometimes being found. The nucleus is faint and difficult to distinguish in the unstained mount. It is about 5 to 6 μ in diameter. The chromatin is relatively sparse. With Wright's stain the ectoplasm stains more deeply than the endoplasm, the opposite of what is true in *E. coli*.

Reproduction is accomplished in two ways. The first consists of a division of the nucleus, followed by a constriction of the cell to form two individuals. This process is essentially the same as that in *Entamœba coli*. The method of spore formation, gemmation, or budding is quite different. When conditions arise unfavorable to continued vegetative existence, spores are produced. The nucleus, by a process of fragmentation, throws out chromatin granules or chromidia, which gradually collect under the ectoplasm, form new nuclei, and are finally thrown off from the exterior, together with some of the protoplasm, as a spore or bud. These spores are round or oval, have a yellowish membrane, and measure 3 to 6 μ, usually about 4 μ in diameter. The membrane which forms about these spores is resistant to the penetration and action of stains.

Pathogenesis.—*Experimental Evidence.*—Schaudinn dried feces of dysentery patients after demonstrating that they contained *Entamœba histolytica*, in the form of spores in large numbers, and that they were free from *E. coli*. These were fed to a kitten, and death resulted in fourteen days, with characteristic ulceration of the intestinal wall. Similar experiments have since been repeated many times. There is little or no doubt of the pathogenicity of the organism, and the disease produced may be considered as a clinical entity.

Character of Disease and Lesions.—The disease produced is a chronic dysentery, marked by intestinal ulceration, and frequently by abscesses in the liver. The presence of the relatively firm ectoplasm is believed to account for the ability of the organism to force its way into the tissues between the cells.

Immunity.—No method of immunization against the *Entamœba histolytica* has been developed.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The *Entamœba histolytica* may be recognized in the feces, and separated from the *E. coli* by its larger size, its distinct differentiation into a hyaline refringent ectoplasm and a more granular endoplasm, the presence of more than one vacuole usually, the common presence of erythrocytes in the protoplasm in the course of digestion, by the less prominent nucleus, and by formation of spores by a process of budding with encystment.

Entamœba tetragena

Synonym.—*Entamœba africana.*

This species was first described by Viereck in dysentery in Africa. Since that time the same organism has been noted by Hartmann, Werner, and others. It has been found capable of producing dysentery in cats. It resembles morphologically the *Entamœba coli* more closely than the *E. histolytica*, but differs by the formation of four spores instead of eight within the cysts.

CHAPTER XLIII

SPOROZOA

THE Sporozoa stand alone among the protozoa, in that all the species are parasites. Many are harmless commensals, but a considerable number are pathogenic. The sporozoan cell contains typically a single nucleus, except in the Myxosporidia, which are multinucleate. Food is taken in by diffusion through the plasma wall. Gastric and contractile vacuoles are present. The adult form is non-motile; the young forms are frequently actively motile, either ameboid or flagellate. In most of the Sporozoa the differentiation of the protoplasm into ectoplasm and endoplasm can be clearly made out. The reproduction of the Sporozoa is the principal character which differentiates this group from others. Spores are always produced in those forms in which the complete life-history is known. The details of spore formation vary greatly in the different forms, but the essentials are the same.

The cell as a whole, in most forms, divides to form archispores or *sporoblasts;* each of the archispores forms *spores,* and each spore then produces one or more *sporozoites.* Many forms show additional methods of reproduction. Formation of sex cells or gametes, with fusion of like or unlike cells, takes place in many forms, and serves to further complicate the life-history.

Blood-smears may be stained by one of the Romanowsky stains or by Wright's method to demonstrate the protozoa of this group. Considerable care must be exercised in the examination of such blood mounts not to confuse the normal blood contents, such as blood-platelets, with developmental stages of the protozoa.

The class Sporozoa contains many families and genera; only a few of the latter contain species that are of economic importance. The following artificial key will assist in differentiating the various genera of veterinary interest:

A. Sporozoa found in the blood-cells.
  1. In erythrocytes.
    (a) At some stage occupying a considerable proportion of the interior of the cell.
      (1) In mammalian blood.
        (a) Well-differentiated, often two in a cell.   In animals.
          1. Initial multiplication in the spleen, organisms in peripheral blood usually rod shaped.................**Theileria.**
          2. Constantly in blood-cells.   Usually pear shaped....................**Babesia (Piroplasma).**
        (b) Ameboid of first, finally filling the cell..........................**Plasmodium.**
      (2) In avian blood....................**Proteosoma (Hæmoproteus).**
    (b) Forming minute dots, seemingly entirely of chromatin.........................**Anaplasma.**
  2. In leukocytes.
    (a) In mammals........................**Leukocytogregarina.**
    (b) In birds............................**Leukocytozoön.**
B. Sporozoa occurring in muscles.............**Sarcocystis.**
C. Sporozoa occurring in membranes (mucous or serous)................................**Eimeria (Coccidium)** and **Isospora.**

THE GENUS PIROPLASMA, OR BABESIA

An organism belonging to this genus was first noted by Babes and called by him *Hæmatococcus*. Theobald Smith, in 1889, made the first observation which related one of these organisms to Texas fever. He called the organism *Pyrosoma*. This was later changed to *Piroplasma* by Patton, and still later by Starcovici to *Babesia*.

The organisms of this genus occur in the red blood-cells of various mammals and produce several distinct diseases. They do not show pigmentation. The life-history of all the species has not been satisfactorily worked out.

Babesia bigemina

Synonyms.—*Pyrosoma bigeminum; Apiosoma bigeminus; Piroplasma bigeminum; Hæmatococcus bovis; Ixidoplasma bigeminum.*

Disease Produced.—Texas fever, or tick fever in cattle—bovine piroplasmosis.

Theobald Smith, in 1889, discovered the cause of Texas fever in cattle. His work was fundamental and remarkably complete. Since that time investigators have found the same organisms in many countries.

Distribution.—Southern United States, Australia, South America, Europe, India, Philippines, and Africa.

Morphology.—In the blood of infected animals the organisms are generally in pairs. They are commonly piriform, one end being rounded and the other somewhat pointed. The acute ends are usually pointed toward each other. The organisms vary from 0.5 to 2 μ in diameter, and 2 to 4 μ in length. The reproductive stages have not been thoroughly worked out, nor has the development in the tick. The organism stains readily with such dyes as alkaline methylene-blue and by Wright's method.

Pathogenesis.—The relationship of the organism to the disease has been satisfactorily demonstrated by inoculation experiments.

Fig. 196.—*Babesia bigemina*, infected red blood-cells with 1–4 parasites, a blood-platelet in the center (Sieber).

The disease in cattle is characterized by fever and a hemoglobinuria, with considerable destruction of red blood-corpuscles. In acute cases death often occurs in five to eight days after the symptoms are first noted. Those cases in which recovery takes place generally harbor still in their bodies the specific organisms, but remain perfectly well.

Immunity.—As already noted, recovery from disease does not necessarily predicate the disappearance of the organism from the blood, and it may persist for years. It has been found that immunity against a fatal attack of this disease may be conferred by inoculation with the blood of immune animals. This results generally in a mild infection, which immunizes against one of a

severer type. Such methods of vaccination are quite widely practised.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The organism may usually be demonstrated in the blood when stained with Löffler's methylene-blue or Wright's stain.

Transmission.—Natural infection takes place only through the bite of infected cattle ticks (*Rhipicephalus annulatus* or *Boöphilus bovis*) in the United States and closely related forms in other countries. The female tick becomes engorged with blood and falls to the ground, where, after a time, eggs are laid. They hatch in from nineteen days to five or six months, depending upon the temperature conditions. The young ticks crawl up the stems of grass and shrubs. They must get upon the body of an animal or die of starvation. The ticks from an infected mother are themselves infective, and may transmit the disease to the animal whose blood they suck.

Babesia mutans

Synonym.—*Piroplasma mutans.*

Theiler has established the presence of a form of bovine piroplasmosis in southern Africa, due to a prototozoan which he has named *Piroplasma mutans*. It is smaller than the *P. bigeminum*, and animals immunized against one will contract disease caused by the other.

Babesia equi

Synonym.—*Piroplasma equi.* Possibly *Babesia asini.*

Disease Produced.—Equine biliary fever. Equine piroplasmosis.

Guglienni, in 1899, discovered this organism in Italy, and Theiler later elaborated an account of the disease and the organism as it occurs in South Africa.

Distribution.—The disease has been noted from South Africa, Central Africa, Algeria, Italy, Sweden, Russia, India, and Venezuela. It is evident that further observation may show an extensive distribution.

Morphology.—The organism is smaller than *Piroplasma bigeminum*, but resembles it. It occurs singly or in pairs, or rarely in rosettes, in the red blood-cells. Occasionally it is free in the plasma. The disease was first supposed to be non-transmissible by

blood injection, but Theiler succeeded by intravenous injections of virulent blood. It also attacks the ass and the mule.

Pathogenesis.—The disease is characterized by jaundice and a high fever. It may run an acute or a chronic course; frequently it is fatal within a few days. The lymph-nodes and the spleen are considerably enlarged. Animals born in infected districts are commonly immune.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted by ticks in South Africa by *Rhipicephalus evertsi*. The nymphs are infected and transmit the disease to other horses when they become adults.

Babesia ovis

Synonyms.—*Piroplasma ovis; Hæmatococcus ovis; Amæbosporidium polyphagum.*

Disease Produced.—Hemoglobinuria, malarial catarrhal fever, or icterohematuria in sheep.

Babes, in 1892, first noted the parasites in the blood-cells of sheep in Rumania at the time that he made his observations on piroplasmosis of cattle.

Distribution.—It has been noted from Italy, France, Turkey, Venezuela, and the West Indies, South Africa, Rumania, German East Africa, and probably in the United States (Montana).

Morphology.—It is similar to *Piroplasma bigeminum*, but smaller (1 to 1.8 μ in diameter). It is commonly single, sometimes double, in the cells, and frequently occurs in the plasma.

Pathogenesis.—The disease may be transferred by the injection of blood containing the organisms into healthy animals. The incubation period is about eight to ten days. Other animals, including cattle, cannot be infected. The disease is commonly fatal. It is characterized by anemia, icterus, and frequently hemoglobinuria.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted through the bite of a tick (*Rhipicephalus bursa*). The adult only transfers the disease.

Babesia canis

Synonyms.—*Pyrosoma bigeminum* var.*canis; Piroplasma canis.*

Disease Produced.—Biliary fever or malignant jaundice of the dog.

Prani and Galli-Valerio, in 1895, first described the blood parasite of canine piroplasmosis.

Distribution.—It has been reported in China, India, Italy, France, Hungary, South Africa, East Africa, and possibly from the United States.

Morphology.—The organisms are morphologically almost identical with *Piroplasma bigeminum*, but are larger. They are generally 2 to 4 μ in diameter. They are sometimes found abundantly in the plasma, and in a single blood-cell there may be as many as sixteen of the organisms. The free organisms are spherical; those within the corpuscles are pear shaped or many angled. Multiplication is apparently by direct division.

The life cycle is better known for this species than for other members of the genus. The pear-shaped bodies within the red

Fig. 197.—*Babesia canis:* 1–11, Organisms in various developmental stages in red blood-cells in culture; 12, 13, organisms free in the plasma (Deseler).

cells are relatively large, one end being regularly pointed. Usually two are found in a single cell, sometimes four, eight, or more. They multiply by longitudinal fusion. An ameboid stage occurs while the organism is on the exterior of the red cell, or while the organism is young.

Breinl and Hindle showed that if a dog in an advanced stage of the disease is bled, the heart blood mixed with $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of sodium citrate, motile cells with long flagella may be developed. These may be differentiated into gametes. Union of the gametes occurs in the alimentary tract of the tick. The zygote is elongate, and makes its way into the body of the tick, eventually infecting the blood of an animal bitten by the tick.

Culture.—Thomson and Fantham have succeeded in cultivating *Babesia canis in vitro.* Heart blood is secured, and $\frac{1}{10}$ c.c. of 50 per cent. solution of glucose in water added to 10 c.c., defibrinated,

33

and kept at 37°. In the culture, oval, piriform, ameboid, and round parasites were found. Hemolysis occurs in all cultures.

Pathogenesis.—The disease may be readily transferred by the injection of virulent blood. It cannot be transmitted to other species of animals. Nuttall and Graham-Smith did not succeed in reproducing the disease in the fox and jackal. .The period of incubation is three days or more. There is fever, and sometimes icterus and hemoglobinuria. Anemia is marked. The spleen is greatly enlarged, the gall-bladder is distended, and the kidneys are often ecchymotic. Chronic cases frequently recover. The acute cases are almost invariably fatal. Animals which have apparently recovered show the parasite in the blood for long periods and retain their infectivity.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—Stained blood-films will demonstrate the organism if present.

Transmission.—At least three species of tick, and probably one species of flea, have been found to act as carriers of the organism.

Babesia (Piroplasma) gibsoni

Patton has described an organism causing piroplasmosis in hounds in the Madras Hunt in India. Later it was discovered also in the blood of a native jackal. Its relationship to the *Piroplasma canis* has not been satisfactorily determined.

Babesia (Piroplasma) commune

Phillips and McCampbell have described a species of Piroplasma as the cause of an epizoötic of dogs at Columbus, Ohio.
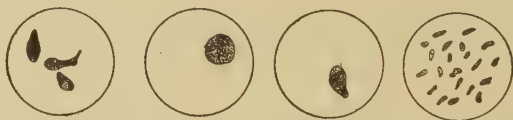
Fig. 198.—*Babesia commune*, organisms in the red blood-cells (adapted from Phillips and McCampbell).

The organisms found were similar to the *Babesia canis*, but these investigators were able to demonstrate the organism in the blood of guinea-pigs injected with virulent blood. The cat was also infected, but not the horse, cow, rat, or rabbit. This fact of
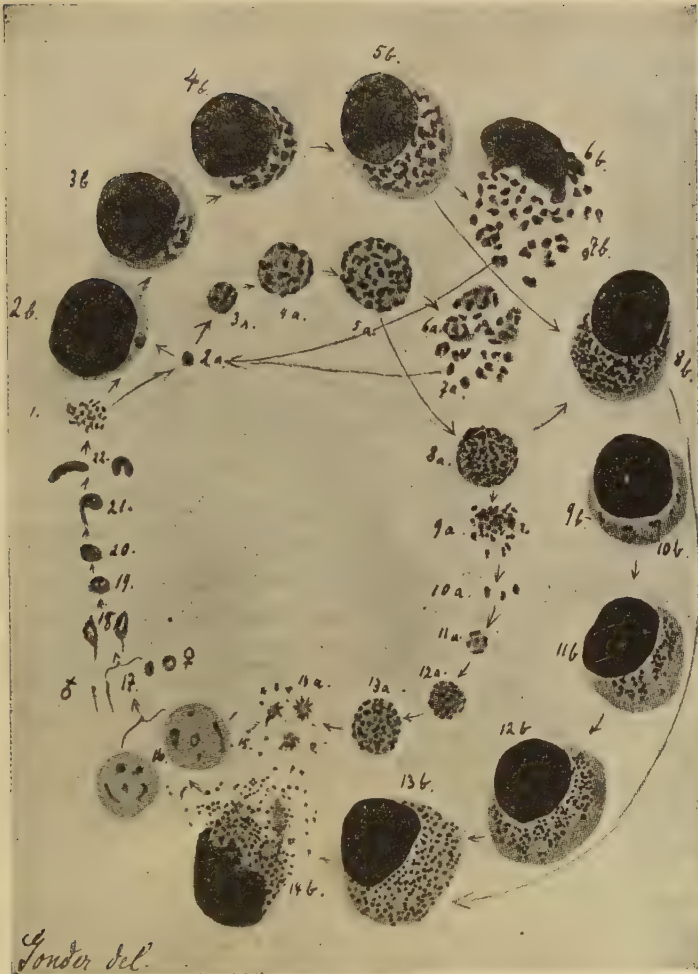
Fig. 199.—*Theileria parva*, life cycle: 1, Agametes of the first generation (metagametes); 2, *a* and *b*, agamonts with one nucleus; 3, *a* and *b*, agamonts with several nuclei; 4, *a* and *b*, medium-sized agamonts; 5, *a* and *b*, large agamonts with numerous nuclei; 6, *a* and *b*, agamonts undergoing schizogony; 7, *a* and *b*, agametes; 8, *a* and *b*, reduction forms of agamonts; 9, *a* and *b*, segmentation of reduction forms of agamonts; 10, *a* and *b*, young agamonts; 11, *a* and *b*, medium-sized gamonts with several nuclei; 12 and 13, *a* and *b*, large gamonts with numerous nuclei; 14, *a* and *b*, gamonts undergoing schizogony; 15, free gametocytes; 16, gametocytes in the red blood-corpuscles; 17, micro- and macrogametes in the stomach of the tick; 18, copulation; 19, karyomyxis; 20 and 21, formation of the oökinetes; 21, retort forms of oökinete; 22, oökinete (Gonder, in "Journal of Comparative Pathology and Therapeutics").

transmissibility led to the tentative adoption of a new specific name, as the true *Piroplasma canis* is not known to be transmissible to any other animals.   The organisms found were round or pear shaped.   The round type were from 0.5 to 1.5 μ in diameter, and the piriform 1.5 by 2.3 μ.   Considerable pleomorphism was evident.

Theileria parva

Synonyms.—*Piroplasma parva; Babesia parva.*

Disease Produced.—East African coast fever, Rhodesian red-water, Rhodesian tick fever in cattle.

The organism and the disease have been studied by Theiler, Koch, and others.   This protozoan is the smallest of the Piroplasmas known.   In the red cells it forms a small rod that has a chromatin granule at one end.   Frequently ring forms are observed, never the pear-shaped types of *P. bigeminum*.   Gonder has worked out in detail the life-history of the organism.   This disease is peculiar, in that transference of blood containing the organism from one animal to another does not result in the transference of the disease.   Repeated inoculations are without effect.   It is transmitted by means of the brown tick (*Rhipicephalus appendiculatus*) and the black pitted tick (*R. simus*).   The affected animals show high fever and swelling of the lymph-nodes.   Anemia, icterus, and hemoglobinuria are rarely observed.   Immunity to this disease does not immunize against Texas fever.   What is probably the same disease has also been described from southern Russia and in Java.

THE GENUS PLASMODIUM

Malaria in man has been found to be due to three species of protozoa, usually placed in the genus Plasmodium.   The organisms pass certain parts of their life-cycle in the blood-corpuscles in man, and the remainder in the gut and tissues of the mosquito.   The organisms of malaria were first noted by Laveran in 1880, and the various types have been differentiated since that time.

Plasmodium vivax

Disease Produced.—Tertian malaria in man.

Distribution.—This is the commoner malaria of temperate climates.

Morphology and Life-history.—The organism when first recognized in the blood is small, with ameboid movements. It penetrates the red blood-corpuscle, and develops until the interior
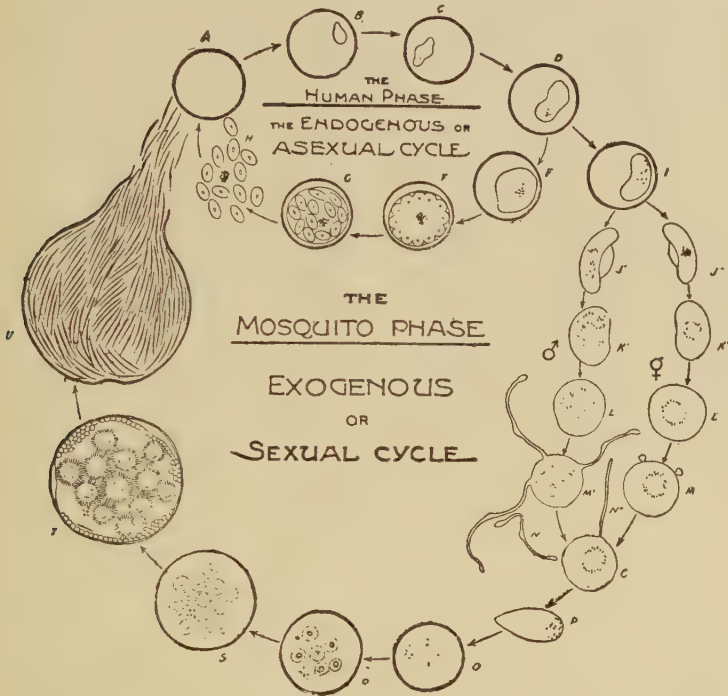
Fig. 200.—Diagram illustrating the life-cycle of the malarial parasite: *A*, Sporozoïtes entering a red blood-cell; *B, C, D, E,* the organism in various stages of development; *F, G,* the formation of sporocytes and their division into spores which infect new red blood-cells. The series *A* to *H* represents the cycle through which the organism passes in the human body; *I*, infected red cell ingested by a mosquito. The organism may now develop through the series *J', K', L', M',* to form microgametocytes and microgametes or through *J, K, L, M,* to form a macrogamete which unites with a microgamete to form a fertilized ovum; *P*, the organism penetrates the stomach-wall of the mosquito and develops through the stages *Q, R, S, T, U.* From *U* large numbers of slender spores are liberated into the body cavity. These pass to the salivary glands of the mosquito and are injected when the insect again bites (Rees).

of the corpuscle is filled. When full grown, it may double the diameter of a blood-cell. The organism then segments to form a rosette of bodies, which round off to form small spores or merozoïtes. These are freed by the disintegration of the red blood-cell, and

attach themselves to other cells and begin development anew. This may be repeated several times. This is called the asexual phase of the life-history. The organism may be taken in by the mosquito (Anopheles), and here completes its life-cycle by passing through the sexual phase. Two types of cells are found to develop from the spores in the body of the mosquito. The male cell (known as microgametocyte) produces five to eight microgametes. The female cells (macrogametes) are larger and granular. A microgamete fuses with one of the macrogametes to form what may be termed a fertilized "egg," copula, or oökinete. This burrows into the wall of the stomach of the mosquito, encysts, and enlarges greatly. The contents finally break up into a considerable number of spherical bodies known as sporoblasts. These in turn produce great numbers of delicate filamentous bodies called sporozoïtes. These are liberated by the rupture of the cyst, and pass through the body cavity, and finally enter the poison or salivary gland, whence they are inoculated into the next victim of the mosquito. This cycle in the insect is completed in from eight to ten days, and during this time the insect is not infective.

Pathogenesis.—The disease is characterized by chills, followed by fever, which occur every forty-eight hours. The infection is usually benign; a fatal termination is very rare. The chills and fever develop at the time of formation of the merozoïtes and the infection of new cells.

Transmission.—The disease is transmissible only through the bite of the mosquito. The elimination of the possibility of this transfer is the all-important factor in efficient prophylaxis.

Plasmodium malariæ

This organism produces the quartan malaria in which the interval between paroxysms of fever is seventy-two hours, and the asexual cycle is completed in this time. This disease, like the preceding, is benign, and yields readily to quinin treatment.

Plasmodium immaculatum and falciparum

This type of malaria is usually tropical. It is malignant, and does not yield readily to treatment. Two types are known,

a quotidian, which completes its asexual cycle in twenty four hours, and a tertian, which requires forty-eight. Whether or not these are distinct species is uncertain, but is probable.

The Genus Proteosoma, Halteridium, and Hemoproteus

These are genera of sporozoa which produce a malaria-like infection in birds. In some forms a part of the life-cycle is also spent in the body of the mosquito—in this case a Culex. None of the species are of any considerable economic importance.

The Genus Anaplasma

This genus was created by Theiler in 1910 to accommodate the organism described as "marginal points" in the erythrocytes of cattle. The protozoan consists of a tiny dot of chromatin-like material in the corpuscle, usually near the margin, never more than one-thirtieth to one-twentieth the size of the cell. The name Anaplasma comes from the apparent lack of any cytoplasmic material.

Anaplasma marginale

Synonym.—Marginal points.

Disease Produced.—Anaplasmosis, Galziekte, or gall sickness in cattle.

This organism, according to Theiler, has been observed by several investigators, among them Smith and Kilborne, in their study of Texas fever. These observers have believed it to be a developmental stage of the *Piroplasma* (*Babesia*) *bigeminum*. Theiler has succeeded in demonstrating the distinction between the organisms, and defines Texas fever as a mixed infection of *Anaplasma marginale* and *Piroplasma bigeminum*.

Distribution.—Known with certainty from South Africa; probably widely distributed.

Morphology and Staining.—The organism may be single in the corpuscles, or there may be several within a single cell. The parasites usually lie near the periphery of the corpuscle, rarely free in the blood. They are small, spherical, rarely more than one-tenth of the diameter of the cell, frequently less. By appropriate staining methods the presence of a central granule surrounded by a less apparent capsule may be demonstrated. Sieber has ob-

served multiplication of the organisms within the blood-cells by a simple type of division.
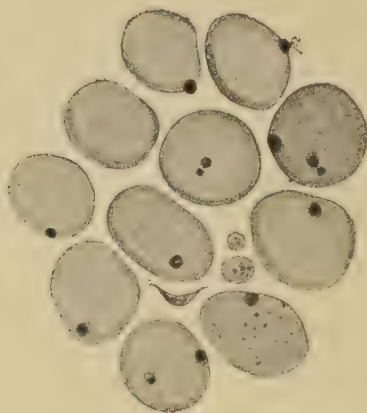
Fig. 201.—*Anaplasma marginale* in red blood-cells. Note the irregularity in size and in the staining of these cells (Sieber).

The *Anaplasma marginale* does not stain readily with the usual anilin dyes, but can be demonstrated easily by a stain
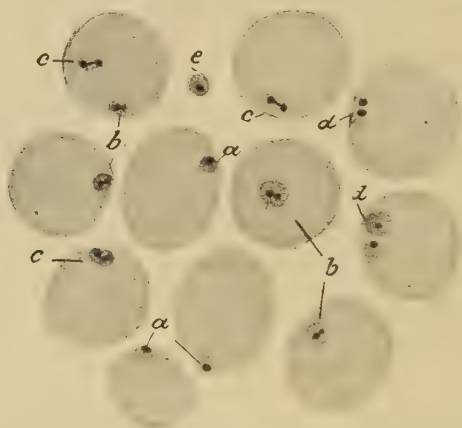
Fig. 202.—*Anaplasma marginale*, stained by Heidenhain's hematoxylon: *a*, Single parasite; *b*, beginning of division, the diplococcus types; *c*, dumb-bell forms; *d*, completed divisions; *e*, free parasites (Sieber).

such as Giemsa's. Heidenhain's iron hematoxylin also gives good results. It may be seen even in the living cells as a refractive marginal granule.

Pathogenesis.—The disease produced has an incubation period of sixteen to sixty days. The specific organisms may be first demonstrated from the spleen; later they become abundant in the blood. As many as 30 per cent. of the cells may be infected. The first evident reaction is irregularity and poikilocytosis of the red blood-cells, followed by more or less polychromasia and fragmentation. The serum does not seem to acquire any hemolytic properties. The febrile periods in the disease coincide with the presence of the greatest number of marginal points in the corpuscles. Cattle are susceptible to artificial infection. It is believed by Theiler and his coworkers that the primary symptoms of disease in Texas fever are due to *Piroplasma bigemina*, but that the secondary symptoms are due to this *Anaplasma marginale*, which requires a longer incubation period.

Transmission.—The organism is transmitted through the tick (*Boöphilus decoloratus*).

THE GENUS LEUKOCYTOZOÖN

Protozoa somewhat resembling the malarial parasites have been found in the white blood-corpuscles or leukocytes in birds
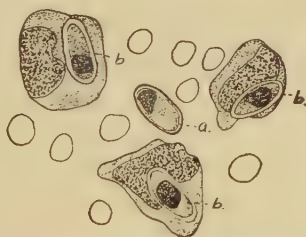
Fig. 203.—*Hepatozoön perniciosum*, a leucocytozoön from the blood of a rat: *a*, Free parasite; *b*, parasites in the mononuclear leukocytes (adapted from Miller).

by several observers, and in the domestic fowl and the dog in Tonkin by Marhis and Leger. They are not known to be of any economic importance.

THE GENUS SARCOCYSTIS

These sporozoa are usually elongated, tubular, oval, or even spherical. Cysts with a double membrane are formed, and in these

are produced reniform or sickle-shaped sporozoïtes, with a polar capsule and a projectile thread.

Species of this genus have been described from the muscles of a large number of vertebrates. In most cases the organism does not do any appreciable harm. Recently (1908) Watson has called attention to the prevalence of sarcosporidiosis in western Canada, particularly in animals suspected of loco-poisoning or infected with dourine. Six cases were found in cattle and two in horses suspected of being locoed, three in dourine-affected equines, and one in a filly showing cachexia. He concludes that these organisms may sometimes be an important factor in disease. In some cases the entire musculature may be affected with serious and even fatal consequences. A close relationship between loco-poisoning and sarcosporidiosis is shown by the autopsy records. Recovery from this affection and from dourine may be prevented or retarded by the presence of the organisms. The species found in the horse is *Sarcocystis bertrami;* in sheep and goats, *S. tenella;* in swine, *S. miescheriana;* in man, *S. lendemanni;* in the mouse, *S. muris.*

THE GENUS EIMERIA (COCCIDIUM)

This genus belongs to the sporozoan order Coccidiida. This order is characterized by having in the adult an oval or spherical form, not motile. Sporulation takes place within an endocellular cyst. The genus Eimeria is differentiated by the formation of four sporocysts or sporoblasts, each of which contains two sporozoïtes. The life-history is relatively complex, and varies in some details in different species.

The organism is taken into the body with food in the form of a cyst, which ruptures and allows the escape of the spindle-shaped sporozoïtes. These penetrate the epithelial cells of the intestinal walls or other membranes. The sporozoïte on entering the cells rounds up into a sphere, and then grows rapidly in size at the expense of the host cell. These growing organisms are called at this stage *schizonts.* The nucleus of the mature schizont fragments, and the protoplasm then breaks up into a considerable number of spindle-shaped cells, called merozoïtes, somewhat resembling the sporozoïtes. These break out of the mother schizont

and infect new cells. They may then develop as schizonts and repeat the same cycle, or may develop into sexual reproductive cells. Some of these are of considerable size and correspond to an egg; these are termed the *macrogametes*. Others, called *microgametocytes*, develop similarly at first, then form a considerable number of very slender, thread-like cells called *microgametes*. A microgamete fuses with a macrogamete to form the *oöcyte*. This then continues to enlarge, and secretes a chitinous wall; *i. e.*, becomes encysted. When mature, the contents of the cyst divide to form four spherical bodies called sporoblasts. These become somewhat elongated and spindle shaped. In each of the sporoblasts two still more slender fusiform sporozoïtes develop. The cyst is freed, and upon ingestion by a suitable host the cycle begins again.

Coccidiosis occurs in many of the invertebrates, which do not seem to be seriously affected, but in the vertebrates serious and even fatal disease may be caused by the organisms.

Eimeria avium

Synonyms.—*Psorospermium avium; Coccidium revolta; C. perforatum; C. tenellum.*

Disease Produced.—Coccidiosis in domestic fowls and in birds.

These diseases have been studied by a great number of investigators, and many theories of their causation have been developed. Hadley and others have seemed recently to show quite conclusively that they are cases of avian coccidiosis, and the various organisms described by others as causal were secondary invaders or developmental stages of the organism in question.

Distribution.—The disease probably has a very wide distribution over the United States and Europe, but adequate data are not at hand for a determination. It is certainly known from many localities in the eastern States.

Morphology and Life-history.—The life-history is typical for Coccidium as outlined above. The adult coccidial cyst is oval or ellipsoidal. It measures about 14 by 21 μ.

Pathogenesis.—A considerable number of infections in the domestic fowls have been ascribed to this organism. A mild infection may not result in marked symptoms. An intestinal and

cecal infection in the young chick has been found to be a potent, if not the principal, cause of a diarrhea, which causes such
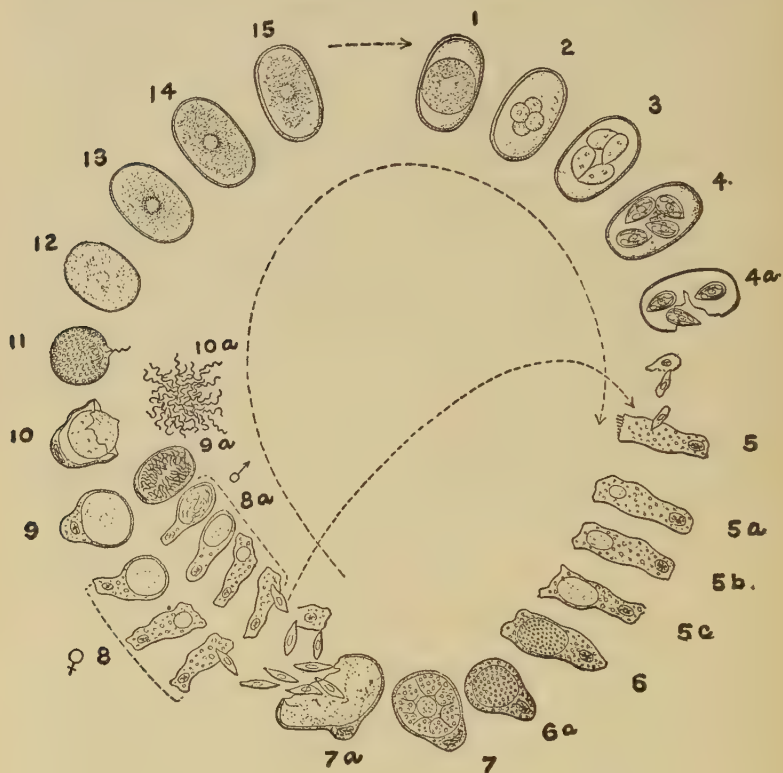
Fig. 204.—*Eimeria avium*, life-cycle: 1, Mature encysted Coccidium: 2, division into four sporoblasts; 3, sporoblasts elongated and spindle shaped: 4, two sporozoïtes have developed in each sporoblast; 4 *a* the cyst ruptured and the sporoblasts and the sporozoïtes escaping; 5, epithelial cell of the intestinal tract; 5 *a*, 5 *b*, 5 *c*, 6, 6 *a*, stages in development within the cell, the schizont stage; 7, schizont dividing to form merozoïtes; 7 *a*, cell and schizont ruptured and merozoïtes escaping. These again infest the epithelial cells and may repeat the cycle 5–7 *a*. Others produce the sexual stages 8 and 8 *a* to 11; 8, 9, infection of a cell with a merozoïte and development of the macrogamete; 10, cell ruptured, exposing the macrogamete; 8 *a*, infection of a cell with a merozoïte and development of the microgametocyte; 9 *a*, formation of the microgametes; 10 *a*, liberation of the microgametes; 11, fusion of the microgamete with the macrogamete; 12, 13, 14, 15, development of the mature encysted coccidium (Cole, Hadley, and Fitzpatrick).

heavy losses in certain localities. A similar infection in adult chickens may also prove fatal. This is particularly true of the

turkey, which is unusually susceptible. The principal symptoms are three in number—diarrhea, progressive languor or stupor, and loss of appetite with pronounced emaciation. The disease may be acute or chronic, but is quite generally fatal. Some fowls may harbor the organisms for long periods without any apparent symptoms.

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—An examination of smears from infected membranes will show developmental stages of the organism. The cysts may usually be demonstrated in the feces.

Transmission.—The disease is undoubtedly acquired by the ingestion of cysts which have been given off in the feces of diseased fowls. It is believed probable that wild birds may also become infected, and aid materially in the dissemination of the organism.

Eimeria stiedæ

Synonyms.—*Monocystis stiedæ; Psorospermium cuniculi; Coccidium oviforme; C. perforans; Pfeifferia princeps.*

Disease Produced.—Coccidiosis of the rabbit.

Rivolta, in 1878, first described this organism from the rabbit. It occurs in the intestinal epithelium. It may be present without evidence of disease, but is undoubtedly the cause of serious epizoötics among tame and wild rabbits.

Eimeria bovis

Disease Produced.—Bovine coccidiosis. It has been reported most frequently from Switzerland.

The organism was first noted by Zschokke in 1892. The disease of young cattle characterized by enteritis with bloody feces has been reported by several European investigators. The organism is morphologically typical of the genus, and has the same life-history. The disease has an incubation period of about three weeks. In the feces appear blood flecks of greater or less size; in severe cases there develops a bloody diarrhea. Occasionally the animal dies, but usually recovery takes place within a few weeks.

The oöcytes are abundant in the feces of affected animals, resembling those of *Eimeria stiedæ*. The organisms in all stages of

development may be found in the epithelium of the large intestine and the rectum. The mucous membranes may be inflamed, even purulent and covered with a diphtheritic membrane. Petechial and larger hemorrhages are to be observed.

Fig. 205.—*Eimeria stiedæ: a, b, c,* Schizonts, with production of merozoïtes which may repeat the cycle or develop the sexual stage; *e, f, g,* development of the macrogamete; *h, i, j, s,* development of the microgametocytes and microgametes; *k,* mature coccidium, which encysts and divides to form four sporoblasts; *l,* formation of the sporozoïtes and their liberation by a rupture of the cyst (Schaudinn).

Eimeria faurei

Disease Produced.—Ovine coccidiosis.

Moussu and Marotel have described an ovine coccidiosis, particularly in lambs. The developmental cycle was typical. The same or a similar coccidiosis has been reported in the United States.

Isospora bigemina

Disease Produced.—Coccidiosis of the dog and cat.

Stiles, in 1892, described a *Coccidium bigeminum*, as a parasite occurring in the intestinal villi of the dog and cat. It has also been reported in man. The ripe oöcysts of this form produce two spores, each with four sporozoïtes (in contrast to *Eimeria*). The oöcysts are 22 to 40 by 19 to 38 μ. The spores are ellipsoidal, filling nearly the interior of the oöcyte. The spores are 10 to 18 μ in length.

CHAPTER XLIV

PARASITIC PROTOZOA OF THE CILIATA

THE Ciliata are differentiated from other protozoa by the presence of cilia during the entire life of the cell. In most species there is also a cytostome or mouth, though a few species take up their food by osmosis. The cells are relatively constant in shape, that is, never ameboid. In many cases the cells are complicated in structure, possessing many different types of organella. Most forms possess one or more contractile vacuoles which are useful in species differentiation. Multiplication is usually through a process of splitting into two individuals, usually without the development of a resting stage. Many species become encysted to withstand unfavorable conditions.

Only one or two species are known to be disease producers, but many are commensals in the alimentary tracts of animals, particularly in the rumen of the ruminants and in the cecum of the horse.

PROTOZOAN COMMENSALS OF THE RUMEN AND CECUM

Certain protozoa are quite constantly met in those parts of the alimentary tract of herbivorous animals where cellulose digestion occurs, in the rumen of cattle, sheep and goats, and in the cecum of the horse. They are present in relatively large numbers. Some of the earlier investigators believed that perhaps one-fifth of the contents of these organs were protozoan cells. This is probably an exaggeration, but indicates their abundance. They seem to be destroyed for the most part when the food masses pass to other parts of the alimentary tract. They probably feed on bacteria and plant fragments. These organisms are, so far as known, neither useful nor harmful, they are true commensals.

The following key to the most common species may be useful in the differentiation of these commensals in the search for pathogenic organisms in disease:

528

A. No spiral zone of cilia about the mouth.
 1. Cells oval or nearly spherical, anterior end trun-
  cate. Ectoplasm homogeneous, cuticle-like.
  Surface closely covered with very fine cilia ar-
  ranged in relatively wide longitudinal rows.
  Near the anterior end the cilia are longer. One
  vacuole containing a refractile concretion is
  found near the anterior end. Principal nu-
  cleus is large, spherical. No secondary nucleus
  evident.................................**Genus 1. Butschlia.**
 2. Cells more elongate, ciliation very uniform.
  Front of cell rounded, posterior end somewhat
  pointed, slightly flattened on one side, no an-
  terior ring of longer cilia. Both principal and
  secondary nucleus present...................**Genus 2. Isotrichia.**
B. Possessing a definite spiral zone of large cilia or
 membranella about the mouth.
 1. Body with cilia uniformly distributed. Cell
  oval or ellipsoidal, the anterior end somewhat
  blunted, cells capable of changing form to
  some degree. Usually longitudinally striped.
  Principal nucleus is kidney shaped, secondary
  nucleus vesicular....................**Genus 3. Balantidium.**
 2. Cilia absent from major portion of body, mem-
  branella about the mouth or grouped at
  definite points on the cell.
  (a) Possessing two spiral rows of membranella on
   anterior end. Cells relatively large, long oval,
   somewhat flattened. At posterior end there
   are three rows of membranes passing around
   the cell, each membrane with three points.....**Genus 4. Ophryoscolex.**
  (b) Possessing a single spiral row of membranella
   at anterior end.
   (1) Posterior end of cell extended into three
    points, one of which is rudder-like and much
    longer than the other two. The peristome
    or ring or adoral membranella are retrac-
    tile.................................**Genus 5. Entodinium.**
   (2) Posterior end of cell entire. Adoral ring
    consists of twenty-four membranella, or large
    cilia. The mouth is in a blunt cone within
    the peristome. Near posterior end there
    occur two short tubular bodies from which a
    cluster of membranella protrude. These
    are used in swimming..................**Genus 6. Cycloposthium.**

Butschlia.—Two species, *Butschlia parva* and *B. neglecta*, are
common in the rumen of cattle. *B. postciliata* occurs in the cecum
of the horse.
34

Isotrichia.—The species *Isotrichia prostoma* and *I. intestinalis* are very common in the rumen of cattle, as is also a closely related form, *Dasytricha ruminantium*.

Ophryoscolex.—Two species from the rumen of sheep are *Ophryoscolex scolex* and *O. inermis*.

Entodinium.—The species *Entodinium caudatum*, *E. bursa*, *E. dentatum*, *E. rostratum*, and *E. minimum* are all found in the paunch of ruminants.
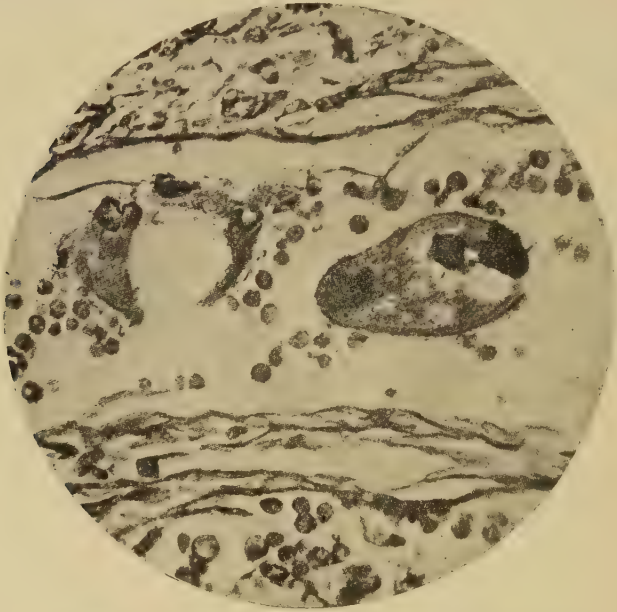
Fig. 206.—*Balantidium coli* in a blood-vessel of the submucosa of the intestines (Bowman, in "Philippine Journal of Science").

Cycloposthium.—The species *Cycloposthium bipalmatum* occurs in the cecum of the horse.

Balantidium.—One species of *Balantidium* produces disease in man.

Other species of protozoa which have been described by Braune from the ruminants are *Trichomastix ruminantium*, *Trichomonas ruminantium*, *Callimastix frontalis*. Awerinzeff and Mutafoua have described *Diplodinium fiorentinii*, *Ophryoscolex intermixtus*, *O. fasciculus*, and *O. labiatus*.

Trichomonas.—Hadley has reported the occurrence of trichomonads in healthy and sick fowls throughout the intestinal tract. They are almost invariably present in the intestinal and cecal contents but are found in the greatest numbers in the mucous layers of the cæca, sometimes deep in the crypts, whereas coccidia multiply mainly in the duodenum and amœbæ in the epithelial layer of the lower intestine and cæca. He has presented evidence to prove that entero-hepatitis (black head) of turkeys is due to *Trichomonas* and that the *Amœba meleagridis* of Smith is simply one stage of this organism. He states that confusion with the amœbæ arises when the *Trichomonas* becomes non-motile, loses its flagella, and becomes rounded or oval in shape. It was this stage which stains pink with eosin that he believes was mistaken by Smith for an amœba.

This flagellate is described by Hadley[1] as "pear shape, elongate, half moon or globular shaped depending upon the stage of development. In the free swimming stage it has a length of 8 to 12 μ. It manifests the usual *Trichomonas* characteristics, viz., three anterior and one posterior flagella, a vibratory membrane, axostyle, chromatic line, chromatin blocks, nucleus, vacuoles, peristome, blepharoplast and rhizoplast." Hadley finds that the pathological condition is complicated in the liver only rarely by amœbic infection, and in the cæca both by amœbæ and coccidia.

Balantidium coli

Disease Produced.—A rare fatal enteritis in man.

This organism is oval in shape—50 to 70 by 60 to 100 μ—and possesses a funnel-shaped peristome which terminates at the mouth. Cilia cover the surface. The two nuclei and two contractile vacuoles may commonly be made out. An excretory apparatus is evidenced by the extrusion of waste material at a definite point in the cell surface. The life-history is relatively complex. The cell commonly multiplies by direct division. Conjugation and encystment may occur.

The *Balantidium coli* appears to be a common inhabitant of the intestinal tract of swine. A large number of instances are recorded

[1] Bull. Rhode Island Agr. Exper. Sta., 166 and 168.

in which it has been found associated in man with a severe and even fatal type of diarrhea. The connection of this organism with the disease as a causal agent rather than as a commensal seems to be well authenticated. It appears that infection may follow the ingestion of the cysts produced by the organism. The disease has been reported from Europe, the United States, and the Philippines.

SECTION VI

INFECTIOUS DISEASES IN WHICH THE SPECIFIC CAUSE IS NOT CERTAINLY KNOWN

CHAPTER XLV

DISEASES PRODUCED BY UNKNOWN ORGANISMS

WITHIN the last two decades there have been described a number of diseases in which the causal organism is said to be ultramicroscopic. By this is meant that with the best powers of the microscope no definite organism can be distinguished. Such an organism is better called a *filterable virus*, because filtrates passed through porcelain filters retain their pathogenicity for susceptible animals.

It is a principle of optics that no object can be clearly differentiated that is smaller than one-half the wave-length of the light in which it is examined. This means that there is an apparently insuperable physical obstacle to the observation of some of these forms, as our best lenses approach moderately near to this limit in their magnification. Our reasons for believing that there may be organisms this small will be discussed under the heading of various diseases.

There is in more or less general use an instrument known as the ultramicroscope, which renders visible objects more minute than had heretofore been observed. This instrument enables one to observe objects by making use of the principle worked out by Tyndall in determining the absence of floating dust particles in the air. He noted that when a ray of a very bright light was admitted to a darkened room or box, this ray could be distinctly seen as long as there were any floating .particles, but became invisible when these dust particles had completely subsided. The motes or particles, even when smaller than can usually be seen by the unaided eye, became visible when thus illuminated. This principle is

applied to microscopic examination by sending the rays from an arc light or similar source, so that they are concentrated in a powerful beam, which is passed through the hanging drop or similar preparation from side to side. Exceedingly minute particles may thus be made visible. The use of this instrument has been found to be less helpful in the fields of biologic research than had been hoped. Very few facts concerning the organisms that cause disease, and particularly the ultramicroscopic organisms, have been discovered by its aid.

An attempt has sometimes been made to compare the relative size of ultramicroscopic organisms by the use of porcelain filters of different degrees of density. It has been found that the virus of some diseases will pass through coarse filters, but not through the finer ones. It does not seem to be entirely a matter of the relative size of pores and organisms that may pass through the filter. It is probably a phenomenon analogous to an adsorption quite as much as mechanical filtration that removes the organisms.

Bacterial or Protozoan Relationships of Ultramicroscopic Organisms.—There is no practicable method telling certainly whether or not a filterable virus should be grouped with the protozoa or with the bacteria. There are methods which may sometimes be used that will give inferences, however. It has been found possible in some cases to secure growth in culture-media, such as is used for bacteria. Such organisms are probably bacteria. In others, the type of disease produced may resemble so closely some other infection produced by a known organism that a probable classification into protozoan or bacterial might be made. The type of immunity developed may likewise be of importance. In most instances these differences are not pronounced enough to allow of certainty in the classification.

The more important diseases which have been described as due to filterable virus are contagious pleuropneumonia of cattle, rinderpest or cattle plague, foot-and-mouth disease, hog-cholera, horse sickness, dog distemper, fowl plague, equine anemia, fowl-pox, infectious agalactia in sheep and goats, fowl leukemia, guinea-pig plague, certain chicken tumors.

Virus of Pleuropneumonia

Disease Produced.—Pleuropneumonia, peripneumonia, lung plague of cattle and other bovines.

Nocard and Roux described the causal organism in 1898. The disease itself has been known in Europe for several centuries.

Distribution.—The disease is known from Europe, Africa, Australia, Asia, and has been imported into the United States, where, in 1886, it killed 10,000 animals in Illinois alone.

Nature of Virus.—The causal organism is doubtless a bacterium that is just at the limit of visibility. In suitable fluids it may be observed under very high powers as a tiny motile point. Bouillon inoculated with the serous exudate from the pleura or from one of the areas of consolidation in the lungs, sealed in a collodion sac, and placed in the peritoneal cavity of a rabbit for two weeks, will show a slight clouding or opalescence. Transfers to new media similarly treated will likewise result in growth. This material may be shown to be infective. The organism may also be cultivated in a mixture of bouillon and blood-serum outside the animal body. In two to three days it shows a very faint clouding. Agar containing serum develops delicate, transparent, almost invisible colonies. The optimum temperature is 37°; no growth occurs under 30°.

Pathogenesis.—Injection of pure cultures of the organism into cattle results in infection. Intrapleural injections or inhalation of the organism results in a typical clinical picture of the disease. The disease is characterized by more or less extensive areas of hepatization in the lungs and an inflammation of the pleura, accompanied by a serofibrinous exudate. The amount of fluid which collects may be very considerable.

Immunity.—Recovery from the disease results in a relatively permanent immunity. Immunization against the disease by vaccination with serum from the pleural cavity of infected animals has been practised. The material is injected subcutaneously. Its use is attended with danger, as from 0.5 to 5 per cent. or even more of those vaccinated have been killed by the vaccine. The method in question has been of some use in immunization, but a stamping-out process would appear to be more efficacious.

Nocard and Roux have advised vaccination with pure cultures,

and claim to have secured more favorable results than by the older method. Nocard has also produced a curative and prophylactic serum by the hyperimmunization of animals by the injection of increasing doses of pure culture until 6 liters have been used. In doses of 40 c.c. it served as an efficient prophylactic, and in larger amounts as a curative agent in the early stages of the disease.

Transmission.—The method of natural spread of the disease is not certainly known. It is probably through inhalation of the causal organism.

Virus of Foot-and-mouth Disease

Disease Produced.—Foot-and-mouth disease, aphthous fever, Maul- and Klauenseuche in cattle and other bovines, sheep, goats, swine, deer, and occasionally horses, dogs, cats, and man.

The disease has been known for over a century in Europe. Löffler and Frosch, in 1897, Hecker, in 1898, and others since that time have shown that the virus of foot-and-mouth disease may pass through Chamberland and Berkefeld filters, but not through the thicker Kitasato filter.

Distribution.—The disease is known from most of Europe, Asia, and Africa. It has been introduced several times into the United States, but has been stamped out. It has also been reported from Argentina.

Nature of the Virus.—Recently Stauffacher has claimed to have demonstrated the causal organism to be a protozoan which he names *Aphthomonas infestans*. He places it close to the genus *Leishmania*. For demonstration of the organisms in tissue sections and blood-smears he fixed in 70 per cent. alcohol, stained from two to six hours in 0.2 per cent. aqueous acid fuchsin, rinsed in distilled water, and stained in Ehrlich's fuchsin methylene-blue for six to ten hours, rinsed in distilled water and placed in absolute alcohol until color was no longer extracted, cleared in xylol, and mounted in balsam.

Stauffacher succeeded in cultivating the organisms in the condensation water of Nicolle's blood-agar both from the blood and from vesicles of infected animals. The protozoan here was found in two forms, one shorter and more plump, the body 20 to 25 μ in

length and 3 μ in width, with long flagellum. The other type were long slender cells, even 120 μ in length. A type of spore production was also observed leading to the production of cells probably small enough to pass a filter. The disease was transmitted by the use of pure cultures and the same organism isolated.

Pathogenesis.—The disease may be produced by the inoculation of susceptible animals with the filtrate through a porcelain filter. It is characterized by an acute fever, the appearance of a vesicular eruption on the mucous membranes of the mouth, on the feet, and between the toes. It is commonly not fatal, but is so contagious, and leads to such losses in flesh and milk, that it is among the most feared of cattle diseases.

Immunity.—Vaccination by intentional infection of animals has sometimes been practised in an effort to "get it over with" as quickly as possible when it breaks out in a herd. An animal recovered is relatively immune. Such methods are attended by considerable risk. An efficient and safe method of immunization or vaccination has not been developed.

Transmission.—The organisms gain entrance through contact of healthy animals with the saliva or other secretions of an infected animal. They may be transmitted to young animals or to man in milk.

Virus of Rinderpest or Cattle Plague

Disease Produced.—Cattle plague, rinderpest, or contagious typhus in cattle, rarely in sheep, goats, and camels.

Nocard and, later, Tartakowsky observed that the body fluids in animals having this disease contained no visible microörganisms, but were infective. Nicolle and Adelbey established that these fluids, if thinned with water, could be passed through the coarser Berkefeld filters, but not through a fine-pored Chamberland, without losing their virulence.

Distribution.—The disease has been reported from a large portion of the area of Europe. It is endemic in southern Asia, is known in the Philippines, and has caused great losses in Egypt and in Southern Africa. It has not gained entrance to the United States.

Character of Virus.—It is filterable and has not been cultivated. Blood sealed hermetically in tubes is found to retain its

virulence for months. The virus is destroyed by desiccation or by heating to 58° to 60°. It may survive in putrefying flesh for considerable periods. It is easily destroyed by disinfectants.

Pathogenesis.—The virus is present in all the body tissues and excretions. One one-thousandth of a gram of blood from an infected animal at the height of the disease has been found sufficient to reproduce the disease in a susceptible animal. The infection is an acute, highly fatal fever, in which there are croupous diphtheritic lesions of the intestinal tract. It is typically a cattle disease, but occasionally attacks other animals.

Immunity.—Animals which recover spontaneously from the disease are highly immune, and the blood has some power of passive immunization when injected into another animal. Vaccination with the nasal secretion of sick animals into the tails of others has been practised, and has been found in some instances to result in a low mortality. The method has been practically abandoned. Injections of the bile from animals having the disease has been advocated by Koch and extensively practised in South Africa, with good results.

The common method of immunization against rinderpest is that developed by Kolle and Turner. Animals which have recovered spontaneously from an infection, or that have been immunized by injections of virulent blood and gall, are hyperimmunized by repeated injections of virulent blood. The first injection is of a liter of virulent blood. After the subsidence of the reaction an injection of 500 c.c. is given, and later a third injection of a liter. A fourth injection may be made. The blood is drawn from the jugular vein at three intervals, a week apart. Another injection of a liter of virulent blood is given, and later the animal is again bled. The serum, in amounts of 20 c.c., should protect an animal against injection of 1 c.c. of virulent blood. An injection of 50 to 100 c.c. of the serum so secured will protect an animal against infection for a space of two to four months usually. A more permanent immunity may be established by the use of what is termed the "serum simultaneous" method. The animal is injected on one side with 8 to 25 c.c. of the immune serum, and on the other with 1 c.c. of virulent blood. Some animals react by a distinct fever, others show no effect. The latter are rendered

immune for several months only, while the former for much longer periods.   The blood of the animals reacting is infective during the period of fever.   The vaccination mortality is about 1 per cent.

Transmission.—The disease is readily transmitted by means of soiled food, water, and by direct contact.

Virus of Hog-cholera

Disease Produced.—Hog-cholera, Schweinepest, swine fever.

From the time of the researches of Salmon and Smith on this disease, published in 1885, until 1904, the cause of hog-cholera was believed to be the *Bacterium choleræ suis* (*Bact. suipestifer*).   In the latter year de Schweinitz and Dorset showed the typical hog-cholera in the United States to be due to a filterable virus.   This has been confirmed by Hutyra, Uhlenhuth, and others in Europe.

Distribution.—The disease is wide-spread in Europe and North America.

Nature of Virus.—The organism causing hog-cholera is a filterable virus.   It passes readily through porcelain filters.   It has never been cultivated.   Fluid material will retain its virulence for a period of ten to fourteen weeks, at least when kept at room-temperatures.   It is killed by exposure to $60°$ to $70°$ for an hour.   Desiccation does not destroy it at once, but only after a lapse of several days.   It may be destroyed by disinfectants, but is relatively resistant.

Pathogenesis.—The subcutaneous injection of 1 to 2 c.c. of filtered blood-serum or body fluids results in the production of the disease.   The animals may die of a very acute type of the disease, or it may assume a chronic form.   The acute cases generally reveal, on autopsy, hyperemia and acute swelling of the internal organs, and hemorrhages on the serous and mucous membranes, and frequently a serous transudate into the pericardium.   In the more chronic type ulcerated and necrotic areas are commonly found in the intestines, together with pneumonia.

The disease cannot be transferred to other animal species. The *Bacterium choleræ suis* is probably a secondary invader, but the lesions produced by this organism may in some cases be of the greatest importance.

Immunity.—Animals that have recovered from an infection with hog-cholera are thereafter immune, and it has been shown that their blood has some immunizing power when injected into other susceptible individuals.

Practical methods of immunization were developed through the work of Dorset, McBryde, and Niles in this country. The method devised by them and commonly used is as follows: It is necessary to start with an animal that has recovered from the disease or that has already been immunized. This animal is then hyperimmunized by the intravenous injection of virulent blood. Such blood must be of a strain of known virulence established by previous tests. It is preferably obtained from pigs weighing 60 to 90 pounds which have been inoculated seven to ten days previously, and which show well-marked symptoms and subsequent postmortem lesions of acute cholera. About 5 c.c. of the defibrinated virulent blood is injected for each pound of body weight. Ten days later the animal thus hyperimmunized is bled from the carotid artery or the tip of the tail. The blood is defibrinated and the clot removed. This defibrinated blood is preserved by the addition of $\frac{1}{2}$ of 1 per cent. carbolic acid. Before use it is tested on susceptible pigs to determine its potency. For testing it is customary to use young pigs weighing from 50 to 60 pounds. A serum of satisfactory potency should protect, in a dose of 15 c.c. or less, one of these animals against an injection of 2 c.c. of virulent blood. Permanent immunity is conferred by the use of the serum simultaneous method. In this method virulent blood (1 to 2 c.c.) is injected at the same time as the immune serum. This results in the development of an active immunity, which is relatively permanent in comparison with the immunity of four to six weeks conferred by antiserum injection alone. The use of this serum has been found to be highly successful in practice.

It is not known what property of the antiserum is thus effective, whether it is antitoxic, opsonic, or bactericidal. There is some evidence that it is the last, but proof is difficult to secure.

Transmission.—The virus may be demonstrated in the blood, the tissues, and the urine of infected animals. It is probable that infection commonly takes place through ingestion.

Virus of Horse Sickness

Disease Produced.—African horse sickness, or Pferdesterbe.

This disease, known from southern Africa for more than a century, was first shown by MacFadyen, in 1900, and later, in 1901, by Nocard to be due to a filterable virus. The disease is characterized as an acute or subacute disease of solipeds, that appears in epizoötics during the hot months of the year. The principal lesions are edematous swellings and hemorrhages of the internal organs. The virus will pass through a Berkefeld or a Chamberland porcelain filter if the serum is diluted with physiologic salt solution.

Immunization against the disease may be brought about by the use of serum from hyperimmunized animals. Koch hyperimmunized horses that had recovered from the disease by three to four injections of virulent blood at intervals of two to four weeks, as much as 2 liters being used for the last injection. Serum simultaneous injections of this hyperimmunized serum and virulent blood into susceptible animals in correctly proportioned doses will immunize. Theiler reports the safest method to be the injection of 300 c.c. immune serum intravenously and $\frac{1}{2}$ c.c. virulent blood subcutaneously. Animals thus treated will show a rise in temperature, upon which a second injection of 50 to 100 c.c. of serum is made.

The disease has been found to be contracted generally at night, and the first frost puts an end to the epizoötic for the year. Considerable quantities of the virus must be fed before an infection is produced, showing that natural infection is probably in some other manner than by ingestion. It is probable that mosquitoes, possibly flies, act as carriers. The disease cannot be regarded, therefore, in the strictest sense as contagious.

Virus of Infectious Anemia of the Horse

Disease Produced.—Infectious anemia, pernicious anemia, mud fever, swamp fever of the horse.

This disease has been known as a clinical entity in Europe for three-quarters of a century. Carré and Villee (1904–1906) and Ostertag and Marek (1907) have demonstrated the disease to be due to a filterable virus. The disease has been studied in North

America by several investigators, and the ultramicroscopic nature of the virus has been independently demonstrated. It is not certain that all the infections described under this name are identical, but there is considerable evidence tending to establish such as a fact.

Distribution.—The disease is probably wide-spread, but has not always been clearly differentiated. It is known from Germany, France, Hungary, Switzerland, and Sweden in Europe; and from Saskatchewan, Manitoba, Minnesota, the Dakotas, Nebraska, Kansas, Colorado, Wyoming, Montana, Texas, and Nevada in North America.

Nature of the Virus.—The causal organism is a filterable virus that cannot be differentiated by staining methods and has not been cultivated. It is found in the blood, the urine, and the feces of infected animals. It is destroyed at a temperature of 58°. It will withstand drying for several months, and liquids maintain their infectivity for months, even when decaying.

Pathogenesis.—The virulent blood or blood-serum will infect another animal upon subcutaneous injections of small quantities. The incubation period after injection varies from five to nine days, or even more. The initial symptom is a fever. The disease is more apt to be acute when the organism is introduced by injections than by ingestion. The disease may be characterized as an acute or chronic anemia which has the appearance of a septicemia in which there is a great destruction of blood-elements. The anatomic findings are characteristic. Mack, in his work on cases in Nevada, notes profound cardiac and respiratory disturbances. There is a progressive destruction of the red blood-cells, parenchymatous degeneration of the kidneys and liver, and extensive changes in the vascular system. The spleen is engorged and frequently degenerated, and the bone-marrow undergoes profound degeneration.

Immunity.—No method of immunization has been developed.

Transmission.—European writers are of the opinion that infection arises through the ingestion of food soiled by excretions of infected animals. The mode of dissemination has not been satisfactorily established.

Virus of Dog Distemper

Disease Produced.—Dog distemper, Hundstaupe.

Bacteria belonging to several different groups, particularly to the colon-typhoid and to the hemorrhagic septicemia groups, have been described as the cause of dog distemper. Carré, in 1905, attributed the cause to a filterable virus. Ferry and others concluded that Carré must have been in error in his conclusions, inasmuch as they claim to have found *Bacterium bronchisepticum* (q. v.) to be the primary cause.

Distribution.—Europe and America; probably in other parts of the world.

Nature of the Virus.—Little is known of the virus beyond the fact that it can be passed through a porcelain filter. It has not been cultivated.

Pathogenesis.—The disease is a highly fatal, acute infection of young carnivorous animals, characterized by an acute catarrh of the mucous membrane, and frequently a catarrhal pneumonia. In a small percentage of the cases nervous symptoms develop. The discharge from the mucous membranes is highly infective. Secondary infection with bacteria is common, and is believed by some investigators to account for many of the deaths.

Immunity.—Many attempts have been made to prepare an anti- or immune serum that would be satisfactory in preventing or curing the disease. Several have been placed upon the market, but none has been shown to be efficacious. It is possible that success might be attained by the use of hyperimmune blood.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted by direct or indirect contact with infected individuals.

Virus of Fowl Plague

Disease Produced.—Fowl plague, chickenpest of domestic fowls.

This disease has generally been confused with chicken cholera, which it closely resembles clinically, although Perroncito undoubtedly described it in 1878. Centanni and Savonuzzi, in 1901, showed that the virus could pass through a porcelain filter. This has been amply confirmed by other writers.

Distribution.—The disease is known only from northern Italy, the Tyrol, Germany, and France.

Character of the Virus.—The organism is a filterable virus, and

is probably ultramicroscopic, although Rosenthal, Kleine, and Schiffman have described bodies in the nerve-centers that are possibly protozoan in nature. The virus is found in the blood, the nasal secretion, and generally throughout the tissues. The blood retains its virulence for three months when sealed in tubes and kept in a dark place. The thermal death-point is 55° for thirty minutes or 60° for five minutes. The dried virus has been found to retain its virulence for two hundred days, and in glycerin and serum mixture for two hundred and seventy days. It is easily destroyed by disinfectants.

More recent experimental work has shown that the virus of fowl plague is capable of passing the pores of fine-grained filters, and even the so-called ultra-filters. It is claimed by some authors that the virus must approach in size the protein molecule. Andriewsky and others contend that this is an example of a *Contagium vivum fluidum*, that is, does not consist of organized cells at all, but a self-perpetuating fluid living material. It has been claimed that it shows many of the reactions of the serum globulin.

Pathogenesis.—Injection of as small amount as $\frac{1}{1,000,000}$ c.c. of virulent blood or secretions is sufficient to infect. The virus is pathogenic for many birds besides fowls, but not for mammals. The disease is characterized by the hemorrhages into the serous membranes in acute cases, and in the less acute edema of the subcutaneous tissues and of the serous membranes, and the formation of a fibrous exudate upon the latter.

Immunity.—Practicable methods of immunization have not been developed.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted by the ingestion of food soiled with the infective feces, nasal secretion, or blood of infected birds.

Virus of Epithelioma Contagiosum

Disease Produced.—Fowl pox, epithelioma contagiosum in domestic fowls, sore head, probably fowl diphtheria.

Marx and Sticker, in 1902, determined the cause of fowl pox to be a filterable virus. Several other investigators subsequently confirmed their results.

Distribution.—The disease is known to occur in Europe and in the United States. It is doubtless widely distributed.

Nature of the Virus.—Marx and Sticker showed that when an epithelial nodule was triturated in physiologic salt solution the fluid which passed through a Berkefeld filter was infective. Some investigators have observed tiny spherical granules, less than $0.25\ \mu$ in diameter, in the emulsion of the virus, but it is by no means certain that these are the disease-producing organisms. The virus is relatively resistant to unfavorable conditions. The nodules may be dried for weeks without death of the virus. It is destroyed by heating to 60° for eight minutes. Mixed with glycerin it retains its infectivity for many weeks. It is easily destroyed by disinfectants.

Pathogenesis.—The disease is a chronic, contagious infection, characterized by an initial catarrh of the mucosa of the head, followed by wart-like growths (epithelial hyperplasia) of the skin, especially of the comb and naked skin of the head, sometimes associated with a croupous diphtheritic condition of the mucosa of the head. This latter condition is one of those grouped under the general name of fowl diphtheria. The disease commonly terminates favorably in three to five weeks.

Hadley and Beach claim to have been successful in securing active immunity by triturating the crust which forms on the skin and the membranes from the mucous surfaces in physiologic salt solution, heating at 55° C., and using this as a vaccine.

Transmission.—The disease is transmitted by direct contact with infected fowls.

Virus of the Poxes

Disease Produced.—Small-pox in man, cow-pox, sheep-pox, horse-pox, swine-pox, goat-pox.

There is much doubt relative to the position of the virus of the various poxes. They are included in this group tentatively, as it is found that the contents of the vesicles of the eruptions may be filtered through a thin, coarse porcelain filter under pressure without losing their infectivity. The causal microörganisms are, at some stages at least, filterable and possibly ultramicroscopic. Certain cell inclusions have been described as being probably of protozoan nature, but the subject cannot be said at present to be

35

completely elucidated. The protozoan parasite has been named *Cytorrhyctes vaccinœ* in man.

Immunity.—Recovery from an attack of variola is accompanied by a relatively permanent immunity. Vaccination is, therefore, commonly practised, particularly against small-pox in man. The attenuated virus in this instance is secured by passage through an animal, usually a heifer. The vaccinating material is the lymph from the vesicles produced on the animals. It is inoculated into the skin by scarification. The virulence is apparently very greatly decreased by this method of inoculation, so that a relatively mild type of disease is produced which terminates in immunity being established. To what this immunity may be due is not known.

Virus of Yellow Fever

Yellow fever in man has been shown to be due to a filterable virus, possibly an ultramicroscopic organism. All efforts at cultivation have failed. The disease is spread only through the bites of mosquitoes that have taken virulent blood. The organism evidently undergoes a part of its life-cycle in the blood of the mosquito (Stegomyia), for the latter does not become infective itself for several days. It is evidently more than a mere mechanical transfer of the organism by the mosquito; the latter serves as a true intermediate host. The recent work of Noguchi would seem to indicate that a spirochete (*Leptospira*) is the causal organism, this organism being cultivable and microscopic.

Virus of Rabies

Disease Produced.—Rabies in animals. Hydrophobia in man. Lyssa.

The disease has been studied at great length by many investigators, and there is still great disparity of opinion as to the nature of the cause. Remlinger and Riff at Bey in 1903 showed that the virus could be passed through a porous Berkefeld filter. This has been substantiated since by several workers. As will be seen below, this does not satisfactorily settle the problem, as those who hold to the protozoan nature of certain bodies in the nerve-centers in the disease contend that extremely minute plastic stages in the life-cycle of the organism might easily pass through.

Distribution.—The disease is worldwide in distribution.

Nature of the Virus.—Students of the etiology of this disease may be divided into two groups—those who believe in the presence of a specific ultramicroscopic organism, and those who believe in the presence of a protozoan with certain stages of development in which the organism is small enough to pass the pores of the filter. The latter theory has been developed by Negri. The organism has been named *Neurorrhyctes hydrophobiæ*. In 1903 he demonstrated the presence of specific bodies, which have been termed Negri bodies, in the larger ganglia-cells of Ammon's horn, as well as in other parts of the central nervous system. There is little question but what these bodies are characteristic of the disease; the disputed point is whether they are specific organisms or degeneration products of the cell. Williams and Lowden summarize the evidence of the protozoan nature of these bodies as follows:

"They have definite characteristic morphology; this morphology is constantly cyclic, *i. e.*, certain forms always predominate in certain stages of the disease, and a definite series of forms indicating growth and multiplication can be demonstrated; the structure and staining qualities, as shown especially by the smear method of examination, resemble those of certain known protozoa, notably of those belonging to the suborder Microsporidia."

The Negri bodies in suitably stained preparations are found to vary in size from less than 0.5 to 25 μ. This variation in size is markedly noticeable in different species of animals. In cattle they are very large and numerous in the hippocampus; in the horse very small and in limited areas; in cats mostly in the Purkinje cells of the cerebellum. In shape they may be spherical, ovoid, or ellipsoidal. The bodies shows a characteristic structure, a smooth hyaline margin, with inclusions of various kinds that resemble chromatin granules.

They may be readily stained by Giemsa's method, or with eosin and methylene-blue.

Pathogenesis.—The organism enters the body through wounds, usually bites of animals. It then passes slowly along the peripheral nerves to the central nervous system. The portion of this to which these nerves directly lead is the most seriously affected. Characteristic gross anatomic lesions are quite lacking in this disease.

The period of incubation is variable; it is usually several weeks. It probably represents the period necessary for the virus to reach the central nervous system and develop there. The disease is commonly fatal. It affects most mammals, including man, but is primarily a disease of the carnivora, particularly the dog.

Immunity.—The Pasteur method of treatment is essentially a method of vaccination at intervals with attenuated virus. The virus is found, on experimentation, to be rather variable in its power to produce disease. The virulence is exalted by repeated inoculations of rabbits until it becomes the "fixed" virus of Pasteur, and will kill rabbits in six to seven days. This is then
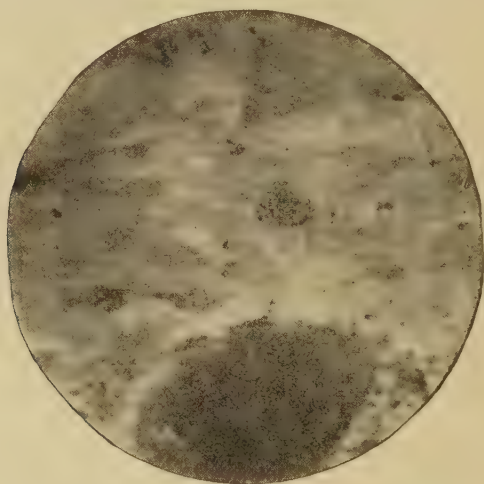
Fig. 207.—A Negri body. Note the circle of chromatoid granules about the central body ($\times$ 2000) (Williams and Lowden).

injected into a rabbit, and upon its death the spinal cord is carefully removed with all aseptic precautions, and suspended in a desiccator over caustic potash. It is kept at a constant temperature of 23° in the absence of light for two weeks. The vaccine consists of an emulsion of this cord in physiologic salt solution. Later, injections are made with a cord that has been dried for a shorter period. Repeated injections are made. The fact that the disease has normally a long incubation period gives an opportunity in the human for the use of this method. The active immunity established by the injection of the attenuated virus is

sufficient to destroy the infecting organism. This method of treatment has been highly successful when commenced in time. It is still strictly an active immunity.   To what principle it is due is not known.   While the Pasteur method is extensively used in institutions for the treatment of rabies, as also by physicians, there have been developed other methods. One of these is coming into more general use.   This is the " dilution method " of Hogges.   A definite quantity of the spinal cord of a rabbit killed by fixed virus is emulsified in 100 c.c. of normal salt solution.   Dilutions of this solution are prepared and the patient is given first a dilution of 1 to 1000, and subsequent injections of increasing concentration until a dilution of 1–10 is reached.
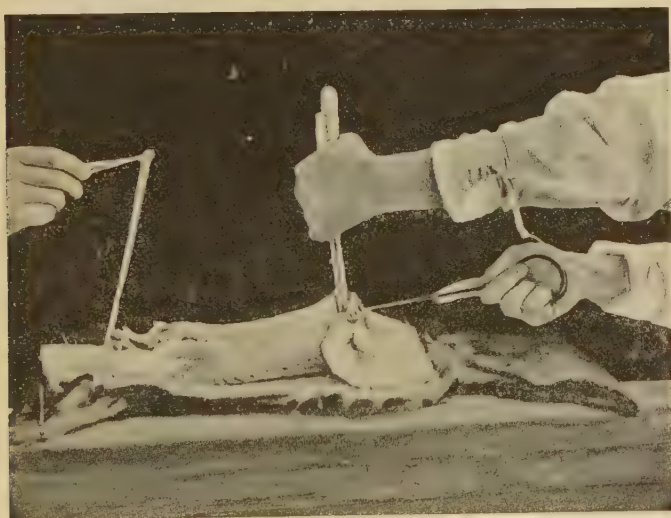
Fig. 298.—Removal of the spinal cord from a rabbit (Stimson, Bull. No. 65, Hygienic Laboratory).

Bacteriologic Diagnosis.—The disease may be diagnosed by animal inoculation and by microscopic examination. For the former it is customary to inject an emulsion from the brain into a rabbit. The inoculation is usually made subdurally. Sections or smears may be made from the brain and stained to show the characteristic Negri bodies. Small portions of the gray substance

are removed from the cerebral cortex in the region of the crucial sulcus, the cerebellar cortex, and the hippocampus major. These are crushed on a slide and a smear made by means of a cover-glass. These dried smears may be stained by Giemsa or other stains, perhaps most readily by the method described by Williams and Lowden: "To 10 c.c. of distilled water 3 drops of a saturated alcoholic solution of basic fuchsin and 2 c.c. of Löffler's solution of methylene-blue are added. The smears are fixed while moist in

Fig. 209.—Method of drying the spinal cord of a rabbit for the purpose of attenuation (Stimson, Bull. No. 65, Hygienic Laboratory).

methyl alcohol for one minute. The stain is then poured on, warmed until it steams, poured off, and the smear is rinsed in water and allowed to dry."

Transmission.—The saliva of diseased animals is found to be infective, and the disease is transmitted commonly through the bite.

Virus of Infectious Agalactia of Sheep and Goats

Celli and deBlasi in 1906 determined the infectious agalactia of sheep and goats to be due to a filterable virus, and their con-

clusions were verified by Carré.   The channel of infection as determined by experiments appears to be the alimentary tract.   The disease results in a diminution or cessation of milk flow.   Food is probably infected through the milk or from the abundant secretion from the eyes resulting from a keratitis characteristic of the disease. By hyperimmunization by repeated injections of virus it is possible to secure a serum that possesses a decided immunizing power.

Virus of Guinea-pig Plague

deGaspari has described a guinea-pig disease characterized by loss of appetite, trembling, convulsions, and finally death.   In the brain substance this investigator first found a filterable virus by the use of the Berkefeld filter.   This reproduced the disease upon inoculation into healthy animals, the infection always proving fatal. The virus is present in the blood-serum and in all the body organs. The virus is relatively resistant.   It may be destroyed by exposure for an hour to a temperature of from 70° to 72°.   Six days in decaying material, fourteen days in pure glycerin, and ten days' drying did not suffice to destroy it.   Five per cent. phenol killed the virus in half an hour.   Other animals than the guinea-pig are not susceptible to infection.

Virus of Fowl Leukemia

Ellemann has claimed that the leukemia of the domestic fowl is due to a filterable virus.

Virus of Certain Chicken Tumors

Rous, Peyton, and Murphy have described three distinct types of tumors in the domestic fowl, each due to a filterable virus.   One of these was a spindle-celled sarcoma, another an osteochondrosarcoma, and a third a spindle-celled sarcoma with numerous blood sinuses.

Repeated inoculation gradually raised the virulence of each strain, but each continued to produce its particular type of tumor upon inoculation.   A certain amount of tissue injury at the site of inoculation seems to favor the development of the tumor.   Injection of the infusorial earth, for example, increases the percentage of "takes."

SECTION VII

BACTERIA OF WATER AND FOOD

CHAPTER XLVI

BACTERIA OF WATER AND WATER PURIFICATION

Diseases of man and animals, particularly those of the alimentary tract, are frequently transmitted through contaminated or impure water. The impurity, so-called, arises from the presence of sewage or surface-wash. This does not mean that every water containing sewage is necessarily harmful, but that the presence of the sewage is an indication of the possible and probable occasional presence of pathogenic forms.

Bacteriologic examination of water is important for several reasons. Much smaller quantities of contaminating organic matter may be determined by bacteriologic than by chemical means. Its methods may be used in the determination of the potability of water-supplies, in tracing a typhoid or similar epidemic to its source, and in determining the efficiency of filters for water-supplies and of different types of sewage-disposal systems.

Water may be examined bacteriologically, either *quantitatively* or *qualitatively*. In the former a determination of the total number of bacteria present in the water is made; in the latter the tests are designed to determine the abundance of certain specific disease-producing bacteria, as *Bacterium typhosum*. The former is the most useful examination made in determining the potability of a water; the latter is rarely used.

Quantitative Examination of Water.—In general, the greater the quantity of organic and decomposing matter present in water, the greater will be the number of bacteria present. However, it must be noted that changes in the environment, such as tem-

552

perature, may cause great variations in bacterial content, even though the original water be contaminated. For example, water from a source quite above suspicion may have less than 100 bacteria to the cubic centimeter. This same water, carefully sampled in a sterile bottle and allowed to stand at room-temperature, may show in twenty-four to forty-eight hours hundreds of thousands of bacteria to the cubic centimeter. It is important, therefore, that the sample taken for examination shall be typical, and that it be examined immediately, to prevent multiplication of the bacteria present.

Media Used.—Either nutrient gelatin or agar may be used. It should be prepared according to the methods outlined by the American Public Health Association. The gelatin will, in general, give a somewhat higher count than the agar, but, when many liquefying species are present, the count on the gelatin must be made before all the slower-growing species have had a chance to develop.

Methods.—Various dilutions of the water to be tested are placed in a series of sterile Petri dishes, and the melted medium to be used is poured in and thoroughly mixed. After the medium has solidified, the plates may be kept at room-temperature or, better, placed in a thermostat which maintains a temperature of about 20° to 22°, or with agar, 37°. The number of colonies developing upon a given plate, multiplied by the dilutions introduced, will give approximately the number of organisms present per cubic centimeter in the original sample. The final count should be made after the lapse of forty-eight hours. Agar at 37° is counted in twenty-four hours. Discrepancies will usually be detected between the numbers, as determined from the plates containing the lesser and the greater dilutions. It is customary to use the plate having the nearest to 200 colonies in making the final estimation. Where more than this number of colonies are present, it is probable that many more have failed to develop at all, or to a size that can be readily detected, on account of the overcrowding. The numbers of bacteria can, of course, be determined only approximately by the higher dilution; it is, therefore, customary to follow the mode of expression suggested by the committee on standard methods of the American Public Health Association:

Numbers of bacteria from—
<pre>
       1–50 shall be recorded to the nearest unit.
     51–100   "   "   "   "   5
    101–250   "   "   "   "   10
    251–500   "   "   "   "   25
    501–1,000 "   "   "   "   50
  1,001–10,000 "   "   "   " 100
 10,001–50,000 "   "   "   " 500
 50,001–100,000 "   "   "   " 1000
100,001–500,000 "   "   "   " 10,000
500,001–1,000,000 "   "   "   " 50,000
1,000,001–5,000,000 " "   "   " 100,000
</pre>

Interpretation of Results.—No standard for the number of bacteria that may be present in potable water can be set because of the various factors which may determine a high count. Sternberg, however, has suggested a standard that is in general applicable; water containing less than 100 bacteria per cubic centimeter is probably pure; one containing 500 bacteria is suspicious, and one with 1000 bacteria is quite certainly bad. The number of bacteria normally present in unpolluted supplies of various kinds differs considerably; for example, that in the deep wells of a region from those of its lakes, and standards must, therefore, be established for each. Determination of numbers is probably most useful in systematic examination of the efficiency of filtration of public water-supplies. In some countries these tests are made daily, and the maximum bacterial content of the filtered water that may be used has even been fixed by law.

When gelatin is used, a separate count may be made of the colonies which develop that are capable of liquefying the medium. Such organisms are particularly characteristic of the surface soil, and usually belong to the *Bacillus subtilis* or to the *Proteus* groups. The presence of such in large numbers is an index to the extent of the surface wash, and not in general of the extent of sewage pollution. This determination may be of value in the examination of shallow wells.

Agar plates may be incubated at blood-heat. The typical water bacteria develop very slowly, if at all, at this temperature. A count made in twenty-four hours of such a plate is a fair index of the amount of sewage contamination usually, as the organisms from this source thrive best at this temperature. This determination,

however, is largely displaced by the use of the litmus-lactose-agar plates, as discussed under Qualitative Analysis.

Qualitative Examination of Water.—As has before been stated, water may be examined for the specific pathogens it may contain, or for the presence of sewage and intestinal bacteria, particularly *Bacillus coli*.

Isolation of Specific Pathogens.—*Bacterium typhosum* is the organism for which examinations have been most frequently made. It has been actually isolated from water in a few instances only. Frequently only a very small percentage of the colonies which develop from direct plating of typhoid stools are typhoid colonies. The chances of direct isolation by plating sewage or water from a supply is, therefore, remote, even though this organism be present in numbers such as to cause an epidemic of the disease among the consumers.

Usually the search for the specific organism in the water-supply is not begun until there is an outbreak of the disease, and the probabilities are that the organism by that time has disappeared from the supply. Many methods of isolation have been devised, but are not commonly used. For the most part, they are dependent upon enrichment by placing the suspected water in broth containing antiseptics which will inhibit the growth of other bacteria, but not of the intestinal forms. This material is then plated and the typhoid-like colonies are fished out and tested one at a time, the crucial test usually applied being the ability to agglutinate with high dilution of typhoid antiserum.

The specific organism of Asiatic cholera may be more readily isolated than that of typhoid. Flasks of peptone salt solution are inoculated with the suspected water, and incubated at blood-heat for twenty-four hours or less, and transfers are made to fresh flasks from the surface layer. The cholera spirillum has a considerable avidity for free oxygen, and swarms just below the surface in much greater numbers than elsewhere in the medium. Plates made from this surface film should show the characteristic colonies.

Isolation of Bacterium coli.—Advantage may be taken of the physiologic and cultural characteristics of the *Bacterium coli* to isolate it from water. In examination of large numbers of samples it is often found useful to make what is termed a preliminary or

presumptive test for the presence of the colon bacillus. Fermentation tubes containing 1 per cent. lactose broth are inoculated with varying amounts of the water to be tested. If gas is not produced in any of the tubes, it is evident that *Bact. coli* is not present, at least in any considerable numbers. A negative result is, therefore, good evidence of the purity of the water examined. A positive test makes it probable that the water contains the colon bacillus, although further tests are necessary to establish the fact; hence the name, presumptive test. The evidence that *Bact. coli* is present is much strengthened if gas is formed to the amount of 30 per cent. and not more than 80 per cent. An approximation of the number of colon bacilli present may sometimes be made by observing the dilutions of the water in which gas is produced. For example, if gas is produced in dilutions of 1 : 0, 1 : 10, and 1 : 100, but not in higher dilutions, it may be inferred that there are between 100 to 1000 *B. coli* present per cubic centimeter in the original sample. Many investigators use lactose bile rather than broth in the presumptive tests.

A determination of the number of *Bacterium coli* present in a given sample may be secured by plating different dilutions in agar containing 1 per cent. lactose, colored blue by litmus solution, and incubating twenty-four to forty-eight hours at 37°. Organisms which can ferment lactose with acid production are surrounded by a red discoloration of the litmus. Such organisms are the *Bact. coli*, *Bact. aërogenes*, and Streptococcus. The first two may be considered together, as they are usually held to indicate the same facts, although recent work seems to indicate that *Bact. aërogenes* is not a true intestinal form, but found in soils, on grains, etc. The colonies of these organisms may usually be readily differentiated from those of Streptococcus by their larger size, their shiny appearance, and the frequent gas bubble accompanying the colony if it lies below the surface. The Streptococcus colonies, on the other hand, are small, rarely larger than a pin-head, and never have gas bubbles. It is usually necessary to make transfers from colonies and carry them through the various media to complete the identification. A highly contaminated water will commonly reveal acid colonies directly upon plating, but in presence of large numbers of other bacteria preliminary enrichment will often show presence of *Bact. coli*

when direct plating would give negative results. Plates may be poured from fermentation tubes that show gas production.

Bacterium coli is not uncommon in nature; its constant presence in the feces of most animals makes it widely distributed. It is entirely probable that the presence of small numbers of *Bact. coli* in water may, therefore, be without significance from the standpoint of potability. It is generally regarded in America that if *Bact. coli* can be constantly demonstrated in 1 c.c. samples of the water, this is an indication of recent sewage contamination. When its presence may be demonstrated only by the use of larger samples than 1 c.c. the evidence must be regarded as inconclusive.

Water Purification

Self-purification of Natural Waters.—Natural waters, both running and impounded (as in lakes and reservoirs), gradually free themselves from organic and bacterial contamination. The rapidity and efficiency of this cleansing process depend upon many factors. Bacterial purification is most rapid in impounded waters, and chemical purification in running streams.

Sedimentation is probably the most potent factor in freeing a contaminated water from bacteria. The bacteria themselves have a slightly greater specific gravity than water, and tend to go to the bottom under the influence of gravity. This occurs more rapidly when other and larger solid particles are in suspension; flocculation and more rapid sedimentation then frequently occur. Advantage is taken of this fact in the artificial purification of water, and coagulants of different kinds are added, which carry down the bacteria, together with other suspended material. Diminution of food supply with consequent disappearance of many bacteria is likewise important. Probably light destroys some organisms, and others are ingested by *protozoa*. Some species do not develop in the presence of certain other forms, that is, they exhibit *antibiosis*. *Water-plants*, *algæ*, and natural obstructions of all kinds to water-flow exert a *filtering* action. Changes in *temperature* may inhibit the growth and even destroy some bacteria. A contaminated stream is constantly *diluted* by the influx of groundwater and of tributaries.

Purification of Drinking-water.—For domestic purposes water

may be effectually purified by heating to the boiling-point for a few minutes. All the pathogenic bacteria are eliminated by this method. Berkefeld porcelain filters, if properly constructed, are also efficient. They must be cleaned and sterilized at short intervals, otherwise the organisms will grow through the pores of the filter, and the water passing through will be as contaminated as the original supply. Even more efficient is purification by means of the ultra-violet rays. Where a city supply must be purified, it is commonly pumped into reservoirs and allowed to settle, with or without the addition of coagulants. It is then passed through filters of various types, usually sand. Passage through a properly constructed filter of this type has been shown to be exceptionally efficient. Such a system requires careful supervision. An efficient system will remove over 99 per cent. of the bacteria originally present. Some city supplies are pumped under pressure through sand-filters. This does not seem to be as efficient a means of ridding the water of bacteria as the other; as a filter, in any case, to retain its highest efficiency, must remain for some time undisturbed, and filters of the latter type require frequent cleaning and washing. The installation of filtration plants for purification of city supplies has in many cases resulted in a marked diminution of the death-rate from typhoid and other intestinal diseases.

Sewage Disposal.—The question of proper disposal of sewage is closely related to the topic of pure water for domestic purposes. Usually sewage is allowed to flow into a suitable stream, and is purified as it passes down stream. There is no valid objection to this, providing there is a sufficient and constant flow of water in the stream to insure dilution, and the water of this stream is not used as a city supply further down. Unfortunately, too little attention has been paid to this subject, and the high typhoid death-rates in some cities are due directly to the use of such sewage-polluted water. Berlin and Paris purify their sewage by using it in the irrigation of large tracts of land, and re-collecting the water in the underdrains. Such a system is highly efficient, but, as it requires a particular type of soil, large areas, and suitable conditions, it is not often practicable. For sewage disposal in small cities and towns, and even private residences or farms, some of the numerous modifications of the septic tank and filter-bed have been shown to

be most efficient.   The sewage is first carried to a septic tank, so-called—a large tank, usually of brick or concrete, and commonly covered.   This tank is planned so that the sewage flow of twelve to twenty-four hours will fill it, or in other words, that a given portion of sewage will require that time to pass through.   Here much of the solid material settles out.   The dissolved oxygen, if any be present in the raw sewage, is quickly used up, and anaërobic conditions are established.   Under such treatment the decomposition of the organic matter occurs rapidly.   Most of the sediment of the septic tank is soon dissolved by bacterial action.   Gases, particularly H_2S, CH_4, H_2, and NH_3, are produced.   These rise to the top, and are there intercepted by the heavy scum which forms, and oxidized to H_2SO_4, or free S_2, CO_2, H_2O, and HNO_3; hence there is but little disagreeable odor to be noted about such a plant.   The organic material is, for the most part, broken down into soluble, easily oxidizable substances.   The sewage must not be held under these conditions for too long a period, otherwise the decomposition will go too far.   The sewage then usually passes to a dosing chamber.   This is simply a chamber which automatically discharges through one or more siphons whenever it becomes filled. The sewage passes from here either into contact beds or into filter-beds.   The former consist of beds of crushed rock usually with water-tight walls.   The sewage may be sprinkled over the surface constantly and allowed to trickle through (the so-called trickling filter), or it may be poured on to the bed in bulk, and held in contact with the crushed stone for a time and then discharged.   In either case the sewage becomes thoroughly aërated, and the aërobic bacteria rapidly oxidize the organic matter present.   A filter-bed, on the other hand, is constructed of sand underlaid with gravel and stone.   The sewage is spread out over the surface and is allowed to seep through.   Opportunity for thorough aëration of the sand and gravel is given by the time elapsing between the discharges from the dosing chamber.   Frequently several beds are used, and the sewage is discharged first upon one, then upon another.   The organic material is retained, probably by adsorption, and, as the sewage passes through, the bacteria are largely filtered out, and the organic material is, for the most part, quite completely oxidized. The water leaving the drains under these filter-beds is relatively

pure, in some cases quite as pure as water from the average shallow well. As has been stated, there are many modifications of the type of disposal plant. It has been adapted to use for the farmhouse as well as the city.

Recently a marked advance has been made in sewage disposal by the use of the so-called *activated sludge* method. The sewage is run into tanks, either with intermittent or constant flow, and air is bubbled through rapidly. Gradually oxidizing bacteria multiply in the sewage, particularly in the sludge, and oxidation of the organic matter is comparatively rapid. When the tank has reached its maximum efficiency, sewage is purified within a few hours, being separated into two portions, a clear liquid which will prove stable and is comparatively free from bacteria and a flocculent sediment or sludge. This latter is in part removed from time to time, and may be used as a fertilizer.

MILK. ITS CONSTITUENTS, CONTAMINATION, AND EXAMINATION

MILK is a complex mixture consisting of dissolved substances forming a solution which contains suspended matter, this entire mixture in turn containing in emulsion certain undissolved substances. The suspended and dissolved substances constitute the milk plasma which separates into coagulum and milk serum upon coagulation. The fat is in emulsion. Several salts and certain cells undissolved or precipitated are also contained. About 87 per cent. of milk is water and 13 per cent. solids. Approximately 4 per cent. of the solids is fat, the balance solids not fat. The content of the latter is about 3.3 per cent. protein (nitrogenous compounds), 0.7 per cent. ash, and 5 per cent. lactose. Cascinogen and albumen are the chief nitrogenous compounds, of which the former makes up about four-fifths of all. The following table, summarized from Van Slyke's analyses, shows the composition of milk:

$$
\text{Milk}-100
\begin{cases}
\text{Water} = 87.1 \\
\text{Solids} = \underline{12.9} \\
\phantom{\text{Solids}} \ \ 100
\end{cases}
\begin{cases}
\text{Fat} = 4.0 \\
\text{Solids} \\
\phantom{\text{So}} \text{not fat} = \underline{8.9} \\
\phantom{\text{Solids not}} 12.9
\end{cases}
\begin{cases}
\text{Proteins} = 3.3 \\
\text{Milk-sugar} = 4.9 \\
\text{Ash (salts)} = \underline{0.7} \\
\phantom{\text{Ash (salts)}} 8.9
\end{cases}
\begin{cases}
\text{Albumen} - 0.7 \\
\text{Cascin} = \underline{2.6} \\
\phantom{\text{Cascin}} 3.3
\end{cases}
$$

Various hydrolytic enzymes, such as oxidases, galactase, etc., are contained.

Bacteria-free milk is very difficult to obtain without some process of sterilization. Bacteria capable of bringing about various changes in milk must, therefore, be considered.

Changes from Normal to Decomposed Milk.—Koning distinguishes seven types of important changes which may occur in milk. The milk will show most, if not all, of the following stages:

1. Germicidal stage.
2. Development of lactic-acid-producing microörganisms.

3. Neutralization of acid by alkali producers.

4. Putrefaction.

5. Lactic acid bacteria again multiply due to neutralization of acid by organisms in third stage.

6. Development of fungi (*Oïdium lactis* and others).

7. Butyric acid production by bacteria and change of the food product into a stinking putrid fluid.

The Germicidal Action of Milk.—Wolfhügel and Riedel as early as 1886 claimed to have demonstrated bactericidal substances in milk by showing that the cholera vibrio multiplied much more rapidly in boiled milk than in unboiled. Fokker, in 1890, asserted that normal raw milk possessed germicidal properties. He cultured lactic acid bacteria in raw and in boiled milk, and showed that the former resisted spoiling for a longer period. Other investigators claimed that the bactericidal properties existed only for certain kinds of bacteria and not for others. These latter investigators maintained that the composition of milk favors certain bacteria by creating conditions favorable for their development, while others are held in abeyance because of the lack of constituents favoring their growth, and also become injured by the products of the favored organisms.

Bauer, Rullman, Tommsdorf, and others have proved that specific germicidal substances, such as amboceptors, leucins, alexins, etc., do exist in special kinds of milk, such as mammitis and colostral milk, while they contend that their existence in normal milk has not been satisfactorily demonstrated. Some would attempt to account for the apparent diminution in numbers of bacteria by the fact that milk has an agglutinating action upon bacteria, and that, therefore, bacterial clumps rather than single bacteria originate the colonies on a plate.

The decrease of bacteria in fresh milk as shown by bacterial counts seems, nevertheless, to be established. It is only after a few hours, generally, that rapid multiplication of bacteria begins.

The presence of leukocytes in milk, and the fact that for a few hours subsequent to drawing the milk they are capable of ingesting bacteria, suggests the possibility that germicidal properties of milk are due in part to phagocytic action. This action plus that of

the true bactericidal substances may account for the germicidal action of milk. The bactericidal property of milk persists for but a relatively short time. Under favorable cool temperatures it may last for some days, but in warm temperature it disappears after a few hours. A temperature exposure of 80° C. completely destroys it. Under even the most favorable conditions no reliance should be placed upon it as a means of destroying all bacteria.

Acid Production in Milk.—The organisms producing lactic acid primarily, belong for the most part to the genera *Streptococcus* and *Lactobacillus*. Organisms producing smaller amounts of lactic acid and larger amounts of volatile acids, proteolytic ferments, etc., in general belong to the genera *Bacterium* and *Staphylococcus*.

Putrefactive bacteria are practically always present in milk. They rarely develop sufficiently, however, to become prominent because of the much more rapid growth of the lactic acid bacteria and the creation of an acid reaction unfavorable to putrefaction. Opportunity is therefore denied for the production of poisonous putrefactive substances. The complete destruction of all the lactic acid bacteria, as may occasionally occur in pasteurization, or the inhibition of their growth by holding milk for a long period at low temperatures may offer opportunities for the development of these putrefactive forms. It is probable also that the acid production inhibits to some degree the multiplication of pathogenic bacteria.

The flavor and aroma of butter will depend very largely upon the type of organisms which have been growing in the cream; the butter fat absorbs considerable quantities of dissolved substances present in the fermenting cream; it is, therefore highly desirable that these should be of the proper character. If batches of cream are allowed to ripen spontaneously without the addition of any starter there is apt to be a marked lack in uniformity in the product. A much better and more uniform result is secured by inoculating the cream which is to be ripened with a considerable amount of desirable lactic acid bacteria. Such organisms are sold under the name of commercial starters. It is generally assumed that they are pure cultures, or practically pure cultures, of *Strep-*

tococcus lacticus or some very closely related organism. This is introduced into pasteurized milk and allowed to grow until the milk has reached a satisfactory state of acidity. With this a larger bulk of milk is inoculated and finally the whole mass used a starter in the cream which is to be churned. A heavy inoculation with the desirable microörganisms and their growth products usually overwhelms undesirable types of bacteria and leads to the development of a satisfactory product.

Recent studies have made it evident that the changes brought about in a satisfactory starter are not the result simply of the growth of *Streptococcus lacticus*. Another organism closely related to it must ordinarily grow with it. Cream which has been ripened by means of a pure culture of the ordinary *Streptococcus lacticus* does not produce butter with as satisfactory a flavor and aroma as that produced by cream which has been inoculated with a mixture of these organisms. The ripening produced by a starter is therefore an excellent example of associative action. The true *Streptococcus lacticus* apparently produces very little change in milk or cream other than the development of the pure lactic acid from lactose. The associative organism, also a coccus (*Streptococcus citrovorus*) can by its own growth bring about very little change in milk. When grown in the presence of *Streptococcus lacticus*, however, the activity of this organism is greatly stimulated and small amounts of volatile acids are developed. It is to the absorption of these and perhaps of other growth products that the butter owes its characteristic aroma and flavor.

Neutralization of Acid.—Very little decomposition of sour milk occurs for several days if the milk be kept under anaërobic conditions, but upon exposure to air there occurs the development of molds (chiefly *Oïdium lactis*) upon the surface, and the lactic acid is oxidized to carbon dioxid and water. Thus the acidity is destroyed and conditions favorable for the development of putrefactive organisms are created. Combination of acid with the caseinogen of the milk also assists in the neutralization.

Putrefaction.—Putrefactive bacteria multiply rapidly as soon as excess of acidity is overcome. *Proteus, Bacillus subtilis, Ps. fluorescens, B. mesentericus,* and others, together with molds, complete the changes whereby the milk becomes putrescent.

Some of the unusual changes that occur in milk due to certain bacteria give rise to such terms as ropy, blue, red, soapy, bitter, etc. Ropy milk results from slime-producing bacteria which may either produce capsules which are dissolved, act upon proteins with the formation of mucin-like substances, or upon the carbohydrates forming gums. Blue and red milk are the result of pigment formation by *Pseudomonas cyanogenes*, *Erythrobacillus erythrogenes*, and others. *B. lactis saponacei* and *B. sapolacticum* cause a soapy condition of milk; a sharp, rancid, soapy taste develops, and upon shaking a tenacious foam forms.

Such undesirable bacteria are usually present because of unsterilized milking utensils, and the application of milk of lime and hot soda solutions, with cleaning and disinfecting of stables usually result in their elimination.

Contamination of Milk with Bacteria.—The possibility of milk contamination is recognized as from the following sources: Mammary gland and ducts of the same, hair and skin of the cow, air of stables, hands and clothing of the milker, milking utensils, handling of milk subsequent to milking.

Mammary Gland.—The healthy tissue of the udder, like other normal tissues, is free from bacteria. Milk, therefore, as it is being secreted is sterile. In the ducts of the udder and particularly in the milk cistern it may come in contact with bacteria, so that when it leaves the teat the foremilk particularly may show a low bacterial count. This usually is not above 100 per cubic centimeter, rarely as much as 500. Variations in different cows are noticeable, and some which appear normal may show a much higher bacterial content.

Hair and Skin.—Lack of careful grooming results in the accumulation on the hair of masses of filth, largely fecal matter, which at time of milking may fall into the pail and serve as an important source of milk contamination. Daily grooming at a time as remote from milking time as possible is recommended. Experiments by the New York Experiment Station do not indicate that clipping the hair is of advantage in preventing contamination; in fact, milk from clipped cows had a higher germ content than that from unclipped. This was supposedly due to the fact that whereas in unclipped cows the dirt at the base of the hairs not removed by a

superficial grooming is held there by the hair, in clipped ones this dirt readily became detached and fell into the pails.

Air of Stables.—Dust particles which are floating in the air of the stable may play an important part in milk contamination. It is only under the most adverse conditions, such as during the handling of hay and feed or bedding or by continued exposure of the milk in the open pail, that contamination from air is to be considered of great importance. These are the conclusions reached by the New York State Experiment Station, where it was found that "while the numbers of bacteria in stable air markedly exceeded those of city street or office air, the number falling into the milk during the ordinary milking time under conditions permissible in any respectable dairy is so small as to be negligible."

The bacteria from this source are usually those of the putrefactive or the *Bacillus subtilis* types.

Hands and Clothing of Milkers.—Personal cleanliness of milkers and the use of clean outer garments have much to do with the purity of milk. The chance for infection from unclean milkers is great, and such contamination is very apt to lead to serious results, since organisms from this source are much more apt to produce disease in man than those coming from the animal.

Milking Utensils.—These doubtless contribute a greater number of bacteria to milk than any of the other sources. Poorly soldered seams, rusted areas, and sharp angles at edges furnish favorable lodgment for the accumulation of milk, which at once becomes a favorable medium for the growth of bacteria. Exposure to a heavy fall of dust particles and bacteria from the air is avoided by the use of pails with small tops, rather than the old-style pail with flaring top. Vessels should be cleansed with sal soda and hot water, scrubbed with a brush to remove all adhering masses, rinsed thoroughly in clear water, and steamed for fifteen minutes in a chest. Before placing in the chest the tops should be covered with cloth, and this should not be removed until the pail is to be used.

Careless Handling of Milk.—Although milk may show a very low bacterial count up to the time it is ready for storage, there is still ample opportunity for contamination. If allowed to stand open in the cans or to remain for long periods in warm temperature the entrance and multiplication of bacteria will be great. Dipping from the cans in dippers which have been neglected as to proper

sanitary care may result in the introduction of enormous numbers of bacteria not only with the milk thus removed, but into that remaining in the can.

Influences Which Determine the Ultimate Bacterial Content

There are at least five important factors to consider as influencing the bacterial content of milk. They are: Initial contamination; the time elapsing between the drawing of the milk and its consumption; the temperature to which it was lowered immediately following withdrawal and at which it has been maintained since; the care with which it has been handled; and whether it has been pasteurized.

Initial contamination is to be kept at the minimum by proper care of stables, cows, and milkers. Furnishing as it does such a favorable medium for the growth of bacteria, it is important that the time milk is held before consumption should be as short as possible, for given much time the increase of bacteria will be enormous. Closely associated with this factor is that of temperature. Held even for but a comparatively short time at a favorable temperature the increase will be rapid. Milk should be quickly cooled immediately after it is drawn, preferably to a temperature of 50° or less. It will keep thus for several days without serious deterioration. Careful handling in transportation and in retail shops is important in keeping the bacterial content low. Pasteurization results in a great reduction of the bacterial content, and pasteurized milk kept properly cooled will retain its favorable condition for a long time.

Diseases Transmitted Through Milk.—There are two classes of disease of the human which may be transmitted through the agency of milk. The first includes those which come from the consumption of milk from animals suffering from mastitis, the second those due to specific microörganisms.

At least three types of disease in the human traceable to consumption of milk from udders affected with infectious mastitis are recognizable:

(1) Gastro-intestinal catarrh due to streptococci contained in such milk. This condition is characterized by fever, dulness, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, fainting, and cramps. Numerous well-authenticated cases of this kind are on record, and careful inves-

tigations in all reported cases trace the condition back to the infected udder.

(2) Epidemics of sore throat accompanied by swelling of the lymph-glands of the neck, fever, colic, and diarrhea. Several such epidemics in this country have been investigated, and here again the cause has been found to be streptococci of milk from mastitis cases.

(3) Enteritidis and paratyphoid infections, in which the evidence points strongly to milk infection. Reports of such conditions are few, and none can be said to trace with certainty to enteritidis, or paratyphoid mastitis, but such origin is not improbable.

The specific diseases whose transmission through milk is recognized include typhoid and paratyphoid fever, cholera, diphtheria, tuberculosis, and scarlet fever. The occurrence of these disease-producing organisms in milk may be traced to the handling of milk by affected persons or by healthy persons who are bacillus carriers, or to infective material gaining access to the utensils through the use of polluted water. Typhoid fever epidemics due to a contaminated milk supply are usually easily differentiated from those of other organs due to the fact that the disease is confined to households having a common milk supply. While Levy claims to have isolated *Bacterium typhosum* from an abscess of the udder, it is generally recognized that this organism is unable to produce disease in cattle, and its presence in milk is due to careless handling, such as the use of contaminated water for washing vessels, or through bacillus carriers or convalescing patients. The possibility of transmission through bottles that have been returned unwashed from households where typhoid is present should also be recognized.

Paratyphoid is transmitted in ways quite similar to typhoid. In addition, transmission through consumption of milk from cows with mastitis due to organisms of this type is held as possible and probable. Diphtheria and scarlet fever, while not so commonly traceable to contaminated milk supplies, are recognized as being transmitted in this way. The contamination in this case is from some infected individual who has handled the milk. Infection of milk with the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* occurs readily and directly when the animal is suffering from tuberculosis of the

udder. It may occur also, in an indirect way, through contamination of the udder or skin of the cow with feces in pulmonary or intestinal tuberculosis, the organisms being thus introduced when the infective material falls into the pail. The recognition of the bovine type of tuberculosis in lesions of tuberculosis both of children and adults is mentioned in another chapter (see p. 405). This strongly indicates the possibility of the bovine tubercle bacillus being transmitted to man, and suggests the necessity of careful supervision of herds supplying milk to the public. Tuberculin-tested and tuberculosis-free herds should be the rule, and where this is impossible, pasteurization should be required.

A few diseases, such as anthrax, Malta fever, and foot-and-mouth disease, which are transmissible from animal to man are occasionally spread through milk, but their occurrence is rare enough as to be considered of slight importance.

Standards for Production and Distribution of Certified Milk

Certified milk, in the strict sense of the term, is milk produced under legal contract between a medical milk commission and a dairyman, and which conforms to the requirements of such commission. These requirements differ in different cities. Some cities have excellent milk ordinances which conform quite closely to the standards as adopted by the American Association of Medical Milk Commissions. Milk entitled to be certified is clean and wholesome, is obtained from healthy cows kept in sanitary quarters, fed wholesome feed, and given pure water. It is drawn from clean cows by clean healthy attendants into clean receptacles and in a clean atmosphere. It is handled in a clean manner, cooled quickly, put into sterile vessels, placed in cold storage, and iced in transportation.

Inspected milk comes from clean cows that are tuberculin-tested and is drawn and cared for under sanitary conditions, but does not meet all the rigid standards demanded for a certified milk.

Pasteurized milk is milk heated for a time at a temperature below the boiling-point in order to destroy harmful bacteria. The

so-called holder process is the one in most general use. In this the milk is heated to 60° to 65° C. and this temperature is maintained for about twenty minutes.

The following provisions contained in the methods and standards for production and distribution of certified milk, as adopted by the American Association of Medical Milk Commissions, May 1, 1912, relate particularly to bacteriologic standards, veterinary inspection, and animal hygiene, and are of particular interest to veterinary students.

Hygiene of the Dairy Under the Supervision and Control of the Veterinarian

1. *Pastures or Paddocks*.—Pastures or paddocks to which the cows have access shall be free from marshes or stagnant pools, crossed by no stream which might become dangerously contaminated, at sufficient distances from offensive conditions to suffer no bad effects from them, and shall be free from plants which affect the milk deleteriously.

2. *Surroundings of Buildings*.—The surroundings of all buildings shall be kept clean and free from accumulations of dirt, rubbish, decayed vegetable or animal matter or animal waste, and the stable yard shall be well drained.

3. *Location of Buildings*.—Buildings in which certified milk is produced and handled shall be so located as to insure proper shelter and good drainage, and at sufficient distance from other buildings, dusty roads, cultivated and dusty fields, and all other possible sources of contamination; provided, in the case of unavoidable proximity to dusty roads or fields, the exposed side shall be screened with cheese-cloth.

4. *Construction of Stables*.—The stables shall be constructed so as to facilitate the prompt and easy removal of waste-products. The floors and platforms shall be made of cement or other nonabsorbent material and the gutters of cement only. The floors shall be properly graded and drained, and the manure gutters shall be properly graded and drained, and shall be from 6 to 8 inches deep and so placed in relation to the platform that all manure will drop into them.

5. The inside surface of the walls and all interior construction shall be smooth, with tight joints, and shall be capable of shedding

water. The ceiling shall be of smooth material and dust-tight. All horizontal and slanting surfaces which might harbor dust shall be avoided.

6. *Drinking and Feed Troughs.*—Drinking troughs or basins shall be drained and cleaned each day, and feed troughs and mixing floors shall be kept in a clean and sanitary condition.

7. *Stanchions.*—Stanchions, when used, shall be constructed of iron pipes or hard wood, and throat latches shall be provided to prevent the cows from lying down between the time of cleaning and the time of milking.

8. *Ventilation.*—The cow stables shall be provided with adequate ventilation either by means of some approved artificial device, or by the substitution of cheese-cloth for glass in the windows. Each cow to be provided with a minimum of 600 cubic feet of air space.

9. *Windows.*—A sufficient number of windows shall be installed and so distributed as to provide satisfactory light and a maximum of sunshine, 2 feet square of window area to each 600 cubic feet of air space to represent the minimum. The coverings of such windows shall be kept free from dust and dirt.

10. *Exclusion of Flies, Etc.*—All necessary measures should be taken to prevent the entrance of flies and other insects, and rats and other vermin into all the buildings.

11. *Exclusion of Animals from the Herd.*—No horses, hogs, dogs, or other animals or fowls shall be allowed to come in contact with the certified herd, either in the stables or elsewhere.

12. *Bedding.*—No dusty or moldy hay or straw, bedding from horse-stalls, or other unclean materials shall be used for bedding the cows. Only bedding which is clean, dry, and absorbent may be used, preferably shavings or straw.

13. *Cleaning Stable and Disposal of Manure.*—Soiled bedding and manure shall be removed at least twice daily, and the floors shall be swept and kept free from refuse. Such cleaning shall be done at least one hour before the milking time. Manure, when removed, shall be drawn to the field or temporarily stored in containers so screened as to exclude flies. Manure shall not be even temporarily stored within 300 feet of the barn or dairy building.

14. *Cleaning of Cows.*—Each cow in the herd shall be groomed daily, and no manure, mud, or filth shall be allowed to remain upon

her during milking; for cleaning, a vacuum apparatus is recommended.

15. *Clipping.*—Long hairs shall be clipped from the udder and flanks of the cow and from the tail above the brush.   The hair on the tail shall be cut so that the brush may be well above the ground.

16. *Cleaning of Udders.*—The udders and teats of the cow shall be cleaned before milking; they shall be washed with a cloth and water, and dry wiped with another clean sterilized cloth—a separate cloth for drying each cow.

17. *Feeding.*—All foodstuffs shall be kept in an apartment separate from and not directly communicating with the cow barn. They shall be brought into the barn only immediately before the feeding hour, which shall follow the milking.

18. Only those foods shall be used which consist of fresh, palatable, or nutritious materials, such as will not injure the health of the cows or unfavorably affect the taste or character of the milk. Any dirty or moldy food or food in a state of decomposition or putrefaction shall not be given.

19. A well-balanced ration shall be used, and all changes of food shall be made slowly.   The first few feedings of grass, alfalfa, ensilage, green corn, or other green feeds shall be given in small rations and increased gradually to full ration.

20. *Exercise.*—All dairy cows shall be turned out for exercise at least two hours in each twenty-four in suitable weather.   Exercise yards shall be kept free from manure and other filth.

21. *Washing of Hands.*—Conveniently located facilities shall be provided for the milkers to wash in before and during milking.

22. The hands of the milkers shall be thoroughly washed with soap, water and brush, and carefully dried on a clean towel immediately before milking.   The hands of the milkers shall be rinsed with clean water and carefully dried before milking each cow. The practice of moistening the hands with milk is forbidden.

23. *Milking Clothes.*—Clean overalls, jumper, and cap shall be worn during milking.   They shall be washed or sterilized each day, and used for no other purpose, and when not in use they shall be kept in a clean place, protected from dust and dirt.

24. *Things to be Avoided by Milkers.*—While engaged about the

dairy or in handling the milk employees shall not use tobacco or intoxicating liquors. They shall keep their fingers away from their nose and mouth, and no milker shall permit his hands, fingers, lips, or tongue to come in contact with milk intended for sale.

25. During milking the milkers shall be careful not to touch anything but the clean top of the milking stool, the milk pail, and the cow's teats.

26. Milkers are forbidden to spit upon the walls or floors of stables, or upon the walls or floors of milk houses, or into the water used for cooling the milk or washing the utensils.

27. *Foremilk.*—The first streams from each teat shall be rejected, as this foremilk contains large numbers of bacteria. Such milk shall be collected into a separate vessel and not milked on to the floors or into the gutters. The milking shall be done rapidly and quietly, and the cows shall be treated kindly.

28. *Milk and Calving Period.*—Milk from all cows shall be excluded for a period of forty-five days before and seven days after parturition.

29. *Bloody and Stringy Milk.*—If milk from any cow is bloody and stringy or of unnatural appearance, the milk from that cow shall be rejected and the cow isolated from the herd until the cause of such abnormal appearance has been determined and removed, special attention being given in the meantime to the feeding or to possible injuries. If dirt gets into the pail, the milk shall be discarded and the pail washed before it is used.

30. *Make-up of Herd.*—No cows except those receiving the same supervision and care as the certified herd shall be kept in the same barn or brought in contact with them.

31. *Employees Other than Milkers.*—The requirements for milkers, relative to garments and cleaning of hands, shall apply to all other persons handling the milk, and children unattended by adults shall not be allowed in the dairy nor in the stable during milking.

32. *Straining and Strainers.*—Promptly after the milk is drawn it shall be removed from the stable to a clean room and then emptied from the milk pail to the can, being strained through strainers made of a double layer of finely meshed cheese-cloth or absorbent cotton thoroughly sterilized. Several strainers shall be provided for each milking, in order that they may be frequently changed.

33. *Dairy Building.*—A dairy building shall be provided which shall be located at a distance from the stable and dwelling prescribed by the local commission, and there shall be no hog-pen, privy, or manure pile at a higher level or within 300 feet of it.

34. The dairy building shall be kept clean and shall not be used for purposes other than the handling and storing of milk and milk utensils. It shall be provided with light and ventilation, and the floors shall be graded and water-tight.

35. The dairy building shall be well lighted and screened and drained through well-trapped pipes. No animals shall be allowed therein. No part of the dairy building shall be used for dwelling or lodging purposes, and the bottling room shall be used for no other purpose than to provide a place for clean milk utensils and for handling the milk. During bottling this room shall be entered only by persons employed therein. The bottling room shall be kept scrupulously clean and free from odors.

36. *Temperature of Milk.*—Proper cooling to reduce the temperature to 45° F. shall be used, and aërators shall be so situated that they can be protected from flies, dust, and odors. The milk shall be cooled immediately after being milked, and maintained at a temperature between 35° and 45° F. until delivered to the consumer.

37. *Sealing of Bottles.*—Milk, after being cooled and bottled, shall be immediately sealed in a manner satisfactory to the commission, but such seal shall include a sterile hood which completely covers the lip of the bottle.

38. *Cleaning and Sterilizing of Bottles.*—The dairy building shall be provided with approved apparatus for the cleansing and sterilizing of all bottles and utensils used in milk production. All bottles and utensils shall be thoroughly cleaned by hot water and sal soda, or equally pure agent, rinsed until the cleaning water is thoroughly removed, then exposed to live steam or boiling water at least twenty minutes, and then kept inverted until used, in a place free from dust and other contaminating materials.

39. *Utensils.*—All utensils shall be so constructed as to be easily cleaned. The milk pail should preferably have an elliptical opening 5 by 7 inches in diameter. The cover of this pail should be convex, so as to make the entire interior of the pail visible and accessible for cleaning. The pail shall be made of heavy seamless

tin, and with seams which are flushed and made smooth by solder. Wooden pails, galvanized-iron pails, or pails made of rough, porous materials are forbidden. All utensils used in milking shall be kept in good repair.

40. *Water-supply.*—The entire water-supply shall be absolutely free from contamination, and shall be sufficient for all dairy purposes. It shall be protected against flood or surface drainage, and shall be conveniently situated in relation to the milk house.

41. *Privies, etc., in Relation to Water-supply.*—Privies, pigpens, manure piles, and all other possible sources of contamination shall be so situated on the farm as to render impossible the contamination of the water-supply, and shall be so protected by use of screens and other measures as to prevent their becoming breeding-grounds for flies.

Transportation

42. In transit the milk packages shall be kept free from dust and dirt. The wagon, trays, and crates shall be kept scrupulously clean. No bottles shall be collected from houses in which communicable diseases prevail, unless a separate wagon is used and under conditions prescribed by the department of health and the medical milk commission.

43. All certified milk shall reach the consumer within thirty hours after milking.

Veterinary Supervision of the Herd

44. *Tuberculin Test.*—The herd shall be free from tuberculosis, as shown by the tuberculin test. The test shall be applied in accordance with the rules and regulations of the United States Government, and all reactors shall be removed immediately from the farm.

45. No animals shall be admitted to the herd without first having passed a satisfactory tuberculin test, made in accordance with the rules and regulations mentioned; the tuberculin to be obtained and applied only by the official veterinarian of the commission.

46. Immediately following the application of the tuberculin test to a herd for the purpose of eliminating tuberculous cattle, the cow stable and exercising yards shall be disinfected by the veterinary

inspector in accordance with the rules and regulations of the United States Government.

47. A second tuberculin test shall follow each primary test after an interval of six months, and shall be applied in accordance with the rules and regulations mentioned. Thereafter, tuberculin tests shall be reapplied annually, but it is recommended that the retests be applied semi-annually.

48. *Identification of Cows.*—Each dairy cow in each of the certified herds shall be labeled or tagged with a number or mark which will permanently identify her.

49. *Herd-book Record.*—Each cow in the herd shall be registered in a herd book, which register shall be accurately kept, so that her entrance and departure from the herd and her tuberculin testing can be identified.

50. A copy of this herd-book record shall be kept in the hands of the veterinarian of the medical milk commission under which the dairy farm is operating, and the veterinarian shall be made responsible for the accuracy of this record.

51. *Dates of Tuberculin Tests.*—The dates of the annual tuberculin tests shall be definitely arranged by the medical milk commission, and all of the results of such tests shall be recorded by the veterinarian and regularly reported to the secretary of the medical milk commission issuing the certificate.

52. The results of all tuberculin tests shall be kept on file by each medical milk commission, and a copy of all such tests shall be made available to the American Association of Medical Milk Commissions for statistical purposes.

53. The proper designated officers of the American Association of Medical Milk Commissions should receive copies of reports of all of the annual, semi-annual, and other official tuberculin tests which are made, and keep copies of the same on file and compile them annually for the use of the association.

54. *Disposition of Cows Sick with Diseases Other than Tuberculosis.*—Cows having rheumatism, leukorrhea, inflammation of the uterus, severe diarrhea or disease of the udder, or cows that from any other cause may be a menace to the herd shall be removed from the herd and placed in a building separate from that which may be used for the isolation of cows with tuberculosis, unless such build-

ing has been properly disinfected since it was last used for this purpose. The milk from such cows shall not be used nor shall the cows be restored to the herd until permission has been given by the veterinary inspector after a careful physical examination.

55. *Notification of Veterinary Inspector.*—In the event of the occurrence of any of the diseases just described between the visits of the veterinary inspector, or if at any time a number of cows become sick at one time in such a way as to suggest the outbreak of a contagious disease or poisoning, it shall be the duty of the dairyman to withdraw such sickened cattle from the herd, to destroy their milk, and to notify the veterinary inspector by telegraph or telephone immediately.

56. *Emaciated Cows.*—Cows that are emaciated from chronic diseases, or from any cause that in the opinion of the veterinary inspector may endanger the quality of the milk, shall be removed from the herd.

Bacteriologic Standards

57. *Bacterial Counts.*—Certified milk shall contain less than 10,000 bacteria per cubic centimeter when delivered. In case a count exceeding 10,000 bacteria per cubic centimeter is found, daily counts shall be made, and if normal counts are not restored within ten days the certificate shall be suspended.

58. Bacterial counts shall be made at least once a week.

59. *Collection of Samples.*—The samples to be examined shall be obtained from milk as offered for sale, and shall be taken by a representative of the milk commission. The samples shall be received in the original packages, in properly iced containers, and they shall be so kept until examined, so as to limit as far as possible changes in their bacterial content.

60. For the purpose of ascertaining the temperature, a separate original package shall be used, and the temperature taken at the time of collecting the sample, using for the purpose a standardized thermometer graduated in the Centigrade scale.

61. *Interval Between Milking and Plating.*—The examinations shall be made as soon after collection of the samples as possible, and in no case shall the interval between milking and plating the samples be longer than forty hours.

62. *Plating.*—The packages shall be opened with aseptic pre-

37

cautions after the milk has been thoroughly mixed by vigorously reversing and shaking the container twenty-five times.

63. Two plates at least shall be made for each sample of milk, and there shall also be made a control of each lot of medium and apparatus used at each testing.   The plates shall be grown at 37° C. for forty-eight hours.

64. In making the plates there shall be used agar-agar media containing 1.5 per cent. agar and giving a reaction of 1.0 to phenolphthalein.

65. Samples of milk for plating shall be diluted in the proportion of 1 part of milk to 99 parts of sterile water; shake twenty-five times and plate 1 c.c. of the dilution.

66. *Determination of Taste and Odor of Milk.*—After the plates have been prepared and placed in the incubator, the taste and odor of the milk shall be determined after warming the milk to 100° F.

67. *Counts.*—The total number of colonies on each plate should be counted, and the results expressed in multiples of the dilution factor.   Colonies too small to be seen with the naked eye or with slight magnification shall not be considered in the count.

68. *Records of Bacteriologic Tests.*—The results of all bacterial tests shall be kept on file by the secretary of each commission, copies of which should be made available annually for the use of the American Association of Medical Milk Commissioners.

BIBLIOGRAPHIC INDEX

579

INDEX